ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report

Proposal list to the 2017 A117.1 for the 2023 edition – 2-24-2022 through 1-19-2023 Chapter 1 to 5

CHAPTER 1
APPLICATION AND ADMINISTRATION

01-01 – 2021
102.1

Proponent: Amy Carpenter, representing Assisted Toileting and Bathing work group and Laurel Wright, representing the Adult Changing Facilities work group

Revise as follows:

SECTION 102
PURPOSE

102.1 General. The technical criteria in Chapters 3 through 10, Sections 1102, 1103 and 1106 of this standard make sites, facilities, buildings and elements accessible to and usable by people with such physical disabilities as the inability to walk, difficulty walking, reliance on walking aids, blindness and visual impairment, deafness and hearing impairment, incoordination, reaching and manipulation disabilities, lack of stamina, difficulty interpreting and reacting to sensory information, and extremes of physical size. The intent of these sections is to allow a person with a physical disability to independently get to, enter, and use a site, facility, building or element.

The intent of Sections 611(Assisted toileting and bathing) and 613 (Adult changing stations) is to allow for assistance by a care giver where a person may not be able to independently use toileting or bathing facilities.

Section 1104 of this standard provides criteria for Type B units. These criteria are intended to be consistent with the intent of the criteria of the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines. The Type B units are intended to supplement, not replace, Accessible units or Type A units as specified in this standard.

Section 1105 of this standard provides criteria for minimal accessibility features for one and two family dwelling units and townhouses which are not covered by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines.

This standard is intended for adoption by government agencies and by organizations setting model codes to achieve uniformity in the technical design criteria in building codes and other regulations.

102.2 Applicability. Sites, facilities, buildings, and elements required to be accessible by the scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapters 3 through 10. Dwelling units and sleeping units shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 11.

REASON: The ICC A117.1 committee approved two work groups: one to develop ~~for~~ assisted toileting and bathing criteria as an alternative for Accessible units in a percentage of resident's/care recipient's bathrooms in Assisted Living, Nursing Homes and Rehabilitation facilities; the other to develop technical criterial criteria for adult changing tables, with associate clearances, along with proposed scoping. This change for the purpose of the standard is to recognize that these criteria are not intended for independent use. Care givers will need to assist people who are not strong enough or physically capable of independent toileting and bathing. Please see the associated code changes for new Section 611 and 613 for technical criteria.

Committee Action: 29-0-4 As submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This change for the purpose of the standard is to recognize that these criteria are not intended for independent use. Care givers will need to assist people who are not strong enough or physically capable of independent toileting and bathing.

102.1-CARPENTER.doc

Report for *01-01 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-0-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This change for the purpose of the standard is to recognize that these criteria are not intended for independent use. Care givers will need to assist people who are not strong enough or physically capable of independent toileting and bathing.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

01-02 – 2021 WITHDRAWN BY PROPONENT
106.2.3

Proponent: Billie Louise (Beezy) Bentzen, PhD., Accessible Design for the Blind, representing Association for the Education and Rehabilitation of the Blind and Visually Impaired (AER)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 106
REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

106.2.3 Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices. MUTCD-2021 ~~with Revisions 1 and 2 incorporated May 2012~~ (The Federal Highway Administration, Office of Transportation Operations, Room 3408, 400 7th Street, S.W., Washington, DC 20590)

REASON: A new edition of the MUTCD is expected to be published in 2021. The A117 should be revised to refer to the current edition.

Committee Action: Withdrawn

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

106.2.3-BENTZEN.doc

Report for *01-02 2021*		
Committee decision: Withdrawn	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

01-03 – 2021
106.2.4

Proponent: Richard Roberts, Honeywell, representing National Electrical Manufacturers Association (NEMA)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 106
REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

106.2.4 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code. NFPA 72-~~2016~~ 2019(National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269-9101).

Reason: This proposal replaces an outdated edition of NFPA 72 with the current/published edition of the Code.

Committee Action: Disapproved (Vote: 30-0-1)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the update for this standard was addressed with the modifications to 01-04-2021.

106.2.4 ROBERTS.doc

Report for *01-03 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 30-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the update for this standard was addressed with the modifications to 01-04-2021.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

01-04 – 2021
106.2.4, 106.2.5, 106.2.6, 106.2.7, 106.2.8, 106.2.9, 106.2.10, 106.2.12, 106.2.13

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, representing ICC

Revise as follows:

SECTION 106
REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

106.1 General. The documents listed in Section 106.2 shall be considered part of this standard to the prescribed extent of each such reference. Where criteria in this standard differ from those of these referenced documents, the criteria of this standard shall apply.

106.2 Documents.

106.2.1 Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Transportation Vehicles. 36 CFR 1192 published in 56 Federal Register 45558, September 6, 1991 (United States Access Board, 1331 F Street, NW, Suite 1000, Washington, DC 20004-1111).

106.2.2 Hearing aids – Magnetic field strength in audio-frequency induction loops for hearing aids operating with an induction pickup coil. IEC 60118.4-2014 (International Electrotechnical Commission, 3 rue de Varenbe, PO Box 131, 1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland.)

106.2.3 Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices. MUTCD-2009 with Revisions 1 and 2 incorporated, May 2012 (The Federal Highway Administration, Office of Transportation Operations, Room 3408, 400 7th Street, S.W., Washington, DC 20590).

106.2.4 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code. NFPA 72-~~2016~~ 2019 (National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269-9101).

106.2.5 Performance Criteria for Accessible Communications Entry Systems. ANSI/DASMA 303-~~2006~~ 2017. (Door and Access Systems Manufacturers Association, 1300 Sumner Avenue, Cleveland, OH 44115-2851).

106.2.6 Power Assist and Low Energy Power Operated Doors. ANSI/BHMA A156.19-~~2013~~ 2019 (Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor, New York, NY 10017).

106.2.7 Power Operated Pedestrian Doors. ANSI/BHMA A156.10-~~2011~~ 2017 (Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor, New York, NY 10017).

106.2.8 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. ASME A17.1-~~2013~~ 2019/CSA B44-~~16~~ 19 (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990).

106.2.9 Safety Standard for Platform Lifts and Stairway Chairlifts. ASME A18.1-~~2014~~ 2020 (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990).

106.2.10 Standard Consumer Safety Performance Specification for Playground Equipment for Public Use. ASTM F 1487-~~01~~ 21 (ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA, 19428-2959).

106.2.11 Standard Laboratory Test Method for Determination of Forces and Motions Required to Activate Operable Parts of Operable Windows and Doors in Accessible Spaces. AAMA 513-14 (AAMA, 1827 Walden Office Square, Suite 550, Schaumburg, IL 60173-4268).

106.2.12 Standard Specification for Impact Attenuation of Surfacing Materials Within the Use Zone of Playground Equipment. ASTM F 1292-~~13~~ 18e1(ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA, 19428-2959).

106.2.13 Standard Test Method for Determination of Decay Rates for Use in Sound Insulation Test Methods. ASTM E 2235-04 (~~2012~~ 2020) (ASTM International, 100 Barr Harbor Drive, PO Box C700, West Conshohocken, PA 19428-2959).

REASON: This is an automatic update for standards that are referenced in the 2021 IBC. The Administrative proposal for automatic updates in 2022 should also be checked for any additional updates.

Proposed modification to 01-04-2021

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, representing ICC

Further revise as follows:

106.2.8 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. ASME A17.1-~~2019~~ 2022/CSA B44-~~19~~ 2022 (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990).

REASON The ICC proposals were posted on Feb. 23, 2022. Of the referenced standards listed in ICC A117.1, there is an additional update to ASME A17.1. This would make the dates for the referenced standard consistent in the 2023 A117.1 and 2024 I-Codes.

Committee Action: Approved as Modified (Vote: 30-0-1)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modifications (if any):

Further modify:
106.2.4 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code. NFPA 72-~~2019~~ 2022 (National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269-9101).

106.2.7 Power Operated Pedestrian Doors. ANSI/BHMA A156.10-~~2017~~ 2022 (Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor, New York, NY 10017).

106.2.8 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators. ASME A17.1-~~2019~~ 2022/CSA B44-~~19~~ 2022 (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990).

Committee Reason: The modification to Section 106.2.8 was proposed ahead of the meeting. The modification to Section 106.2.5 and 106.2.7 were identified during the meeting. The three modifications identified additional updates for the referenced standards. The committee agreed the updates for the referenced standards.

106 Paarlberg.doc

Report for *01-04– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 30-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify:** **106.2.4 National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.** NFPA 72-~~2019~~ 2022 (National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02269-9101). **106.2.7 Power Operated Pedestrian Doors.** ANSI/BHMA A156.10-~~2017~~ 2022 (Builders Hardware Manufacturers' Association, 355 Lexington Avenue, 15th Floor, New York, NY 10017). **106.2.8 Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.** ASME A17.1-~~2019~~ 2022/CSA B44-~~19~~ 2022 (American Society of Mechanical Engineers International, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990).		
Committee Reason: The modification to Section 106.2.8 was proposed ahead of the meeting. The modification to Section 106.2.5 and 106.2.7 were identified during the meeting. The three modifications identified additional updates for the referenced standards. The committee agreed the updates for the referenced standards.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

01-06 – 2021
107.5

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, representing ICC

Revise as follows:

SECTION 107
DEFINITIONS

107.5 Defined terms.

transfer device: Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility aide to and from an amusement ride seat.

wheelchair charging area: A clear floor area where people with disabilities can recharge their ~~wheelchair~~ batteries for wheelchairs or other mobility aide.

wheelchair space: A space for a single wheelchair or other mobility aide and its occupant.

wheelchair space locations: A space for a minimum of a single wheelchair or other mobility aide and the associated companion seating. Wheelchair space locations can contain multiple wheelchair spaces and associated companion seating.

REASON: The standard has been expanded to include other mobility devices. That should be addressed in the definitions.

Committee Action: Approved as Modified (Vote: 29-1-1)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Further modify:
transfer device: Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility ~~aide~~ device to and from an amusement ride seat.

wheelchair charging area: A clear floor area where people with disabilities can recharge their batteries for wheelchairs or other mobility ~~aide~~ devices.

wheelchair space: A space for a single wheelchair or other mobility ~~aide~~ device and its ~~occupant~~ user.

wheelchair space locations: A space for a minimum of a single wheelchair or other mobility ~~aide~~ device and the associated companion seating. Wheelchair space locations can contain multiple wheelchair spaces and associated companion seating.

Committee Reason: The modification to change 'aide' to 'device' is to use the term more commonly found in the 2010 ADA standard. The modification to change 'occupant' to 'user' is a more appropriate term to use with both 'wheelchairs' and the other devices, such as scooters. The committee agreed that the changes in the definitions would help make it clear that the wheelchair spaces could be used by a variety of individuals. The sizes are set elsewhere in the standard. Expanding the definition to acknowledge other devices, which may be larger than the space required by the standard, does not mean that the standard will now require those spaces to be larger.

107.5 Paarlberg.doc

Report for *01-06– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-1-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify:** **transfer device:** Equipment designed to facilitate the transfer of a person from a wheelchair or other mobility ~~aide~~ device to and from an amusement ride seat. **wheelchair charging area:** A clear floor area where people with disabilities can recharge their batteries for wheelchairs or other mobility ~~aide~~ devices. **wheelchair space:** A space for a single wheelchair or other mobility ~~aide~~ device and its ~~occupant~~ user. **wheelchair space locations:** A space for a minimum of a single wheelchair or other mobility ~~aide~~ device and the associated companion seating. Wheelchair space locations can contain multiple wheelchair spaces and associated companion seating.		
Committee Reason: The modification to change 'aide' to 'device' is to use the term more commonly found in the 2010 ADA standard. The modification to change 'occupant' to 'user' is a more appropriate term to use with both 'wheelchairs' and the other devices, such as scooters. The committee agreed that the changes in the definitions would help make it clear that the wheelchair spaces could be used by a variety of individuals. The sizes are set elsewhere in the standard. Expanding the definition to acknowledge other devices, which may be larger than the space required by the standard, does not mean that the standard will now require those spaces to be larger.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

ICC A117.1 COMMITTEE ACTION REPORT
CHAPTER 2
SCOPING

No change were proposed for Chapter 2.

ICC A117.1 COMMITTEE ACTION REPORT
CHAPTER 3
BUILDING BLOCKS

03-03 – 2021

304.3.1, 304.3.1.1, 304.3.1.1.1, 304.3.1.2, 304.3.1.2.1, 304.3.2, 304.3.2.1, 304.3.2.1.1, 304.3.2.2, 304.3.2.2.1, 305.3, 305.3.1, 305.3.2, 403.5.1, 403.5.2, 403.5.2.1, 403.5.2.2, 403.5.3, 403.5.3.1, 403.5.3.2, 403.5.4, 403.5.4.1, 403.5.4.2, Table 404.2.3.2, Table 404.2.3.3, Table 404.2.3.4, 404.2.3.5, 404.2.5, 409.4.1, 409.4.1.1, 409.4.1.2, 410.5.1, 410.5.1.1, 410.5.1.2, 503.3.2, 503.3.2.1, 503.3.2.2, 608.2.1.2, 608.2.1.2.1, 608.2.1.2.2, 802.4, 802.4.1, 802.4.2, 802.5.1, 802.7.2, 805.2.2, 805.2.2.1, 805.2.2.2, 1007.3.2, 1007.3.2.1, 1007.3.2.2, 1009.2.3.1, 1009.2.3.2

Proponent: Marsha K. Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 304
TURNING SPACE

304.1 General. A turning space shall comply with Section 304.

304.2 Floor surface. Floor surfaces of a turning space shall comply with Section 302. Changes in level shall not be permitted within the turning space.

Exception: Slopes not steeper than 1:48 shall be permitted.

304.3 Size. Turning spaces shall comply with Section 304.3.1or 304.3.2.

304.3.1 Circular space.

~~**304.3.1.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, the~~ The turning space shall be a circular space with a 67-inch (1700 mm) minimum diameter.

304.3.1.1 ~~**304.3.1.1.1**~~ **Overlap.** Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306. Where the turning space includes knee and toe clearances under an obstruction, the
overlap shall comply with all of the following:

1. The depth of the overlap shall not be more than 10 inches (255 mm), and
2. The depth shall not exceed the depth of the knee and toe clearances provided, and
3. The overlap shall be permitted only within the turning circle area shown shaded in Figure 304.3.1.1 ~~304.3.1.1.1~~.

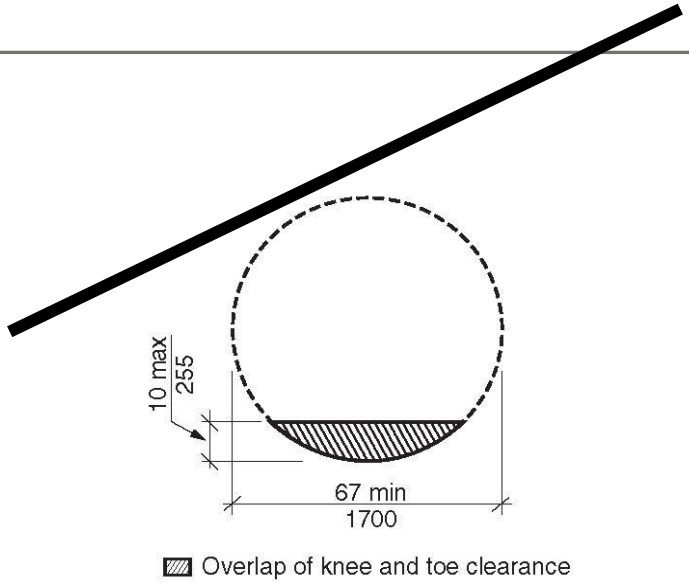
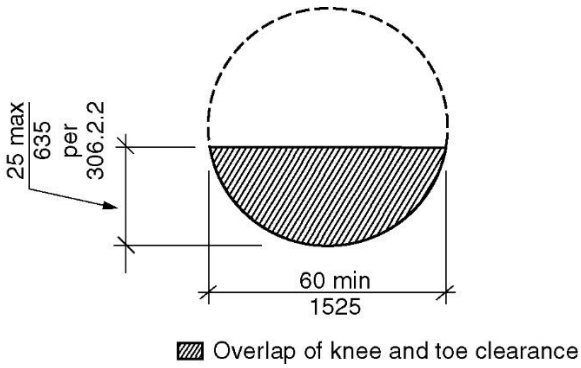


FIGURE 304.3.1.1 ~~304.3.1.1.1~~
CIRCULAR TURNING SPACE – ~~NEW BUILDINGS~~
SIZE AND OVERLAP

~~**304.3.1.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a circular space with a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum diameter.~~

~~**304.3.1.2.1 Overlap.** Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306.~~



~~**FIGURE 304.3.1.1.2**~~
~~**CIRCULAR TURNING SPACE – EXISTING BUILDINGS**~~
~~**SIZE AND OVERLAP**~~

304.3.2 T-Shaped space.

~~**304.3.2.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, the~~ The turning space shall be a T–shaped space complying with one of the following:

1. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, that fits within an area 68 inches (1725 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms and one base that are all 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Each arm shall extend 16 inches (405 mm) minimum from each side of the base located opposite the other, and the base shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) minimum from the arms. At the intersection of each arm and the base, the interior corners shall be chamfered for 8 inches (205 mm) minimum along both the arm and along the base.

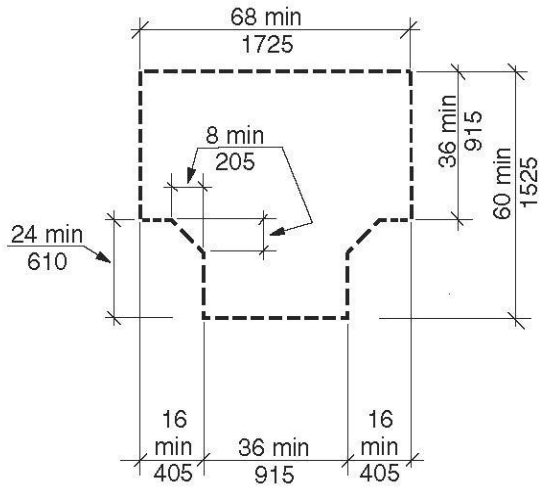


FIGURE 304.3.2 ~~304.3.2.1~~(A)
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE
~~NEW BUILDINGS~~ – OPTION 1

2. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, that fits within an area 64 inches (1625 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms 38 inches (965 mm) minimum in width and a base 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width. Each arm shall extend 11 inches (280 mm) minimum from each side of the base, located opposite the other, and the base shall extend 22 inches (560 mm) minimum from each arm.

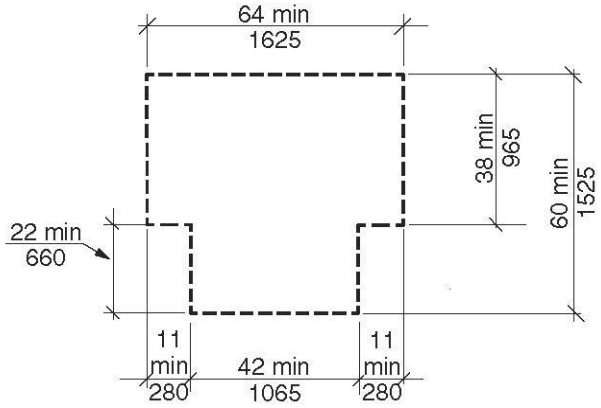


FIGURE 304.3.2 ~~304.3.2.1~~ (B)
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE
~~NEW BUILDINGS~~ – OPTION 2

3. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, 64 inches (1625 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms and one base 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum in width. Each arm shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum from each side of the base and the base shall extend 20 inches (510 mm) minimum from each arm.

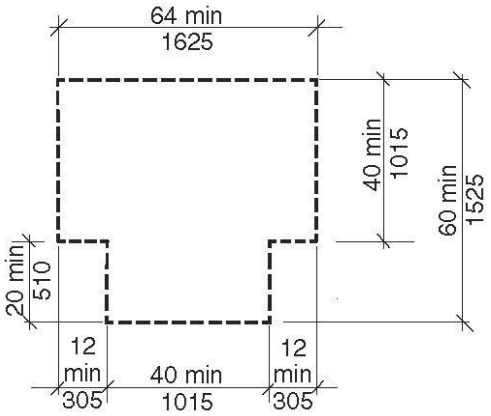


FIGURE 304.3.2 ~~304.3.2.1~~ (C)
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE
~~NEW BUILDINGS~~ – OPTION 3

304.3.2.1 ~~304.3.2.1.1~~ Overlap. Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 of either the base or one arm. For Option 1, the base or arm is the portion beyond the chamfer.

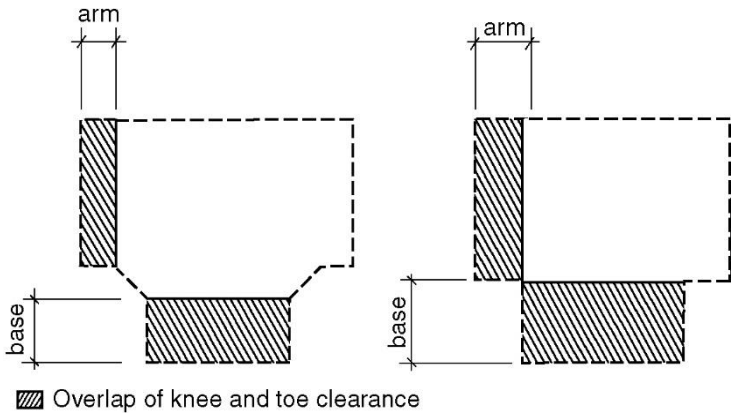
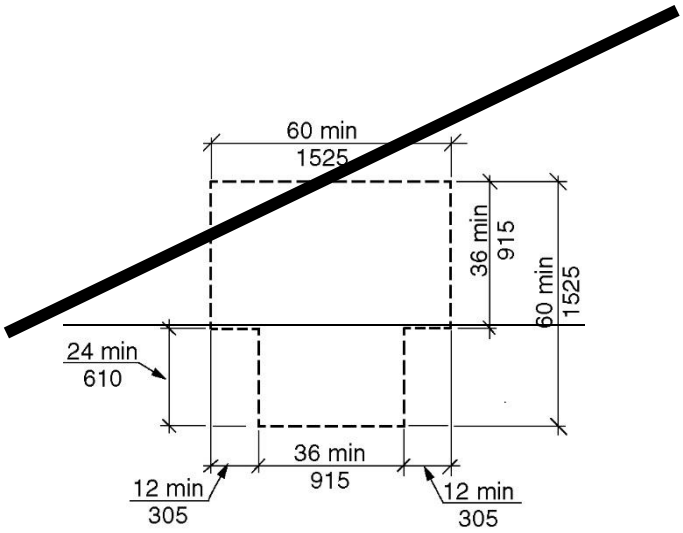


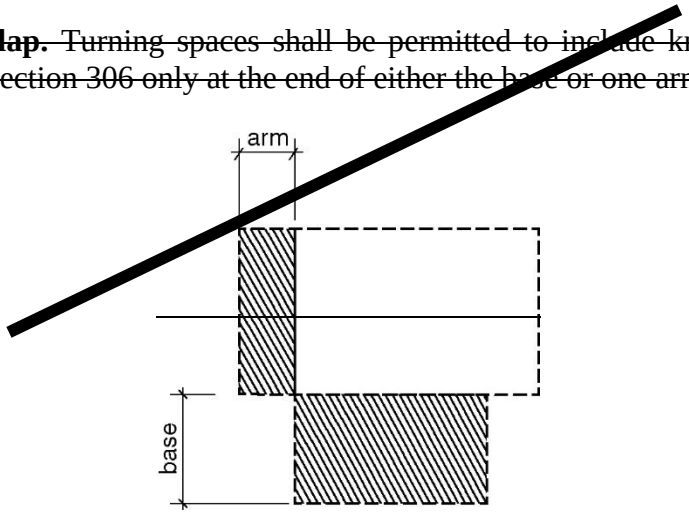
FIGURE 304.3.2.1 ~~304.3.2.1.1~~
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE
~~NEW BUILDINGS~~ OVERLAP

~~**304.3.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a T-shaped space within a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum square, with arms and base 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Each arm of the T shall be clear of obstructions 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in each direction, and the base shall be clear of obstructions 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.~~



~~FIGURE 304.3.2.2~~
~~T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE~~
~~EXISTING BUILDINGS~~

~~**304.3.2.2.1 Overlap.** Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 only at the end of either the base or one arm.~~



~~FIGURE 304.3.2.2.1~~
~~T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE~~
~~EXISTING BUILDINGS- OVERLAP~~

SECTION 305
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

305.3 Size.

~~**305.3.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, the~~ The clear floor space shall be 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.

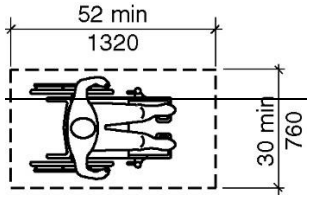
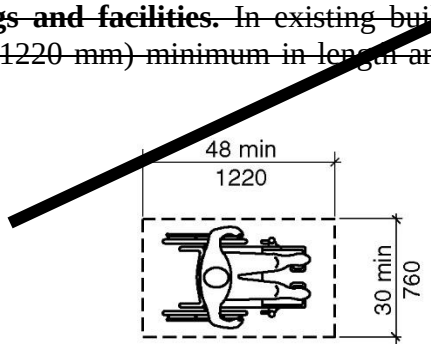


Figure 305.3 ~~305.3.1~~
Size of Clear Floor Space ~~– New Buildings~~

~~**305.3.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, the clear floor space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width.~~



~~**Figure 305.3.2**~~
~~**Size of Clear Floor Space - Existing Buildings**~~

SECTION 403
WALKING SURFACES

403.5.1 General. The clear width of an interior accessible route shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. The clear width of an exterior accessible route shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. ~~In new buildings and facilities, the~~ The clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced-width segments are separated by segments that are 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.
2. ~~In existing buildings and facilities, the clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.~~
2. ~~3.~~ The clear width of an exterior accessible route located within seating areas shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.
3. ~~4.~~ The clear width of an exterior ramp ~~shall~~ complying with Section 405.5 shall not be required to comply with this section.

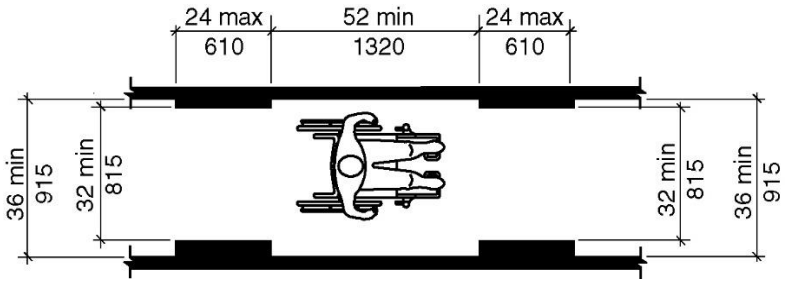


Figure 403.5.1(A) Clear Width of an Accessible Route - ~~New Buildings~~ - Interior

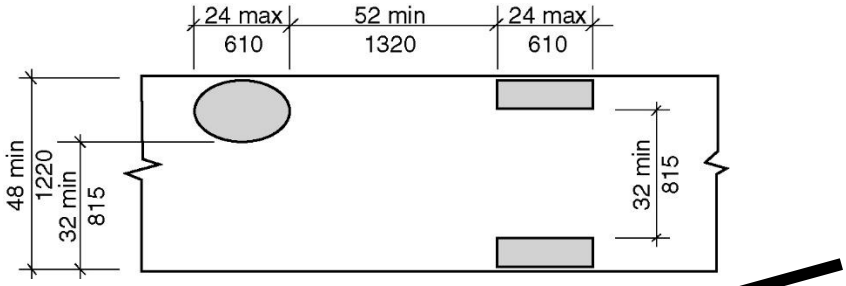
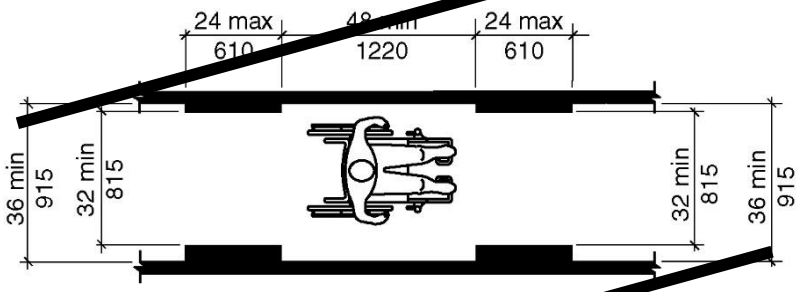
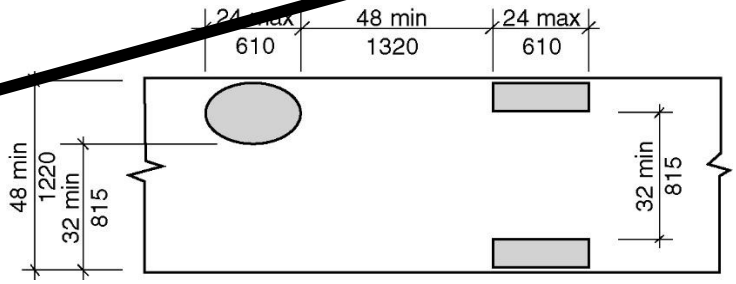


Figure 403.5.1(B) Clear Width of an Accessible Route - ~~New Buildings~~ - Exterior



~~Figure 403.5.1(C) Clear Width of an Accessible Route - Existing Buildings - Interior~~



~~Figure 403.5.1(D) Clear Width of an Accessible Route - Existing Buildings - Exterior~~

403.5.2 Clear width at 180-degree turn.

~~403.5.2.1 New buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In new building and facilities, where~~ Where an accessible route makes a 180-degree turn around an object that is equal to or greater than 52 inches (1320 mm) in width, the clear widths in the turn shall comply with Section 403.5.1. Where an accessible route makes a 180-degree turn around an object that is less than 52 inches (1320 mm) inches in width, the clear widths approaching the turn, during the turn and leaving the turn, shall be one of the following sets of dimensions:

1. Approaching width is 36 inches (915 mm) minimum, during width is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, and leaving width is 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.
2. Approaching width is 42 (1065 mm) inches minimum, during width is 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum, and leaving width is 42 (1065 mm) inches minimum.
3. Approaching width is 43 inches (1090 mm) minimum, during width is 43 inches (1090 mm) minimum, and leaving width is 43 inches (1090 mm) minimum.

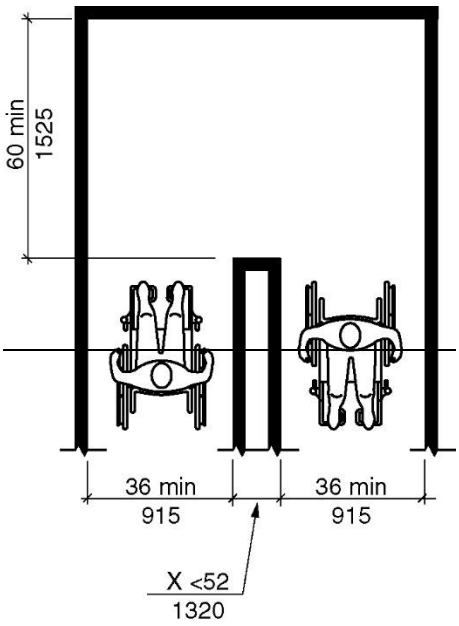


Figure 403.5.2 ~~403.5.2.1~~(A) Clear Width at 180-degree Turn – ~~New Buildings~~ - Option 1

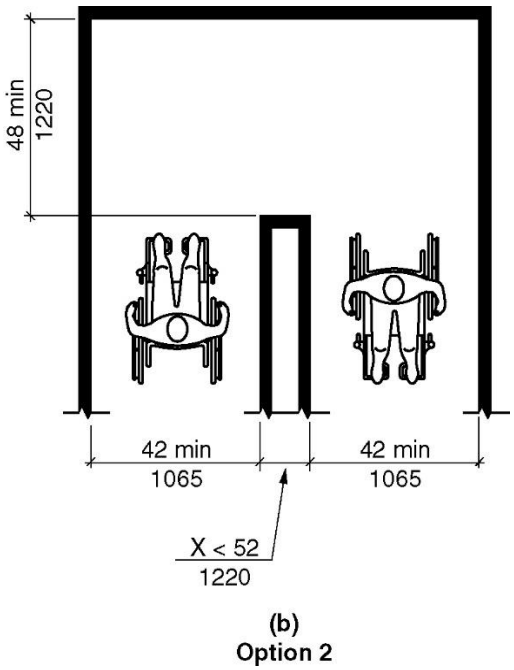


Figure 403.5.2 ~~403.5.2.1~~ (B) Clear Width at 180-degree Turn – ~~New Buildings~~ - Option 2

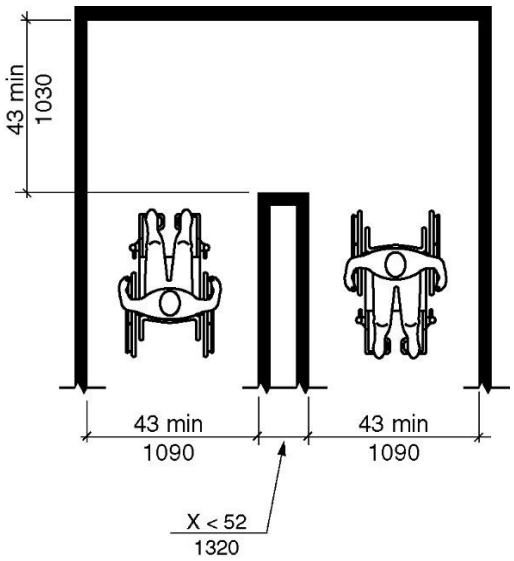
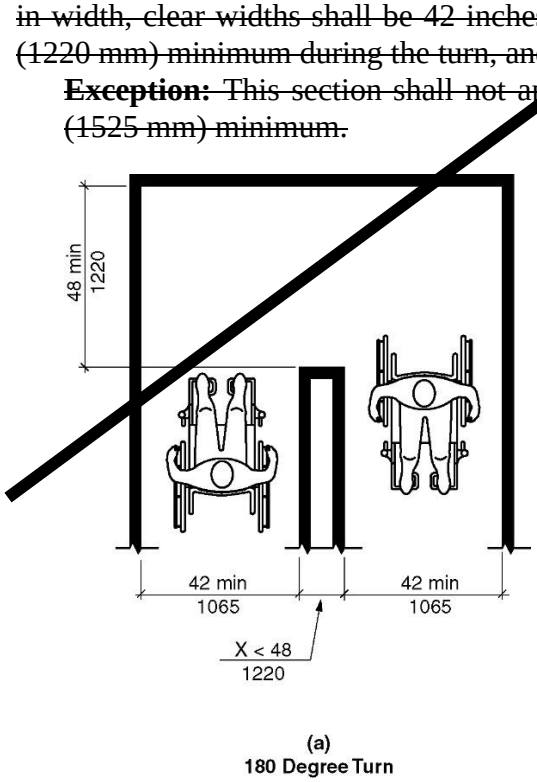


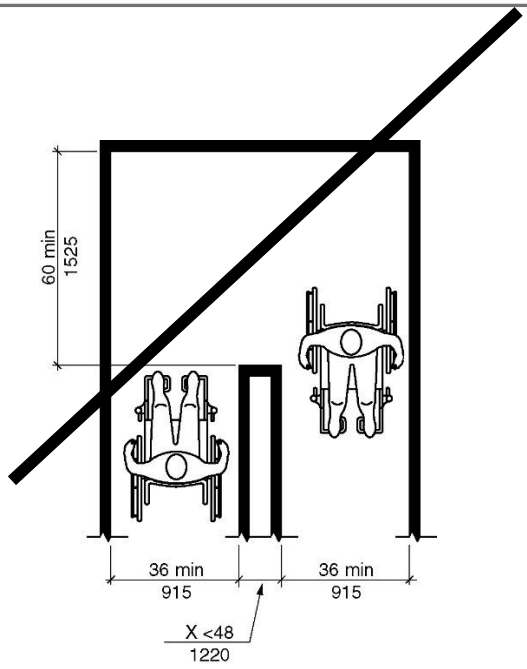
Figure 403.5.2 ~~403.5.2.1~~ (C) Clear Width at 180-degree Turn – ~~New Buildings~~ - Option 3

~~**403.5.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, where an accessible route makes a 180 degree turn around an object that is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) in width, clear widths shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum during the turn, and 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum leaving the turn.~~

~~**Exception:** This section shall not apply where the clear width during the turn is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.~~



~~**Figure 403.5.2.2(A) Clear Width at 180-degree Turn – Existing Buildings**~~



(b)
180 Degree Turn
(Exception)

~~**Figure 403.5.2.2(B) Clear Width at 180-degree Turn - Existing Buildings - Exception**~~

403.5.3 Clear width at 90-degree turn.

~~**403.5.3.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, where~~ Where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn the clear widths approaching the turn and leaving the turn shall be one of the following sets of dimensions:

1. Both legs of the turn shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum in width. The width of each leg of the turn shall be maintained for 28 inches (710 mm) minimum from the inner corner.
2. Where the interior corners of the turn are chamfered for 8 inches minimum (205 mm) along both walls, both legs of the turn shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.
3. Where one leg of the turn is 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width, the other shall be permitted to be 38 inches (965 mm) minimum in width.
4. Where one leg of the turn is 44 inches (1120mm) minimum in width, the other shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.

   Exceptions:

   1. Where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn at doors, doorways and gates complying with Section 404.2.3, the route shall not be required to comply with this section.
   2. Where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn at an elevator or platforms lifts complying with Sections 407 through 410, the accessible route shall not be required to comply with this section.

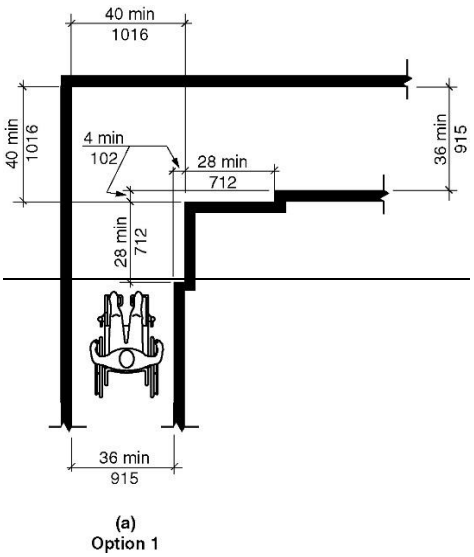


Figure 403.5.3 ~~403.5.3.1~~(A) Clear Width at 90-degree Turn - ~~New Buildings~~ - Option 1

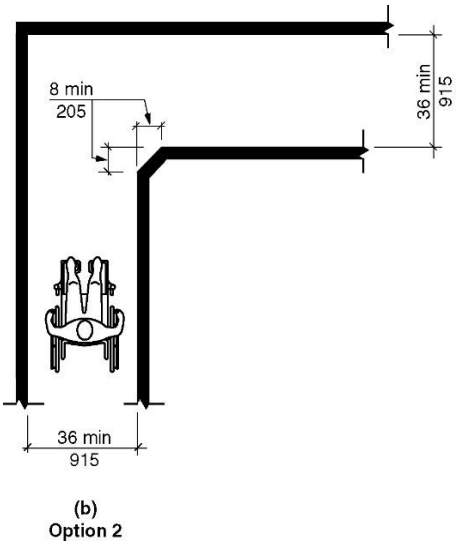


Figure 403.5.3 ~~403.5.3.1~~ (B) Clear Width at 90-degree Turn - ~~New Buildings~~ - Option 2

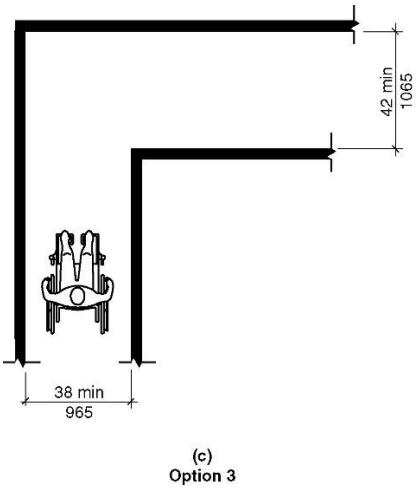


Figure 403.5.3 ~~403.5.3.1~~ (C) Clear Width at 90-degree Turn - ~~New Buildings~~ - Option 3

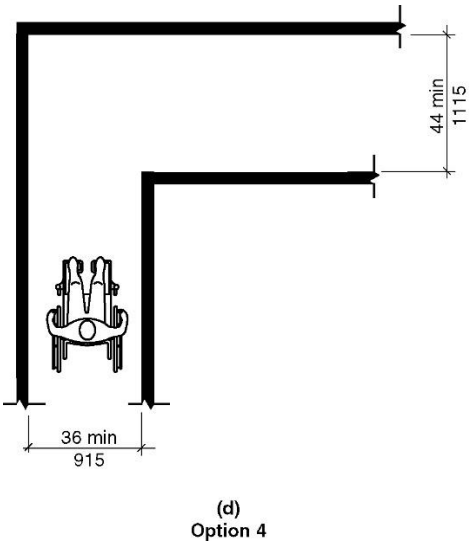
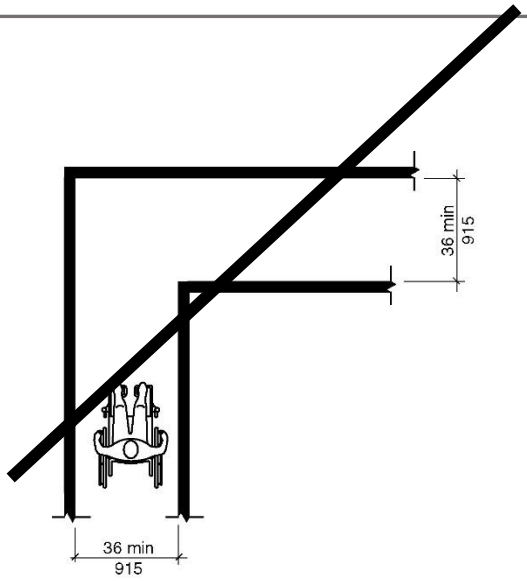


Figure 403.5.3 ~~403.5.3.1~~ (D) Clear Width at 90-degree Turn - ~~New Buildings~~ - Option 4

~~**403.5.3.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn the clear widths approaching the turn and leaving the turn shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.~~



~~Figure 403.5.3.2 Clear Width at 90-degree Turn - Existing Buildings~~

403.5.4 Passing space.

~~403.5.4.1 New buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In new buildings and facilities, an~~ An accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum by 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum space, or an intersection of two walking surfaces that provide a T-shaped turning space complying with Section 304.3.2.1, provided the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.

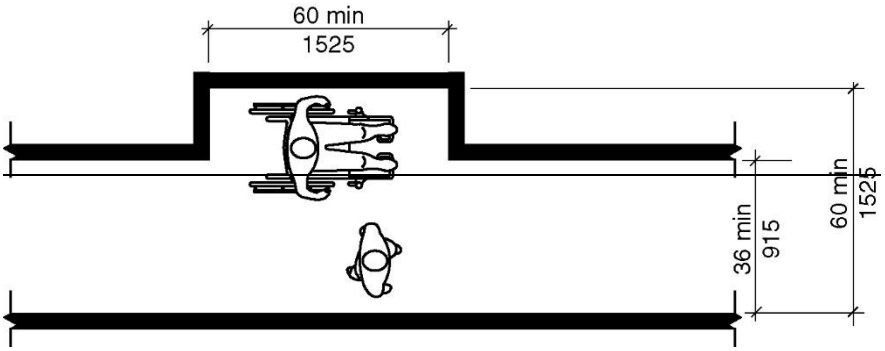


Figure 403.5.4 ~~403.5.4.1~~(A) Passing Space- ~~New Buildings~~ - 60 X 60 Option

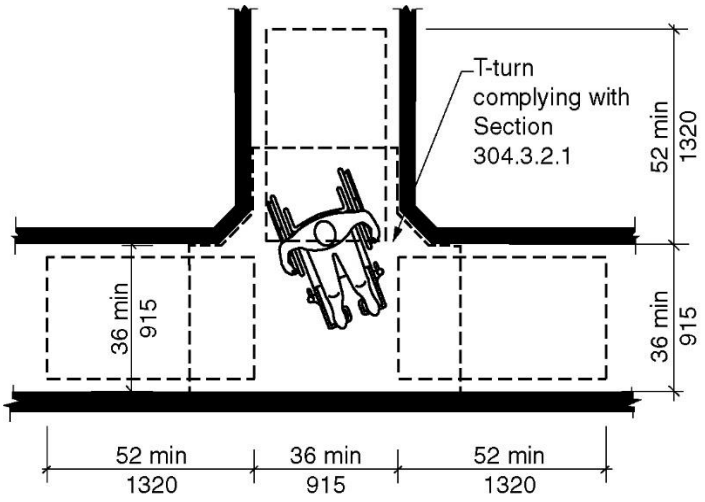
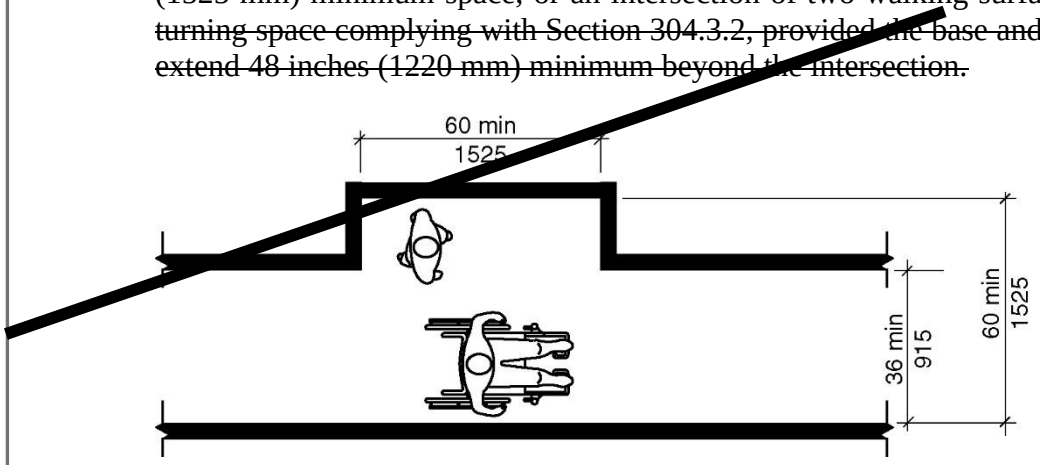
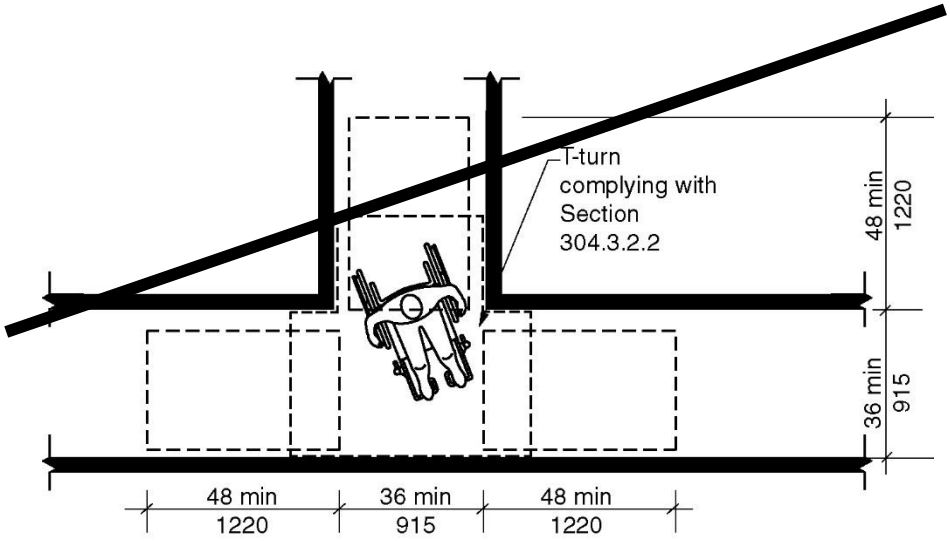


Figure 403.5.4 ~~403.5.4.1~~ (B) Passing Space- ~~New Buildings~~ - T-turn Option

~~403.5.4.2 Existing buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In existing buildings and facilities, an accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum by 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum space, or an intersection of two walking surfaces that provide a T-shaped turning space complying with Section 304.3.2, provided the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.~~



~~Figure 403.5.4.2(A) Passing Space- Existing Buildings - 60 X 60 Option~~



~~**Figure 403.5.4.2(B) Passing Space- Existing Buildings - T-turn Option**~~

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.2.3.2 Swinging doors and gates. Swinging doors and gates shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.3.2.

TABLE 404.2.3.2—MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT MANUAL SWINGING DOORS AND GATES

TYPE OF USE		MINIMUM MANEUVERING CLEARANCES	
Approach Direction	**Door or Gate Side**	**Perpendicular to Doorway**	**Parallel to Doorway (beyond latch unless noted)**
From front	Pull	60 inches (1525 mm)	18 inches (455 mm)
From front	Push	52 inches (1320 mm)~~5~~	0 inches (0 mm) [3]
From hinge side	Pull	60 inches (1525 mm)	36 inches (915 mm)
From hinge side	Pull	54 inches (1370 mm)	42 inches (1065 mm)
From hinge side	Push	42 inches (1065 mm)[1]	22 inches (560 mm)[4]
From latch side	Pull	48 inches (1220 mm)[2]	24 inches (610 mm)
From latch side	Push	42 inches (1065 mm)[2]	24 inches (610 mm)

1. Add 6 inches (150 mm) if closer and latch provided.
2. Add 6 inches (150 mm) if closer provided.
3. Add 12 inches (305 mm) beyond latch if closer and latch are provided.
4. Beyond hinge side.
~~5. In existing buildings and facilities, the dimension perpendicular to the door or gate for the front direction on the push side shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.~~

Figure 404.2.3.2(A) Maneuvering Clearances at Manual Swinging Doors - Front Approach - Pull Side

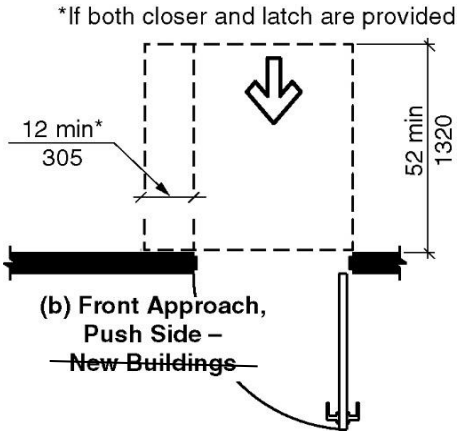
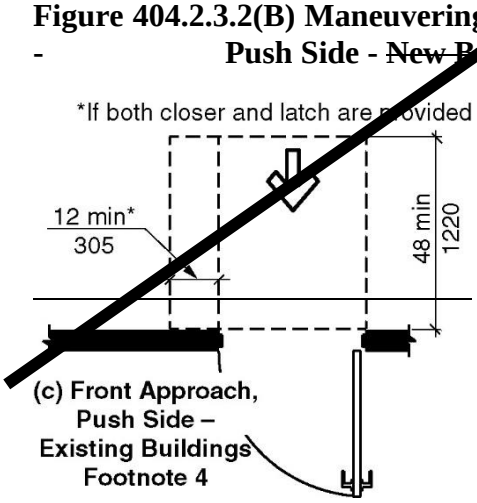


Figure 404.2.3.2(B) Maneuvering Clearances at Manual Swinging Doors - Front Approach - Push Side - ~~New Buildings~~



~~Figure 404.2.3.2(C) Maneuvering Clearances at Manual Swinging Doors - Front Approach - Pull Side - Existing Buildings - Footnote 5~~

Note: Renumber Figure 404.2.3.2(D) through (H)

404.2.3.3 Sliding and folding doors. Sliding doors and folding doors shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.3.3.

TABLE 404.2.3.3—MANEUVERING CLEARANCES AT SLIDING AND FOLDING DOORS

Approach Direction	MINIMUM MANEUVERING CLEARANCES	
	Perpendicular to Doorway	Parallel to Doorway (beyond stop or latch side unless noted)
From front	52 inches (1320 mm)[2]	0 inches (0 mm)
From nonlatch side	42 inches (1065 mm)	22 inches (560 mm)[1]
From latch side	42 inches (1065 mm)	24 inches (610 mm)

1. Beyond pocket or hinge side.
~~2. In existing buildings and facilities, the dimension perpendicular to the door for the front direction shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.~~

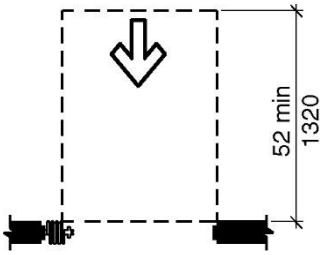
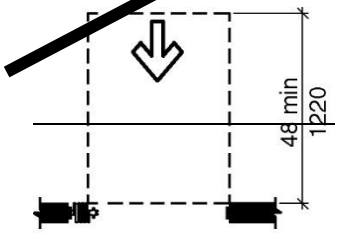


Figure 404.2.3.3(A) Maneuvering Clearance at Sliding and Folding Doors - Front Approach - ~~New Buildings~~



~~**Figure 404.2.3.3(B) Maneuvering Clearance at Sliding and Folding Doors – Front Approach – Existing Buildings - Footnote 2**~~

Note: Renumber Figure 404.2.3.3(C) and (D)

404.2.3.4 Doorways without doors or gates. Doorways without doors or gates that are less than 36 inches (915 mm) in width shall have maneuvering clearances complying with Table 404.2.3.4.

TABLE 404.2.3.4—MANEUVERING CLEARANCES FOR DOORWAYS WITHOUT DOORS OR GATES

Approach Direction	MINIMUM MANEUVERING CLEARANCES Perpendicular to Doorway
From front	52 inches (1320 mm)[1]
From side	42 inches (1065 mm)

~~1. In existing buildings and facilities the dimension perpendicular to the doorway for the front direction shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.~~

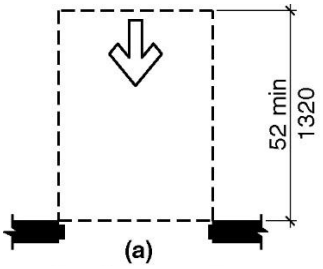
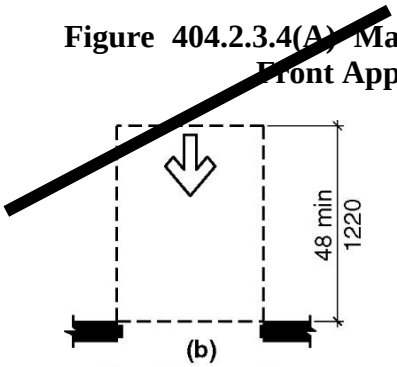


Figure 404.2.3.4(A) Maneuvering Clearances for Doorways without Doors or Gates - Front Approach - ~~New Buildings~~



~~Figure 404.2.3.4(B) Maneuvering Clearances for Doorways without Doors or Gates - Front Approach - Existing Buildings - Footnote 1~~

Note: Renumber Figure 404.2.3.4(C)

404.2.3.5 Recessed doors and gates. Where any obstruction within 18 inches (455 mm) of the latch side of a doorway projects more than 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the face of the door or gate, measured perpendicular to the face of the door or gate, maneuvering clearances for a forward approach shall be provided.

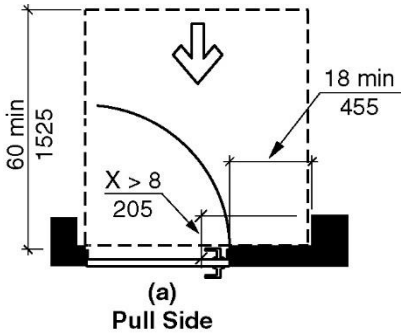


Figure 404.2.3.5(A) Recessed Doors and Gates – ~~New Buildings~~ - Pull Side

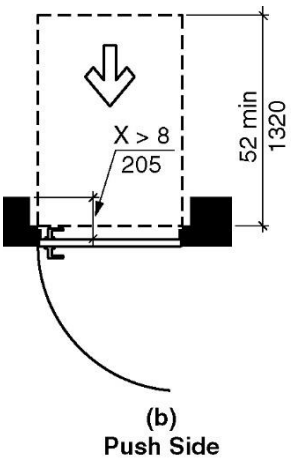


Figure 404.2.3.5(B) Recessed Doors and Gates – ~~New Buildings~~ - Push Side

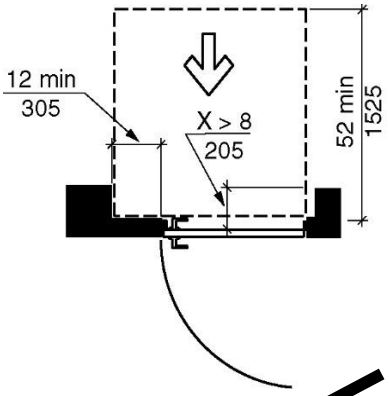
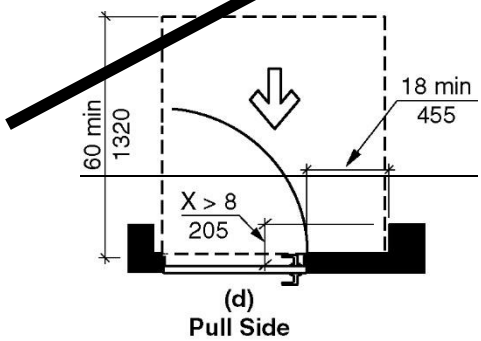
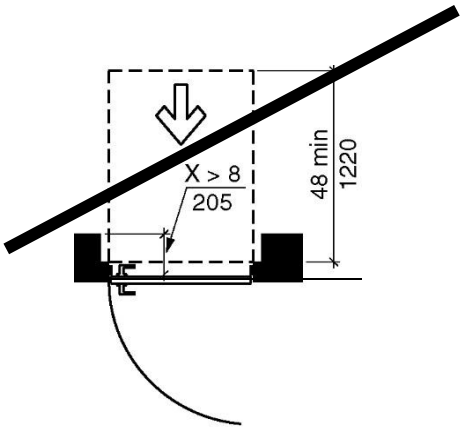


Figure 404.2.3.5(C) Recessed Doors and Gates – ~~New Buildings~~ - Push Side - Provided with Both Closer and Latch

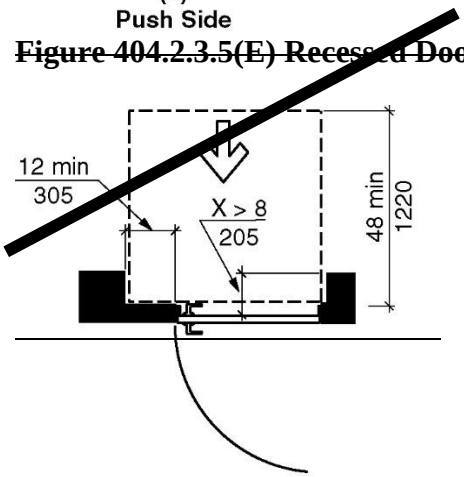


~~Figure 404.2.3.5(D) Recessed Doors and Gates – Existing Buildings - Pull Side~~



(e)
Push Side

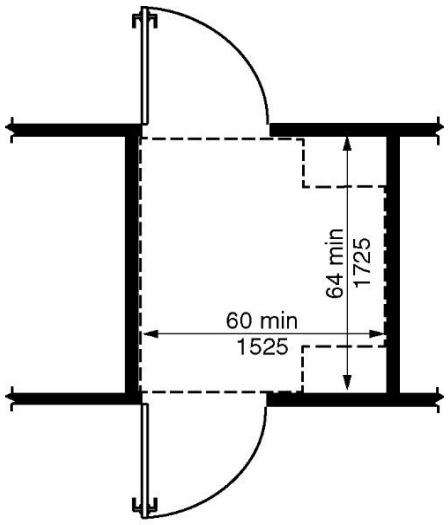
~~**Figure 404.2.3.5(E) Recessed Doors and Gates – Existing Buildings - Push Side**~~



(f)
Push Side, Door Provided
with Both Closer and Latch

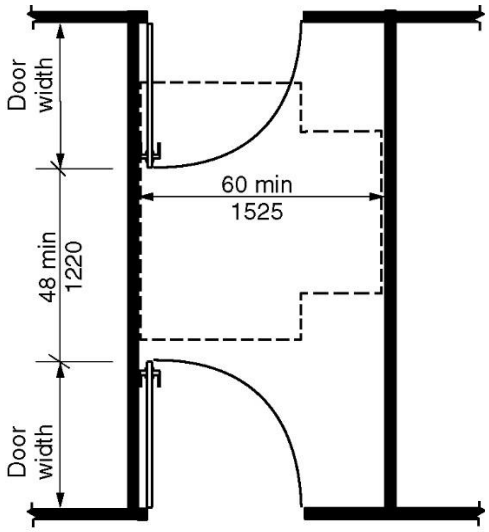
~~**Figure 404.2.3.5(F) Recessed Doors and Gates – Existing Buildings - Push Side - Door Provided with Both Closer and Latch**~~

404.2.5 Two doors or gates in series. Distance between two hinged or pivoted doors or gates in series shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum plus the width of any door or gate swinging into the space. The space between the doors and gates shall provide a turning space.



(a)

Figure 404.2.5(A) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - ~~New Buildings~~



(b)

Figure 404.2.5(B) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - ~~New Buildings~~

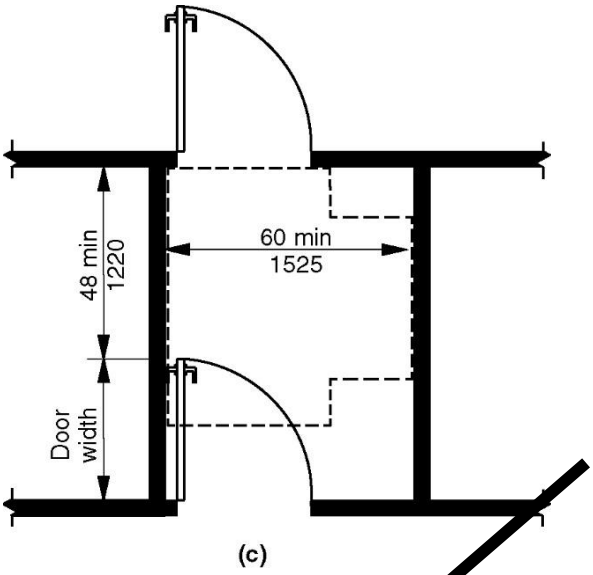
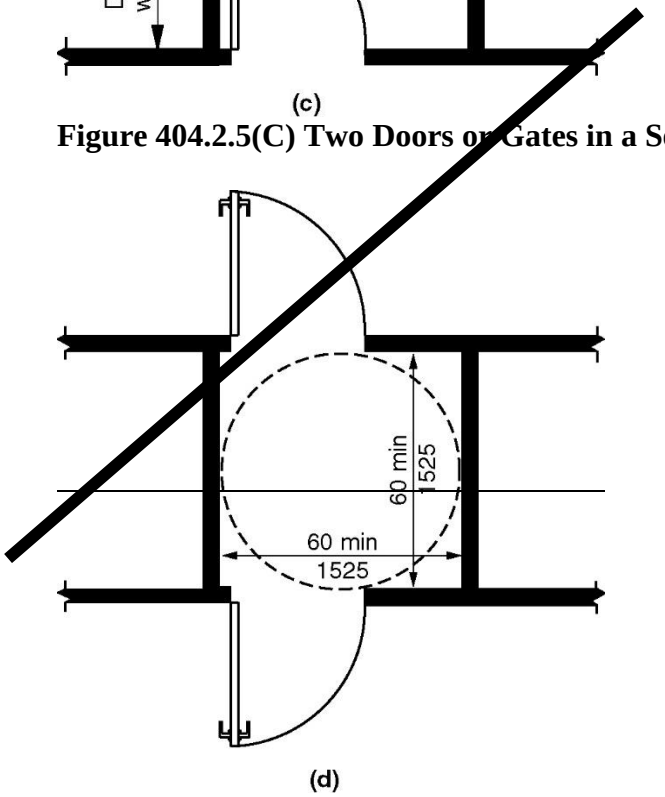
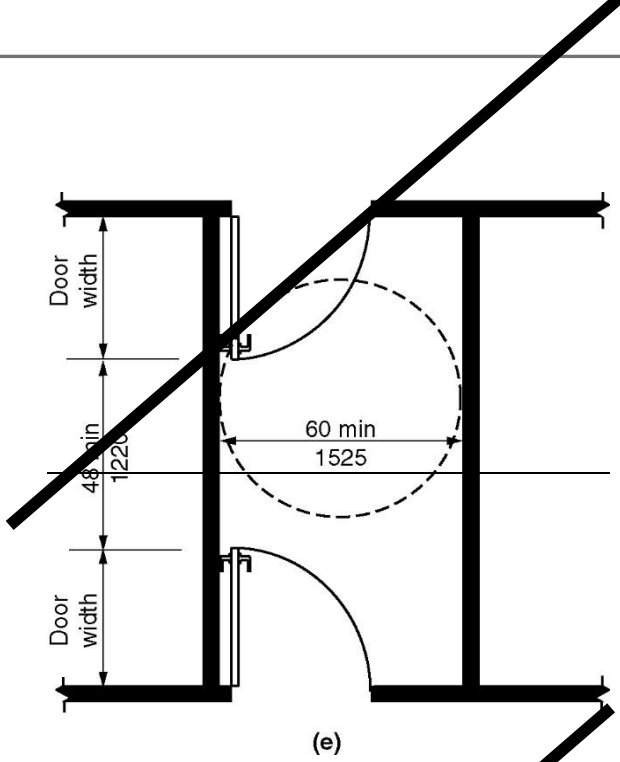


Figure 404.2.5(C) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - ~~New Buildings~~

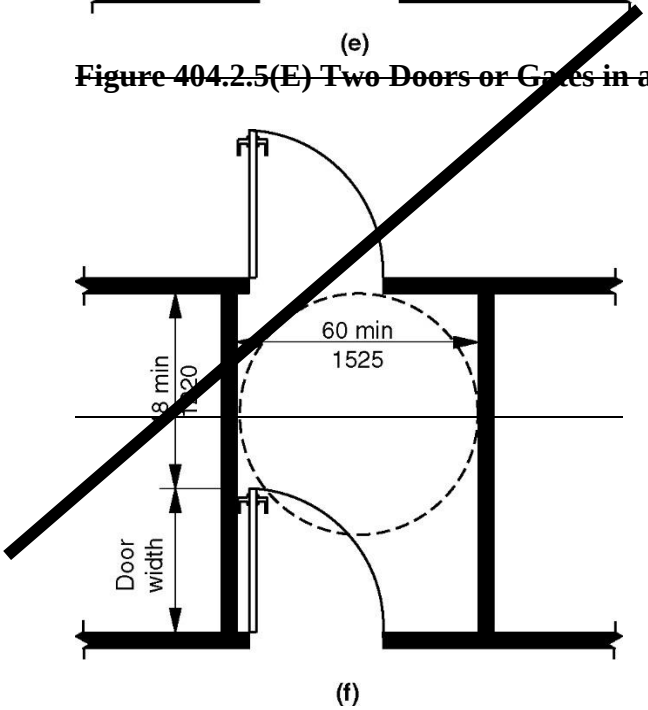


~~Figure 404.2.5(D) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - Existing Buildings~~



(e)

~~**Figure 404.2.5(E) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - Existing Buildings**~~



(f)

~~**Figure 404.2.5(F) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - Existing Buildings**~~

SECTION 409
PRIVATE RESIDENCE ELEVATORS

409.4 Elevator car requirements. Elevator cars shall comply with Section 409.4.

409.4.1 Inside dimensions.

~~**409.4.1.1 New buildings.** In new buildings, elevator~~ Elevator cars shall provide a clear floor area 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in depth.

~~**409.4.1.2 Existing buildings.** In existing buildings, elevator cars shall provide a clear floor area 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in depth.~~

Exception: In existing buildings, elevator cars shall be permitted to provide a clear floor area 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in depth where the installation of a car complying with Section 409.4.1 would result in the removal or rearrangement of existing walls, partitions, enclosures, or stairs.

SECTION 410
PLATFORM LIFTS

410.5.1 Lifts with single door or doors on opposite ends.

~~**410.5.1.1 New buildings.** In new buildings, platform~~ Platform lifts with a single door or doors on opposite ends shall provide a clear floor width of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum and a clear floor depth of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum.

Exceptions: 1. Incline platform lifts with passenger restraining arms, shall be permitted to provide a clear floor width of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum and a clear floor depth of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

2. In existing buildings, platform lifts with a single door or with doors on opposite ends shall be permitted to provide a clear floor depth of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum where compliance with the platform depth specified in Section 410.5.1 would result in the removal or rearrangement of existing walls, partitions, enclosures, or stairs.

~~**410.5.1.2 Existing buildings.** In existing buildings, platform lifts with a single door or with doors on opposite ends shall provide a clear floor width of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum and a clear floor depth of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.~~

410.5.2 Platform lifts with doors on adjacent sides.

~~**410.5.2.1 New buildings.** In new buildings, platform~~ Platform lifts with doors on adjacent sides shall provide a clear floor width of 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum and a clear floor depth of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

Exception. In existing buildings, platform lifts with doors on adjacent sides shall be permitted to provide a clear floor platform depth of 60 inches (1525 mm) where compliance with the platform depth specified in Section 410.5.2 would result in the removal or rearrangement of existing walls, partitions, enclosures, or stairs.

~~**410.5.2.2 Existing buildings.** In existing buildings, platform lifts with doors on adjacent sides shall be permitted to provide a clear floor width of 36 inches (915 mm) and a clear floor depth of 60 inches (1525 mm).~~

SECTION 503
PASSENGER LOADING ZONES

503.3 Access aisle. Passenger loading zones shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with Section 503.3.

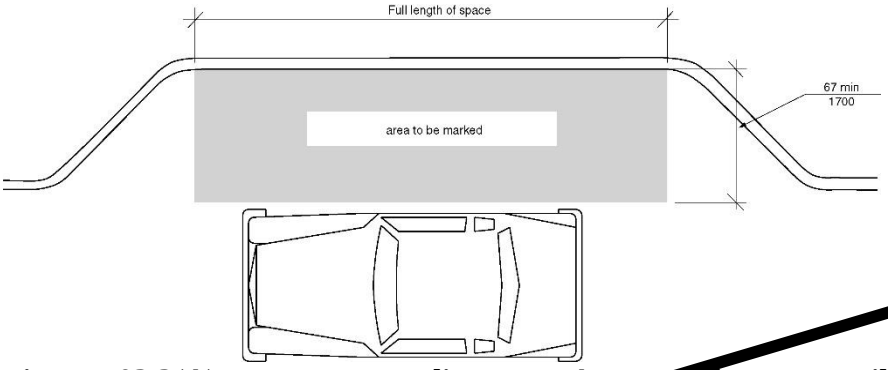
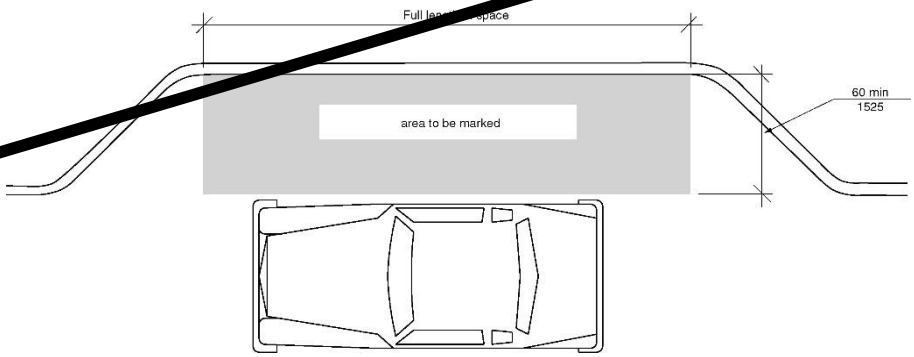


Figure 503.3(A) Passenger Loading Zone Access Aisle - ~~New Buildings~~



~~Figure 503.3(B) Passenger Loading Zone Access Aisle - Existing Buildings~~

503.3.1 Location. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Access aisles shall not overlap vehicular ways.

503.3.2 Width.

~~503.3.2.1 New buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In new buildings and facilities, aisles~~ Aisles serving vehicle pull-up spaces shall be 67 inches (1700 mm) minimum in width.

~~503.3.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In existing buildings and facilities, access aisles serving vehicle pull-up spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width.~~

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.1.2 Clearance.

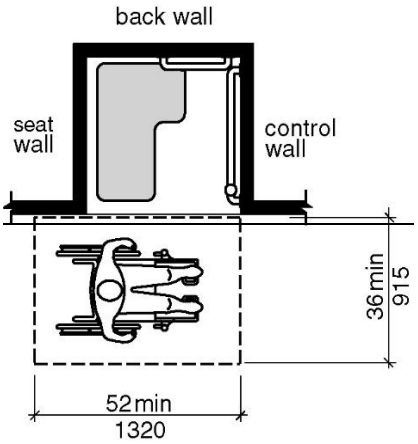


Figure 608.2.1.2(A) Transfer-type Shower Compartment Clearances - ~~New Buildings~~ – Option 1

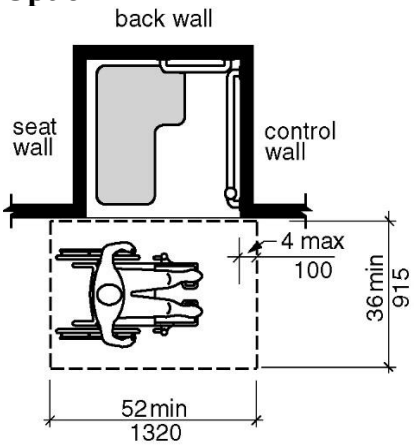
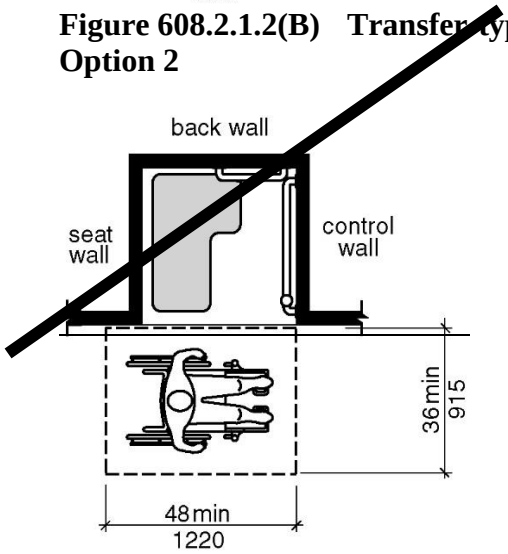


Figure 608.2.1.2(B) Transfer-type Shower Compartment Clearances - ~~New Buildings~~ - Option 2



~~Figure 608.2.1.2(C) Transfer-type Shower Compartment Clearances - Existing Buildings~~

~~608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In~~ In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the clear floor space shall

be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall.

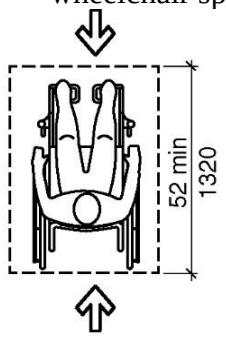
~~**608.2.1.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, a clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment.~~

SECTION 802
ASSEMBLY AREAS

802.4 Depth.

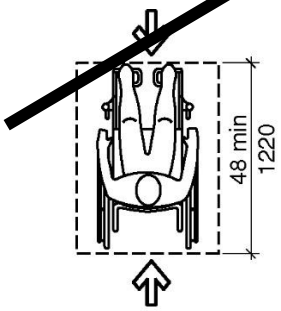
~~802.4.1 New buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In new buildings and facilities, where~~ Where a wheelchair space is entered from the front or rear, the wheelchair space shall be 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in depth. Where a wheelchair space is only entered from the side, the wheelchair space shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in depth.

~~802.4.2 Existing buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In existing buildings and facilities, where a wheelchair space is entered from the front or rear, the wheelchair space shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in depth. Where a wheelchair space is only entered from the side, the wheelchair space shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in depth.~~



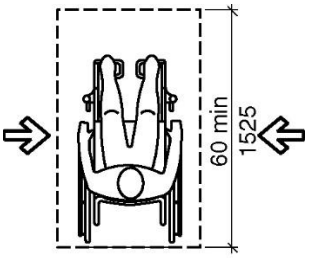
(a) Front or Rear Access
New Buildings

Figure 802.4(A) Depth of Wheelchair Space in Assembly Area - Front or Rear Access - ~~New Buildings~~



(b) Front or Rear Access
Existing Building

~~Figure 802.4(B) Depth of Wheelchair Space in Assembly Area - Front or Rear Access - Existing Buildings~~



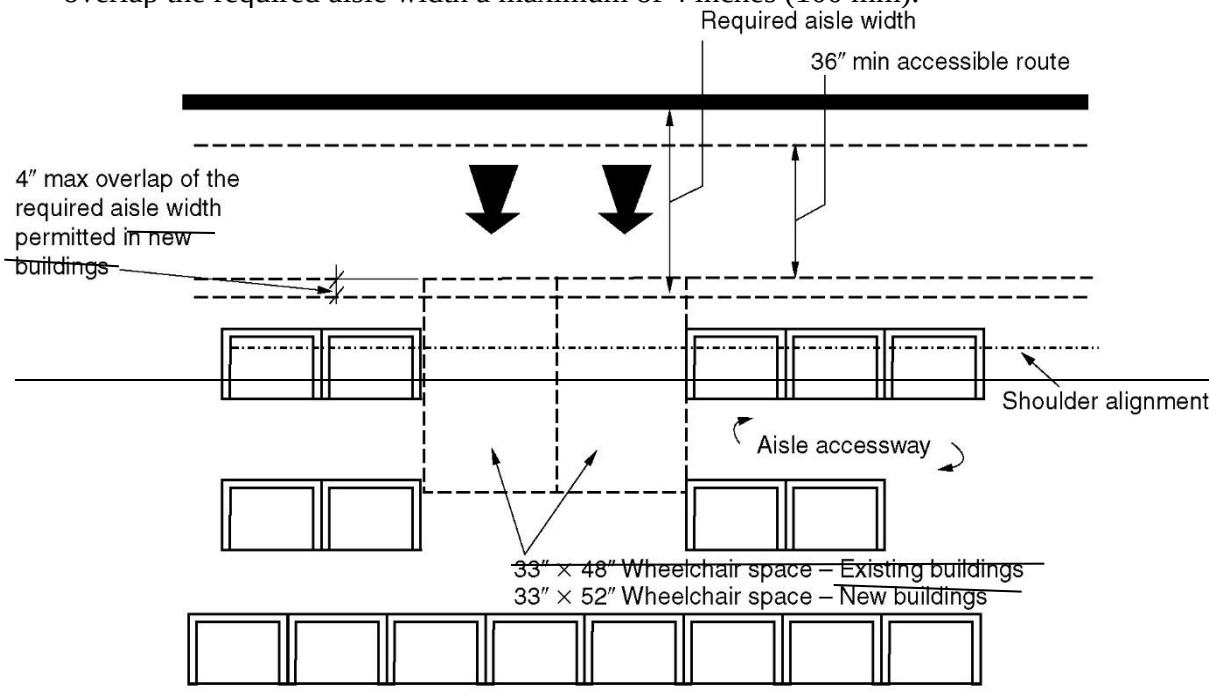
(c) Side Access
New and Existing Buildings

Figure 802.4(BC) Depth of Wheelchair Space in Assembly Area - Side Access - ~~New and Existing Buildings~~

802.5 Approach. Wheelchair spaces shall adjoin an accessible route. The accessible route shall not overlap a wheelchair space.

802.5.1 Overlap. ~~A~~ The width of a wheelchair space shall not overlap the required width of an aisle.

~~Exception:~~ ~~In new buildings, the~~ The depth of a wheelchair space shall ~~be permitted to~~ overlap the required aisle width a maximum of 4 inches (100 mm).



(a) REAR APPROACH

Figure 802.5.1(A) Wheelchair Space Location Overlap - Rear Approach - ~~New and Existing Buildings~~

802.7 Companion seat. A companion seat, complying with Section 802.7, shall be provided beside each wheelchair space.

802.7.1 Companion seat type. The companion seat shall be equivalent in size, quality, comfort and amenities to the seats in the immediate area to the wheelchair space location. Companion seats shall be permitted to be moveable.

802.7.2 Companion seat alignment. In row seating, the companion seat shall be located to provide shoulder alignment with the wheelchair space occupant. The shoulder of the wheelchair space occupant is considered to be 36 inches (915 mm) or more from the front and 12 inches (305 mm) or more from the rear of the wheelchair space. The floor surface for the companion seat shall be at the same elevation as the wheelchair space floor surface.

Exception: Companion seat alignment shall not be required in tiered seating that includes dining surfaces or work surfaces.

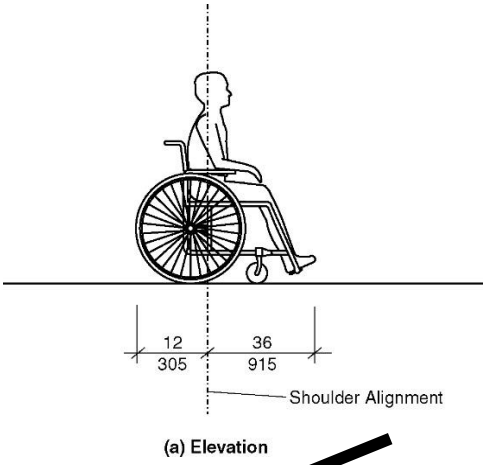
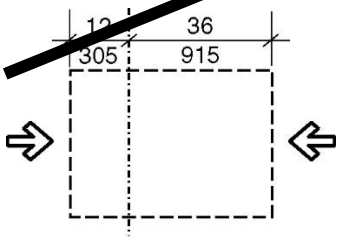


Figure 802.7.2(A) Companion Seat Alignment – Elevation



~~**Figure 802.7.2(B) Companion Seat Alignment - Front or Rear Approach - Existing Buildings**~~

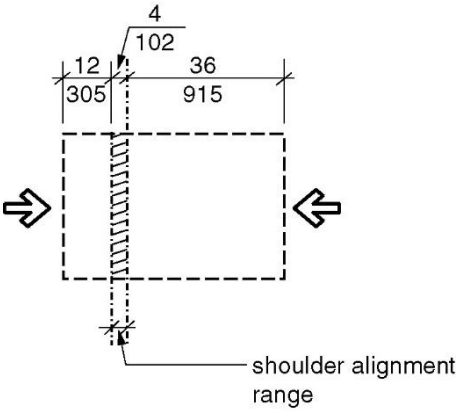


Figure 802.7.2(B~~C~~) Companion Seat Alignment - Front or Rear Approach - ~~New Buildings~~

Note: Renumber Figure 802.7.2(D)

SECTION 805
TRANSPORTATION FACTILITIE

805.2.2 Dimensions.

~~805.2.2.1 New buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In new buildings and facilities, bus~~ Bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall have a 100-inch (2540 mm) minimum clear length, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum clear width, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.

~~805.2.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In existing buildings and facilities, bus stop boarding and alighting areas shall have a 96-inch (2440 mm) minimum clear length, measured perpendicular to the curb or vehicle roadway edge, and a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum clear width, measured parallel to the vehicle roadway.~~

SECTION 1007
MINATURE GOLF FACILITIES

1007.3.2 Golf club reach range area.

~~1007.3.2.1 New buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In new buildings and facilities, areas~~ Areas within holes where golf balls rest shall be within 36 inches (915 mm) maximum of a clear floor space 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length having a running slope not steeper than 1:20. The clear floor space shall be served by an accessible route.

~~1007.3.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.~~ ~~In existing building and facilities, areas within holes where golf balls rest shall be within 36 inches (915 mm) maximum of a clear floor space 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length having a running slope not steeper than 1:20. The clear floor space shall be served by an accessible route.~~

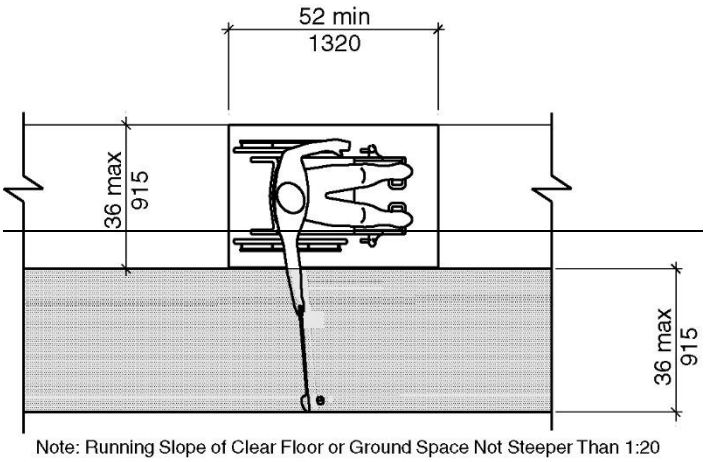
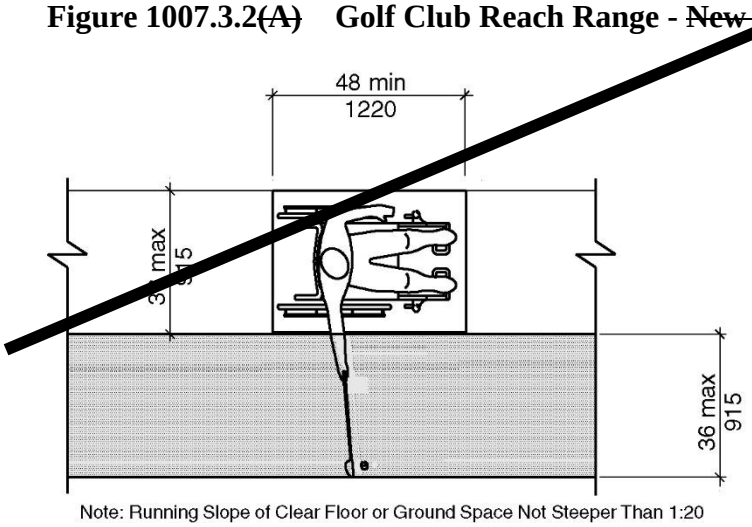


Figure 1007.3.2~~(A)~~ Golf Club Reach Range - ~~New Buildings~~



~~**Figure 1007.3.2(B) Golf Club Reach Range - Existing Buildings**~~

SECTION 1009
SWIMMING POOLS, WADING POOLS, HOT TUBS AND SPAS

1009.2.3 Clear deck space.

~~**1009.2.3.1 New buildings and facilities**. In new buildings and facilities, on~~ On the side of the seat opposite the water, a clear deck space shall be provided parallel with the seat. The space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and shall extend forward 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum from a line located 12 inches (305 mm) behind the rear edge of the seat. The clear deck space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.

~~**1009.2.3.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, on the side of the seat opposite the water, a clear deck space shall be provided parallel with the seat. The space shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and shall extend forward 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum from a line located 12 inches (305 mm) behind the rear edge of the seat. The clear deck space shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.~~

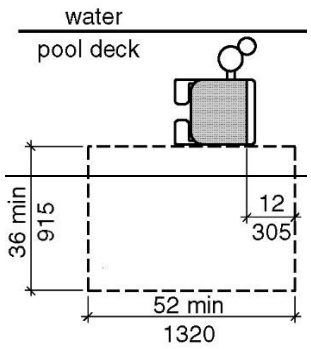
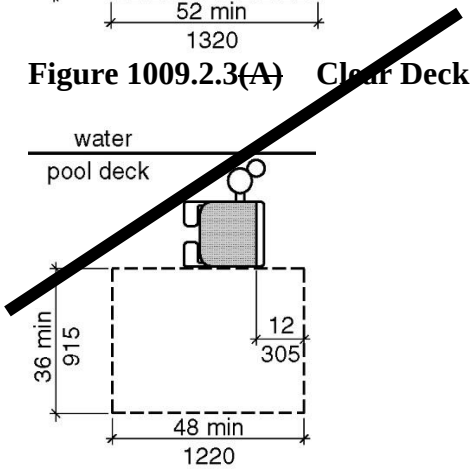


Figure 1009.2.3~~(A)~~ Clear Deck Space at Pool Lifts – ~~New Buildings~~



~~**Figure 1009.2.3(B) Clear Deck Space at Pool Lifts - Existing Buildings**~~

REASON: The purpose of this proposal is to remove criteria for differing space requirements in "existing" buildings versus new construction for the following reasons:

1. Section 301.5 *Compliance with accessibility* of the 2018 International Existing Building Code (IEBC) references the 2009 ICC A117.1 and Section 306.2 of the 2021 Edition refences the 2017. Both these editions permit application of the older space requirements in existing facilities. If the Committee wishes to allow the use of older standards for accessibility in existing buildings and facilities, the IEBC is the appropriate location for such a requirement, not the technical standard. The IEBC presents the opportunity to allow more leeway depending on the size of the work area in relation to the aggregate area of the building.

2. it is highly unlikely that the next edition of the ICC A117.1 will be published in time to be referenced by the 2024 IBC or IEBC. Consequently, interested parties will have 10 years to adjust to the new space requirements.

3. With the duplicate material for new and existing buildings, the ICC A117.1 has become unwieldy and less easily comprehensible.

4. Since its first publication, the IEBC has provided that where compliance is "technically infeasible", alterations must "provide access to the maximum extent technically feasible". There is no logical reason to allow *all* alterations to provide spaces that are smaller than research shows are necessary to accommodate a meaningful range of people who use

wheelchairs if they can comply with the accessibility requirements applicable to new construction or, as is permitted, if they can come close to those requirements without encountering technical infeasibility.

Except for the change to Exceptions 3 and 4 of Section 403.5.1, 409.4, 410.5, and Section 802.5.1, all of the changes proposed eliminate the criteria for existing buildings and facilities and editorially revise the criteria for new construction to be applicable to all construction.

Our proposed revisions to Exceptions 3 and 4 of Section 403.5.1 are intended to be editorial changes that are more consistent with the format for exceptions used in the Standard.

Proposed changes to Sections 409.4 Private Residence Elevators and 410.5 Platform Lifts allow the use of smaller car sizes and platforms only under certain conditions which we anticipate will be common in alterations that are not as extensive as most level 3 alteration as described in the International Existing Building Code. By limiting the application of the exception to these conditions, we believe we strike a balance between cost and benefit. Also, while many will, not all inspectors would interpret these conditions as constituting technical infeasibility.

The proposed change to Section 802.5.1 is made because it was necessary to distinguish between encroachments by the "width" and "length" of a wheelchair space inro the required aisle width.

Sections containing provisions for existing elements that are unaffected by this change: 107.5, 201, 308.3, 404.2.4, 404.2.9, 405.2, 407.2.1, 407.2.2, 407.3.2, 407.3.3, 407.3.5, 407.4.1, 407.4.6, 407.4.7, 408.4.1, 608.6, 805.5.1, 805.9, 904.3, 1003.2.1, 1003.3.1, 1006.2, and 1102.5.

Committee Action: Disapproved (Vote: 19-12-2)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: There has not been sufficient experience with the new dimensions on actual construction to determine impact. Deleting the option for existing building to use the 2009 ICC A117.1 and ADA numbers is not appropriate until a change in the IEBC on how to apply accessibility in existing buildings.

304.3 et al-MAZZ.doc

Report for 0*3-03– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 19-12-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: There has not been sufficient experience with the new dimensions on actual construction to determine impact. Deleting the option for existing building to use the 2009 ICC A117.1 and ADA numbers is not appropriate until a change in the IEBC on how to apply accessibility in existing buildings.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		

Report for 0*3-03– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

03-05 – 2021
304.3.1.1, 304.3.2.1.1

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, represent International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 304
TURNING SPACE

304.3 Size. Turning spaces shall comply with Section 304.3.1 or 304.3.2.

304.3.1 Circular space.

304.3.1.1 New buildings and facilities. In new buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a circular space with a 67-inch (1700 mm) minimum diameter.

304.3.1.1.1 Overlap. Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306. Where the turning space includes knee and toe clearances under an obstruction, the overlap shall comply with all of the following:

1. The depth of the overlap shall not be more than ~~10~~ 22 inches (~~255~~ 560 mm), and
2. The depth shall not exceed the depth of the knee and toe clearances provided, and
3. The overlap shall be permitted only within the turning circle area shown shaded in Figure 304.3.1.

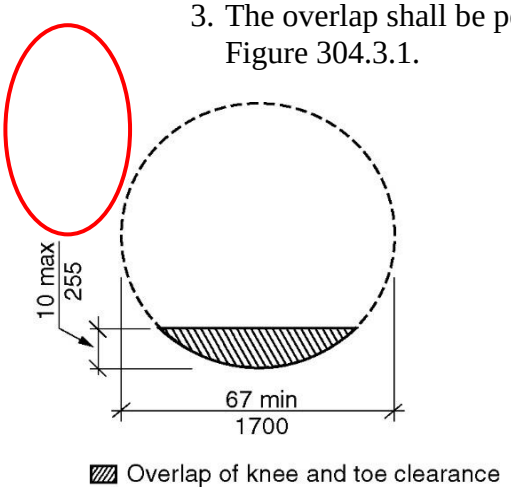


FIGURE 304.3.1.1
CIRCULAR TURNING SPACE –
NEW BUILDINGS SIZE AND OVERLAP

304.3.1.2 Existing buildings and facilities. In existing buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a circular space with a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum diameter.

304.3.1.2.1 Overlap. Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306.

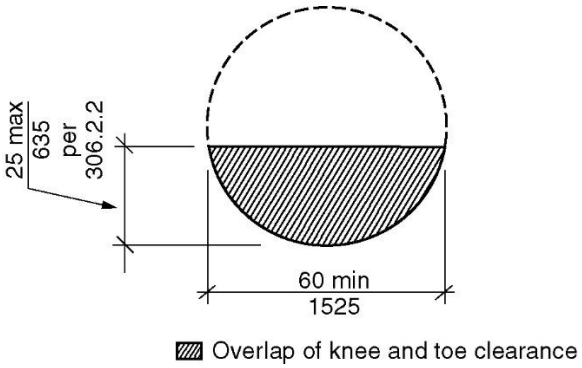


FIGURE 304.3.1.2
CIRCULAR TURNING SPACE –
EXISTING BUILDINGS - SIZE AND OVERLAP

304.3.2 T-Shaped space.

304.3.2.1 New buildings and facilities. In new buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a T–shaped space complying with one of the following:

1. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, that fits within an area 68 inches (1725 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms and one base that are all 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Each arm shall extend 16 inches (405 mm) minimum from each side of the base located opposite the other, and the base shall extend 24 inches (610 mm) minimum from the arms. At the intersection of each arm and the base, the interior corners shall be chamfered for 8 inches (205 mm) minimum along both the arm and along the base.
2. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, that fits within an area 64 inches (1625 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms 38 inches (965 mm) minimum in width and a base 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width. Each arm shall extend 11 inches (280 mm) minimum from each side of the base, located opposite the other, and the base shall extend 22 inches (560 mm) minimum from each arm.
3. A T-shaped space, clear of obstruction, 64 inches (1625 mm) wide and 60 inches (1525 mm) deep, with two arms and one base 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum in width. Each arm shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum from each side of the base and the base shall extend 20 inches (510 mm) minimum from each arm.

304.3.2.1.1 Overlap. Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 of either the base or one arm. For Option 1, the base or arm ~~is the portion beyond~~ <u>includes</u> the chamfer.

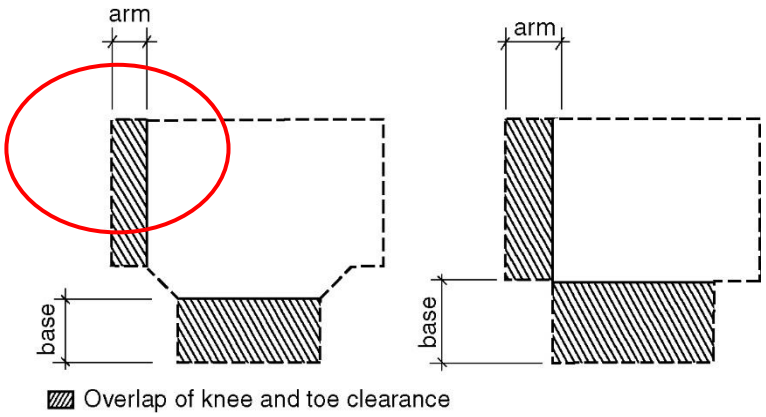


FIGURE 304.3.2.1.1
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE
NEW BUILDINGS - OVERLAP

304.3.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities. In existing buildings and facilities, the turning space shall be a T-shaped space within a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum square, with arms and base 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width. Each arm of the T shall be clear of obstructions 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in each direction, and the base shall be clear of obstructions 24 inches (610 mm) minimum.

304.3.2.2.1 Overlap. Turning spaces shall be permitted to include knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 only at the end of either the base or one arm.

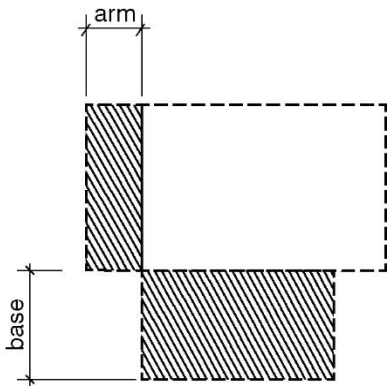
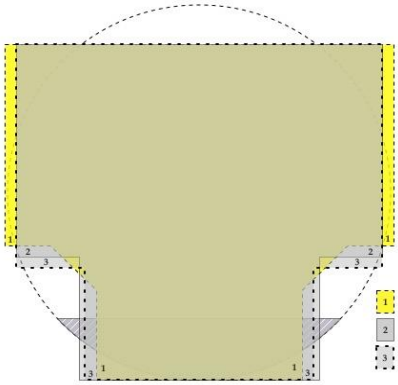


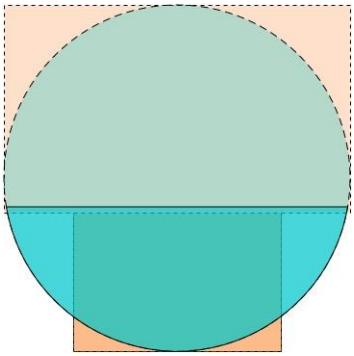
FIGURE 304.3.2.2.1
T-SHAPED TURNING SPACE –
EXISTING BUILDINGS OVERLAP

REASON: The purpose of this proposal is to coordinate the overlap allowances for turning spaces. The A117.1 decided not to change the knee and toe clearances between the 2009 and 2017 edition. The turning spaces have increased in size and substantially limited the overlap at the same time. Since the circle and T-turn are to turn 180 degrees, they should be consistent – while now there are substantial differences in all 4 options. With the larger turning space, these proposals will still be a reduction on the total percentage of the turning space permitted under the

sink, counter or drinking fountain. With the current text people just play games with the options to get the best for that design – thus making it much harder to verify compliance. Below are proportional comparisons of the existing and new construction requirements.

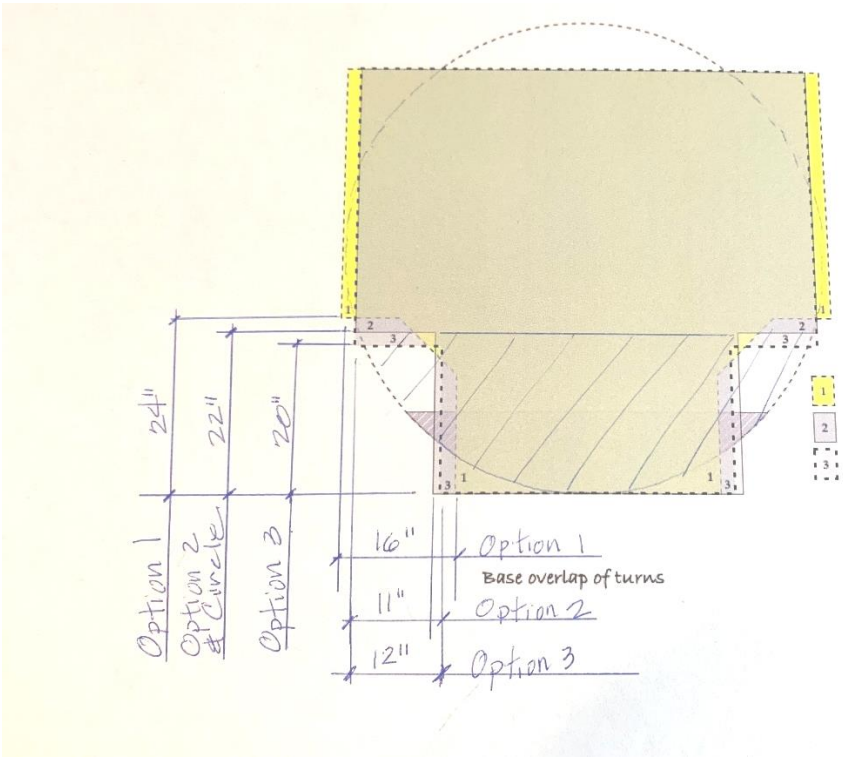
This is less than what is permitted for existing building, but would offer some level of consistency. The overlap would <u>not</u> increase for the Option 2 and 3 of the T-turns. The overlap for the T-turn with the chamfer would increase from 16" to 24", but this should be balanced by the 16" of extra width required to accommodate the chamfers. The circle would increase to match Option 2 of the T-turns, which is the middle ground of the 3 T-turn options. With the increased size for the circle, the overlap would be 33% instead of what is the 25" or 42% that is permitted for existing buildings.





Overlap allowance for new

Overlap allowed for existing



Proposed overlap allowance

Committee Action: Disapproved (Vote: 21-6-2)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposed adjustment in wrong direction and should be made to decrease the overlap in the T-turn to match that required in the turning circle.

303.4-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *03-05– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-6-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposed adjustment in wrong direction and should be made to decrease the overlap in the T-turn to match that required in the turning circle.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

03-06 – 2021
305.5, 611.2, 804.5.3, 1104.11.3.1.1, 1104.12.2.1, 1104.12.2.3.3

Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University at Buffalo, representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 305
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE

305.5 Position. Unless otherwise specified, clear floor spaces shall be provided as follows:

1. Positioned for either a forward or parallel approach to an element.
2. Centered on the appliance, equipment or fixture.

   Exception: An 8 inch (203 mm) maximum offset from the centerline is permitted for a parallel approach.

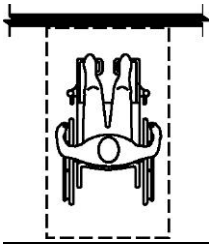


FIGURE 305.5(A)
POSITION OF CLEAR FLOOR SPACE – FORWARD

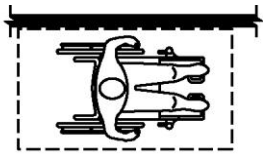
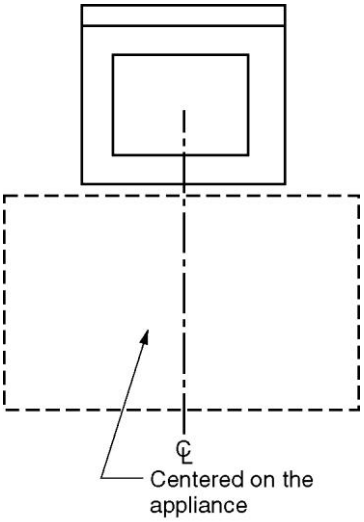


FIGURE 305.5(B)
POSITION OF CLEAR FLOOR SPACE – PARALLEL

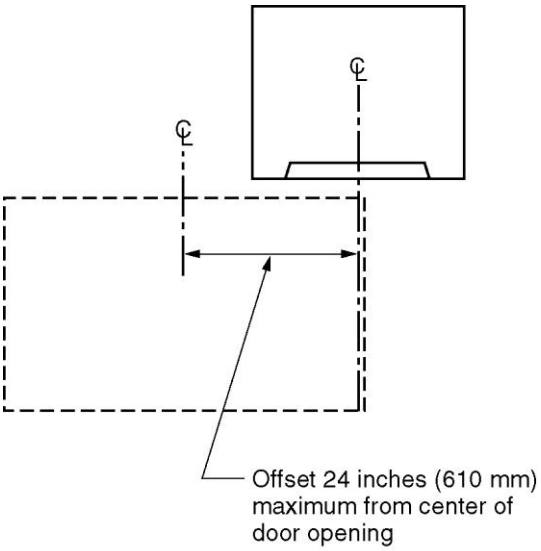
SECTION 611
WASHING MACHINES AND CLOTHES DRYERS

611.2 Clear floor space. A clear floor space positioned for parallel approach shall be provided. ~~For top loading machines, the clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance.~~ For front loading machines, the centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the door opening.



(a) Top Loading

FIGURE 611.2(A)
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - TOP LOADING



(b) Front Loading

FIGURE 611.2(B)
CLEAR FLOOR SPACE - FRONT LOADING

SECTION 804
KITCHENS

804.5.4.3 Parallel approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be ~~centered on the appliance~~ positioned in accordance with Section 305.5.

SECTION 1104
TYPE B UNITS

1104.11.3.1.1 Lavatory. A clear floor space positioned for a parallel approach shall be provided at a lavatory. The clear floor space shall be ~~centered on the lavatory~~ positioned in accordance with Section 305.5.

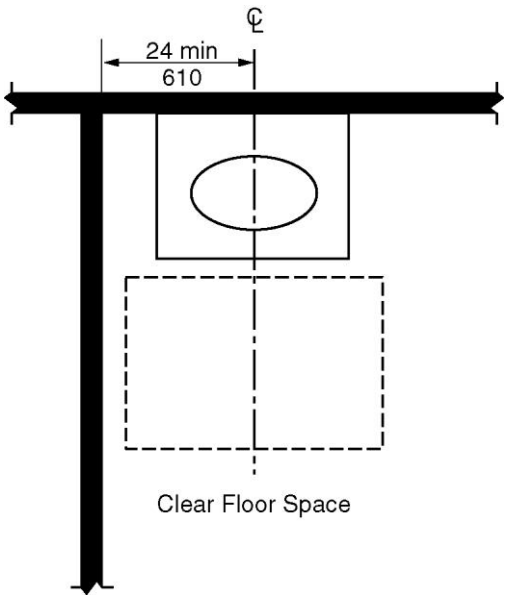


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.1
LAVATORY IN TYPE B UNITS - OPTION A BATHROOMS

1104.12.2.1 Sink. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the sink, shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be ~~centered on the sink bowl~~. positioned in accordance with Section 305.5.

1104.12.2.3.3 Parallel approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be ~~centered on the appliance~~ positioned in accordance with Section 305.5.

REASON: This section does not have the centering requirement found in section 11. Further, the wording elsewhere in the standard for parallel approaches is inconsistent regarding centering which is confusing and ambiguous. For example, Section 606.2, 704.2.1.1 and do not mention centering. It would be better to locate the centering requirement here as part of the building blocks and deleted elsewhere. Further, an exception is needed for the parallel approach to devices and equipment where centering is not the ideal solution. Research at the IDEA Center

(and logic) demonstrates that centering clear floor area for a parallel approach actually reduces accessibility with a parallel approach because the shoulder of a wheeled mobility device user is not centered in the clear floor space. Further, appliances and fixtures do not always have their operable parts at the center of the device. Flexibility is needed to provide the best solution for each application. The attached summary of research findings provides support for the 8 in. offset. For the front approach, the difference in reachability between centering the clear floor area and offsetting it is so minimal that the offset exception is not needed.

03-06 – 2021

Proposed Modification

Proponent: Marsh Mazz, representing Accessibility Services, United Spinal Associates

Replace the proposal with the following:

SECTION 804
KITCHENS

804.5.4.3 Parallel approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS

1103.12.4 Sink. Sinks shall comply with Section 1103.12.4.

1103.12.4.1 Clear floor space. A clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the sink, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided.

Exceptions:

1. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multi-bowl sink.
2. Cabinetry shall be permitted to be added under the sink, provided the following criteria are met:
   2.1 The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the sink,
   2.2 The floor finish extends under the cabinetry, and
   2.3 The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.
3. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach ~~and centered on~~ that is offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the sink shall be permitted at a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided.
4. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach ~~and centered on~~ that is offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the sink shall be permitted at wet bars.

1103.12.5.4 Cooktop. Cooktops shall comply with Section 1103.12.5.4.

1103.12.5.4.1 Approach. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the cooktop, shall be provided.

1103.12.5.4.3 Parallel approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

SECTION 1104
TYPE B UNITS

1104.11.3.1.1 Lavatory. A clear floor space positioned for a parallel approach shall be provided at a lavatory. The clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the lavatory.

Exception: A lavatory complying with Sections 606.3, 606.4 and 1104.1.1 shall be permitted. Cabinetry shall be permitted under the lavatory provided the following criteria are met:

1. The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory, and
2. The floor finish extends under the cabinetry, and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.

1104.12.2.1 Sink. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the sink, shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the sink bowl.

Exception: A sink with a forward approach complying with Section 1103.12.4.1.

1104.12.2.3 Cooktop. Cooktops shall comply with Section 1104.12.2.3.

1104.12.2.3.1 Approach. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the cooktop, shall be provided.

1104.12.2.3.3 Parallel approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

Reason: The modification drops the original proposal's general requirement for centering clear floor spaces providing forward approaches. In addition, it limits application of the offset for clear floor spaces providing a parallel approach to those Sections that currently contain a centering requirement for such clear floor spaces, rather than locating it in Chapter 3 Building Blocks where it would require centering with an offset for all clear floor spaces, no matter what types of elements they serve.

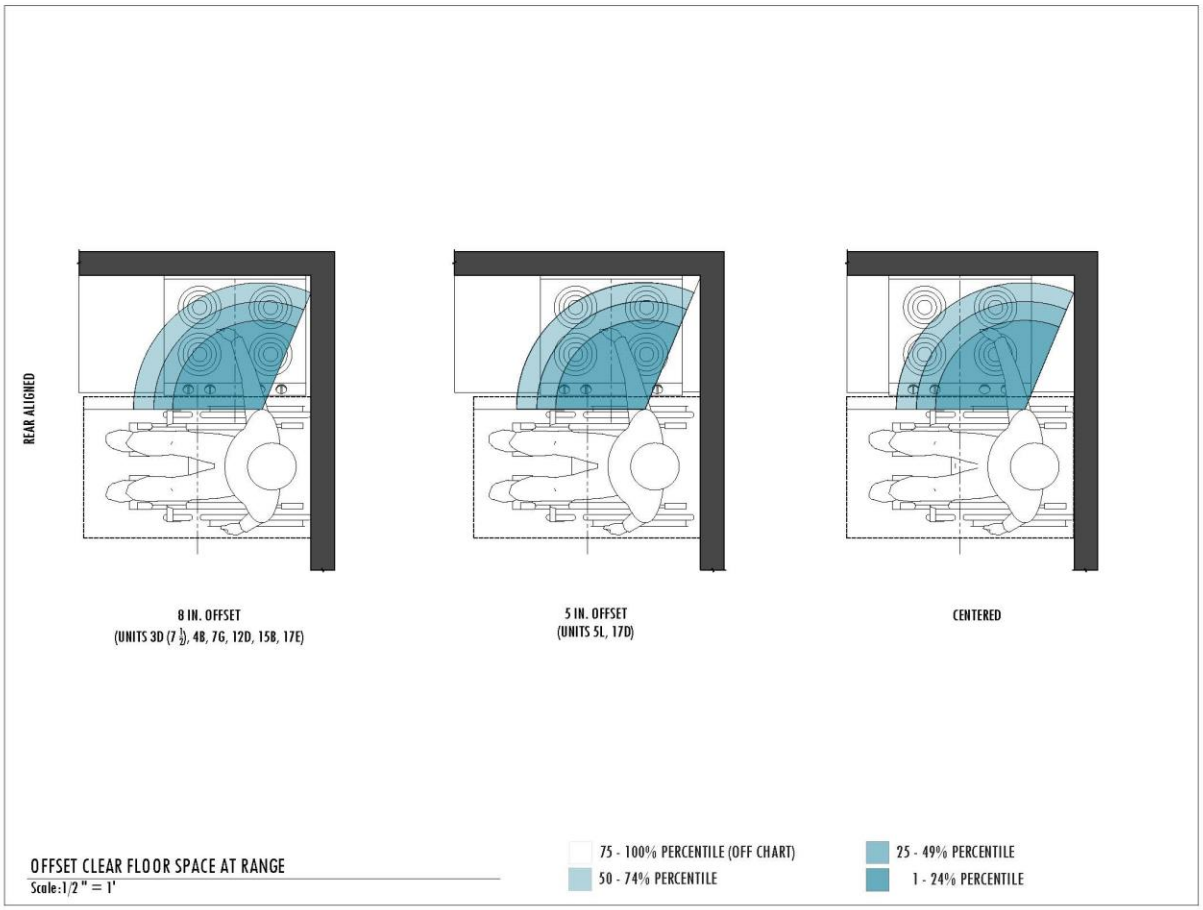
We do believe that the matter of locating clear floor spaces in relation to the elements and operable parts they serve deserves more study. However, we also believe that this proposal will provide needed flexibility for designers and builders without a negative impact on accessibility. Furthermore, the 8-inch offset is supported by Dr. Steinfeld's research.

Note that we have not proposed a change to Section 611.2 which already allows clear floor space for a parallel approach to washing machines and clothes dryers to be offset.

Committee Action: Approved as Modified (Vote:17-5-3)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Refer to modification above. The modification is a total replacement.

Committee Reason: The modification spells out specific off-set allowances for sinks, cooktops and lavatories instead of where it would have applied to all operable parts. The modification limits the proposal to parallel approaches and not forward approaches. The modification eliminates absolute centering as required for those elements in the current standard.
The modification is based on Mr. Steinfeld's study showing an 8 inch off-set provides better accessibility to the appliance.



305.5-STEINFELD.doc

Report for *03-06– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** 17-5-3	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Replace the proposal with the following:

SECTION 804
KITCHENS

804.5.4.3 Parallel approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS

1103.12.4 Sink. Sinks shall comply with Section 1103.12.4.

1103.12.4.1 Clear floor space. A clear floor space, positioned for a forward approach to the sink, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided.

Exceptions:

1. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multi-bowl sink.
2. Cabinetry shall be permitted to be added under the sink, provided the following criteria are met:
   - 2.1 The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the sink,
   - 2.2 The floor finish extends under the cabinetry, and
   - 2.3 The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.
3. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach ~~and centered on~~ that is offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the sink shall be permitted at a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided.
4. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach ~~and centered on~~ that is offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the sink shall be permitted at wet bars.

1103.12.5.4 Cooktop. Cooktops shall comply with Section 1103.12.5.4.

1103.12.5.4.1 Approach. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the cooktop, shall be provided.

1103.12.5.4.3 Parallel approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

SECTION 1104
TYPE B UNITS

1104.11.3.1.1 Lavatory. A clear floor space positioned for a parallel approach shall be provided at a lavatory. The clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the lavatory.

Exception: A lavatory complying with Sections 606.3, 606.4 and 1104.1.1 shall be permitted. Cabinetry shall be permitted under the lavatory provided the following criteria are met:

1. The cabinetry can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory, and
2. The floor finish extends under the cabinetry, and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the cabinetry are finished.

1104.12.2.1 Sink. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel approach to the sink, shall be provided. The clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the sink bowl.

Exception: A sink with a forward approach complying with Section 1103.12.4.1.

1104.12.2.3 Cooktop. Cooktops shall comply with Section 1104.12.2.3.

1104.12.2.3.1 Approach. A clear floor space, positioned for a parallel or forward approach to the cooktop, shall be provided.

1104.12.2.3.3 Parallel approach. Where the clear floor space is positioned for a parallel approach, the clear floor space shall be ~~centered on~~ offset 8 inches (200 mm) maximum from the centerline of the appliance.

Committee Reason: The modification spells out specific off-set allowances for sinks, cooktops and lavatories instead of where it would have applied to all operable parts. The modification limits the proposal to parallel approaches and not forward approaches. The modification eliminates absolute centering as required for those elements in the current standard.
The modification is based on Mr. Steinfeld's study showing an 8 inch off-set provides better accessibility to the appliance.

PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT:

Proponent:

Desired Action:

Modification:

Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:

Proponent:

Desired Action:

Modification:

Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for *03-06– 2021*
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any): Committee Reason:

03-07 – 2021
307.2

Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University at Buffalo, representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 307
PROTRUDING OBJECTS

307.2 Protrusion limits. Objects with leading edges more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030mm) above the floor shall protrude 4 inches (100 mm) maximum horizontally into a circulation path.

Exception: Leading edges of overhanging fixtures, countertops and equipment configured for front approach are not consisted a protruding object.

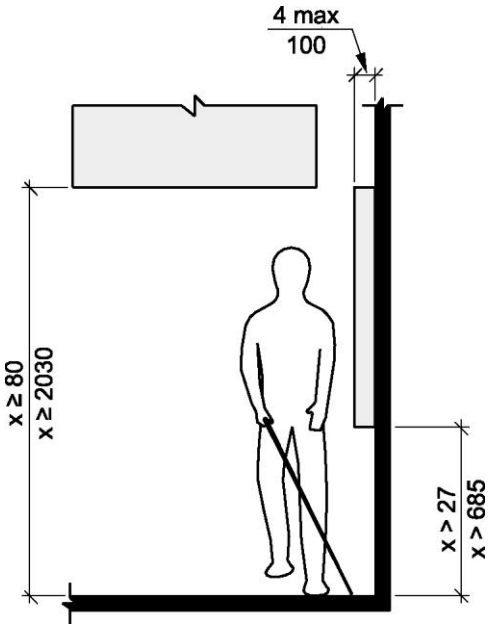


FIGURE 307.2
LIMITS OF PROTRUDING OBJECTS

REASON: There is a conflict between this requirement and other requirements for knee clearances at lavatories, water fountains, baby changing tables, and other fixtures. These are not really protruding objects that can cause an accident.

Notes 4-7-2022: Tabled till 4/21/22 meeting. Moved off table on 4/21/22 to vote on.

Committee Action: 25-0-5 D

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Proponent agreed additional work is needed and will bring this back during the comment period.

307.2-STEINFELD.doc

Report for *03-07– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Proponent agreed additional work is needed and will bring this back during the comment period.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

03-08 – 2021
307.3

Proponent: Peter A. Stratton, Steven Winter Associates, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 307
PROTRUDING OBJECTS

307.3 Post-mounted objects. Objects on posts or pylons shall be permitted to overhang 4 inches (100 mm) maximum where more than 27 inches (685 mm) and not more than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor. Objects on multiple posts or pylons where the clear distance between posts or pylons is greater than 12 inches (305 mm) shall have the lowest edge of such object either 27 inches (685 mm) maximum or 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum above the floor.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. Sloping portions of handrails between the top and bottom riser of stairs and above the ramp run shall not be required to comply with this section.
2. Objects on standpipes within exit stairway enclosures shall not be required to comply with this section.

REASON: Standpipe systems in enclosed fire stairs are required to be installed in buildings to allow the fire department to connect fire hoses in the event of a fire. In 100% of all cases, horizontal valves to which a fire hose is connected protrude more than 4 inches from the vertical standpipe at up to 16 inches. In other words, horizontal valves that are a part of the standpipe system can never comply with the 4-inch protrusion limit imposed by Section 307.3. For this reason, horizontal valves protruding from vertical standpipes are important for fire safety and should remain as installed and be exempt from the 4 inch protrusion limit imposed by 307.3.

Committee Action: Disapproved (Vote: 21-4-2)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: It is important to avoid protruding objects in egress pathways for occupants evacuating. The proposed exception is not appropriate for blind occupants that shore along the wall will evacuating in the stairwell.

307.3-STRATTON.doc

Report for *03-08 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** 21-4-2	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING:		

Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: It is important to avoid protruding objects in egress pathways for occupants evacuating. The proposed exception is not appropriate for blind occupants that shore along the wall will evacuating in the stairwell.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

03-09 – 2021
307.4

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 307
PROTRUDING OBJECTS

307.4 Vertical clearance. Vertical clearance shall be 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum. Rails or other barriers shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2030 mm). The leading edge of such rails or barrier shall be located between 10 inches (255 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) ~~maximum~~ above the floor. Where the clear distance between vertical supports for a horizontal element is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), an intermediate horizontal element shall be provided at a height between 10 inches (255 mm) and 18 inches (455 mm) above the floor.

Exception: Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.

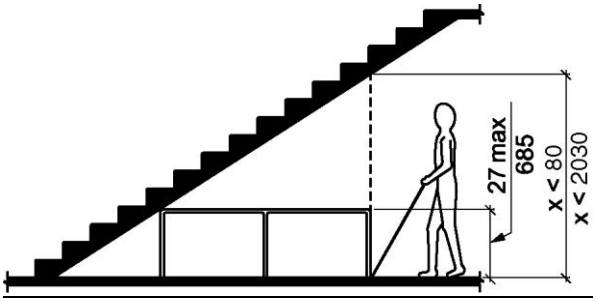


FIGURE 307.4
REDUCED VERTICAL CLEARANCE

REASON: This includes two changes. The first is a minimum height for a horizontal element. A height of 10 inches was proposed based on several factors. It should be high enough that it cannot be mistaken for a step on a stair. It should be high enough that it can be relatively seen by seeing people and not confused with the floor surface. And, it should be of a height that acts as a barrier to dogs. Which is also the reason for the second proposal.

The second part of this is a recommendation for an intermediate horizontal rail when a higher rail is used. As currently written, a single horizontal rail at 27 inches would be acceptable. However, service dogs can step over low elements or walk under a single rail at 27 inches in height. A dimension of 18 inches is proposed as the maximum separation between horizontal elements. That way, if a cane detectable horizontal flat bar is placed at 20 inches in height, an intermediate would be required. Any height between the two would be acceptable. If the top element is at a handrail height of 36 inches only a single intermediate handrail would be required. This is similar to the guard requirements in the building code for areas that are not

open to the public (e.g., loading docks, industrial/utility areas) so the design concept would not be new (IBC 1015.4, exception 4 – which uses a 21-inch sphere limitation).

Committee Action: Approved as Modified (Vote: 20-2-4)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Further modify as follows:

307.4 Vertical clearance. Vertical clearance shall be 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum. Rails or other barriers shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2030 mm). The leading edge of such rails or barrier shall be located between 10 inches (255 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) above the floor. ~~Where the clear distance between vertical supports for a horizontal element is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), an intermediate horizontal element shall be provided at a height between 10 inches (255 mm) and 18 inches (455 mm) above the floor.~~

Exception: Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.

Committee Reason:
The modification to delete the last sentence of Section 307.4 is because there are many good options to make a barrier detectable at lower levels (e.g., 2nd bar are curb height, permanent seating) that would not comply with the proposed language. The proposal to add a lower end for the barriers would stop the allowances for barriers such as platforms that are step height or curbs on the floor that are tripping hazard or could be misinterpreted by person with visual impairments looking for the stairway. It was suggested that a possible modification would be "~~between~~ 10 inches minimum and 27 inches maximum" to pick up both ends of the range.

307.4-BOECKER.doc

Report for *03-09– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** 20-2-4	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **307.4 Vertical clearance**. Vertical clearance shall be 80 inches (2030 mm) minimum. Rails or other barriers shall be provided where the vertical clearance is less than 80 inches (2030 mm). The leading edge of such rails or barrier shall be located between 10 inches (255 mm) and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor. ~~Where the clear distance between vertical supports for a horizontal element is greater than 12 inches (305 mm), an intermediate horizontal element shall be provided at a height between 10 inches (255 mm) and 18 inches (455 mm) above the floor.~~ **Exception**: Door closers and door stops shall be permitted to be 78 inches (1980 mm) minimum above the floor.		
Committee Reason: The modification to delete the last sentence of Section 307.4 is because there are many good options to make a barrier detectable at lower levels (e.g., 2nd bar are curb height, permanent seating) that would not comply with the proposed language. The proposal to add a lower end for the barriers would stop the allowances for barriers such as platforms that are step height or curbs on the floor that are tripping hazard or could be misinterpreted by person with visual impairments looking for the stairway. It was suggested that a possible modification would be "~~between~~ 10 inches minimum and 27 inches maximum" to pick up both ends of the range.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		

Report for *03-09– 2021*		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

03-17 – 2021
309.4

Proponent: Peter A. Stratton, Steven Winter Associates, Inc.

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 309
OPERABLE PARTS

309.4 Operation. Operable parts shall be operable with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching, or twisting of the wrist. The force required to activate operable parts shall be 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. Gas pump nozzles shall not be required to provide operable parts that have an activating force of 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.
2. Access hatches for waste and linen chutes where such hatches are required to be fire-resistance rated shall not be required to provide an opening force of 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.

Reason: Access hatches for waste and linen chutes are currently not specifically addressed by the Standard. Some consider access hatches to be an operable part and therefore subject to 5 lb max opening force; others consider these access hatches to be exempt from the 5 lb max opening force because they are fire rated. Access hatches for waste and linen chutes are typically part of a fire assembly. As such, they must close to ensure fire safety; some do not close entirely when limited to 5 lbs of max. opening force and therefore fire safety can be compromised. It seems appropriate to include an exception for opening force under Section 309.1, Operable Parts.

Steven Winter Associates, Inc. recently had a tech notes on this subject will may be helpful for solution options. https://www.swinter.com/party-walls/accessibility-tech-notes-trash-chute-closet-design/?_cldee=a3BhYXJsYmVyZ0BpY2NzYWZlLm9yZw%3d%3d&recipientid=contact-f58c4de3b405e7119b6f005056b925e1-f3cefe29c91040d6a2d2e92cfabb2225&esid=ed2dd9a9-c985-ec11-8d21-000d3a594bbb

---

Committee Action: 18-6-7 D

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: A waste and linen chute door is not intended for user passage, therefore the closing force exception for fire doors is not applicable. More input is needed from manufacturers on other options for chute doors.

309.1-STRATTON.doc

Report for *03-17 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 18-6-7***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: A waste and linen chute door is not intended for user passage, therefore the closing force exception for fire doors is not applicable. More input is needed from manufacturers on other options for chute doors.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report
Chapter 4

04-01 – 2021
402.2

Proponent: Joseph R. Hetzel, P.E., Joseph R Hetzel Consulting LLC representing American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers (AAADM)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 402
ACCESSIBLE ROUTES

402.2 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components: walking surfaces with a running slope not steeper than 1:20, manual or powered doors~~,~~ and doorways, manual or powered gates, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, blended transitions, elevators, and platform lifts. All components of an accessible route shall comply with the applicable portions of this standard.

REASON: The addition of "gates" to this paragraph, as agreed upon in the July 2013 Committee action for editorial consistency with the revised title to Section 404 (Doors, Doorways and Gates), is not editorially complete with respect to other approved revisions to the content of Section 404. Specifically, the revised subtitle content in Section 404 should be incorporated. Since the Section 404.2 title has been revised to read, "Manual doors, doorways and manual gates" and the Section 404.3 title has been revised to read, "Automatic and power-assisted doors and gates", "manual or powered" descriptions should be included in Section 402.2 for doors and gates.

When the Section 402.2 provisions begin by saying "Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components", elements unique to accessible routes should be included. Just saying "...,doors and doorways, gates,..." does not make this any different than non-accessible routes. By noting the "powered" door and gate options among the list of components, the standard user is cued on the automated products that enhance accessibility.

Qualifying the doors and gates in Section 402.2 via the new titles of Sections 404.2 and 404.3 is also simply following the precedent of already qualifying walking surfaces and curb ramps. Walking surfaces are qualified by Section 403.3 content, and curb ramps are qualified by Section 406.4 content.

Committee Action: 24-3-3 D
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The additional verbiage on doors is not necessary and may lead to confusion elsewhere in the standard.

402.2-HETZEL.doc

Report for 0*4-01– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-3-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The additional verbiage on doors is not necessary and may lead to confusion elsewhere in the standard.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-02 – 2021
403.5(New), 405.9.2.2

Proponent: M. Bradley Gaskins, AIA CASp, The McIntosh Group, LLC

Revise as follows:

SECTION 403
WALKING SURFACES

403.5 Edge protection. Edge protection complying with 405.9.2.1 or 405.9.2.2 shall be provided at the edge of walks, sidewalks, or other pedestrian ways.

Exception: Edge protection shall not be required on the edges of walks, sidewalks, or other pedestrian ways having a vertical drop-off of ½ inch (15 mm) maximum within 10 inches (255 mm) horizontally of the edge of the walk, sidewalk, or other pedestrian way.

SECTION 405
RAMPS

405.9.1 Extended floor surface. The floor surface of ramp runs and ramp landings shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the inside face of a railing complying with Section 505.

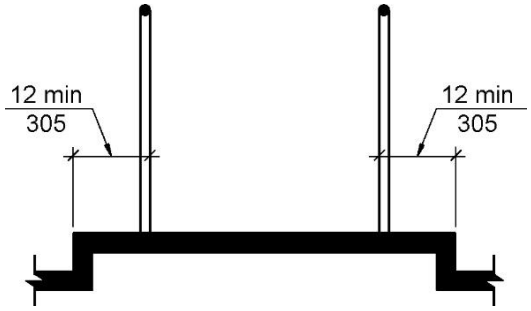


Figure 405.9.1 Extended Floor Surface

405.9.2 Curb or barrier. A curb complying with Section 405.9.2.1 or a barrier complying with Section 405.9.2.2 shall be provided.

405.9.2.1 Curb. A curb shall be a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) in height.

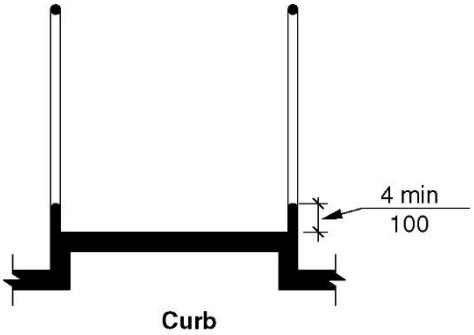


Figure 405.9.2.1 Curb

405.9.2.2 Barrier. Barriers shall be constructed so that the barrier prevents the passage of a 4-inch (100 mm) diameter sphere where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (100 mm) of the floor. The outside edge of the floor surface shall extend beyond the inside edge of the barrier at a projected slope from the bottom of the barrier not less than 1:2 from vertical.

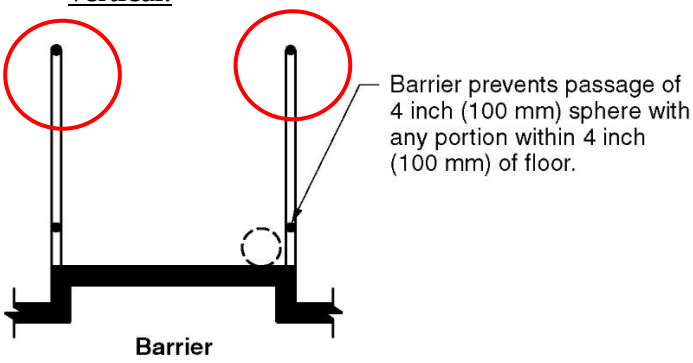


Figure 405.9.2.2 Barrier

Staff note: *Direction is required for changes to Figure 405.9.2.2.*

REASON: The current language does not require edge protection along walks, sidewalks, or other pedestrian ways that are not considered ramps. There are many instances where dangerous gaps between the edge of the walks, sidewalks, or other pedestrian ways and the inside face of guards have been created but remain in compliance with the standards as written. This gap could cause a mobility device wheel or crutch to fall through the gap. This same dangerous situation could also occur along ramps.

04-02 – 2021

Proposed Modification

Proponent: M. Bradley Gaskins, AIA CASp, The McIntosh Group, LLC

Replace the proposal with the following:

SECTION 403
WALKING SURFACES

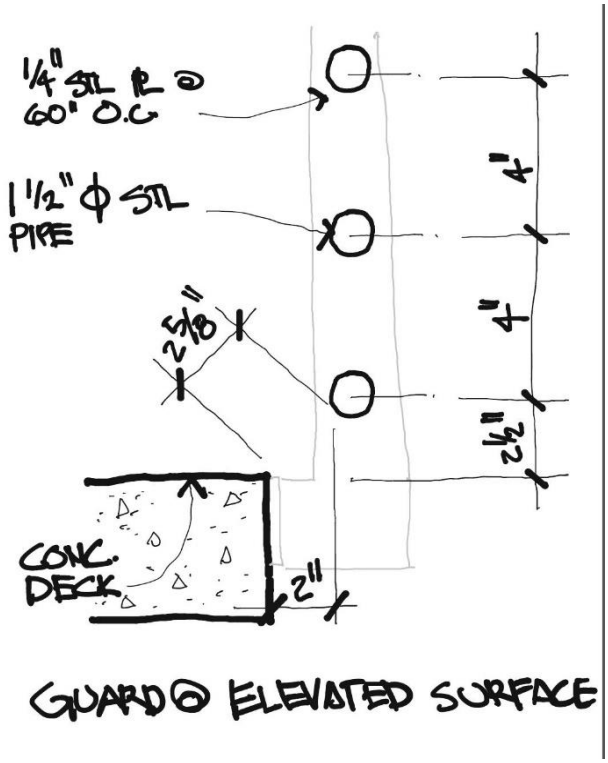
403.7 Edge protection. Edge protection complying with 405.9.2.1 or 405.9.2.2 shall be provided along open-sided walking surfaces located more than 4 inches (100 mm) measured vertically to the floor or grade below at any point within 2 inches (50 mm) horizontally to the edge of the open side.

Exception: Edge protection is not required where the walking surface is adjacent to the top of a stair riser, a street, drive aisle, parking space, access aisle, or passenger loading zone that is 7 3/4" (200 mm) or less measured vertically to the floor or grade below at any point within 2 inches (50 mm) horizontally to the edge of the open side.

SECTION 405
RAMPS

405.9.2.2 Barrier. Barriers shall be constructed so that the barrier prevents the passage of a 4-inch (100 mm) diameter sphere where any portion of the sphere is within 4 inches (100 mm) of the floor. The outside edge of the walking surface shall extend beyond the inside edge of the edge protection at a projected slope from the bottom of the barrier not less than 1:2 from vertical.

Reason: To clarify some issues that may arise with where the edge protection would be required that would be problematic.



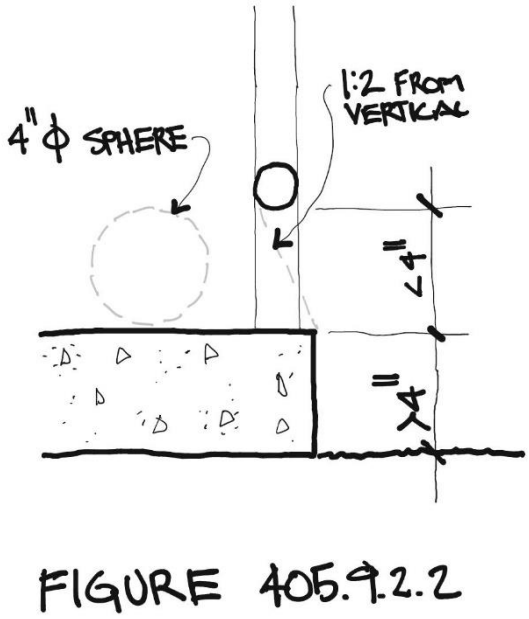


FIGURE 405.9.2.2

Committee Action: Disapproval 28-0-3
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Motion to AM failed 4-24-3

Committee Reason: Adding edge protection at the locations indicated raised concerns about the potential for tripping hazard for non-wheelchair users. Issues with guards should be addressed in the building code since they are not required in ICC A117.1. code. The proposed language is not clear for if this requires a curb or railing; and the extent of where this would be required is not clear.

403.5-GASKINS.doc

Report for 0*4-02– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-0-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Adding edge protection at the locations indicated raised concerns about the potential for tripping hazard for non-wheelchair users. Issues with guards should be addressed in the building code since they are not required in ICC A117.1. code. The proposed language is not clear for if this requires a curb or railing; and the extent of where this would be required is not clear.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		

Report for 0*4-02– 2021*		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-03 – 2021
403.5, 404.2.3

Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University at Buffalo, representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 403
WALKING SURFACES

403.5 Clear width. The clear width of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.5.1. 403.5.2, 403.5.3 or 403.5.4 as applicable. Clear widths shall be measured to walls, exclusive of baseboards and trim.

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.2.3 Maneuvering clearances. Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors and gates shall comply with Section 404.2.3. Maneuvering clearances shall include the full clear opening width of the doorway and the required latch-side or hinge-side clearance. Clearances shall be measured to adjoining walls, exclusive of baseboards and trim.

REASON: This is a continuing problem in compliance audits. Baseboards and trim do not interfere with accessibility since wheelchair wheels, walkers and canes are never positioned within 1 in. of wall surfaces. Dimensions on architectural drawings are drawn to the walls, not to the trim. Thus, when baseboards and door trim is added, compliance becomes a matter of interpretation.

Committee Action: 23-4-2 D
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved based on action taken on 04-06. Content with respect to base boards and trim can be further addressed in 04-06.

403.5-STEINFELD.doc

Report for 0*4-03– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-4-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved based on action taken on 04-06. Content with respect to base boards and trim can be further addressed in 04-06.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		

Report for 0*4-03– 2021*		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-04 – 2021
403.5, 403.5.3, 403.5.3.1, 403.5.3.2

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 403
WALKING SURFACES

403.5 Clear width. The clear width of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.5.1. 403.5.2~~,~~ or 403.5.3 ~~or 403.5.4~~ as applicable.

403.5.1 General. The clear width of an interior accessible route shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. The clear width of an exterior accessible route shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. In new buildings and facilities, the clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced-width segments are separated by segments that are 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.
2. In existing buildings and facilities, the clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.
3. The clear width of an exterior accessible route located within seating areas shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.
4. The clear width of an exterior ramp shall comply with Section 405.5.

403.5.2 Clear width at 180-degree turn.

403.5.2.1 New buildings and facilities. In new building and facilities, where an accessible route makes a 180-degree turn around an object that is equal to or greater than 52 inches (1320 mm) in width, the clear widths in the turn shall comply with Section 403.5.3.1. Where an accessible route makes a 180-degree turn around an object that is less than 52 inches (1320 mm) in width, the clear widths approaching the turn, during the turn and leaving the turn, shall be one of the following sets of dimensions:

1. Approaching width is 36 inches (915 mm) minimum, during width is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum, and leaving width is 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.
2. Approaching width is 42 (1065 mm) inches minimum, during width is 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum, and leaving width is 42 (1065 mm) inches minimum.
3. Approaching width is 43 inches (1090 mm) minimum, during width is 43 inches (1090 mm) minimum, and leaving width is 43 inches (1090 mm) minimum.

403.5.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities. In existing buildings and facilities, where an accessible route makes a 180 degree turn around an object that is less than 48 inches (1220 mm) in width, clear widths shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum approaching the turn, 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum during the turn, and 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum leaving the turn.

Exception: This section shall not apply where the clear width during the turn is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

~~**403.5.3 Clear width at 90-degree turn.**~~

~~**403.5.3.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn the clear widths approaching the turn and leaving the turn shall be one of the following sets of dimensions:~~

1. ~~Both legs of the turn shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum in width. The width of each leg of the turn shall be maintained for 28 inches (710 mm) minimum from the inner corner.~~
2. ~~Where the interior corners of the turn are chamfered for 8 inches minimum (205 mm) along both walls, both legs of the turn shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.~~
3. ~~Where one leg of the turn is 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in width, the other shall be permitted to be 38 inches (965 mm) minimum in width.~~
4. ~~Where one leg of the turn is 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum in width, the other shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.~~

~~**Exceptions:**~~

1. ~~Where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn at doors, doorways and gates complying with Section 404.2.3, the route shall not be required to comply with this section.~~
2. ~~Where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn at an elevator or platform lift complying with Sections 407 through 410, the accessible route shall not be required to comply with this section.~~

~~**403.5.3.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, where an accessible route makes a 90-degree turn the clear widths approaching the turn and leaving the turn shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.~~

403.5.3 ~~**403.5.4**~~ **Passing space.**

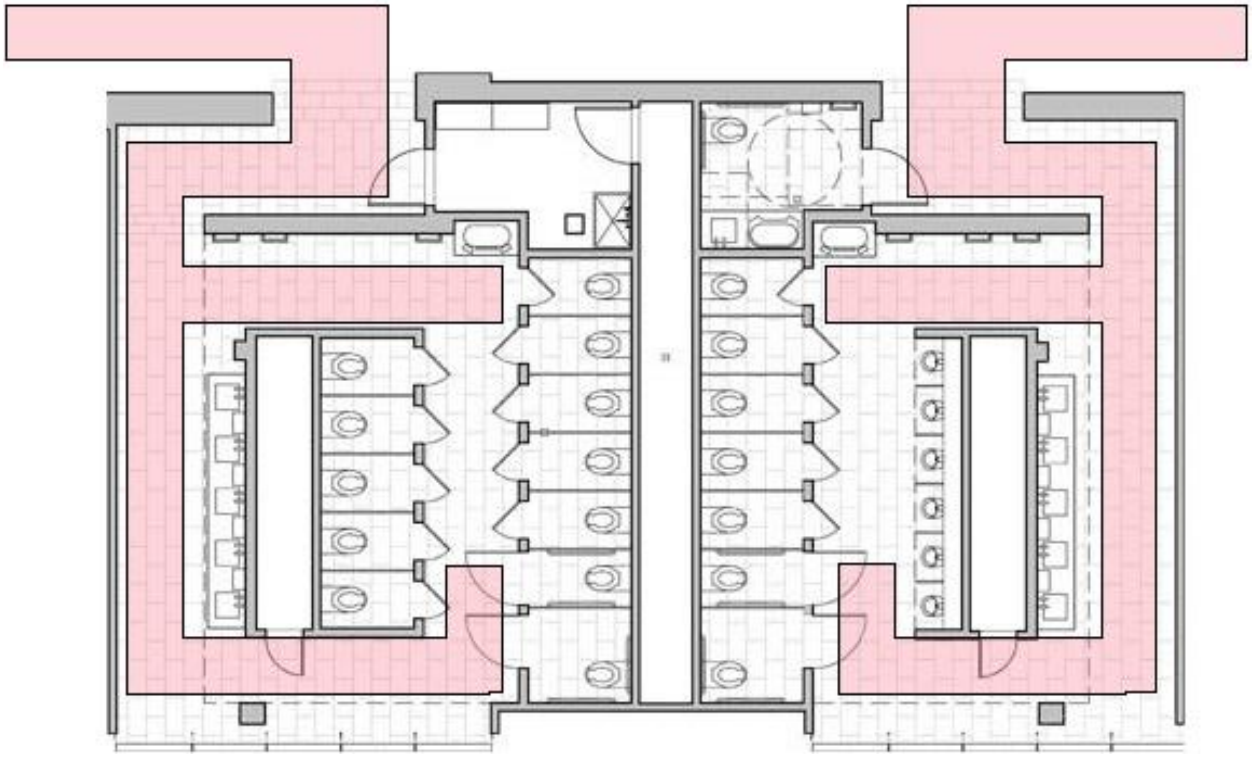
403.5.3.1 ~~**403.5.4.1**~~ **New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, an accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum by 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum space, or an intersection of two walking surfaces that provide a T-shaped turning space complying with Section 304.3.2.1, provided the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.

403.5.3.2 ~~**403.5.4.2**~~ **Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, an accessible route with a clear width less than 60 inches (1525 mm) shall provide passing spaces at intervals of 200 feet (61 m) maximum. Passing spaces shall be either a 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum by 60-inch (1525 mm) minimum space, or an intersection of two walking surfaces that provide a T-shaped turning space complying with Section 304.3.2, provided the base and arms of the T-shaped space extend 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum beyond the intersection.

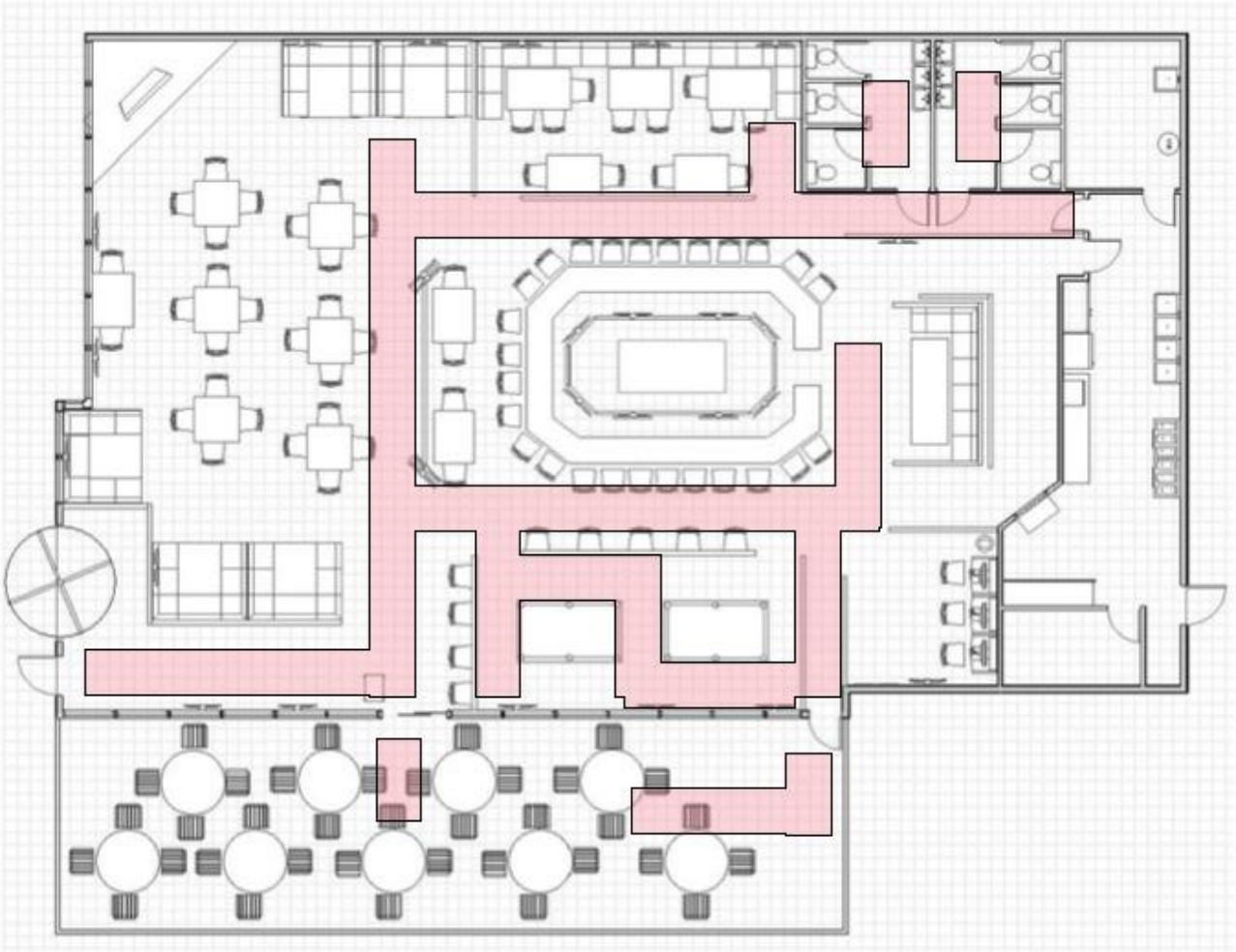
REASON: The intent of this proposal is to remove the 90 degree turn requirement. I believe this is not have the effect the committee thought they were getting. The interpretation is almost impossible to explain and enforce correctly. The explanation to the committee during the deliberation was primarily related to corridors. If a corridor has doors on either side, the door maneuvering clearances (Section 404.2.3.2) would require at least 42” for that corridor. Dr. Steinfeld, at a meeting held after the committee had close to a final approval on the

standard, indicated that this 90 degree turn was not an issue at doors – thus the exceptions to Section 403.5.3.1 were added at the very end of the cycle. He indicated that this was for a smooth transition for scooters along a route. If an aisle or corridor serves more than 50 people, the building code requires a minimum width of 44 inches (IBC Section 1018.5 and 1020.3). Thus the only place this requirement would have an impact is for aisles in small mercantile and small assembly spaces. Is it justified to have something that would impact only small business? The spaces are still maneuverable with mobility devices, just not at speed.

The second issue is the understanding and enforcement. This literally has the accessible route requirements stopping and starting every time it goes through a doorway. Also, places where you assume a turn, such as turning under a drinking fountain, dining surface, work surface or sink are not applicable because the are 'adjoining' an accessible route – not part of it! The requirements for 90 degree turns would not technical work with alcove provisions or turning into a wheelchair space in assembly seating or into a ! Attached are a couple of general layouts showing where this is applicable.



Example bathroom layout with 90 degree and U-turns.



Example of route requirements in assembly seating.

Committee Action: 19-4-4 Disapproval
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The 90 degree turns should remain in the standard. Issues raised about turning into clear floor spaces should be addressed differently.

403.5-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 04-04– 2021		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The 90 degree turns should remain in the standard. Issues raised about turning into clear floor spaces should be addressed differently.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for 0*4-04– 2021*		
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-05 – 2021
403.5.1, 403.5.1.1(New), 403.5.1.2(New), 406.2.1, 406.3.1, 406.5.1

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 403
WALKING SURFACES

403.5 Clear width. The clear width of an accessible route shall comply with Section 403.5.1. 403.5.2 or 403.5.3 or 403.5.4 as applicable.

403.5.1 General.

403.5.1.1 New buildings and facilities. In new buildings and facilities, the ~~The~~ clear width of an interior accessible route shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. The clear width of an exterior accessible route shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. ~~In new buildings and facilities,~~ ~~the~~ The clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced-width segments are separated by segments that are 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.
2. ~~In existing buildings and facilities, the clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.~~
2.~~3.~~ The clear width of an exterior accessible route located within seating areas shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.
3.~~4.~~ The clear width of an exterior ramp shall comply with Section 405.5.

403.5.1.2 Existing buildings and facilities. In existing buildings and facilities, the clear width of an interior and exterior accessible route shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

Exception: The clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.

SECTION 405
RAMPS

405.5 Clear width. The clear width of a ramp run shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. Handrails and handrail supports that are provided on the ramp run shall not project into the required clear width of the ramp run.

Exception: Within employee work areas, the required clear width of ramps that are a part of common use circulation paths shall be permitted to be decreased by work area equipment provided that the decrease is essential to the function of the work being performed.

SECTION 406
CURB RAMPS AND BLENDED TRANSITIONS

406.1 General. Curb ramps and blended transitions on accessible routes shall comply with Section 406.

406.2 Perpendicular curb ramps. Perpendicular curb ramps shall comply with Sections 406.2 and 406.5.

406.2.1 Landings. A landing 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum shall be provided at the top of a curb ramp. The landing shall be permitted to overlap pedestrian routes and clear spaces. Where the landing is constrained at the back-of-sidewalk, the landing shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum. The 60-inch (1525 mm) dimension shall be provided in the direction of the curb ramp run. The slope of landings shall be 1:48 maximum in all directions.

Exception: In existing buildings and facilities, the landing shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. Where the landing is constrained at the back-of-sidewalk, the landing shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

406.3 Parallel curb ramps. Parallel curb ramps shall comply with Sections 406.3 and 406.5.

406.3.1 Landing. A landing 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum shall be provided at the bottom of a curb ramp. The landing shall be permitted to overlap pedestrian routes and clear spaces. Where the landing is constrained on two or more sides, the landing shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum. The 60 inches (1525 mm) dimension shall be provided in the direction of the pedestrian street crossing. The slope of landings shall be 1:48 maximum in all directions.

Exception: In existing buildings and facilities, the landing shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. Where the landing is constrained on two or more sides, the landing shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

406.5 Common requirements. Curb ramps and blended transitions shall comply with Section 406.5.

406.5.1 Width. The clear width of curb ramp runs (excluding any flared sides) and blended transitions shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

Exception: In existing buildings and facilities, the clear width of curb ramp runs shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

REASON: The intent of this proposal is to allow for existing buildings to maintain the current requirement for a 36" accessible route for exterior routes and curb ramps where improvements are required for the accessible route from public arrival points and accessible parking spaces to the building entrance. Where current sidewalks and parking lots exist, asking for the extra width could be extensive and almost impossible to argue technical infeasibility. In addition, while the 48" sizes matches the current PROWAG, that is for public rights of way, and these requirements for on the site. This technical requirement is partially addressed in 2021 IEBC Section 306.7.6, but it is more consistent and within scope to provide that information in the ICC A117.1.

2021 IEBC
306.7.6 Accessible route. Exterior accessible routes, including curb ramps, shall be not less than 36 inches (914 mm) minimum in width.

The format would be consistent with the Sections 403.5.2 Clear width at 180-degree turn, 403.5.3 Clear width at 90-degree turn and 403.5.4 Passing space. Exterior ramps are already allowed to stay at 36" clear width between handrails for new construction. There is no suggested changes to blended transitions, because those were not in ICC A117.1 before.

04-05 – 2021

Proposed Modification

Proponent: Rodney Lindsey, representing Larson Karle Architects

Further modify as follows:

406.2 Perpendicular curb ramps. Perpendicular curb ramps shall comply with Sections 406.2 and 406.5.

406.2.1 Landings. A landing 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum shall be provided at the top of a curb ramp. The landing shall be permitted to overlap pedestrian routes and clear spaces. Where the landing is constrained at the back-of-sidewalk, the landing shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum. The 60-inch (1525 mm) dimension shall be provided in the direction of the curb ramp run. The slope of landings shall be 1:48 maximum in all directions.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. In existing buildings and facilities, the landing shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. Where the landing is constrained at

the back-of-sidewalk, the landing shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum by 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum.

2. In alterations, where there is no landing at the top of curb ramps, curb ramp flares shall be provided and shall not be steeper than 1:12.

Reason: In the A117.1-2009, Section 406.7 Landings allowed for 36" of landing depth at the top of curb ramps. Also, there was an Exception that in alterations, where there is no landing at the top of curb ramps, the curb ramp flares shall be provided and shall not be steeper than 1:12. In the A117.1-2017, Section 406.2.1 Landings, it is not clear that the landing at the top of the perpendicular curb ramp is allowed to be 36", especially for existing conditions, and that Exception for alterations no longer exists. I request that the former Exception be put back into the 2017, and that the landing at the top of the curb ramp be better clarified for existing conditions especially. Also, it would be helpful if IEBC Section 306.7.6 was better coordinated and referenced in the A117.1-2017 for existing conditions.

The purpose of the modification is to help alleviate requirements for the limited constraints of being able to provide a better accessible route to existing elements. In a particular scenario I'm working on currently, we have an existing shopping center (tenant) plaza that has a sidewalk in front of the storefronts with a covered walkway and columns out at the curb side. We are trying to place a new perpendicular curb ramp into this sidewalk, but due to the available width of the walkway, we cannot fit this in due to the A117.1-2017's 48" landing requirement at the top. And since there is no Exception for the alteration to allow for the flares to be 1:12, we are forced to try to get a parallel curb ramp to work instead, which is also having conflicts/issues due to the columns at the curbside along with needing maneuvering clearances at the doorways. It would be very helpful if the Exception for the alterations was still in the A117.1-2017 along with reference to IEBC Section 307.7.6.

Committee Action: Disapproval 19-10-4
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):
The proposed modification to add exception to Section 406.2.1 was approved (22-5-4)
A second modification to strike the entire proposal in 04-05 was approved (15-10-4)
As modified failed (13-15-5)

Committee Reason: The site restrictions outside would allow for technical infeasibility if a 48 inch wide route is not feasible. If there is enough space, the exterior route width should be increased. The parallel curb cuts now in the standard is safer than the curb cuts with the angled sides, so that should be used.

403.5.1-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*4-05– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 19-10-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The site restrictions outside would allow for technical infeasibility if a 48 inch wide route is not feasible. If there is enough space, the exterior route width should be increased. The parallel curb cuts now in the standard is safer than the curb cuts with the angled		

Report for 0*4-05– 2021*		
sides, so that should be used.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-06 – 2021
403.5.1, 404.2.3

Proponent: Marsha Mazz representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 403
WALKING SURFACES

403.5.1 General. The clear width of an interior accessible route shall be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum. The clear width of an exterior accessible route shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. Each side of the clear width of an accessible route shall be permitted to be reduced in accordance with the following dimensions:
   a. A reduction of 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) to a height of 1-inch (25 mm) maximum above the floor;
   b. A reduction of 1-inch (25 mm) to a height of 7 inches (180 mm) maximum above the floor; and
   c. A reduction of 2 inches (50 mm above 7 inches (180 mm) in height for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum, provided the reduced-width segments are separated by a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3.

~~**1.** In new buildings and facilities, the clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.~~

~~2. In existing buildings and facilities, the clear width shall be permitted to be reduced to 32 inches (815 mm) minimum for a length of 24 inches (610 mm) maximum provided the reduced width segments are separated by segments that are 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width.~~

~~3.~~ 2. The clear width of an exterior accessible route located within seating areas shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum.

~~4.~~ 3. The clear width of an exterior ramp shall be permitted to comply with Section 405.5.

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.2.3 Maneuvering clearances. Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors and gates shall comply with Section 404.2.3. Maneuvering clearances shall include the full clear opening width of the doorway and the required latch-side or hinge-side clearance.

Exception: Baseboards and other trim elements shall be permitted to project into the maneuvering clearance 1 ½ inches (38 mm) maximum to a height of 1-inch maximum above the floor and 1-inch (25 mm) maximum above a height of 1-inch (25mm) to a height of 7 inches (180 mm) maximum above the floor.

REASON: This proposal is intended to resolve the question as to whether an accessible route or a maneuvering clearance at a door should be measured above baseboards and trim. Space for a stationary wheelchair is 30 inches in width. The additional 6 inches of width on an accessible route is intended to accommodate the arms of a person propelling a wheelchair as well as some sway in the trajectory because most users do not exert exactly the same amount of force on both wheels. We believe that narrowing the route at a moderate baseboard height will not impact the usability of the route and will prevent future conflicts that can result in unnecessary expense.
This proposal also simplifies existing exceptions 1 & 2 by referencing the length of a clear floor space in Section 305.3. We have another proposal to delete the differing space criteria in new and existing facilities. Regardless of whether that passes or fails, this change will not, on its own, change the requirement. Exceptions 3 and 4 in the current standard are renumbered and revised to conform to the format used in the Standards for exceptions.

Committee Action: AS 17-8-2
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that it is not the intent to measure the accessible route between baseboards at the floor. There have been multiple reports of reviewers siting violations for this. Modifications can be addressed in the 2nd round.

The basic idea of not measuring the route between baseboards is appropriate, but there are several series issues with the text as currently written. Exception 1 C would only allow 2" on each side, and the current route allowances is to go down to 32" – so this would allow two inches from each side, but not a 4" deep column on one side. Exception 1, a, b and c do not work together horizontally – even though this is written as working together (e.g. a 2" protrusion could not extend floor to ceiling). Exception 1C does not have a height limit at the top end – so this could be read as applying all the way to the ceiling. The changes for 405.3.1 are the width of the route while the changes to 404.2.3 are a depth to the clear floor space – is this permitted on only one side of the clearance, two sides or three sides? That needs to be clarified. If the clearance goes all the way to the full height of the door, what about other projections like light switches or room signs?

403.5.1-MAZZ.doc

Report for 0*4-06– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 17-8-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed that it is not the intent to measure the accessible route between baseboards at the floor. There have been multiple reports of reviewers siting violations for this. Modifications can be addressed in the 2nd round. The basic idea of not measuring the route between baseboards is appropriate, but there are several series issues with the text as currently written. Exception 1 C would only allow 2" on each side, and the current route allowances is to go down to 32" – so this would allow two inches from each side, but not a 4" deep column on one side. Exception 1, a, b and c do not work together horizontally – even though this is written as working together (e.g. a 2" protrusion could not extend floor to ceiling). Exception 1C does not have a height limit at the top end – so this could be read as applying all the way to the ceiling. The changes for 405.3.1 are the width of the route while the changes to 404.2.3 are a depth to the clear floor space – is this permitted on only one side of the clearance, two sides or three sides? That needs to be clarified. If the clearance goes all the way to the full height of the door, what about other projections like light switches or room signs?		

Report for 0*4-06– 2021*		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-07 – 2021
404.2

Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University at Buffalo, representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.1 General. Doors, doorways and gates that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 404.

Exception: Doors, doorways and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel shall not be required to comply with Sections 404.2.3, 404.2.6, 404.2.7, 404.2.8, 404.3.1, 404.3.2, 404.3.4, 404.3.7 and 404.3.8.

404.2 Manual doors, doorways and manual gates. Manual doors, doorways and manual gates intended for <u>through</u> user passage shall comply with Section 404.2.

REASON: Currently, it is not clear what "user passage" means. Some officials and accessibility consultants treat any door that a wheelchair user can move into a door for user passage, even if the closet is a shallow storage closet. Adding the word "through" will make it clear that only doors that a person is expected to pass through entirely are subject to these requirements.

Committee Action: Disapproval 26-0-1
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal does not accomplish what the proponent intended.

404.2-STEINFELD.doc

Report for 0*4-07– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal does not accomplish what the proponent intended.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		

Report for 0*4-07– 2021*		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-08 – 2021
404.2.3.1

Proponent: M. Bradley Gaskins, AIA CASp, The McIntosh Group, LLC

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.2.3 Maneuvering clearances. Minimum maneuvering clearances at doors and gates shall comply with Section 404.2.3. Maneuvering clearances shall include the full clear opening width of the doorway and the required latch-side or hinge-side clearance. The maneuvering clearance shall be located a maximum of 8 inches (205 mm) from the face of the door and shall be clear of adjacent walls or obstructions. The maneuvering space but shall extend vertically from the floor surface to a height 80 inches (2030 mm).

REASON: This shall provide clarification that the required door maneuvering clearance cannot be more than 8 inches from the face of the door, as implied in Section 404.2.3.5 Recessed Doors and Gates.

Staff note: If this proposal is accepted, the committee will need to provide direction on changes to Figures 404.2.3.2(A) through 404.2.3.2(H).

Committee Action: Disapproval 21-4-2
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): two modifications were proposed, but the final vote for As Modified was unsuccessful

Committee Reason: The new first sentence is redundant with Section 404.2.3.5 *Recessed doors and gates*. The vertical requirement for the clear floor space is an issue for items adjacent to the door, such as light switches, fire alarm pulls, door framing, baseboards, wall sconces, signage – none of which are obstructions to operation of the door.

404.2.3-GASKINS.doc

Report for 0*4-08– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-4-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The new first sentence is redundant with Section 404.2.3.5 *Recessed doors and gates*. The vertical requirement for the clear floor space is an issue for items adjacent to the door, such as light switches, fire alarm pulls, door framing, baseboards, wall sconces, signage – none of which are obstructions to operation of the door.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for 0*4-08– 2021*		
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-10 – 2021
404.2.5

Proponent: M. Bradley Gaskins, AIA CASp, The McIntosh Group, LLC

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.2.5 Two doors or gates in series. Distance between two hinged or pivoted doors or gates in series shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum plus the width of any door or gate swinging into the space and shall not swing into the required door maneuvering clearance of the adjacent door or gate in the series. The space between the doors and gates shall provide a turning space.

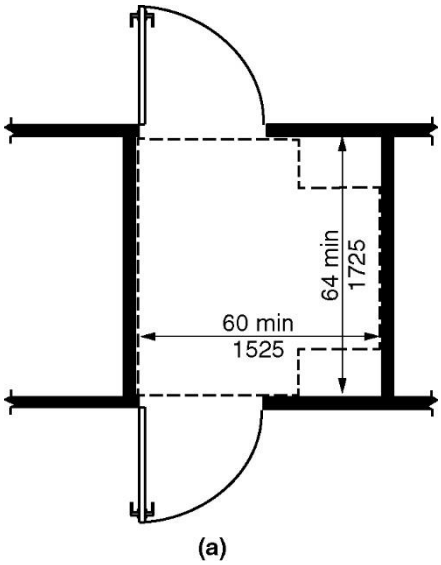
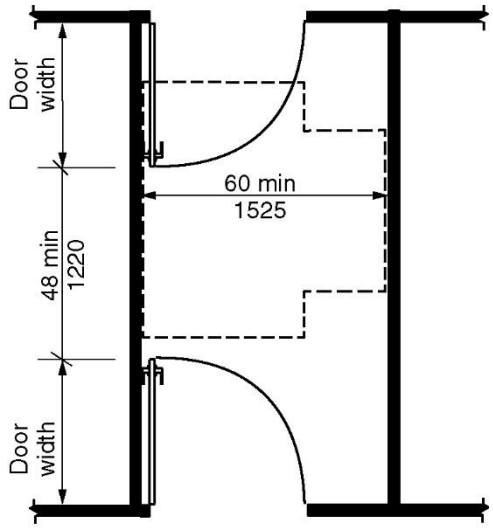
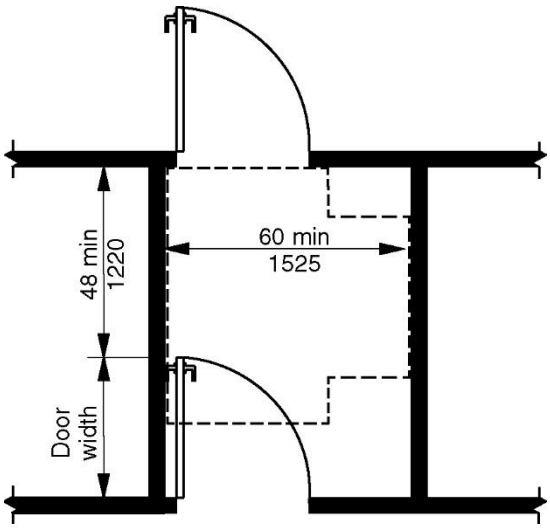


Figure 404.2.5(A) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - New Buildings



(b)



(c)

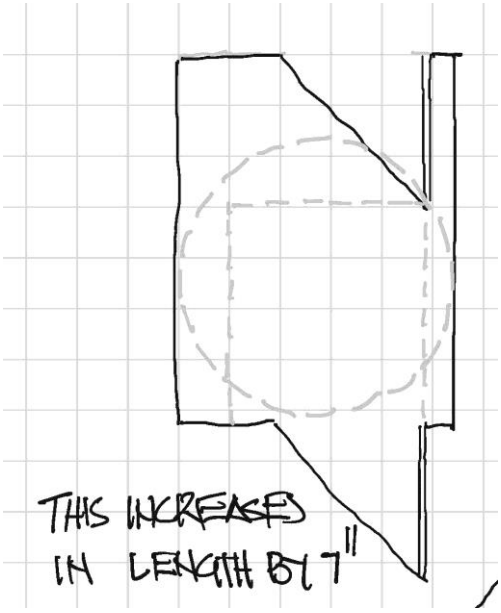
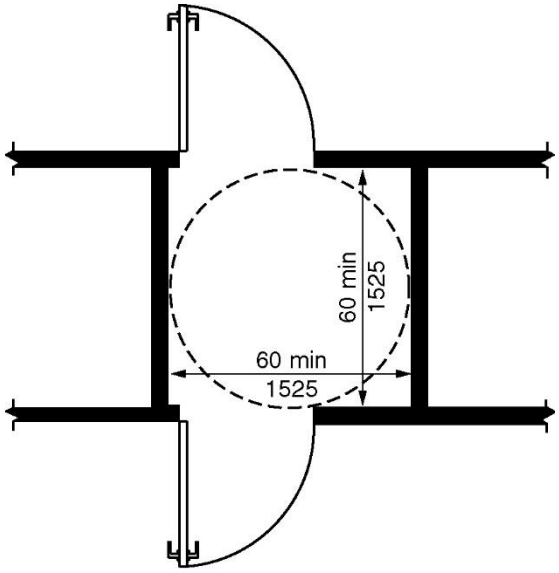


Figure 404.2.5(B) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - New Buildings

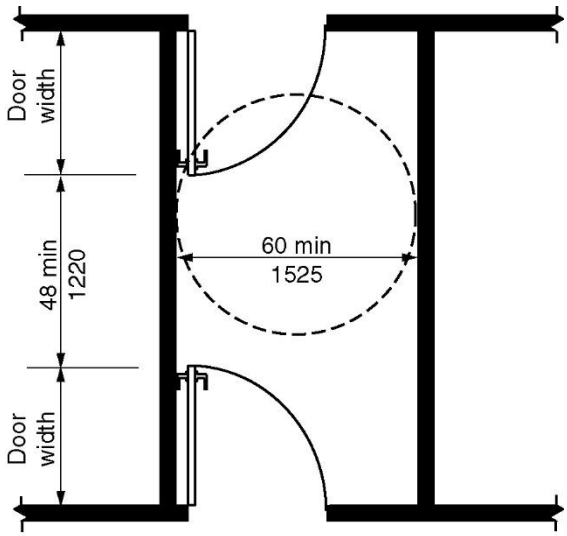
Figure 404.2.5(C) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - New Buildings

Note: The vestibule would increase by 4" due to the increase in the maneuvering clearance for forward approach. Drawing will all be revised include door maneuvering spaces.



(d)

Figure 404.2.5(D) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - Existing Buildings



(e)

Figure 404.2.5(E) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - Existing Buildings

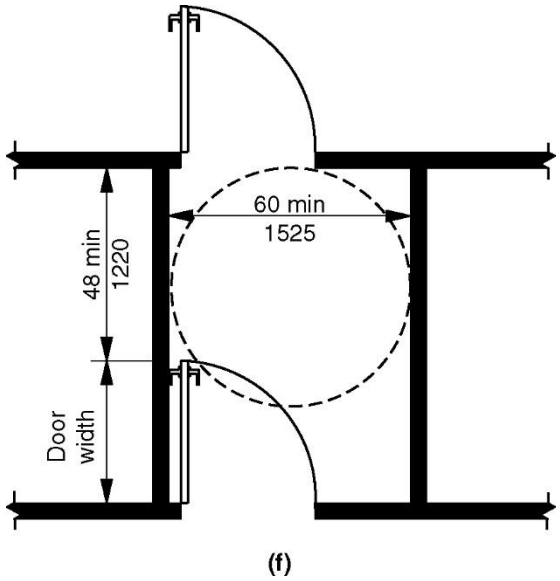


Figure 404.2.5(F) Two Doors or Gates in a Series - Existing Buildings

---

REASON: Often time doors in series are not in line with each other which makes the 48 inch required dimension between the doors hard to determine. The intent of the requirement is to provide for a space to operate the door without being hit by the adjacent door. By making this change it clarifies and provides, for all situations whether the door is in line or not, a space to operate the door without being hit by the adjacent door.

Staff note: If this proposal is accepted, the committee will need to provide direction on changes to Figures 404.2.5(A) through 404.2.5(F).

Committee Action: Disapproval 26-1-1
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Staff note:

Committee Reason: The intent of the turning space is to protect against possible entrapment. There has not been an issue identified for the first door overlapping the maneuvering clearance for the 2nd door. If the concern is for doors that are not in a direct line, the proposed text did not resolve that issue.

404.2.5-GASKINS.doc

Report for 0*4-10– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-1-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The intent of the turning space is to protect against possible entrapment. There has not been a safety issue identified for the first door overlapping the maneuvering clearance for the 2nd door. If the concern is for doors that are not in a direct line, the proposed text did not resolve that issue.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-11 – 2021
404.2.6.1

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.1 General. Doors, doorways and gates that are part of an accessible route shall comply with Section 404.

Exception: Doors, doorways and gates designed to be operated only by security personnel shall not be required to comply with Sections 404.2.3, 404.2.6, 404.2.7, 404.2.8, 404.3.1, 404.3.2, 404.3.4, 404.3.7 and 404.3.8.

404.2 Manual doors, doorways and manual gates…..

404.2.6 Door and gate hardware. Handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operable parts on doors and gates shall have a shape that is easy to grasp with one hand and does not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist to operate. The operational force to retract latches or disengage devices that hold the door or gate in a closed position shall be as follows:

1. Hardware operation by a forward, pushing or pulling motion: 15 pounds (66.7 N) maximum.
2. Hardware operation by a rotational motion: 28 inch-pounds (315 N·cm) maximum.

404.2.6.1 Hardware height. Operable parts of such hardware shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.

Exceptions:

1. Locks used only for security purposes and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height.
2. Where the International Swimming Pool and Spa Code requires restricting access to a pool, spa, or hot tub, and where door and gate latch release mechanisms are accessed from the outside of the barrier and are not of the self-locking type, such as mechanism shall be located above the finished floor or ground surface, not less than 52 inches (1219 mm) and not greater than 54 inches (1370 mm), provided that the latch release mechanism is not a self-locking type such as where the lock is operated by means of a key, electronic opener, or the entry of a combination into an integral combination lock.

404.3 Automatic and power-assisted doors and gates. …

404.3.8 Door and gate hardware. Handles, pulls, latches, locks and other operable parts shall comply with Section 404.2.6.

REASON: This is a two-purpose proposal.

The intent of this proposal to exception 1 is to allow for doors to be locked up at night by business owners and to have options for security locking systems. Section 404.1 was revised last cycle to consolidate the exceptions for locks used for security purposes. By changing this to 'security personnel' I am hearing the interpretation that a bank can be locked down by the guard, but not by any of the staff, because they are not 'security personnel'. This is an issue for a lot of different types of spaces. While I don't want to forgive all items like we do in 404.1, I want to at least allow security locks on the doors to be outside of the reach since this is not 'normal use'. This allowance should be allow for manual and automatic doors.

The intent of this proposal to exception 2 is to allow for gates on swimming pools to meet both accessibility and safety concerns associated with swimming pools being accessed by small children without supervision.

This is consistent with 2024 IBC Section 1010.2.3. A similar allowance is also provided for in the 2010 ADA.

04-11 – 2021

Proposed Modification

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, United Spinal Assoc.

404.2.6.1 Hardware height. Operable parts of such hardware shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.

Exceptions:

1. Locks used only ~~for security purposes~~ <u>to secure the premises when not normally occupied</u> and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height.
2. Where the International Swimming Pool and Spa Code requires restricting access to a pool, spa, or hot tub, and where door and gate latch release mechanisms are accessed from the outside of the barrier and are not of the self-locking type, such as mechanism shall be located above the finished floor or ground surface, not less than 52 inches (1219 mm) and not greater than 54 inches (1370 mm), provided that the latch release mechanism is not a self-locking type such as where the lock is operated by means of a key, electronic opener, or the entry of a combination into an integral combination lock.

Reason: Exception 1 was removed from this section during the last cycle. My recollection is that it was removed because, arguably, all locks are for security purposes rendering the provision applicable to every lock on every door. The original intent of this exception was to allow for the type of lock that is at floor level or in the top of the door frame and typically only operated twice daily when the premises are closed or opened for business. The revised wording makes this clear

and would not be mistakenly applied to a lock that must be operated to gain access to a portion of a building or facility that is occupied e.g., a door to a secured area not operated by security personnel (see Exception to Section 404.1).

Committee Action: Split question – Exp. 1 AM 24-2-2; Exp. 2 AM 13-7-5
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Further modify as follows:

404.2.6.1 Hardware height. Operable parts of such hardware shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides.

Exceptions:

1. Locks used only ~~for security purposes~~ to secure the premises when not normally occupied and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height.
2. Where the ~~International Swimming Pool and Spa Code~~ administrative authority requires restricting access to a pool, spa, or hot tub, and where door and gate latch release mechanisms are accessed from the outside of the barrier and are not of the self-locking type, such ~~as~~ mechanism shall be located above the finished floor or ground surface, not less than 52 inches (1219 mm) and not greater than 54 inches (1370 mm), ~~provided that the latch release mechanism is not a self-locking type such as where the lock is operated by means of a key, electronic opener, or the entry of a combination into an integral combination lock~~.

Committee Reason: Exception 1 was approved to allow for businesses to secure the front door after operating hours. Any needed employee modifications will be done on a case by case basis. The modification clarifies the original intent of this exception.
Exception 2 was approved to coordinate with the 2010 ADA, ISPSC and IBC for allowanced for swimming pool barrier. The intent is to balance accessibility and safety for children. The modification to change the reference from SPSC to 'administrative authority' was to have a more generic reference that was consistent with the A117.1 scope references and in case someone had not adopted the ISPSC. The 2nd modification to remove the end of Exp. 2 was to remove redundant language.

404.1-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*4-11– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-2-2; 13-7-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **404.2.6.1 Hardware height.** Operable parts of such hardware shall be 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. Where sliding doors are in the fully open position, operating hardware shall be exposed and usable from both sides. **Exceptions:** 1. Locks used only ~~for security purposes~~ to secure the premises when not normally occupied and not used for normal operation are permitted at any height. 2. Where the ~~International Swimming Pool and Spa Code~~ administrative authority requires restricting access to a pool, spa, or hot tub, and where door and gate latch release mechanisms are accessed from the outside of the barrier and are not of the self-locking type, such ~~as~~		

Report for 0*4-11– 2021*		
mechanism shall be located above the finished floor or ground surface, not less than 52 inches (1219 mm) and not greater than 54 inches (1370 mm), ~~provided that the latch release mechanism is not a self-locking type such as where the lock is operated by means of a key, electronic opener, or the entry of a combination into an integral combination lock~~.		
Committee Reason: Exception 1 was approved to allow for businesses to secure the front door after operating hours. Any needed employee modifications will be done on a case by case basis. The modification clarifies the original intent of this exception. Exception 2 was approved to coordinate with the 2010 ADA, ISPSC and IBC for allowanced for swimming pool barrier. The intent is to balance accessibility and safety for children. The modification to change the reference from SPSC to 'administrative authority' was to have a more generic reference that was consistent with the A117.1 scope references and in case someone had not adopted the ISPSC. The 2nd modification to remove the end of Exp. 2 was to remove redundant language		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-12 – 2021
404.2.8

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.2.8 Door and gate opening force. Fire doors and doors or gates required to be equipped with panic hardware, break away features or other factors requiring higher opening force for safety reasons shall have the minimum opening force allowable in scoping provisions adopted by the appropriate administrative authority. For other doors or gates, the force for pushing or pulling open doors or
gates shall be as follows:

1. Interior hinged door: 5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum.
2. Interior Sliding or folding door: ~~5.0 pounds (22.2 N) maximum~~ the door shall require not more than a 30-pound (133 N) force to be set in motion and shall move to a full open position when subjected to not more than a 15-pound (67 N) force.

Exception: The force required to retract latch bolts or disengage other devices that hold the door or gate in a closed position shall not apply to panic hardware, delayed egress devices or fire-rated hardware.

REASON: This proposal addresses two issues – if the force on sliding and folding doors applies to exterior doors, and the force needed on sliding and folding interior doors. The current text could be read to apply to exterior and interior sliding or folding doors for opening force. Historically, the standard does not have a force for exterior doors due exterior forces such as wind or differences in pressure due to weather changes. A sliding or folding door that is moving on a track cannot meet the same force requirements as a swinging door. The proposed text is consistent with IBC Section 1010.1.3.

Committee Action: Disapproval 23-1-1
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: More data is needed on the operating forces of sliding and folding doors from the industry before adding these forces to the standard. There needs to be clarification on what types of doors this is intended to address (e.g. closet doors or glass sliding doors). The force may be excessive for some door types. The committee agreed that Item 2 is intended for interior doors.

Report for 0*4-12– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-1-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: More data is needed on the operating forces of sliding and folding doors from the industry before adding these forces to the standard. There needs to be clarification on what types of doors this is intended to address (e.g. closet doors or glass sliding doors). The force may be excessive for some door types. The committee agreed that Item 2 is intended for interior doors.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-13 – 2021
404.2.9

Proponent: Michael Tierney, representing Builders Hardware Manufacturers Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.2.9 Swinging door and gate surface. Door and gate surfaces on the push side and within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor, measured vertically, shall be smooth ~~surfaces on the push side extending~~ and extend the ~~full~~ width of the surface ~~of the door or gate~~. Door and gate hardware, ~~or any other obstruction~~ obstructions or ~~protrusion~~ protrusions shall not be mounted in nor extend into the area within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor without being protected by a smooth surface. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in such surfaces shall be within 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other. Cavities created by added ~~kick~~ protection plates shall be capped.

Exceptions:

1. Sliding doors shall not be required to comply with this section.
2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or ~~shoe~~ fitting with the top ~~leading~~ edge tapered at no less than 60 degrees from the horizontal shall not be required to comply with the 10-inch (255 mm) bottom rail height requirement.
3. Doors and gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor shall not be required to comply with this section.
4. The installation of ~~kick~~ protection plates on existing doors and gates, without a smooth surface within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor, shall be permitted. The ~~kick~~ protection plates shall extend to 10 inches (255 mm) above the floor, measured vertically, and no more than 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and bottom of the door. Cavities created by such ~~kickplates~~ protection plates shall be capped.

REASON: The change is proposed to clarify the current language to reduce questions and confusion about products that meet the intent of the Section.

Committee Action: 29-0-4 Approved as modified
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Motion to amend: passed 27-0-3

Further modify:

404.2.9 Swinging door and gate surface. Door and gate surfaces on the push side and within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor, measured vertically, shall be smooth and extend the width ~~of the~~

~~surface~~ of the door or gate. Door and gate hardware, obstructions or protrusions shall not be mounted in nor extend into the area within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor without being protected by a smooth surface. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in such surfaces shall be within 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other. Cavities created by added protection plates shall be capped.

Exceptions:

1. Sliding doors shall not be required to comply with this section.
2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or fitting with the top edge tapered at no less than 60 degrees from the horizontal shall not be required to comply with the 10-inch (255 mm) bottom rail height requirement.
3. Doors and gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor shall not be required to comply with this section.
4. The installation of protection plates on existing doors and gates~~,~~ without a smooth surface within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor~~,~~ shall be permitted. The protection plates shall extend to 10 inches (255 mm) above the floor, measured vertically, and no more than 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and bottom of the door. Cavities created by such protection plates shall be capped.

Committee Reason: The modification in the first sentence and Exception 4 is editorial for proper grammar and sentence structure. The proposal is a clarification of the requirements for bottom plates on doors.

404.2.9-TIERNEY.doc

Report for 0*4-13– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-0-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify:** **404.2.9 Swinging door and gate surface**. Door and gate surfaces on the push side and within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor, measured vertically, shall be smooth and extend the width ~~of the surface~~ of the door or gate. Door and gate hardware, obstructions or protrusions shall not be mounted in nor extend into the area within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor without being protected by a smooth surface. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in such surfaces shall be within 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other. Cavities created by added protection plates shall be capped. **Exceptions:** 1. Sliding doors shall not be required to comply with this section. 2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or fitting with the top edge tapered at no less than 60 degrees from the horizontal shall not be required to comply with the 10-inch (255 mm) bottom rail height requirement. 3. Doors and gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor shall not be required to comply with this section. 4. The installation of protection plates on existing doors and gates~~,~~ without a smooth surface within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor~~,~~ shall be permitted. The protection plates shall extend to 10 inches (255 mm) above the floor, measured vertically, and no more than 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and bottom of the door. Cavities created by such protection plates shall be capped.		
Committee Reason: The modification in the first sentence and Exception 4 is editorial for proper grammar and sentence structure. The proposal is a clarification of the requirements for bottom plates on doors.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		

Report for 0*4-13– 2021*
Committee Reason:

04-14 – 2021
404.2.10.1(New)

Proponent: Sharon Toji, Access Communications

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.2.10 Vision lites. doors, gates and sidelites adjacent to doors or gates containing one or more glazing panels that permit viewing through the panels shall have the bottom of at least one panel on either the door, gate or an adjacent sidelite 43 inches (1090 mm) maximum above the floor.

Exception: Vision lites with the lowest part more than 66 inches (1675 mm) above the floor shall not be required to comply with this section.

404.2.10.1 Vision Lite Depth and Width. Sidelites located alongside the latch side of doors opening off corridors shall have a depth from the adjacent wall or door surface of 3 inches (76 mm) or less and shall have a width of 18 inches (457 mm) minimum.

REASON: Sidelites are becoming very common and they are often very deep and narrow. When doors that need tactile sign identification have sidelites, the sign must be installed on the sidelite but if the sidelite is very deep and especially if it is narrow, persons who need to get their eyes within two or three inches of the sign cannot do that. A tactile sign that is more than a few inches from the door it identifies or within a 5 or 6 inch deep sidelite will probably not be located by someone who is functionally blind. Although it is sometimes possible for the sign company to design and make a bar to install in front of the sidelite that reaches across to accommodate the room designator sign, a better solution is for the architect to design wider and more shallow sidelites since they may have to double as walls for sign installation when they are immediately alongside the door, without adequate space between the door frame and the sidelite to install the tactile designation sign.

Committee Action: Disapproval 26-0-1
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This is an issue for signage, not an issue for the size of a side lite. This could be addressed with education on the signage viewing locations, better lighting on the signs, options for placement (especially in corridors with doors in recesses). This could be something for the Communication task group to consider.

Report for 0*4-14– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This is an issue for signage, not an issue for the size of a side lite. This could be addressed with education on the signage viewing locations, better lighting on the signs, options for placement (especially in corridors with doors in recesses). This could be something for the Communication task group to consider.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-15 – 2021
404.3.8(New)

Proponent: Joseph R. Hetzel, P.E., Joseph R Hetzel Consulting LLC, representing American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers (AAADM)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.3 Automatic and power-assisted doors and gates. …

404.3.8 Automatic door and gate-opening force. The force required for pushing or pulling open power-assisted doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19.

REASON: Automatic doors are regulated by ANSI/BHMA standards that dictate maximum allowable forces for manually pushing or pulling open doors when in a power-assist mode, thus language is needed in the A117.1 standard to clarify the origin of these provisions. Where the scoping provisions adopted by authorities having jurisdiction allow for or require an automatic door to be installed, the applicable ANSI/BHMA standard referenced in the International Building Code should apply.

Committee Action: As Modified 13-7-3
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Motion to add "swinging" passed 25-1-0

Further revise as follows:
404.3.8 Automatic door ~~and gate~~ opening force. The force required for pushing or pulling open power-assisted swinging doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19.

Staff note: Editorially added reference to Section 106.2.7 for ANSI/BHMA A156.19

Committee Reason: The modification add 'swinging' was to clarify that this is how power-assisted doors operate. The title was modified editorially to match the proposed code text. While the BMHA standard is referenced in Section 404.3, the new section was added so that it was clear what forces would be required on power-assisted swinging doors of opening the door. This is different from the 5 lbs. force in the A117.1.
Since this is a section on doors and gates, there was concern about this only applying to doors. There are questions about the application of the existing Section 404.3.8, *Door and gate hardware*; and how that would be applied since this proposal does not delete that section.

404.2.8 #1-HETZEL.doc

Report for *04-15– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 13-7-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise as follows:** **404.3.8 Automatic door ~~and gate~~ opening force.** The force required for pushing or pulling open power-assisted swinging doors shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19 listed in Section 106.2.6.		
Committee Reason: The modification add 'swinging' was to clarify that this is how power-assisted doors operate. The title was modified editorially to match the proposed code text. While the BMHA standard is referenced in Section 404.3, the new section was added so that it was clear what forces would be required on power-assisted swinging doors of opening the door. This is different from the 5 lbs. force in the A117.1. Since this is a section on doors and gates, there was concern about this only applying to doors. There are questions about the application of the existing Section 404.3.8, *Door and gate hardware*; and how that would be applied since this proposal does not delete that section.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-16– 2021
404.3.8(New)

Proponent: Joseph R. Hetzel, P.E., Joseph R Hetzel Consulting LLC, representing American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers (AAADM)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.3 Automatic and power-assisted doors and gates. …

404.3.8 Automatic door and gate-opening force in manual operation. The force required for pushing or pulling open full power automatic doors under manual operation shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.10. The force required for pushing or pulling low-energy automatic operated doors under manual operation shall comply with ANSI/BHMA A156.19.

REASON: Automatic doors are regulated by ANSI/BHMA standards that dictate maximum allowable forces for pushing or pulling open full power and low-energy automatic doors when in a manual mode, thus language is needed in the A117.1 standard to clarify the origin of these provisions. Where the scoping provisions adopted by authorities having jurisdiction allow for or require an automatic door to be installed, the applicable ANSI/BHMA standard referenced in the International Building Code should apply.

Committee Action: Disapproval 20-5-1
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The BMHA standards are already addressed in Section 404.3. This section deals with doors and gates, but the text only covers doors. There was a question about when a power door be pushed?
There are questions about the application of the existing Section 404.3.8, Door and gate hardware; and how that would be applied since this proposal does not delete that section.

404.2.8 HETZEL#2.doc

Report for 0*4-16– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 20-5-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The BMHA standards are already addressed in Section 404.3. This section deals with doors and gates, but the text only covers doors. There was a question about when a power door be pushed? There are questions about the application of the existing Section 404.3.8, Door and gate hardware; and how that would be applied since this proposal does not delete that section.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		

Report for 0*4-16– 2021*		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-17 – 2021
404.3.4

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.3 Automatic and power-assisted doors and gates. …

404.3.4 Maneuvering clearances. Maneuvering clearances at power-assisted doors and gates shall comply with Section 404.2.3. Maneuvering clearances complying with Section 404.2.3 shall be provided on the egress side of low-energy automatic and full power automatic doors and gates that serve as part of an accessible means of egress.

1. Low-energy automatic and full power automatic doors and gates that have standby power or battery back-up that will unlock and unlatch the door to allow free egress shall not be required to comply with this section.
2. Low-energy automatic and full power automatic doors and gates that remain open in the power-off condition shall not be required to comply with this section.
3. Full power automatic sliding doors and gates that include a break-away feature shall not be required to comply with this section.

REASON: The purpose for this proposal is to clarify 'standby power' requirements. This requirement came from the 2010 ADA, but that document does not clarify this either.

2010 ADA

404.3.2 Maneuvering Clearance. Clearances at power-assisted doors and gates shall comply with 404.2.4. Clearances at automatic doors and gates without standby power and serving an *accessible means of egress* shall comply with 404.2.4.

EXCEPTION: Where automatic doors and gates remain open in the power-off condition, compliance with 404.2.4 shall not be required.

The intent of this proposal is to clarify requirements for back up power at automatic doors.

2021 IBC includes a requirement for automatic doors (IBC 1106), so this will be at required as well as voluntary installations. If an automatic door (assume motion sensor) is in a large facility, how would you know how many times this would need to cycle? People are all over the building, and persons with mobility impairment might be moving slower, so how would you know the automatic door would be available? If this is an exterior door, you would not want to door to open and stand open if the building lost power during a storm, or a thief just cut power to the building!?! Many stores need to have security monitoring equipment immediately inside the door – and those typically match door widths – not door maneuvering

widths. The real purpose of means of egress is free access to leave the building – so maybe just that the door is no longer locked from the inside, so you can just do a front approach with no closer or latch? Additional information from door manufactures would be appreciated.

Committee Action: As Submitted 17-5-2
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: These added words would indicate the purpose of the stand-by power requirements for the automatic doors.

404.3.1-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*4-17– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 17-5-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: These added words would indicate the purpose of the stand-by power requirements for the automatic doors.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-18 – 2021
404.3.10(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 404
DOORS, DOORWAYS AND GATES

404.3 Automatic and power-assisted doors and gates. …

404.3.10 Door and gate surfaces. On power-assisted swinging doors and gates, surfaces within 10 inches (255 mm) of the finish floor or ground, measured vertically, shall comply with Section 404.2.9.

(Note: No changes to Section 404.2.9. Shown only for reference.)

404.2.9 Door and gate surface. Door and gate surfaces within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor, measured vertically, shall be smooth surfaces on the push side extending the full width of the door or gate. Door and gate hardware or any other obstruction or protrusion shall not be mounted in nor extend into the area within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor. Parts creating horizontal or vertical joints in such surfaces shall be within $^{1}/_{16}$ inch (1.6 mm) of the same plane as the other. Cavities created by added kick plates shall be capped.

Exceptions:

1. Sliding doors shall not be required to comply with this section.
2. Tempered glass doors without stiles and having a bottom rail or shoe with the top leading edge tapered at no less than 60 degrees from the horizontal shall not be required to comply with the 10-inch (255 mm) bottom rail height requirement.
3. Doors and gates that do not extend to within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor shall not be required to comply with this section.
4. The installation of kick plates on existing doors and gates without a smooth surface within 10 inches (255 mm) of the floor shall be permitted. The kick plates shall extend to 10 inches (255 mm) above the floor and no more than 1 inch (25 mm) from the sides and bottom of the door. Cavities created by such kickplates shall be capped.

REASON: As currently written – due to Section 404.2 scoping – Section 404.2.9 and the smooth door surface requirements are only applicable to "manual doors and gates." This exclusion of automatic and power-assisted doors is not coordinated with ADA Section 404.2.10 which would apply similar requirements to any door, manual, automatic or power-assisted.

At a minimum, Section 404.3 needs to be modified so that power-assisted doors must meet this requirement. Unlike an automatic door, a power-assisted door does require the user to initiate a force on the door to begin its operation. Because of this need to push up against the door to start the door opening motion, a smooth solid surface is needed.

I have included two options. The first to address only the power-assisted doors since that is the most critical need, and the second to address both automatic (full power or low-energy) and power-assisted doors. The second option would coordinate with the ADA while the first option is only a partial step towards coordination but a definite improvement in access for the A117.1.

Another issue which is not addressed by this proposal but would be something for the committee to consider is how to handle automatic doors when the power goes out. This would be important for both swinging and sliding doors since they would rely on the break-away feature and become a swinging door. Since the committee did require maneuvering clearances (Exception 1 in 404.3.4) if standby or back-up power is not required, then it may also be reasonable to consider the door surface requirements if such power is not provided and the doors must then be used manually.

Committee Action: As Submitted 23-0-0
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: A user may need to push on the face of a door with power-assist operation to move through the door, therefore, a bottom plate on the push side is an appropriate requirement.

404.3-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*4-18– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: A user may need to push on the face of a door with power-assist operation to move through the door, therefore, a bottom plate on the push side is an appropriate requirement.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-19 – 2021
404.5.1

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 405
RAMPS

405.1 General. Ramps along accessible routes shall comply with Section 405.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. In assembly areas, aisle ramps adjacent to seating and not serving elements required to be on an accessible route shall not be required to comply with Section 405.
2. Exterior sidewalks that connect elements on a site and that are a minimum of 48 inches wide and slope with grade are not required to comply with Section 405.

REASON: In hilly sites, sidewalks that move up with the grade may be sloped enough to be considered a ramp. However, to put curb protection and handrails on these sidewalks will block access to street parking and adjacent building entrances. This exception is consistent with Public Right-of-way where dealing with sloped streets.

Committee Action: Disapproval 23-1-0
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This allowance is too broad. While it is permitted in PROWAG, an open site should be able to design for the standard accessible route without this exception for slope of grade.

404.3-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*4-19– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-1-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This allowance is too broad. While it is permitted in PROWAG, an open site should be able to design for the standard accessible route without this exception for slope of grade.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		

Report for 0*4-19– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-20 – 2021
Table 405.2

Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University at Buffalo, representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 405
RAMPS

405.2 Slope. Ramp runs shall have a running slope greater than 1:20 and not steeper than 1:12.

Exception: In existing buildings or facilities, ramps shall be permitted to have slopes steeper than 1:12 complying with Table 405.2 where such slopes are necessary due to space limitations.

TABLE 405.2
ALLOWABLE RAMP DIMENSIONS FOR CONSTRUCTION IN EXISTING SITES, BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES

Maximum Slope of Ramp[1]	Maximum Rise
1:8	3 inches (75 mm)
~~Steeper than~~ 1:10 ~~but not steeper than 1:8~~	6 inches (150 mm)~~3 inches (75 mm)~~
~~Steeper than~~ 1:12 b~~ut not steeper than 1:10~~	~~6 inches (150 mm)~~ 30 in. (760 mm)

~~1. A slope steeper than 1:8 shall not be permitted.~~

REASON: The existing table implies that ramps lower in rise must have steeper slopes and does not include the rise allowed for 1:12 ramps which implies that they are not allowed. In fact, a lower slope is desirable in all cases. The revisions clarify the intent. Note also the footnote number can be deleted if these changes are made.

Committee Action: 22-2-2 Disapproved

Committee Reason: The current table is an exception, not a requirement for ramp slope - a designer can always choose to use a lower slope. The current table is only applicable as an exception in existing buildings and in minimum situations, so the steeper slope should remain as a viable option in these cases. The proposed text removes the range. A range is desirable to builders who have to construct the ramps. The Table is does not include an exception for ramps rises greater than 6 inches, so a ramp with a rise of 30 inches is already addressed and should not be added into the table. While a ramp run is limited to 30 inches of rise in Section 405.6, putting that limit here would be confusing for some users.

Table 405.2 STEINFELD.doc

Report for 0*4-20– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 22-2-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason The current table is an exception, not a requirement for ramp slope - a designer can always choose to use a lower slope. The current table is only applicable as an exception in existing buildings and in minimum situations, so the steeper slope should remain as a viable option in these cases. The proposed text removes the range. A range is desirable to builders who have to construct the ramps. The Table is does not include an exception for ramps rises greater than 6 inches, so a ramp with a rise of 30 inches is already addressed and should not be added into the table. While a ramp run is limited to 30 inches of rise in Section 405.6, putting that limit here would be confusing for some users.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-21 – 2021
405.7.5

Proponent: Ashley Pitts, Jensen Hughes, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 405
RAMPS

405.7.5 Doorways. Where a door or gate is adjacent to a ramp landing, maneuvering clearances required by Sections 404.2.3 and 404.3.4 shall be permitted to overlap the landing area. Doors, gates, and the swing of the door or gate shall not overlap the required minimum area of the ramp landing. Where a door or gate that is subject to locking is located adjacent to a ramp landing, the landing shall be sized to provide a turning space complying with Section 304.3.

REASON: The commentary to this section states: "The maneuvering clearance can overlap the ramp landing, just not the door or the door swing." This intent is not apparent in the code language. If the intent is to prohibit a door swing from overlapping the minimum required ramp landing, then this should be stated in the code language.

Committee Action: Disapproval 16-5-1
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: While this proposal is appropriate for minimum size ramps and landings, there were a couple of concerns raised that need additional clarification. The committee agrees with the figures in the A117.1 commentary for Section 405.7.5 that illustrated the concerns for persons moving up a ramp to a landing with a door. However, if a ramp is very large, such as in a sports stadium, the doors swinging over the required ramp landing would most likely not be a conflict. If a ramp is for means of egress only, the door could swing over a ramp landing in the direction of travel.

405.7.5-PITTS.doc

Report for 0*4-21– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 16-5-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: While this proposal is appropriate for minimum size ramps and landings, there were a couple of concerns raised that need additional clarification. The committee agrees with the figures in the A117.1 commentary for Section 405.7.5 that illustrated the concerns for persons moving up a ramp to a landing with a door. However, if a ramp is very large, such as in a sports stadium, the doors swinging over the required ramp landing would most likely not be a conflict. If a ramp is for means of egress only, the door could swing over a ramp landing in the direction of travel.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		

Report for 0*4-21– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-22 – 2021
Figures 406.2(A), 406.2(B), 406.3(A), 406.3(B), 406.4, 406.5.2, 406.5.5

Proponent: Billie Louise (Beezy) Bentzen, PhD., Accessible Design for the Blind, representing Association for the Education and Rehabilitation of the Blind and Visually Impaired (AER)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 406
CURB RAMPS AND BLENDED TRANSITIONS

Figures 406.2(A) through 406.5.5
Note: These figures should all show detectable warnings.

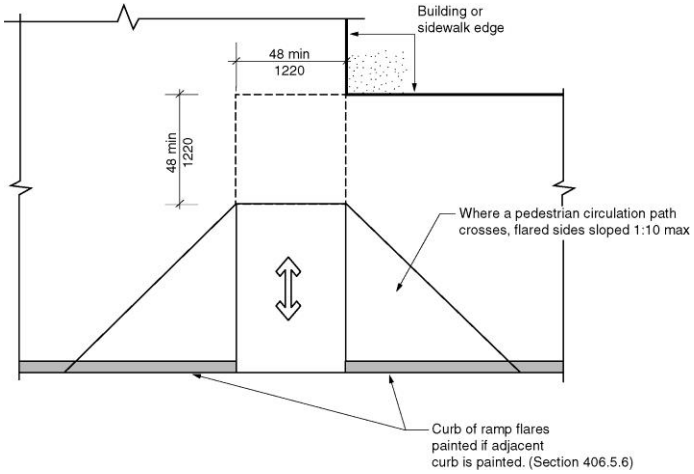


FIGURE 406.2(A)
PERPENDICULAR CURB RAMP

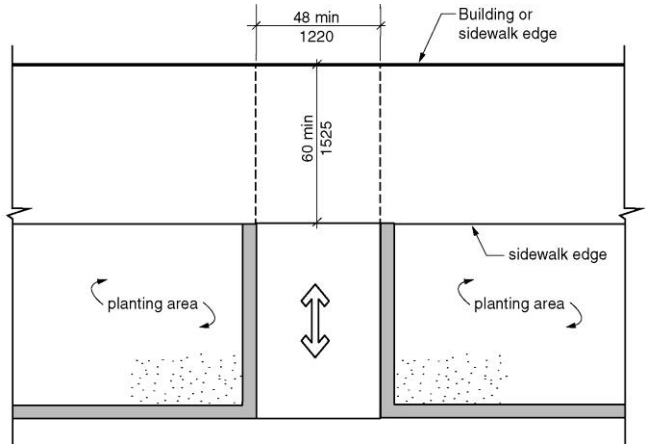


FIGURE 406.2(B)
PERPENDICULAR CURB RAMP

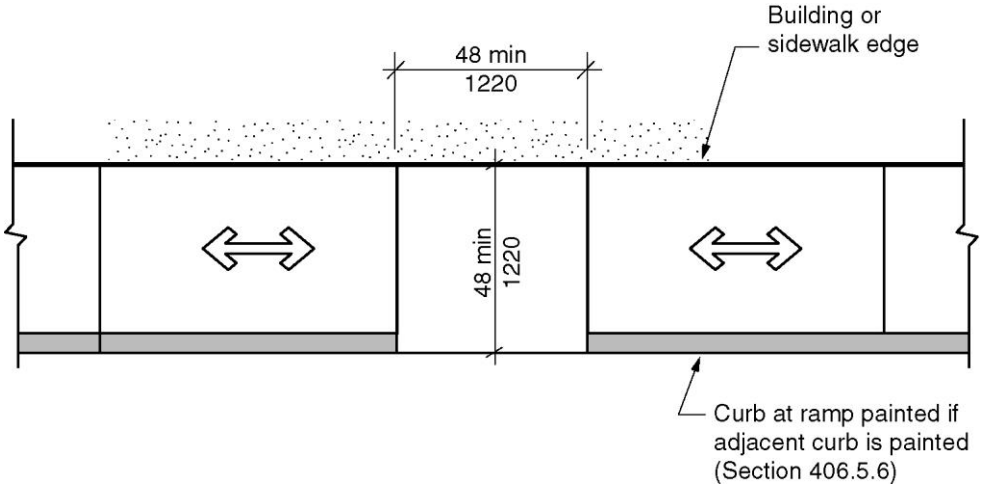


FIGURE 406.3(A)
PARALLEL CURB RAMP

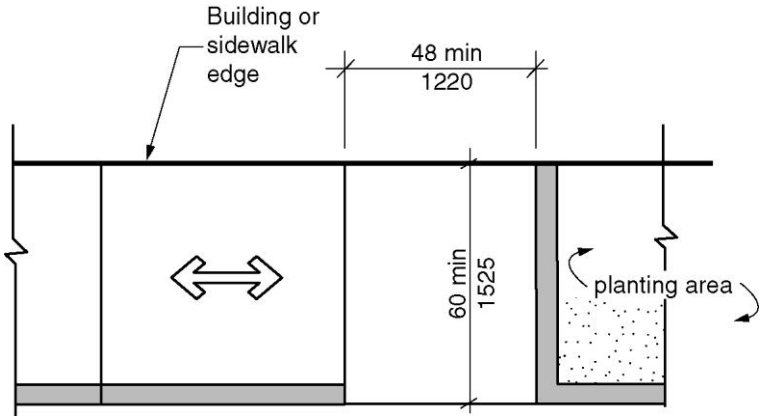


FIGURE 406.3(B)
PARALLEL CURB RAMP

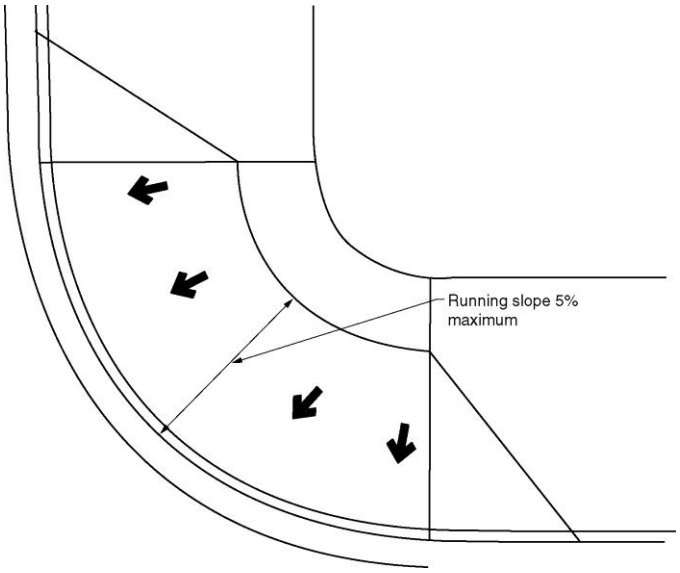


FIGURE 406.4
BLENDED TRANSITION

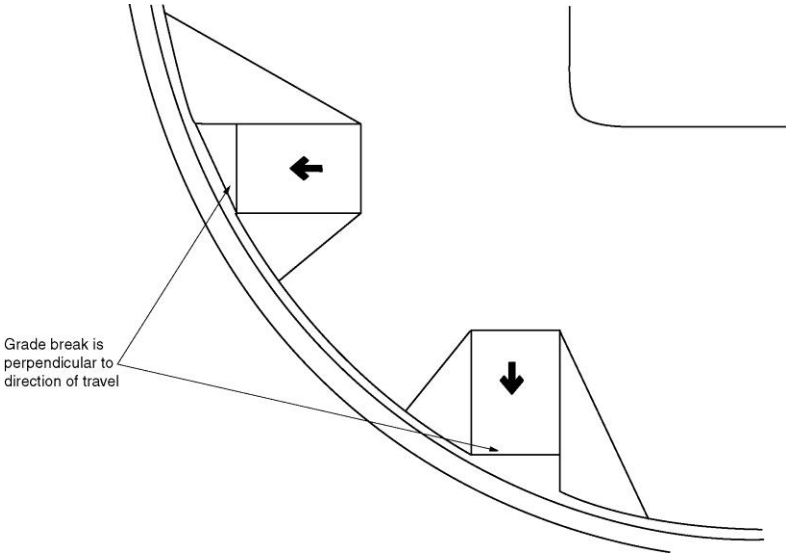


FIGURE 406.5.2
GRADE BREAK

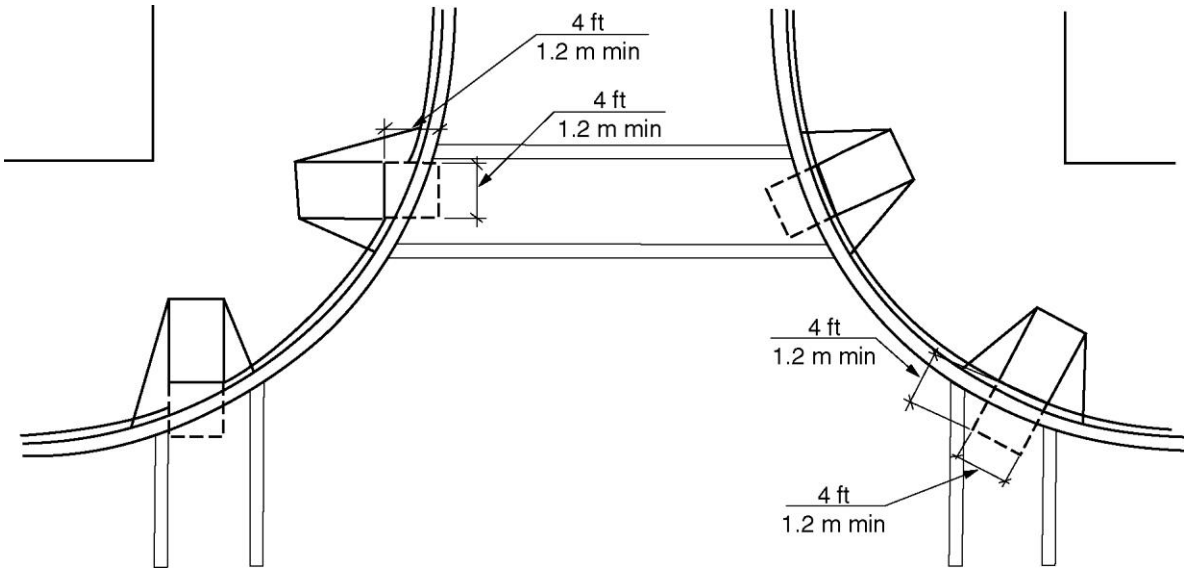


FIGURE 406.5.5
CLEAR SPACE AT BOTTOM OF CURB RAMPS AND BLENDED TRANSITIONS

REASON: Curb ramps are not complete without detectable warnings. While there is a section showing detectable warnings on curb ramps in some detail, they should not be omitted here. It implies that they are not required. Wherever curb ramps are depicted, unless they are not required to have detectable warnings, as in Figure 502.9.1, the detectable warning should be included. Figure 502.9.1.2 correctly includes the detectable warning, even though it is in Section 502 Parking Spaces.

Staff Note: Where detectable warnings are required is indicated in Section 406.6.2.

Committee Action: Approved as Modified (Vote:23-5-5)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Modification 1 to add note to each drawing "See Section 406.6.2 for where detectable warnings are required." (Approved 24-5-5)

Modification 2 to remove showing detectable warnings on each drawing. (Approved 23-5-5)

Proposal as approved as modified (23-5-5)

Committee Reason: The first modification was approved because the committee felt that it was important to clarify that detectable warnings were only required in limited situations, thus the addition of the note in each drawing. The 2nd modification was approved to remove the original proposal's suggestion to show the detectable warning on each curb cut. The committee felt that many people just looked at the pictures rather than the text, so showing the detectable warnings

would be misleading. The final proposal was approved because the committee felt the note would address the concern for where detectable warnings would be required and at the same time not seem to require detectable warnings at all locations – especially at locations where detectable warnings would provide misinformation – like at access aisles or into parking lots. PROWAG requires detectable warnings at street crossings.

Figure 406.2(A) et al-BENTZEN.doc

Report for *04-22– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** 23-5-5	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): Modification 1 to add note to each drawing "See Section 406.6 for where detectable warnings are required." (Approved 24-5-5) Modification 2 to remove showing detectable warnings on each drawing. (Approved 23-5-5)		
Committee Reason: The first modification was approved because the committee felt that it was important to clarify that detectable warnings were only required in limited situations, thus the addition of the note in each drawing. The 2nd modification was approved to remove the original proposal's suggestion to show the detectable warning on each curb cut. The committee felt that many people just looked at the pictures rather than the text, so showing the detectable warnings would be misleading. The final proposal was approved because the committee felt the note would address the concern for where detectable warnings would be required and at the same time not seem to require detectable warnings at all locations – especially at locations where detectable warnings would provide misinformation – like at access aisles or into parking lots. PROWAG requires detectable warnings at street crossings. Send to editorial committee.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-23 – 2021
407, 407.1, 408.1, 409.1

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
PASSENGER ELEVATORS

407.1 General. Elevators shall comply with Sections 408, 409 or 410 and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8. Elevators used on an accessible route shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1/CSA B44. Passenger elevators classified as Limited-Use/Limited-Application complying with Sections 409 and Private Residence elevators complying with Section 410 shall be permitted to be used where permitted by ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

Note: Renumber Sections 407, 408, 409 and 410 and their subsections as indicated.

SECTION ~~407~~ 408
ELEVATORS

~~407.1~~ 408.1 General. Elevators shall comply with Section 407 ~~and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8. Elevators shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1/CSA B44~~. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

SECTION ~~408~~ 409
LIMITED USE/LIMITED APPLICATION ELEVATORS

~~408.1~~ 409.1 General. Limited-use/limited-application elevators shall comply with Section 408 ~~and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8~~. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

SECTION ~~409~~ 410
PRIVATE RESIDENCE ELEVATORS

~~409.1~~ 410.1 General. Private residence elevators shall comply with Section 409 ~~and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8~~. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

~~Exception:~~ ~~Elevators complying with Section 407 or 408 shall not be required to comply with Section 409.~~

SECTION ~~410~~ 411
PLATFORM LIFTS

~~410.1~~ 411.1 General. Platform lifts shall comply with Section 410 and ASME A18.1 listed in Section 106.2.9. Platform lifts shall not be attendant operated and shall provide unassisted entry and exit from the lift.

REASON: The intent of this proposal is to clarify that LULA and Private Residence elevators are a type of passenger elevator and are permitted to be used on an accessible route – when they are used where intended and compliant with the ASME A17.1/CSA B44 standard.

Much like the confusion caused by having Accessible dwelling units and questioning whether Type A and Type B units are also accessible units; where scoping documents require an "Elevator" on an accessible route, it is often perceived as only permitting devices that comply with Section 407 of the standard. The ASME elevator standard classifies LULA and Private Residence elevators as a type of Passenger Elevator. Any of these three types should be allowed to serve as an accessible route – if used appropriately. The A117.1 standard clearly has used and accepted LULAs and Private Residence elevators, but it would just help eliminate questions and confusion as to whether they are a compliant accessible "Elevator" which is often viewed as only being a Section 407 system.

The new general Section 407.1 could be used to eliminate duplicative language found in the existing Sections 407.1, 408.1 and 409.1. For example. all three sections refer to the ASME standard and also require the elevator operation to be automatic. That duplicative language could be deleted since it is addressed by the new general section, or it can be kept to minimize the changes and to reinforce the requirement. Retaining the language within the individual sections does help to coordinate with the ADA.

Another solution if the committee would prefer to not renumber the various sections and keep the A117.1 and the ADA numerically aligned would be to simply insert an exception into the existing Section 407.1 that would use the proposed new sentence or similar language to indicate that the use of a LULA or Private Residence elevator is acceptable where permitted by the elevator standard.

04-23 – 2021 Replacement
402.2

Proponent: Kevin Brinkman, representing NEII

Revise as follows:

402.2 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components: walking surfaces with a running slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, gates, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, blended transitions, passenger elevators, including Limited-Use/Limited-Application elevators and Private Residence elevators, and platform lifts. All components of an accessible route shall comply with the applicable portions of this standard.

Reason: This is an alternative to meet the intent of 04-23-2021. The proponent reason statement indicated that the intent was to clarify that LULA and private residence elevators could be part of an accessible route. This proposed change meets that intent more clearly than the original proposal. The original proposal may cause more confusion due to the renumbering.

Committee Action: 21-13-3 As Modified

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Replace with the following:

402.2 Components. Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components: walking surfaces with a running slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, gates, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, blended transitions, passenger elevators, including Limited-Use/Limited-Application elevators and Private Residence elevators, and platform lifts. All components of an accessible route shall comply with the applicable portions of this standard.

Committee Reason: The added language clarifies that LULAs and private residence elevators can be part of an accessible route where permitted by the scoping and ASME A17.1.

407.1-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *04-23– 20211*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace with the following:** **402.2 Components.** Accessible routes shall consist of one or more of the following components: walking surfaces with a running slope not steeper than 1:20, doors and doorways, gates, ramps, curb ramps excluding the flared sides, blended transitions, passenger elevators, including Limited-Use/Limited-Application elevators and Private Residence elevators, and platform lifts. All components of an accessible route shall comply with the applicable portions of this standard.		
Committee Reason: The added language clarifies that LULAs and private residence elevators can be part of an accessible route where permitted by the scoping and ASME A17.1.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-24 – 2021

107.5, 407.2, 407.2.1, 407.2.1.1, 407.2.1.2, 407.2.1.5, 407.2.1.6, 407.2.1.7, 407.2.3(New) through 407.2.3.10.1(New), 407.2.4.4(New), 407.2.4.4.1(New), 497.2.2.4, 407.2.3.1, 407.2.4, 407.4.7.1.1, 407.4.7.1.2, 407.4.7.1.2.1(New), 407.4.7.2, Figure 407.2.1.7

Proponent: Kevin Brinkman, National Elevator Industry, Inc. (NEII)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 107
DEFINITIONS

107.5 Defined terms.

accessibility function button. A button on an elevator hall call console in a destination-oriented elevator system that, when pressed, will activate a series of visual and verbal prompts and announcements providing instruction regarding hall call console operation and direction to an assigned elevator.

hall call console. An elevator call user interface exclusive to a destination-oriented elevator system that requires the user to select a destination floor prior to entering the elevator car.

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.1 General. Elevators shall comply with Section 407 and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8. Elevators shall be passenger elevators as classified by ASME A17.1/ CSA B44. Elevator operation shall be automatic.

407.2 Elevator landing requirements. Elevator call controls, hall signals and hoistway signs ~~landings~~ shall comply with Section 407.2. Where elevator call buttons, keypads, or hall call consoles are provided, they shall also comply with Section 309.4.

407.2.1 Call Controls. ~~Where elevator call buttons or keypads are provided, they shall also comply with Sections 407.2.1 and 309.4.~~ Call buttons, accessibility function button, and additional feature buttons shall be raised or flush. Objects beneath hall call buttons shall protrude 1 inch (25 mm) maximum.

Exceptions:

1. Existing elevators shall be permitted to have recessed call buttons.
2. The restriction on objects beneath call buttons shall not apply to existing call buttons.

407.2.1.1 Height. Call buttons, ~~and~~ keypads, and hall call consoles shall be located

within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.

Exception: Existing call buttons, ~~and~~ existing keypads and hall call consoles shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.

(Note: No change to figure)
FIGURE 407.2.1.1
HEIGHT OF ELEVATOR CALL BUTTONS

407.2.1.2 Size. ~~Call buttons~~ Buttons shall be $^{3}/_{4}$ inch (19 mm) minimum in the smallest dimension.

Exception: Existing elevator call buttons shall not be required to comply with this section.

407.2.1.3 Clear floor space. A clear floor space shall be provided at call controls

407.2.1.4 Location. The call button that designates theup direction shall be located above the call button that designates the down direction.

Exception: Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with this section.

407.2.1.5 Signals. Call buttons shall have visible signals to indicate when each call is registered and when each call is answered. Call buttons shall provide an audible signal or mechanical motion of the button to indicate when each call is registered.

Exceptions:

1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.1.5~~, provided a visible signal and audible tones and verbal announcements complying with this section are provided~~.
2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with Section 407.2.1.5.

~~**407.2.1.6**~~ **407.2.2 Keypads.** Where keypads are provided, keypads shall be in a standard telephone keypad arrangement complying with Figure 707.5(A) and shall comply with Section 407.4.7.2.

~~**407.2.1.7 Destination-oriented elevator signals.** Destination-oriented elevators shall be provided with a visible signal and audible tones and verbal announcementsto indicate which car is responding to a call. The audible tone and verbal announcement shall be activated bypressing a function button. The function button shall beidentified by the International Symbol for Accessibilityand a raised indication. The International Symbol for Accessibility, complying with Section 703.6.3.1, shall be $^{5}/_{8}$ inch (16 mm) in height and be a visual character complying with Section 703.2. The indication shall be three raised dots, spaced $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) at base diameter, in the form of an equilateral triangle. The functionbutton shall be located immediately below the keypad arrangement or floor buttons.~~

(Delete figure)

~~**FIGURE 407.2.1.7**~~

~~**DESTINATION-ORIENTED ELEVATOR INDICATION**~~

407.2.3 Hall Call Consoles. Hall call consoles shall comply with the following requirements:

407.2.3.1 Location. At least one hall call console in the elevator landing area shall be wall mounted. A minimum of one hoistway entrance shall be adjacent to a hall call console. For a multi-car group, the console shall be located between two entrances.

407.2.3.2 Additional hall call consoles. Additional hall call consoles shall be permitted and can be provided outside the elevator landing area and be wall-mounted, pedestal mounted, or mounted on a kiosk or security turnstile.

407.2.3.3 Required features. Hall call consoles shall include a touch screen or keypad complying with 407.2.2 with display screen, an accessibility function button, and audio output loudspeaker. The accessibility function button shall beidentified by the International Symbol for Accessibility and a raised indication. The International Symbol for Accessibility, complying with Section 703.6.3.1, shall be a minimum of 5/8 inch (16 mm) in height and be a visual character complying with Section 703.2. The indication shall be three raised dots, spaced 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) at base diameter, in the form of an equilateral triangle. The accessibility function button shall be located immediately below the keypad arrangement or floor buttons.

407.2.3.4 Touch screen. Touch screen displays shall comply with 407.2.3.5.

407.2.3.5 Display screen. Upon activation, the display screen shall display information such as user input confirmation, elevator assignment designation, direction to the assigned elevator, and when applicable instruction or error messages.

407.2.3.5.1 Contrast. Display screens shall provide contrast with light characters and symbols on a dark background or dark characters and symbols on a light background. The background shall be solid and static.

407.2.3.5.2 Size. Elevator assignment characters shall be 5/8 inch (16 mm) high minimum.

407.2.3.5.3 Duration. Elevator assignment characters shall be displayed for a minimum of 5 seconds upon activation of the accessibility function button.

407.2.3.6 Audio output. Upon activation of the accessibility function button, the audio output shall provide verbal announcements of operating instructions and information such as, user input confirmation, announcement of the elevator assignment designation, direction to the assigned elevator, and, when applicable, error messages. Audio output shall be recorded, digitized human, or synthesized speech and shall be delivered through a loudspeaker. Auditory volume, measured 35 inches (890 mm) in front of the console,

shall be maintained at a minimum of 10 dBA above ambient. The volume shall not exceed 80 dBA.

407.2.3.7 Arrangement. Hall call console arrangement of required features shall comply with 407.2.3.7.

407.2.3.7.1 Keypad call console arrangement. Where keypad call consoles are provided, the display screen shall be located directly above the keypad. The accessibility function button shall be located directly below the keypad at a height of not less than 30 inches (760 mm), measured to the centerline of the button, above the finished floor.

407.2.3.7.2 Touch screen call console arrangement. Where touch screen call consoles are provided, the touch screen shall be located directly above the accessibility function button. Any portion of the touch screen requiring user input shall be located at a maximum height of 1220 mm (48 inches), above the finished floor. The accessibility function button shall be located at a height not less than 30 inches (760 mm), measured to the centerline of the button, above the finished floor.

407.2.3.7.3 Proximity of required elements. Required features shall be provided on a hall call console assembly or as individual elements grouped in close proximity.

407.2.3.7.4 Position. For hall call consoles required by Section 407.2.3.1, the face of individual elements or group of individual elements that are operated by user input shall be permitted to slope away from the user, at an angle of no more than 25 degrees from the vertical plane. The face of hall call console shall be permitted to be sloped away from the user, at an angle of no more than 25 degrees from the vertical plane. Additional hall call consoles are permitted to have an angle greater than 25 degrees.

407.2.3.8 Additional features. Hall call console additional features, if provided, shall comply with the following requirements:

407.2.3.8.1 Hall call console additional buttons. Hall call console buttons provided in addition to the accessibility function button shall be permitted.

407.2.3.8.1.1 Arrangement. Buttons shall be arranged and located adjacent to the keypad with a minimum spacing from the keypad to the additional buttons of 1.5 times the spacing used for the standard telephone keypad complying with 407.2.2.

407.2.3.8.1.2 Identification. Buttons shall be identified by raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3.1 through 703.3.9 and 703.4.1 through

703.4.4. Identification shall be placed immediately to the left of the control button to which the designation applies.

407.2.3.9 Security or access controls. Security or access control system card readers associated with elevator operation shall be in close proximity to each hall call console in a consistent manner throughout the facility.

407.2.3.10 Elevator car assignment. When the accessibility function button is pressed, the audio output shall provide verbal instruction for the user to enter a destination floor. The selected destination floor shall be confirmed by verbal announcement and on the display screen. Verbal and visible indication of an invalid input shall be provided. The display screen shall indicate the elevator assignment designation and a verbal announcement shall be made of the assigned elevator responding to the call. Visual and verbal direction to the assigned elevator shall be provided.

407.2.3.10.1 Adjacency assignment. When the accessibility function button is pressed, the system shall assign an elevator adjacent to the hall call console unless the adjacent elevator is out of service.

~~407.2.2~~**407.2.4 Hall signals.** Hall signals, including in-car signals, shall comply with Section ~~407.2.2~~ 407.2.4.

~~407.2.2.1~~ **407.2.4.1 Visible and audible signals.** A visible and audible signal shall be provided at each hoistway entrance to indicate which car is answering a call and the car's direction of travel. Where in-car signals are provided they shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call buttons.

Exceptions:

1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with this section, provided a visible signal and audible tones and verbal announcements complying with Section ~~407.2.1.7~~ 402.2.4.4 are provided.
2. In existing elevators, a signal indicating the direction of car travel shall not be required.

~~407.2.2.2~~ **407.2.4.2 Visible signals.** Visible signal fixtures shall be centered at 72 inches (1830 mm) minimum above the floor. The visible signal elements shall be $2\frac{1}{2}$ inches (64 mm) minimum between the uppermost and lowest edges of the illuminated shape measured vertically. Signals shall be visible from the floor area adjacent to the hall call button.

Exceptions:

1. Destination-oriented elevators shall be permitted to have signals visible from the floor area adjacent to the hoistway entrance.
2. Existing elevators shall not be required to comply with this section.

(No change to figure)

FIGURE ~~407.2.2.2~~ 407.2.4.2 (A) ELEVATOR VISIBLE SIGNALS HEIGHT OF SIGNALS

(No change to figure)

FIGURE ~~407.2.2.2~~ 407.2.4.2 (B) ELEVATOR VISIBLE SIGNALS SIZE OF SIGNALS

~~407.2.2.3~~ 407.2.4.3 Audible signals. Audible signals shall sound once for the up direction and twice for the down direction, or shall have verbal annunciators that indicate the direction of elevator car travel. Audible signals shall have a frequency of 1500 Hz maximum. Verbal annunciators shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3,000 Hz maximum. The audible signal or verbal annunciator shall be 10 dBA minimum above ambient, but shall not exceed 80 dBA, measured at the hall call button.

Exceptions:

1. Destination-oriented elevators shall not be required to comply with this section, provided the audible tone and verbal announcement is the same as those given at the call button or call button keypad.
2. The requirement for the frequency and range of audible signals shall not apply in existing elevators.

407.2.4.4 Destination-oriented elevator signals. Destination-oriented elevators shall be provided with hall call consoles complying with Section 407.2.3 and with a visible signal and audible tones and verbal announcements to indicate which car is responding to a call. The audible tone and verbal announcement shall be activated by pressing an accessibility function button.

407.2.4.4.1 Verbal Announcement. When the accessibility function button is pressed, verbal announcement such as the car designation shall be provided at the elevator car entrance upon arrival. Audio output shall be recorded digitized human or synthesized speech and shall be delivered through a loudspeaker. The verbal annunciator shall have a frequency of 300 Hz minimum and 3000 Hz maximum. Auditory volume, measured 35 inches (890 mm) in front of the elevator entrance and at 48 inches (1220 mm) above the floor, shall be maintained at a minimum of 10 dBA. The volume shall not exceed 80 dBA.

407.2.4.5 ~~407.2.2.4~~ Differentiation. Each destination-oriented elevator in a ~~bank~~ group of elevators shall have audible and visible means for differentiation.

~~407.2.3~~ 407.2.5 Hoistway signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with Section ~~407.2.3~~ 407.2.5.

~~407.2.3.1~~ 407.2.5.1 Floor designation. Floor designations shall be provided in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4. Raised characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. Floor designations shall be located on both jambs of elevator hoist-way entrances. A raised star shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level.

(No change to figure)

FIGURE ~~407.2.3.1~~ 407.2.5.1
FLOOR DESIGNATION

~~407.2.3.2~~ 407.2.5.2 Car identification. Destination-oriented elevators cars shall be designated with a single alphabetic character or an alphanumeric designations such as "A1". ~~shall provide~~ ~~car~~ Car identification shall be provided in raised characters and braille complying with Sections ~~703.3~~ 703.3.1 through 703.3.9 and ~~703.4~~ 703.4.1 through 703.4.4. Raised characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. Car identifications shall be located on both jambs of the hoistway immediately below the floor designation.

(No change to figure)

FIGURE ~~407.2.3.2~~ 407.2.5.2
DESTINATION-ORIENTED ELEVATOR CAR IDENTIFICATION

~~407.2.4~~ 407.2.6 Destination signs. Where signs indicate that elevators do not serve all landings, signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections ~~703.3~~ 703.3.1 through 703.3.9 and ~~703.4~~ 703.4.1 through 703.4.4 shallbe provided above the hall call button or keypad.

Exception: Destination oriented elevator systems shallnot be required to comply with this section.

Note: No change to Sections 407.3 through 407.4.6.

407.4.7 Designations and indicators of car controls. Designations and indicators of car controls shall comply with Section 407.4.7.

Exceptions:

1. In existing elevators, where a new car operating panel complying with Section 407.4.7 is provided, existing car operating panels shall not be required to comply with Section 407.4.7.
2. Where existing building floor designations differ from the arrangement required by Section 407.4.6.2.2, or are alphanumeric, a new operating panel shall be permitted to use such existing building floor designations.

407.4.7.1 Buttons. Car control buttons shall comply with Section 407.4.7.1.

407.4.7.1.1 Type. Control buttons shall be identifiedby raised characters and braille complying with Sections ~~703.3~~ 703.3.1 through 703.3.9 and ~~703.4~~ 703.4.1 through 703.4.4.

407.4.7.1.2 Designation. Floors shall be designated . . . -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, etcetera, with floors below the main entry floor designated with minus numbers. Numbers shall be permitted to be omitted, provided the remaining numbers are in sequence. Where a ~~telephone~~ keypad arrangement is used complying with Figure 707.5(A), the number key ("#") shall be utilized to enter the minus symbol ("-"). A minus sign (-) on the lower right button is permitted instead of the number (#) sign. Ancillary letters shall be permitted to be used in conjunction with the numbers, provided the letters are located to the right of the numbers and not more than two letters are used for each floor designation. For access to special floors, such as floors with rear entrances, instructions shall be provided at the keypad or console.

407.4.7.1.2.1 In existing facilities where new elevators are installed or existing elevators are altered into a destination-oriented elevator system, floor designations shall conform to the following:

1. Levels within stories, such as mezzanines located above or below the main entry level shall be permitted to be designated with an alphanumeric character such as "M2", indicating "mezzanine" and the "story number", respectively, in which it is located, provided there is no duplication with alphanumeric designations of elevator cars in the facility. The entire word shall be used, when announced, for the floor description, e.g., "mezzanine" not "M".
2. Non-successive floor numbering shall be permitted.

407.4.7.1.3 Location. Raised character and braille designations shall be placed immediately to the left of the control button to which the designations apply. Where a negative number is used to indicate a negative floor, the braille designation shall be a cell with the dots 3 and 6 followed by the ordinal number.

Exception: Where space on an existing car operating panel precludes raised characters and braille to the left of the control button, markings shall be placed as near to the control button as possible.

407.4.7.1.4 Symbols. The control button for the emergency stop, alarm, door open, door close, main entry floor, and phone, shall be identified with raised symbols and braille as shown in Table 407.4.7.1.4.

TABLE 407.4.7.1.4 -CONTROL BUTTON IDENTIFICATION

(No change to table)

407.4.7.1.5 Visible indicators. Buttons with floor designations shall be provided with visible indicators to show that a call has been registered. The visible indication shall extinguish when the car arrives at the designated floor.

407.4.7.2 Keypads. Keypad keys shall be identified by visual characters complying with Section 703.2 centered on the corresponding keypad button. The number five key shall have a single raised dot. The dot shall have a base diameter of 0.118 inch (3 mm) minimum and 0.120 inch (3.05 mm) maximum, and a height of 0.025 inch (0.6 mm)

minimum and 0.037 inch (0.9 mm) maximum. The dot shall be centrally located.

Note: No changes to remaining sections – 407.4.8 through 407.4.10.3.

REASON: Note: It is not the intent of NEII that any of the changes proposed here override other change proposals from NEII for Section 407. If this change and other changes are approved, the changes will need to be merged/coordinated for the final document.

General Rationale: The purpose of this proposal is to update ICC A117.1 to include additional requirements for destination-oriented elevator systems, including the use of "Touch Screens" and related features such as consoles and function buttons, along with verbal announcements. The following proposals are to harmonize with changes being finalized in ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Appendix E. The proposals were developed to ensure that systems currently designed for compliance with the destination-oriented elevator accessibility requirements in the California Building Code (CBC), would also comply with this code. Also included some editorial clean up to make format consistent with other sections of the standard.

Section 107 Rationale: Proposed revision to add definitions for the accessibility function button and hall call console used by destination-oriented elevator systems.

Section 407.2, 407.2.1, and 407.2.2 Rationale: The proposal restructures this section for inclusion of additional requirements for destination-oriented elevators. The proposal includes language to requires that the accessibility function button and hall consoles be mounted within a specific reach range for easy access. Requirement 407.2.1.7 was relocated to 407.2.4.4 to group with other signals. Added a reference in 407.2.2 to the Figure showing the "standard telephone keypad arrangement." Clarify that 407.2.1.2 applies to all buttons in the hall (call buttons, keypads, and hall call consoles). Current A117.1 requires all buttons including keypad buttons, accessibility button and any optional additional button(s) to be ¾ inch minimum smallest dimension.

Section 407.2.3 Rationale: The proposed revision adds requirements for hall consoles, touch screens, and display screens to harmonize with A17.1/B44 Appendix E. The proposed changes include a requirement that verbal announcements be provided when the accessibility function button is activated. The proposed changes also specify the arrangement for hall call consoles including keypad and touch screen arrangements and their locations, as well as the arrangement and identification of additional buttons and features of the hall call console. The hall call consoles must be able to interface with security systems. A provision is also provided to assign an adjacent car when the accessibility function button is used to select a floor.

Section 407.2.4 Rationale: The proposed revisions groups the hall signal requirements. It requires verbal announcements in the car when the car stops to answer the call and at the car entrance when the car arrives to answer the call. The requirements for volume characteristics are consistent with other announcements. Requirement 407.2.4.4 was relocated from 407.2.1.7 to group with other signals. The word "Accessibility" was added to clarify the purpose of the function button and "minimum" was added to clarify that the size for the symbol is a minimum. The language was revised to use the term "group" instead of "bank" to be consistent with common industry terminology.

Section 407.2.5 and 407.2.6 Rationale: The requirements are being renumbered as part of the overall reformatting. 407.2.5.2 was revised to provide identification of cars with an alphabetic identification, or alpha-numeric identification, if necessary.

Section 407.2.7.1 Rationale: The references are being revised to ensure that they align with the exceptions in 703.3 and 703.4 since elevators are exempted from 703.3.10 and 703.4.5 already and 703.3.11 does not apply to elevators (only door signs). Currently, A117.1 requires the use of the number (#) button to indicate minus (-). The California Building Code requires the use of the minus (-) symbol. This proposal is to permit either symbol to be used. Also added a requirement for instructions be provided to access special floors. In existing buildings, the convention for numbering of floors may already be established and should not need to be revised. Where special names such as "mezzanine" are used, the entire word should be announced, not just the first letter. Also provided an exception for buildings where a certain floor number is not to be used.

Section 407.2.7.2 Rationale: The proposed revision clarifies the position for the dot on the "5" key to align with changes to Appendix E. That change was made based on input from a committee member with limited vision who indicated that if the dot is not centered, it impairs quick location of the "5" key.

Committee Action: 28-3-4 As Submitted
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The new requirements for destination oriented elevators will clarify requirements and improve accessibility. This is also coordinated with ASME A17.1.

407.6.4 et al-BRINKMAN.doc

Report for 0*4-24– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-3-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The new requirements for destination oriented elevators will clarify requirements and improve accessibility. This is also coordinated with ASME A17.1.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-25 – 2021
407.2.1.1

Proponent: Kevin Brinkman representing National Elevator Industry, Inc. (NEII)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.2.1.1 Height. Call buttons and keypads shall be located ~~within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part~~ vertically between 30 inches (760 mm) and 48 inches (1 220 mm) above the floor, measured to the centerline of the respective button.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. Existing call buttons and existing keypads shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.
2. Where additional call buttons, keypads or other means are provided, they shall be permitted to be located outside the specified reach range.

REASON: The proposed change would specify an upper and lower range rather than the more general reference to reach ranges and clarify that the all the buttons need to be within the range. This is similar the requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Appendix E. The additional exception allows alternate technologies, such as foot controls, in addition to the required controls. Figure 407.2.1.1 should either be deleted or be updated to accurately reflect the prescriptive requirement. *The minimum height was chosen to align with a more appropriate value for lower reach for a standing person and is still well above the lower reach for a person in a wheelchair (15 inches).*

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): Question was split into 2 parts

Main paragraph Committee Action:	28-1-2	As Modified
Exception 2 Committee Action:	29-3-5	Disapproved

Further modify as follows:

407.2.1.1 Height. Call buttons and keypads shall be located vertically ~~between~~ 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1 220 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the centerline of the ~~respective button~~ operable parts.

Exception: Existing call buttons and existing keypads shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.

Committee Reason: The modifications to the first sentence for the dimensions was to allow for a range that included end points. The modification to change 'respective button' to 'operable parts' was to address keypads. The committee approved the changes to the main paragraph as providing a better range and information on call buttons. The committee voted to disapprove the new Exception 2 because they felt it was too broad and could be interpreted incorrectly for situations where there were multiple call buttons in the same elevator lobby.

407.2.1.1-BRINKMAN.doc

Report for *04-25– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-1-2/29-3-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **407.2.1.1 Height**. Call buttons and keypads shall be located vertically ~~between~~ 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1 220 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the centerline of the ~~respective button~~ operable parts. **Exception:** Existing call buttons and existing keypads shall be permitted to be located 54 inches (1370 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the centerline of the highest operable part.		
Committee Reason: The modifications to the first sentence for the dimensions was to allow for a range that included end points. The modification to change 'respective button' to 'operable parts' was to address keypads. The committee approved the changes to the main paragraph as providing a better range and information on call buttons. The committee voted to disapprove the new Exception 2 because they felt it was too broad and could be interpreted incorrectly for situations where there were multiple call buttons in the same elevator lobby.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-26 – 2021
407.2.3.1

Proponent: Kevin Brinkman, representing National Elevator Industry, Inc. (NEII)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.2.3 Hoistway signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with Section 407.2.3.

407.2.3.1 Floor designation. Floor designations shall be provided in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4. Raised characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. Floor designations shall be located on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. A raised star, placed to the left of the floor designation, shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level. The outside diameter of the star shall be 2 inches (51 mm) and all points shall be of equal length.

REASON: The proposed change would clarify the location for the star symbol and provide requirements for the size and shape of the symbol.

Staff note: Tabled until 7/14/22 meeting along with 04-27 & 04-28

Committee Action: 20-0-4 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Disapproval based on previous committee action on 04-27.

407.2.3-BRINKMAN.doc

Report for 0*4-26– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 20-0-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Disapproval based on previous committee action on 04-27.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		

Report for 0*4-26– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-27 – 2021
407.2.3.1

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.2.3 Hoistway signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with Section 407.2.3.

407.2.3.1 Floor designation. Floor designations shall be provided in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4. Raised characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) ~~minimum~~ in height. Floor designations shall be located on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. A raised star shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level. The outside diameter of the star shall be 2 inches (51 mm) and all points shall be of equal length.

REASON: This has two changes focused on the same issue. The first is to delete the word "minimum" from the requirement. The height of the floor designation characters must be standardized. I have recently seen a proposal for floor numbers that were 5 inches in height. Most of the time, the characters are a standard 2-inch height but not always. This also make them the same size on every floor which would not be required if the work "minimum" was maintained.

The second is to make sure that the star stays a star, consistent with the image in Table 407.4.7.1.4. The current text only addresses height and results in many cases of having a star that is 2 inches high and 1 inch wide. The added sentence is borrowed from the California Building Code which amends that comparable section of the 2010 Standards in their adoption.

04-27 – 2021 Replacement modification
407.2.3.1

Proponent: Kevin Brinkman, representing the Communications Task Group

Replace the proposal with the following:

407.2.3.1 Floor designation. Floor designations shall be provided in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4, except that raised~~. Raised~~ characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. Floor designations shall be located on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. A raised five-pointed star polygon that is equilateral and equiangular, shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level~~.~~ and shall be placed to the left of the floor designation. The star symbol and braille shall

be as shown in Table 407.4.7.1.4. The height of the star shall match the height of the floor designation measured from the base of the star to the top of the star. The entire surface of the star shall be raised.

Note: *Modify Fig. 407.2.3.1 to show dimensions from base of star to top of star*
Figure 407.2.3.1
Floor Designation

Reason: The intent of the modification is to 1) clarify that the character height is an exception to the requirements in 703.3 and 703.4 and is not in conflict, 2) to specify the location of the star relative to the floor designation, and to 3) provide additional requirements for the star to ensure that it is filled in and proportional.

For reference:
https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Star_polygon#Regular_star_polygon. Description for a "pentagram" which is a "five-pointed star polygon that is equilateral and equiangular".

Staff note: Tabled until 7/14/22 meeting along with 04-26 & 04-28

Committee Action: 19-2-5 Approved as Modified
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Replace the proposal with the following:

407.2.3.1 Floor designation. Floor designations shall be provided in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4, except that raised~~. Raised~~ characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. Floor designations shall be located on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. A raised five-pointed star polygon that is equilateral and equiangular, shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level~~.~~ and shall be placed to the left of the floor designation. The star symbol and braille shall be as shown in Table 407.4.7.1.4. The height of the star shall match the height of the floor designation measured from the base of the star to the top of the star. The entire surface of the star shall be raised.

Note: *Modify Fig. 407.2.3.1 to show dimensions from base of star to top of star*
Figure 407.2.3.1
Floor Designation

Committee Reason: The modification replaced the original proposal. This proposal clarified that at the jambs of elevators, the numbers should be larger than the standard raised letter requirement to allow for the number to serve both as a visual and tactile sign. The letters will not be too large because the size is limited by the size of the jamb. The modification clarified the requirements for the star, including shape, location, solid, braille and the size.

407.2.3.1-BOECKER.doc

Report for 0*4-27– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 19-2-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace the proposal with the following:** **407.2.3.1 Floor designation.** Floor designations shall be provided in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4, except that raised. ~~Raised~~ characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) minimum in height. Floor designations shall be located on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. A raised five-pointed star polygon that is equilateral and equiangular, shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level~~.~~ and shall be placed to the left of the floor designation. The star symbol and braille shall be as shown in Table 407.4.7.1.4. The height of the star shall match the height of the floor designation measured from the base of the star to the top of the star. The entire surface of the star shall be raised. **Note:** *Modify Fig. 407.2.3.1 to show dimensions from base of star to top of star*		
Committee Reason: The modification replaced the original proposal. This proposal clarified that at the jambs of elevators, the numbers should be larger than the standard raised letter requirement to allow for the number to serve both as a visual and tactile sign. The letters will not be too large because the size is limited by the size of the jamb. The modification clarified the requirements for the star, including shape, location, solid, braille and the size.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-28 – 2021
407.2.3.1

Proponent: Sharon Toji, Access Communications

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.2.3 Hoistway signs. Signs at elevator hoistways shall comply with Section 407.2.3.

407.2.3.1 Floor designation. Floor designations shall be provided in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4. Raised characters shall be 2 inches (51 mm) ~~minimum~~ in height. Floor designations shall be located on both jambs of elevator hoistway entrances. A raised star shall be provided on both jambs at the main entry level. When a star and a floor designation are provided, both the star and the floor designation shall be accompanied by braille.

REASON: Almost universally, elevator hoistway signs on the main floor of buildings include braille only for the star and not the floor designation. Often people need to know what floor they are on, not that it is the exit floor. Since elevator installers don't seem to look carefully at the figure, and it is the text that provides the legal requirement, this addition appears necessary.

Staff note: Tabled until 7/14/22 meeting along with 04-26 & 04-27

Committee Action: 21-1-1 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Disapproval based on previous committee action on 04-27.

407.2.3.1-TOJI.doc

Report for 0*4-28– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-1-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Disapproval based on previous committee action on 04-27.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		

Report for 0*4-28– 2021*		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-29 – 2021
407.4.6.4, 407.4.6.4.1, 407.4.6.4.2

Proponent: Kevin Brinkman, National Elevator Industry, Inc. (NEII)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.4.6.4 Emergency controls. Emergency ~~controls~~ alarm or emergency stop, when provided, shall comply with Section 407.4.6.4.

407.4.6.4.1 Height. ~~Emergency control~~ The buttons shall have their centerlines ~~35~~ 30 inches (~~890~~ 760 mm) minimum above the floor.

407.4.6.4.2 Location. ~~Emergency control, including the emergency alarm,~~ The buttons shall be ~~grouped at the bottom of the panel~~ below the car call buttons in Section 407.4.6.2 or 407.4.7.1.

REASON: ASME A17.1/CSA B44 has deleted the requirement for emergency controls (previously emergency stop switch and emergency alarm); however, some local jurisdictions still require an emergency alarm button or emergency stop. This change clarifies that the location is to be below the car call buttons but not below some other fixture features such as a locked access panel to elevator personnel specific controls. The height was changed to align with a more appropriate value for lower reach for a standing person and is still well above the lower reach for a person in a wheelchair (15 inches). Moving the lower limit allows more room to fit the elevator floor selection buttons within the required reach range which will improve accessibility.

Committee Action: 30-0-4 As Modified

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Mod passes 24-3-4

Further modify as follows:

407.4.6.4 Emergency controls. Emergency alarm ~~or~~ and emergency stop, ~~when~~ where provided, shall comply with Section 407.4.6.4.

407.4.6.4.1 Height. The buttons shall have their centerlines 30 inches (760 mm) minimum above the floor.

407.4.6.4.2 Location. The buttons shall be below the car ~~call~~ control buttons ~~in~~ complying with Section 407.4.6.2 or 407.4.7.1.

Committee Reason: In Section 407.4.6.4 - The modification for or to and was so that both controls have to comply. The modification for when to where was for proper code language. In Section 407.4.6.4.2 - The modification to change call to control was a correction to make the terms consistent. The modification to change in to complying with was for a better pointer. The proposal was approved as a coordination with ASME A17.1 requirements for emergency alarm and emergency stop buttons.

407.4.6.4-BRINKMAN.doc

Report for 0*4-29– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 30-0-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **407.4.6.4 Emergency controls.** Emergency alarm ~~or~~ and emergency stop, ~~when~~ where provided, shall comply with Section 407.4.6.4. **407.4.6.4.1 Height.** The buttons shall have their centerlines 30 inches (760 mm) minimum above the floor. **407.4.6.4.2 Location.** The buttons shall be below the car ~~call~~ control buttons ~~in~~ complying with Section 407.4.6.2 or 407.4.7.1.		
Committee Reason: In Section 407.4.6.4 - The modification for or to and was so that both controls have to comply. The modification for when to where was for proper code language. In Section 407.4.6.4.2 - The modification to change call to control was a correction to make the terms consistent. The modification to change in to complying with was for a better pointer. The proposal was approved as a coordination with ASME A17.1 requirements for emergency alarm and emergency stop buttons.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-30 – 2021
407.4.7.1.1

Proponent: Marsha K. Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.4.7.1 Buttons. Car control buttons shall comply with Section 407.4.7.1.

407.4.7.1.1 ~~Type~~ Control Identification. Control buttons shall be identified by raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3.1 through 703.3.9 and 703.4.1 through 703.4.4. Either the raised characters or identification provided on the face of the control buttons shall contrast visually with their background with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background. Contrasting identification provided on control buttons shall not rely on internal illumination of the button.

REASON: People with usable low vision typically do not read tactilely. Often, such people complain about unreadable elevator car controls. We are proposing to omit the reference to Section 703.3.12 *Finish and Contrast* on raised characters. This subsection contains an exception that allows raised characters to not comply with the requirements for finish and contrast where separate visual characters with the same information are provided.

Although visual characters on signs would be required to comply with the provisions for finish and contrast, elevator car controls are not subject to the requirements for visual characters. Therefore, people with low vision are not afforded visual access to car control identification provided. This proposal would remedy that oversight and would allow two options for providing visual contrast. We deliberately did not propose to require compliance with Section 703.3.12 because that section contains provisions for a non-glare finish which might be difficult to achieve on a lighted car control button. The additional changes to the referenced sections align with the exceptions in 703.3 and 703.4 since elevators are exempted from 703.3.10 and 703.4.5 and 703.3.11 does not apply to elevators (only signs).

We also proposed a change to the section title because the word “type” fails to describe the subject of the requirement and the word is not used in the text.

Committee Action: 26-2-5 As Modified
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Further modify as follows:

407.4.7.1.1 Control Identification. Control buttons shall be identified by raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3.1 through 703.3.9 and 703.4.1 through 703.4.4. Either the ~~raised characters or~~ identification provided on the face of the control buttons or raised characters shall contrast visually with their background with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background. Contrasting identification provided on control buttons shall not rely on internal illumination of the button.

Committee Reason: The modification to move the phrase "raised character" is editorial and clarifies that there are two distinct locations. The proposal was approved. The change to the first sentence is a more specific reference. The added text adds appropriate requirements for contrast (similar to Section 703.3.12). The contrast should not rely on the buttons lighting up because that is typically when the floors are registered for the elevator to stop.

407.4.7.1.1-MAZZ.doc

Report for *04-30– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-2-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **407.4.7.1.1 Control Identification.** Control buttons shall be identified by raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3.1 through 703.3.9 and 703.4.1 through 703.4.4. Either the ~~raised characters or~~ identification provided on the face of the control buttons or raised characters shall contrast visually with their background with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background. Contrasting identification provided on control buttons shall not rely on internal illumination of the button.		
Committee Reason: The modification to move the phrase "raised character" is editorial and clarifies that there are two distinct locations. The proposal was approved. The change to the first sentence is a more specific reference. The added text adds appropriate requirements for contrast (similar to Section 703.3.12). The contrast should not rely on the buttons lighting up because that is typically when the floors are registered for the elevator to stop.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-31 – 2021
407.4.7.1.2

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.4.7.1.2 Designation. Floors shall be designated . . . -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4, etcetera, with floors below the main entry floor designated with minus numbers. Numbers shall be permitted to be omitted, provided the remaining numbers are in sequence. Where a telephone keypad arrangement is used, the number key ("#") shall be utilized to enter the minus symbol ("-"). Ancillary letters shall be permitted to be used in conjunction with the numbers, provided the letters are located to the right of the numbers and not more than two letters are used for each floor designation. The font style for letters and number shall be consistent and the same as that used for hoistway markings complying with Section 407.2.3.1.

REASON: A key factor in any type of reading is anticipation and the reduction of conflicting messages. Therefore, the font style used should be consistent for use with the elevator. That way reading the tactile characters inside the car is not different from that of the hoistway markings.

Committee Action: 25-0-1 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the font style is already addressed in other sections of the code.

407.4.7.1.2-BOECKER.doc

Report for 0*4-31– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the font style is already addressed in other sections of the code.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		

Report for 0*4-31– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-32 – 2021
106.2.5(New), 407.4.10

Proponent: Andrew CID, representing Barrier Free Solutions for the Deaf and Hard of Hearing LLC

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.4.10 Emergency communications. Emergency live two-way communication systems between an elevator car and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with Section 407.4.10, International Building Code Section 3001.2 listed in Section 106.2.5 and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8.

SECTION 106
REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

106.2.5 International Building Code. International Code Council (ICC) International Building Code-2024.

REASON: This proposal is being submitted as there is no standard published, as of this writing, under the a117.1 Standard on Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities in full and explicit support of the approved code under International Building Code Section 3001.2 regards to communication accessibility in elevators for the Deaf and Hard of Hearing community. Additionally, the current ASME a17.1 elevator revision as of 2019 provides only a slight reference in "2.27.1.1.3.d" and "2.27.1.1.4.e" regards to accessibility for the hearing impaired. (the a17.1 elevator language can and will be improved upon in the next a17.1 revision). The latest ASME a17.1 revision was a result of a task group collaboration and consensus, of which I was a contributing member of.

But for this a117.1 standard, my proposal is being submitted because the current section that needs to be amended does not provide any language to reflect the need for equal accessibility for the hearing impaired, which is the heart and intent of the current IBC code under 3001.2, which I proposed in 2018 and is effective 2021.

This proposed new standard a117.1 change seeks to provide equal accessibility for the approximately 50M Deaf and Hard of Hearing in the USA. This standard proposal also provides clarification for industry. Underlined wording is new and is added text to capture the intent of the proposal. This proposal clarifies as to what type of features and assistance is required and which shall be provided for the utilization of an available option of a visual and text-based live two-way communication system by an entrapped Deaf or Hard of Hearing passenger(s). The standard change proposal will neither increase or decrease the cost of construction as it is a clarification of requirements and points to a new code reference for elevators. I proposed this (a117.1) in 2015 but was not successful at the time due to my own lack of research, code

support, and adequate data. But now that IBC 3001.2 recognizes and references the need for equal communication access for all, coupled with the new ASME a17.1 elevator reference published as of 2019, I am now confident that the a117.1 standard committee will seriously consider approving this proposed standard for inclusion into the next revision to the benefit of almost 1/4 of the US populace. Lastly, there is no need for me to attach proof of media documentation to support the need for equal communication access for everyone with this proposal as we are all aware that there is an already obvious need for this standard in elevators. As stated, this is evidenced by the numerous news stories of people getting trapped / stuck or dying in malfunctioning elevators. The proposal speaks for itself. However, if any one requests proof of media coverage of such events, I will be happy to forward that as well.

Staff note: Code change G177-21 was approved as modified by public comment 1. 2024 IBC Section 3001.2 will reference ASME A17.1 for two way communication.

The *2021 International Building Code* can be viewed on the ICC website at https://codes.iccsafe.org/content/IBC2021P2.

Committee Action: 23-2-1 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The term 'live' proposed for the first sentence is not clear, and how a call was received is sufficiently addressed in the elevator standard requirements. The International Building Code does not need to be addressed because the scoping is what sends you to the standard. Referencing back is not needed.

407.4.10-ANDREW_CID.doc

Report for 0*4-32– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-2-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The term 'live' proposed for the first sentence is not clear, and how a call was received is sufficiently addressed in the elevator standard requirements. The International Building Code does not need to be addressed because the scoping is what sends you to the standard. Referencing back is not needed.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

04-33 – 2021
407.4.10.1, 407.4.10.3, 407.4.10.4(New), 407.4.10.4.1(New), 407.4.10.4.2(New)

Proponent: Kevin Brinkman, National Elevator Industry, Inc. (NEII)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 407
ELEVATORS

407.4.10 Emergency communications. Emergency ~~two-way~~ communication systems between an elevator car and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with Section 407.4.10 and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8.

407.4.10.1 Height. ~~The highest operable part of a two-way communication system shall comply with Section 308.~~ Operable parts of the communication system shall be located between 30 inches (760 mm) and 48 inches (1 220 mm) above the floor.

407.4.10.2 Identification. Raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 and raised symbols complying with Section 407.4.7.1.4 shall be provided adjacent to the device.

407.4.10.3 Instructions. Where instructions for use are provided, essential ~~information~~ instructions shall be presented in visual form, raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.2, 703.3 and 703.4.

407.4.10.4 Message Display Screen.

407.4.10.4.1 Visibility. The display screen shall be visible from a point located 40 inches (1015 mm) above the center of the clear floor space, 24 inches (610 mm) immediately in front of the car operating panel.

407.4.10.4.1 Characters. Characters displayed on the screen shall be in a conventional form. Characters shall not be italic, oblique, script, highly decorative or other unusual forms. The uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable height of all characters of the font. The uppercase letter "I" of the font shall be 3/16 inch (4.8 mm) minimum in height. Characters shall contrast with their background with either light characters on a dark background, or dark characters on a light background.

REASON: The reference to Section 308 would require the operable parts to be located 48 inches maximum and 15 inches minimum above the floor. The lower limit of 15 inches was necessary for older elevators that used a traditional phone handset with a cord because a phone box needed

to be located below the car operating panel. Modern phone systems use a single push button which can be easily located in or near the car operating panel. The 30-inch dimension was chosen to allow the phone button to be located directly below the car operating panel.

ASME A17.1-2019/CSA B44:19 requires an in-car message display to be used by an elevator occupant who may not be able to communicate audibly to emergency personnel. The visibility of the display is to accommodate a wheelchair user through a standing adult, modeled after 707.7.1 for automatic teller machines and fare machines. The font style is the style required for general visual characters in section 703.2.3 and the font size is the size required for the displays used on automatic teller machines and fare machines in section 707.7.2.

The term "two-way" is removed from the requirement because it is included in the referenced requirements in ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and some communication components may not provide effective two-way communications between every passenger and every responder. Some passengers may only communicate verbally while others may only communicate visually therefore it is the collection of all communication components, audible and visual that provides the total communication functionality.

The word 'information" was changed to "instructions" to align with the title and contents of the requirement.

04-33 – 2021 modification

407.4.10.1, 407.4.10.3, 407.4.10.4(New), 407.4.10.4.1(New), 407.4.10.4.2(New)

Proponent: Kevin Brinkman, National Elevator Industry, Inc. (NEII)

Further modify as follows:

> **407.4.10.1 Height.** Operable parts of the communication system shall be located ~~between~~ 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1 220 mm) maximum above the floor.

Reason: Editorial. To clarify that 30 and 48 inches are part of the range.

Staff Note: Question Divided.

Committee Action: Part 1 - Section 407.4.10 – remove "two-way" AS 4-18-3; D 21-3-1
Part 2 - Remainder of proposal – AS 22-0-3 with editorial modification

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Further modify as follows:

407.4.10 Emergency communications. Emergency two-way communication systems between an elevator car and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with Section 407.4.10 and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8.

407.4.10.1 Height. Operable parts of the communication system shall be located ~~between~~ 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1 220 mm) maximum above the floor.

Committee Reason: The term "two-way" was reinserted in Section 407.4.10 because the committee felt that since this is included in ASME A17.1 it would not be a conflict and would make the overall intent of the section clearer. The modification to Section 407.4.10.1 is editorial.

The change to Section 407.4.10.1 improved the reach for the operable parts. The additional requirement for the display screen provided appropriate requirements for placement and the information on the screen.

407.4.10-BRINKMAN.doc

Report for 0*4-33– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 22-0-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **407.4.10 Emergency communications.** Emergency two-way communication systems between an elevator car and a point outside the hoistway shall comply with Section 407.4.10 and ASME A17.1/CSA B44 listed in Section 106.2.8. **407.4.10.1 Height.** Operable parts of the communication system shall be located ~~between~~ 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1 220 mm) maximum above the floor.		
Committee Reason: The term "two-way" was reinserted in Section 407.4.10 because the committee felt that since this is included in ASME A17.1 it would not be a conflict and would make the overall intent of the section clearer. The modification to Section 407.4.10.1 is editorial. The change to Section 407.4.10.1 improved the reach for the operable parts. The additional requirement for the display screen provided appropriate requirements for placement and the information on the screen.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report
Chapter 5

05-01 – 2021
502.1, 502.2, 502.3, 502.3.1(New), 502.3.2(New), 502.4, 502.4.1, 502.4.2, 502.4.4, 502.6, 502.7, 502.8

Proponent: Bradley Gaskins, AIA CASp, The McIntosh Group, LLC

Revise as follows:

SECTION 502
PARKING SPACES

502.1 General. ~~Car and van~~ Automobile parking spaces in parking lots shall comply with Sections 502.2 through 502.8. Automobile ~~Car and van~~ parking spaces provided as part of on-street parking shall comply with Sections 502.9 and 502.10. Where an electrical vehicle charging station is provided at a parking space, it shall comply with Section 502.11.

502.2 Vehicle space size. ~~Car parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width.~~ Automobile ~~Van~~ parking spaces shall be ~~132~~ 144 inches (~~3355~~ 3660 mm) minimum in width.

~~Exception:~~ ~~Where the adjacent access aisle is 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width, van parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width.~~

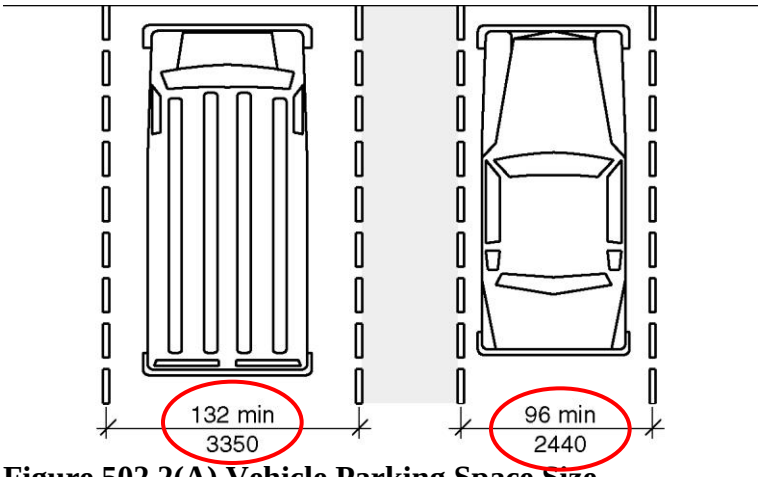
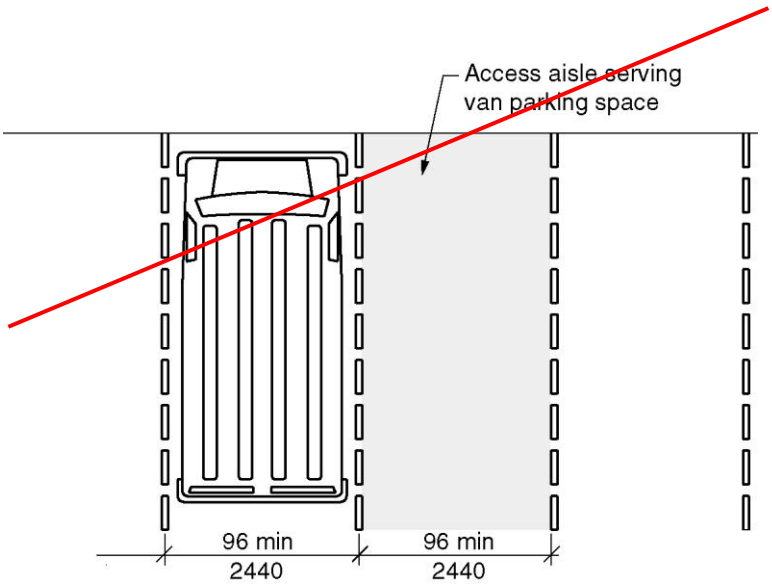


Figure 502.2~~(A)~~ Vehicle Parking Space Size



~~**Figure 502.2(B) Van Parking Space Size Exception**~~

502.3 Vehicle space marking. Automobile ~~Car and van~~ parking spaces shall be marked to define the width with 4 inch (100 mm) minimum wide lines. Where parking spaces are marked with lines, the width measurements of parking spaces and adjacent access aisles shall be made from the centerline of the markings. Where parking spaces are adjacent to curbs or non-paved areas the lines on the side of the curb or other non-paved area shall be permitted to be omitted.

Exception: Where parking spaces or access aisles are not adjacent to another parking space or access aisle, measurements shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the parking space or access aisle.

502.3.1 Vehicle space outline. Automobile parking spaces shall be outlined with 4 inch (100 mm) minimum wide stripes on each side of the space. The lines shall be blue in color.

502.3.2 International Symbol of Accessibility. The parking space shall be marked with an International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1 in white on a blue background 36 inches (915 mm) minimum wide by 36 inches (915 mm) high minimum outlined with 4 inches (100mm) minimum wide lines. The centerline of the International Symbol of Accessibility shall be a maximum of 6 inches (152 mm) from the centerline of the parking space, its sides parallel to the length of the parking space and its lower corner at, or lower side aligned with, the end of the parking space.

502.4 Access aisle. Automobile ~~Car and van~~ parking spaces shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with Section 502.4.

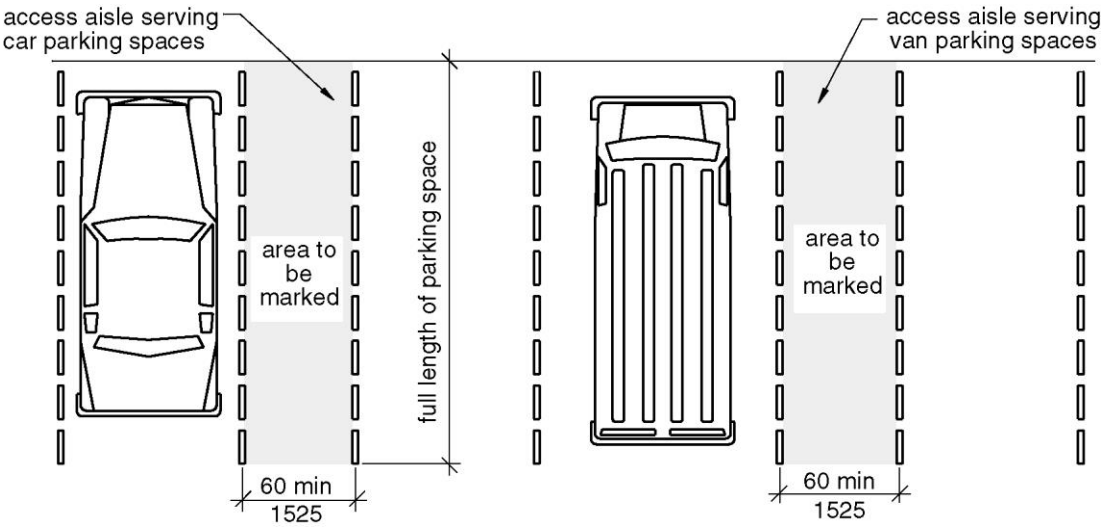


Figure 502.4 Parking Space Access Aisle

Staff note: If this proposal is approved, direction is required for revising this figure

502.4.1 Location. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Two parking spaces shall be permitted to share a common access aisle. Access aisles shall not overlap with the vehicular way. Parking spaces shall be permitted to have access aisles placed on either side of the car or van parking space. Designated van ~~Van~~ parking spaces that are angled shall have access aisles located on the passenger side of the parking space.

502.4.2 Width. Access aisles serving automobile ~~car and van~~ parking spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width.

502.4.3 Length. Access aisles shall extend the full length of the parking spaces they serve.

502.4.4 Marking. Access aisles shall be marked with 4 inch (100 mm) minimum wide lines and with 4 inch (100 mm) minimum wide diagonal lines ~~so as to discourage parking in them~~. The lines shall be white in color. The words "NO PARKING" in all capital letters shall be painted on the surface centered within the access aisle in white letters 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in height and located to be visible from the adjacent vehicular way. Where access aisles are marked with lines, the width measurements of access aisles and adjacent parking spaces shall be made from the centerline of the markings.

Exception: Where access aisles or parking spaces are not adjacent to another access aisle or parking space, measurements shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the access aisle or parking space.

502.5 Floor surfaces. Parking spaces and access aisles shall comply with Section 302 and have surface slopes not steeper than 1:48. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the parking spaces they serve.

502.6 Vertical clearance. A vertical clearance of 98 inches (2490 mm) minimum shall be provided at the following locations:

1. Automobile parking ~~Parking~~ spaces ~~for vans~~.

2. The access aisles serving automobile parking spaces ~~for vans~~.
3. The vehicular routes serving automobile parking spaces for vans.

502.7 Identification. Where parking spaces are required to be identified by signs, the signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1. Signs identifying ~~van~~ automobile parking spaces shall contain the designation "van accessible." Signs shall be ~~60~~ 80 inches (~~1525~~ 2035 mm) minimum above the floor of the parking space, measured to the bottom of the sign.

502.8 Relationship to accessible routes. Parking spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that automobiles ~~cars and vans~~, when parked, do not obstruct the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes.

502.9 On street parking spaces. On-street parallel parking spaces shall comply with Section 502.9.1. On-street perpendicular or angled parking shall comply with Section 502.9.2.

502.9.2 Perpendicular or angled parking spaces. Where perpendicular or angled parking is provided the width of the parking space shall be 144 inches(3660 mm) wide minimum and an access aisle ~~96~~ 60 inches (~~2440~~ 1525 mm) wide minimum shall be provided at street level the full length of the parking space and shall connect to a pedestrian access route. The access aisle shall comply with Section 502.4 and shall be marked so as to discourage parking in the access aisle. Two parking spaces are permitted to share a common access aisle.

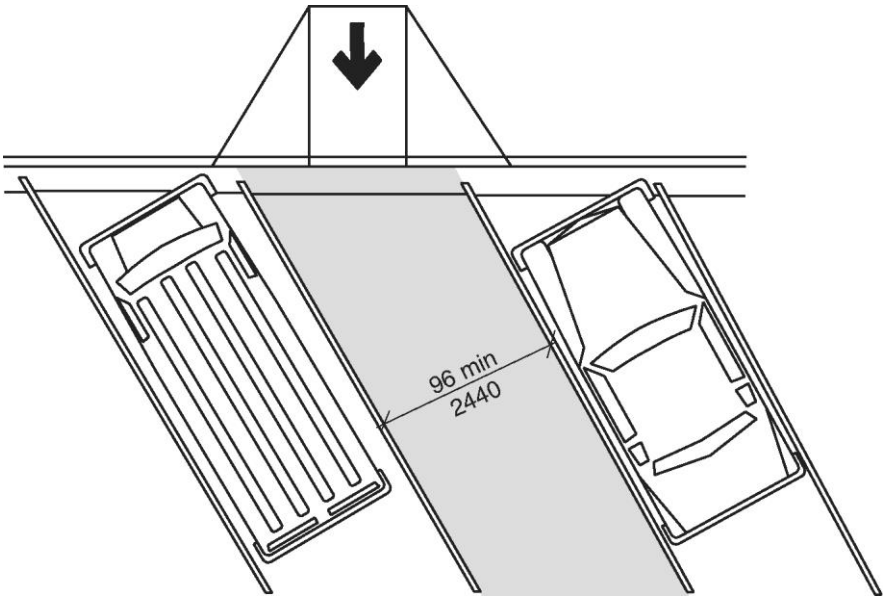


Figure 502.9.2 Perpendicular or Angled Parking Space

Staff note: If this proposal is approved, direction is required for revising this figure

REASON: After reviewing hundreds if not thousands of accessible parking spaces it is apparent that accessible car parking spaces are narrower than standard non-accessible parking spaces. Also, observing people parking in accessible parking spaces they are often occupying part of the access aisle as well making the adjacent accessible parking space as unusable. By widening the parking spaces to more closely resemble the width of standard non-accessible parking spaces the parking spaces become more usable and are more equal to non-accessible parking spaces. Also, noticing the distribution of van accessible spaces vs. car accessible spaces individuals will often have to travel long distances if they need to use a van accessible space. By making all accessible spaces van spaces the distribution is more equal.

Committee Action: 27-1-5 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: There was no data provided for technical justification to make all the parking spaces sized for vans. There can be an issue with the access aisle for the universal space depending on how people park in the wider spaces. Another option would be to address dispersal of van spaces or the number of van spaces required in the scoping document. The requirements for markings and color would conflict with some of the existing DOT requirements in each state. The wheelchair symbol on the parking space is redundant to the sign in front and is covered by parked cars or snow. The signage on the ground does not work for parking surfaces other than pavement.

502.1-GASKINS.doc

Report for 0*5-01– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 27-1-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: There was no data provided for technical justification to make all the parking spaces sized for vans. There can be an issue with the access aisle for the universal space depending on how people park in the wider spaces. Another option would be to address dispersal of van spaces or the number of van spaces required in the scoping document. The requirements for markings and color would conflict with some of the existing DOT requirements in each state. The wheelchair symbol on the parking space is redundant to the sign in front and is covered by parked cars or snow. The signage on the ground does not work for parking surfaces other than pavement.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-02 – 2021
502.1, 502.2, 502.3, 502.4, 502.4.2

Proponent: Gina Hilberry, Cohen Hilberry Architects, representing United Cerebral Palsy

Revise as follows:

SECTION 502
PARKING SPACES

502.1 General. Car, ~~and~~ van, RV and truck parking spaces in parking lots shall comply with Sections 502.2 through 502.8. Car and van parking spaces provided as part of on-street parking shall comply with Sections 502.9 and 502.10. Where an electrical vehicle charging station is provided at a parking space, it shall comply with Section 502.11.

502.2 Vehicle space size. Car parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width. Van parking spaces shall be 132 inches (3355 mm) minimum in width**.** Truck and RV parking spaces shall be 180 inches (4572 mm) minimum in width.

Exception: Where the adjacent access aisle is 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width, van parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width.

502.3 Vehicle space marking. Car, ~~and~~ van, RV and truck parking spaces shall be marked to define the width. Where parking spaces are marked with lines, the width measurements of parking spaces and adjacent access aisles shall be made from the centerline of the markings.

Exception: Where parking spaces or access aisles are not adjacent to another parking space or access aisle, measure- line defining the parking space or access aisle.

502.4 Access aisle. Car, ~~and~~ van, RV and truck parking spaces shall have an adjacent access aisle complying with Section 502.4.

502.4.1 Location. Access aisles shall adjoin an accessible route. Two parking spaces shall be permitted to share a common access aisle. Access aisles shall not overlap with the vehicular way. Parking spaces shall be permitted to have access aisles placed on either side of the car or van parking space. Van parking spaces that are angled shall have access aisles located on the passenger side of the parking space.

502.4.2 Width. Access aisles serving ~~car and van~~ parking spaces shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width.

502.4.3 Length. Access aisles shall extend the full length of the parking spaces they serve.

502.4.4 Marking. Access aisles shall be marked so as to discourage parking in them. Where access aisles are marked with lines, the width measurements of access aisles and adjacent parking spaces shall be made from the centerline of the markings.

Exception: Where access aisles or parking spaces are not adjacent to another access aisle or parking space, measurements shall be permitted to include the full width of the line defining the access aisle or parking space.

502.5 Floor surfaces. Parking spaces and access aisles shall comply with Section 302 and have surface slopes not steeper than 1:48. Access aisles shall be at the same level as the parking spaces they serve.

502.6 Vertical clearance. A vertical clearance of 98 inches (2490 mm) minimum shall be provided at the following locations:

1. Parking spaces for vans.
2. The access aisles serving parking spaces for vans.
3. The vehicular routes serving parking spaces for vans.

A vertical clearance of 174 inches (4420 mm) minimum shall be provided at truck and RV parking.

502.7 Identification. Where parking spaces are required to be identified by signs, the signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1. Signs identifying van parking spaces shall contain the designation "van accessible." Signs shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the floor of the parking space, measured to the bottom of the sign.

502.8 Relationship to accessible routes. Parking spaces and access aisles shall be designed so that cars and vans, when parked, do not obstruct the required clear width of adjacent accessible routes.

REASON: As scoping for truck and RV parking is added to Appendix A, minor language changes and some dimensional information is needed in Section 502. With the exception of the addition of dimensions suitable for large trucks and RVs, the language remains unchanged. The assumption is that (similar to car and van drivers), the truck or RV driver will adjust the position of the vehicle in the space as necessary to accommodate a lift on either side of the tractor/cab and that access aisles are not required on both sides.

Committee Action: 22-1-6 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal needs to identify that this is for semi-truck parking spaces, not any parking where there could be any size truck. Is there research on how many semi-truck drivers, compared to the all semi-truck drivers need this accommodations. This should be addressed separately in scoping and in the technical requirements. The requirements for RV should match what is in the ABA for RV parking.

502.1-HILBERRY.doc

Report for 0*5-02– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 22-1-6***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal needs to identify that this is for semi-truck parking spaces, not any parking where there could be any size truck. Is there research on how many semi-truck drivers, compared to the all semi-truck drivers need this accommodations. This should be addressed separately in scoping and in the technical requirements. The requirements for RV should match what is in the ABA for RV parking.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-03 – 2021
502.1

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 502
PARKING SPACES

502.1 General. Car and van parking spaces in parking lots and parking garages shall comply with Sections 502.2 through 502.8. Car and van parking spaces provided as part of on-street parking shall comply with Sections 502.9 and 502.10. Where an electrical vehicle charging station is provided at a parking space, it shall comply with Section 502.11.

REASON: When, during the last cycle the language was changed to delineate between parking with the traditional angled or perpendicular spaces and the new provisions for parallel parking, the language for garages was inadvertently left out. What has happened is that a number of times it has come into question whether the parking provisions apply with garages or not. The added text clarifies the intent.

Committee Action: 20-0-1 Approved as modified
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Mod Motion passes 23-2-3

Further modify:

502.1 General. Car and van parking spaces ~~in parking lots and parking garages~~ shall comply with Sections 502.2 through 502.8. Car and van parking spaces provided as part of on-street parking shall comply with Sections 502.9 and 502.10. Where an electrical vehicle charging station is provided at a parking space, it shall comply with Section 502.11.

Committee Reason: The modification and the proposal was to clarify that the requirements are for surface, parking garages, carports – wherever parking is provided.

502.1-BOECKER.doc

Report for 05-03– 2021		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 20-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify:** **502.1 General**. Car and van parking spaces ~~in parking lots and parking garages~~ shall comply with Sections 502.2 through 502.8. Car and van parking spaces provided as part of on-street parking shall comply with Sections 502.9 and 502.10. Where an electrical vehicle charging station is provided at a parking space, it shall comply with Section 502.11.		

Report for 0*5-03– 2021*		
Committee Reason: The modification and the proposal was to clarify that the requirements are for surface, parking garages, carports – wherever parking is provided.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-04 – 2021
502.2

Proponent: Gina Hilberry, Cohen Hilberry Architects, representing United Cerebral Palsy

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 502
PARKING SPACES

502.2 Vehicle space size. Car parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width. Van parking spaces shall be 132 inches (3355 mm) minimum in width**.**

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. Where the adjacent access aisle is 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width, van parking spaces shall be 96 inches (2440 mm) minimum in width.
2. Where the vehicle space and access aisle that serve an Accessible, Type A or Type B unit is in a garage and enclosed by walls located at the sides of the space and aisle, the width of the combined vehicle space and access aisle shall be 170 inches (4318 mm). The garage door shall be at least 120 inches (3048 mm) wide. The vehicle space and access aisle are not required to have marking or signage.

REASON: This parking type is not addressed in the standard. The walls enclosing the parking space obstruct movement around the car and can make transfers difficult if the space is held at 13 feet in width. The Supplemental FAQ for the HUD Guidelines clarified the requirement that these spaces be 14 feet 2 inches wide inside and the door must be 10 feet wide (Questions and Answers about the Fair Housing Accessibility Guidelines 24 CR Ch. I, June 28, 1994, Item 14 Parking Spaces and Garages, (d)).

Committee Action: 25-0-4 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The orientation of the garage door to the space and the access aisle is not indicated. To provide an accessible route from the space you could use a man door next to the garage door or into the unit. There is no technical justification for the HUD guidance for 14'-2" wide garages. The language needs to clarify what type of garage this is applicable too. Signage and marking exceptions for these spaces are already addressed in scoping.

502.2-HILBERRY.doc

Report for 05-04– 2021		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The orientation of the garage door to the space and the access aisle is not indicated. To provide an accessible route from the space you could use a man door next to the garage door or into the unit. There is no technical justification for the HUD guidance for 14'-2" wide garages. The language needs to clarify what type of garage this is applicable too. Signage and marking exceptions for these spaces are already		

Report for 0*5-04– 2021*		
addressed in scoping.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-05 – 2021
502.7

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 502
PARKING SPACES

502.7 Identification. Where parking spaces are required to be identified by signs, the signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1. Signs identifying van parking spaces shall contain the designation "van accessible." Signs shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the floor of the parking space, measured to the bottom of the lowest sign.

REASON: Where there are two signs, such as one sign indicating that the space is reserved and another indication that the space is van accessible, some people will measure to the higher of the two signs, instead of the lower.

Committee Action: 25-2-1 Approved as modified.
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Mod motion passed 25-3-4

Further modification:

502.7 Identification. Where parking spaces are required to be identified by signs, the signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1. Signs identifying van parking spaces shall contain the designation "van accessible." Signs shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the floor of the parking space, measured to the bottom of the lowest sign required by this section.

Committee Reason: The modification was to clarify that this requirement is only for the signage in this section and not fine signs required by the DOT. The purpose of this requirement is to be able to see the wheelchair space and signage over parked cars. Protruding object concerns are delt with in Chapter 3.

502.7-MAZZ.doc

Report for 05-05– 2021		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-2-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modification:** **502.7 Identification.** Where parking spaces are required to be identified by signs, the signs shall include the International Symbol of Accessibility		

Report for 0*5-05– 2021*		
complying with Section 703.6.3.1. Signs identifying van parking spaces shall contain the designation “van accessible.” Signs shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum above the floor of the parking space, measured to the bottom of the lowest sign required by this section.		
Committee Reason: The modification was to clarify that this requirement is only for the signage in this section and not fine signs required by the DOT. The purpose of this requirement is to be able to see the wheelchair space and signage over parked cars. Protruding object concerns are delt with in Chapter 3.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-06 – 2021
502.9, 502.9.1, 502.9.1.1, 502.9.1.2, 502.9.2

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 502
PARKING SPACES

502.9 Parallel parking spaces. On-street parallel parking spaces located in the public right-of-way shall comply with Section 502.9.1. On-street perpendicular or angled parking spaces shall comply with Section 502.9.2.

502.9.1 Wide sidewalks. Where the width of the adjacent sidewalk or available right-of-way exceeds 14 feet (4265 mm), an access aisle 60 inches (1525 mm) wide minimum shall be provided at street level the full length of the parking space and shall connect to ~~a pedestrian access route~~ an accessible route. The access aisle shall comply with Section 502.4 and shall not encroach on vehicular travel lanes.

502.9.1.1 Alterations. In alterations where the street or sidewalk within the public right-of-way and adjacent to the parking spaces is not altered, an access aisle shall not be required provided the parking spaces are located at the end of the block face.

502.9.1.2 Narrow sidewalks. An access aisle is not required where the width of ~~the adjacent sidewalk or~~ the available right-of-way is less than or equal to 14 feet (4265 mm). Where an access aisle is not provided, the parking spaces shall be located at the end of the block face.

502.9.2 Perpendicular or angled parking spaces. Where perpendicular or angled parking is provided, an access aisle 96 inches (2440 mm) wide minimum shall be provided at street level the full length of the parking space and shall connect to ~~a pedestrian access route~~ an accessible route. The access aisle shall comply with Section 502.4 and shall be marked so as to discourage parking in the access aisle. Two parking spaces are permitted to share a common access aisle.

REASON: This proposal addresses the fact that the criteria for on-street parking is taken from the Access Board's proposed Public Rights-of-Way Accessibility Guidelines published in March 2011 and supplemented in February, 2013. **This is not a final rule. It is subject to change by the Access Board prior to being finalized. Also, before it an become ADA Standards, it must be again proposed for adoption as enforceable ADA Standards by the Departments of Justice and Transportation.** Given the time since the proposed rule was published, there also is a chance that the rule will not be finalized in the near future – particularly if the government's administrative procedures require republication of the proposed rule by the Access Board – starting the whole process over again.

While further change by the federal government presents an obvious problem, incorporation of the proposed rule into the ICC A117.1 presents other challenges to harmonization with current ADA requirements.

First, several courts have found that only the enforceable DOJ regulations (i.e., the 2010 ADA Standards) apply to work in the public right-of-way. (See Kirola v. City and County of San Francisco, No. 14-17521 (9th Cir. 2017) at https://law.justia.com/cases/federal/appellate-courts/ca9/14-17521/14-17521-2017-06-22.html). This means that where these criteria fall below the requirements of the 2010 ADA Standards, their use puts the designer at risk of a lawsuit or other adverse action. The current A117.1 requirement falls below the enforceable ADA criteria in 3 significant ways:

1. The provision permits omission of the access aisle required by Section 502.3 of the 2010 ADA Standards under certain conditions (alterations and narrow sidewalks).
2. The provision requires connection to a "pedestrian access route" instead of an "accessible route", violating the 2010 ADA Standards Section 502.3.
3. The provision allows use of the criteria developed by the Access Board to apply *only in the public right-of-way* to apply on a roadway within a site. Therefore, a designer can opt to locate required access parking on the roadway (provided this location is closer than the parking lot) and, in alterations or where the sidewalk is narrow, an access aisle would not be required. Additionally, the designer would be required to connect the space to a "pedestrian accessible route" instead of an accessible route.

One further complication: the ICC A117.1 does not have technical requirements or define the term "pedestrian access route" (PAR). Under the Access Board's proposed rule, a PAR differs from an accessible route, most notably in that its slope is measured from the adjacent roadway and, not from sea level.

We believe these criteria were included in the standard prematurely and, if the changes suggested above do not meet with approval or raise other questions, we would agree to a modification of this proposal to delete this section in its entirety, particularly as we are aware that the ICC A117.1 is rarely referenced by the authorities controlling work in public rights-of-way.

Committee Action: 15-4-5 Approved as modified

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Mod carries 15-9-5

Further modify as follows:

502.9 Parallel parking spaces. On-street parallel parking ~~spaces located in the public right-of-way~~ shall comply with Section 502.9.1. On-street perpendicular or angled parking spaces shall comply with Section 502.9.2.

502.9.1.1 Alterations. In alterations where the street or sidewalk ~~within the public right-of-way and~~ adjacent to the parking spaces is not altered, an access aisle shall not be required provided the parking spaces are located at the end of the block face.

Committee Reason: The modification was approved as adding 'public right of way' would remove allowances/requirements for street parking on private roads in multi-building sites.

Using the phrase 'ac accessible route' instead of 'a pedestrian access route' is more consistent with the terminology in ADA and the A117.1.

There is concern that PROWAG does not provide the same level of access for accessible parking that ADA currently requires. The ADA would require the accessible parking to be level and have an accessible route. The PROWAG content has not yet been approved or proposed to be added into ADA. Therefore this may cause DOT to say use the proposed PROWAG and DOJ saying it does not comply with ADA.

502.9-MAZZ.doc

Report for 0*5-06– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 15-4-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **502.9 Parallel parking spaces.** On-street parallel parking ~~spaces located in the public right-of-way~~ shall comply with Section 502.9.1. On-street perpendicular or angled parking spaces shall comply with Section 502.9.2. **502.9.1.1 Alterations.** In alterations where the street or sidewalk ~~within the public right-of-way and~~ adjacent to the parking spaces is not altered, an access aisle shall not be required provided the parking spaces are located at the end of the block face.		
Committee Reason: The modification was approved as adding 'public right of way' would remove allowances/requirements for street parking on private roads in multi-building sites. Using the phrase 'ac accessible route' instead of 'a pedestrian access route' is more consistent with the terminology in ADA and the A117.1. There is concern that PROWAG does not provide the same level of access for accessible parking that ADA currently requires. The ADA would require the accessible parking to be level and have route. The PROWAG content has not yet been approved or proposed to be added into ADA. Therefore this may cause DOT to say use the proposed PROWAG and DOJ saying it does not comply with ADA.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-07 – 2021
Figures 502.9.1 and 502.9.2

Proponent: Billie Louise (Beezy) Bentzen, PhD., Accessible Design for the Blind, representing Association for the Education and Rehabilitation of the Blind and Visually Impaired (AER)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 502
PARKING SPACES

Note: The curb ramp in this figure should show detectable warnings.

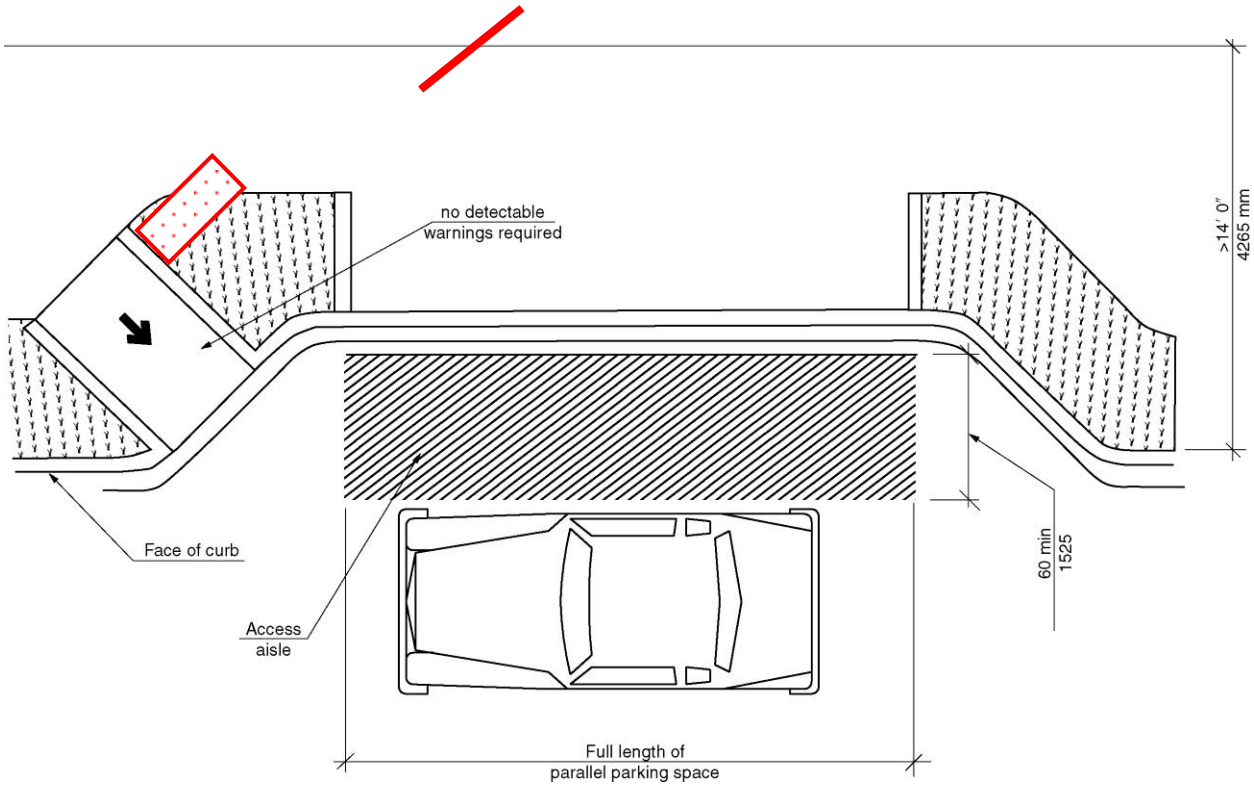


FIGURE 502.9.1
WIDE SIDEWALKS

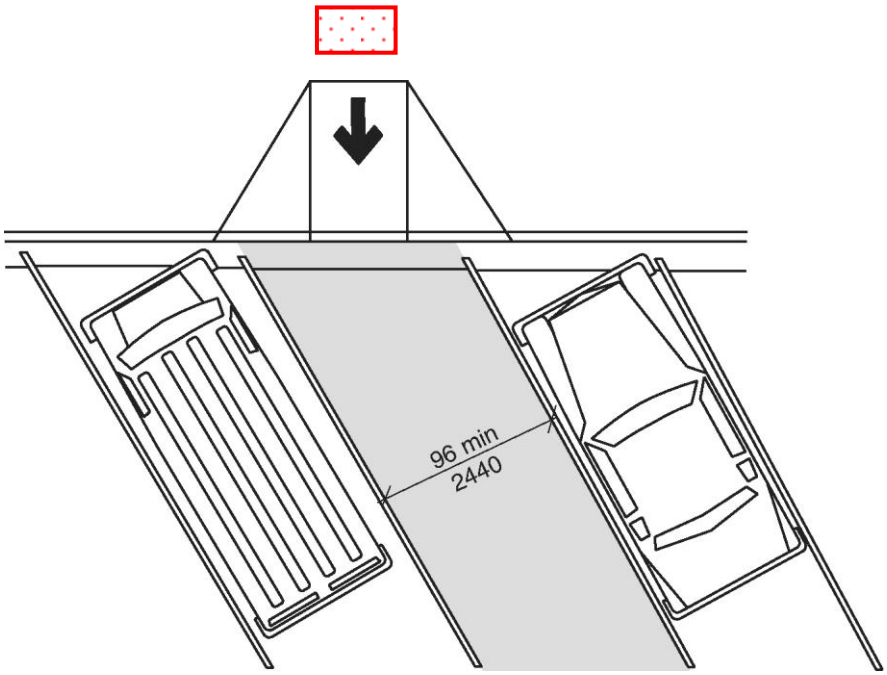


FIGURE 502.9.2
PERPENDICULAR OR ANGLED PARKING SPACE

REASON: Curb ramps are not complete without detectable warnings. While there is a section showing detectable warnings on curb ramps in some detail, they should not be omitted here. It implies that they are not required. Wherever curb ramps are depicted, unless they are not required to have detectable warnings, as in Figure 502.9.1, the detectable warning should be included. Figure 502.9.1.2 correctly includes the detectable warning, even though it is in Section 502 Parking Spaces.

Committee Action: Disapproval 32-0-2

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved for consistency with the committee action and reason for 04-22-2021. The proponent requested further review by the editorial committee.

Figure 502.9.2-BENTZEN.doc

Report for 0*5-07– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 32-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved for consistency with the committee action and reason for 04-22-2021. The proponent requested further review by the editorial committee.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		

Report for 0*5-07– 2021*		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-08 – 2021
502.1, 502.11, 502.11.1, 502.11.2, 503(New), 503.1.4 (New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Add text as follows:

SECTION 502
PARKING SPACES

502.1 General. Car and van parking spaces in parking lots shall comply with Sections 502.2 through 502.8. Car and van parking spaces provided as part of on-street parking shall comply with Sections 502.9 and 502.10. ~~Where an electrical vehicle charging station is provided at a parking space, it shall comply with Section 502.11.~~

SECTION 503
ELECTRICAL VEHICL CHARGING STATIONS

503.1 ~~**502.11**~~ **Electrical vehicle charging stations.** Where an ~~An~~ electrical vehicle charging station serving ~~a parking space~~ an accessible vehicle space, that electrical vehicle charging station shall comply with ~~Section~~ ~~502.11~~ Sections 503.1.1 through 503.1.3. The accessible vehicle space shall comply with Section 503.1.4.

503.1.1 ~~**502.11.1**~~ **Operable parts.** Operable parts on the charging station intended for operation by the user, including card readers, shall comply with Section 309.

503.1.2 ~~**502.11.2**~~ **Accessible route.** An accessible route shall be provided from the access aisle adjacent to the parking space to the clear floor space complying with Section 502.11.1 adjacent to the vehicle charging station. When the vehicle is being charged, the accessible route shall not be obstructed by the cable between the car and charging station.

503.1.3 ~~**502.11.3**~~ **Obstructions.** Protection bollards, curbs or wheel stops shall be located so that they do not obstruct the clear floor space required by Section 502.11.1 or the accessible route required by Section 502.11.2.

503.1.4 Vehicle space size. Accessible vehicle spaces at electrical vehicle charging stations shall comply with the van space requirements in Sections 502.2 through 502.6.

REASON: The 2021 IBC includes provisions for electrical vehicle charging stations, however, they are not indicated as a parking spaces, but as a service. Therefore, this proposal moves the provisions in ICC A117.1 for electrical vehicle charging stations into it's own section and out from within parking spaces consistency.

The IBC proposal, G121-18 was submitted by Dawn Anderson, Dan Buuck, David Collins, Marsha Mazz, and Dominic Marinelli. It is my understanding that this is based on the requirements currently being used in California. The 2021 IBC text follows this reason. While IBC Section 1107.2.2 does say the space should be sized as an van space, it does not provide the level of detail for marking, length, floor surface and vertical clearance that is found in the ICC A117.1. Since this is technical criteria, I am proposing to include this in the ICC A117.1 as a new Section 503.1.4 with the added criteria.

The current requirement in IBC do not require a sign making these electrical vehicle charging stations to be reserved, so I am not including Section 502.7.

SECTION 1107
MOTOR VEHICLE RELATED FACILITIES

1107.1 General. *Electrical vehicle charging stations* shall comply with Section 1107.2. Fuel-dispensing systems shall comply with Section 1107.3.

1107.2 Electrical vehicle charging stations. *Electrical vehicle charging stations* shall comply with Sections 1107.2.1 and 1107.2.2.

Exception: *Electrical vehicle charging stations* provided to serve Groups R-2, R-3 and R-4 occupancies are not required to comply with this section.

1107.2.1 Number of accessible vehicle spaces. Not less than 5% of vehicle spaces on the site served by electrical vehicle charging systems but, not fewer than one for each type of electric vehicle charging system shall be accessible.

1107.2.2 Vehicle space size. Accessible vehicle spaces shall comply with the requirements for a van accessible parking space that is 132 inches (3350 mm) minimum in width with an adjoining access aisle that is 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width.

1107.3 Fuel-dispensing systems. Fuel-dispensing systems shall be *accessible*.

Committee Action: 16-6-8 Approved as submitted.
REPORT OF HEARING:

Errata:

SECTION 503
ELECTRICAL VEHICLE CHARGING STATIONS

503.1 Electrical vehicle charging stations. Where an electrical vehicle charging station serves ~~serving~~ an accessible vehicle space, that electrical vehicle charging station shall comply with

Sections 503.1.1 through 503.1.3. The accessible vehicle space shall comply with Section 503.1.4.

Modification (if any):None

Committee Reason: IBC scopes EV charging stations as a service. This would coordinate with A117.1 with the scoping terminology.

There was a suggestion to clarify which sizes for van spaces and the access aisle should be used since there are two choices in the A117.1 and the IBC requires the 132"/60" option.

504.6-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*5-08– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 16-6-8***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: IBC scopes EV charging stations as a service. This would coordinate with A117.1 with the scoping terminology. There was a suggestion to clarify which sizes for van spaces and the access aisle should be used since there are two choices in the A117.1 and the IBC requires the 132"/60" option.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-09 – 2021

Figure 503.3(A) and 503.3(B)

Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University at Buffalo, representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 503
PASSENGER LOADING ZONES

Note: Add curb ramps

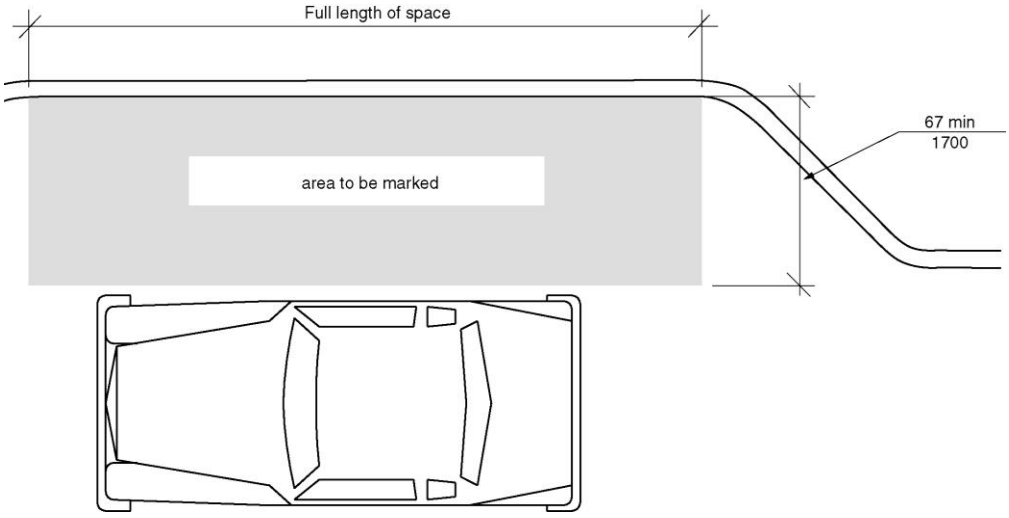


FIGURE 503.3(A)
PASSENGER LOADING ZONE ACCESS AISLE - NEW BUILDINGS

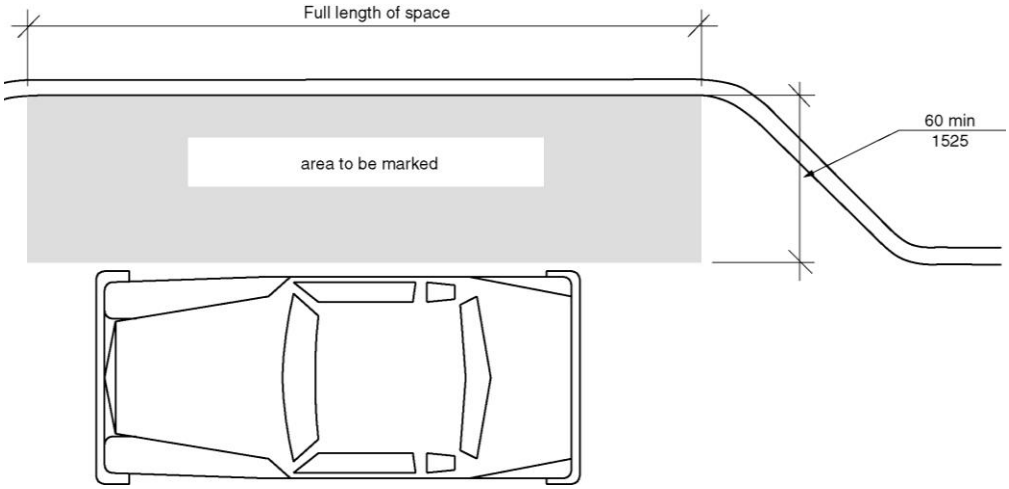


FIGURE 503.3(B)
PASSENGER LOADING ZONE ACCESS AISLE - EXISTING BUILDINGS

REASON: These figures are missing curb ramps which is misleading because it implies they are not needed or can be provided away from the access aisle.

Committee Action: Disapproval (Vote: 30-0-3)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposed revision is editorial and is referred to the editorial committee. Options discussed where to add the curb cut, or just show the size of the access aisle.

FIGURE 503.3-STEINFELD.doc

Report for 0*5-09– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** 30-0-3	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposed revision is editorial and is referred to the editorial committee. Options discussed where to add the curb cut, or just show the size of the access aisle. Send to editorial committee.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-10 – 2021
106.2.3(New), 504 (All)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 504
STAIRWAYS

504.1 General. Accessible stairs shall comply with Section 504.

504.2 Stairway width. The minimum stairway width shall comply with Section 1011.2 of the International Building Code listed in Section 106.2.3.

504.3 Stairway landings. Stairway landings shall comply with Section 1011.6 of the International Building Code listed in Section 106.2.3.

504.4 Headroom. The headroom clearance along the stairway shall be in accordance with Section 1011.3 of the International Building Code listed in Section 106.2.3.

504.5 ~~**504.2**~~ **Treads and risers.** All steps on a flight of stairs shall have uniform riser height and uniform tread depth. Risers shall be 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 7 inches (180 mm) maximum in height. Treads shall be 11 inches (280 mm) minimum in depth.

504.6 ~~**504.3**~~ **Open risers.** Open risers shall not be permitted.

504.7 ~~**504.4**~~ **Tread surface.** Stair treads shall comply with Section 302 and shall have a slope not steeper than 1:48.

504.7 Dimensional uniformity. The stair tread and risers shall be of uniform size and shape. The tolerances between largest and smallest shall be in accordance with Section 1011.5.4 and 1011.5.4.1 of the International Building Code listed in Section 106.2.3.

504.8 ~~**504.5**~~ **Nosings.** Nosings shall comply with the following:

1. Nosings within a stairway shall be uniform.
2. If rounded, the radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) maximum.
3. If beveled, the bevel at the leading edge shall slope at 45 degrees to the plane of the top surface of the tread and landing and extend for a horizontal distance of $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) maximum.
4. Nosings that project beyond risers shall have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled.
5. Risers shall be permitted to slope under the tread at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical.

6. The permitted projection of the nosing shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum over the tread or floor below.

504.9 ~~**504.6**~~ **Visual contrast.** Visual contrast shall comply with either 1 or 2:

1. The leading 1 to 2 inches (25 to 51 mm) of every tread and landing, measured horizontally from the leading edge of the nosing, shall consist of a solid color having visual contrast of dark-on-light or light-on-dark from the remainder of the tread. The contrasting marking shall be durable and shall extend from one side of each tread to the other side of each tread.
2. Durable distinctive warning markings required by the adopted building code or ANSI safety standard.

504.10 ~~**504.7**~~ **Handrails.** Stairs shall have handrails complying with Section 505.

504.11 **504.8 Wet conditions.** Stair treads and landings subject to wet conditions shall be designed to prevent the accumulation of water.

504.12 Curved stairways. Curved stairways shall comply with Section 1011.9 of the International Building Code listed in Section 106.2.3.

504.13 Spiral stairways. Spiral stairways shall comply with Section 1011.9 of the International Building Code listed in Section 106.2.3.

504.14 ~~**504.9**~~ **Lighting.** Lighting for interior stairways shall comply with Section 504.9.

504.14.1 ~~**504.9.1**~~ **Illumination level.** Lighting facilities shall be capable of providing illuminance of stairs measured at the center of tread surfaces and on landing surfaces within 24 inches (610 mm) of step nosings as follows:

1. A 1-foot-candle (10.8 lux) minimum illumination at times other than conditions of stair use
2. A 10-foot-candle (108 lux) minimum illumination during conditions of stair use
3. The transition from 1 foot candle (10.8 lux) to 10 foot candle (108 lux) under conditions of stair use shall be permitted to be achieved by automatic, motion sensor-type lighting switches provided the switch controllers comply with all of the following:

3.1 The switch controllers are equipped for fail-safe operation and evaluated for this purpose

3.2 The motion sensor is activated by occupant movement on the stair or stair landings

3.3 The illumination timers are set for a minimum 15-minute duration.

504.14.2 ~~**504.9.2**~~ **Lighting controls.** If provided, occupancy-sensing automatic controls shall activate the stairway lighting so the illuminance level required by Section 504.9.1 is provided on the entrance landing, each stair flight adjacent to the entrance landing, and on the landings above and below the entrance landing prior to any step being used.

504.15 ~~**504.10**~~ **Tactile signage within the stairway enclosure.** Stair level identification signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed stairways connecting more than three stories. Such sign shall be located adjacent to the door leading from the stairwell into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge shall have a sign with raised characters and braille stating "EXIT."

504.11 Tactile signage at exits. A sign stating EXIT in raised characters and Braille and complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be provided adjacent to each door to an area of refuge providing direct access to a stairway, an exterior area for assisted rescue, an exit stairway, an exit ramp, an exit passageway and the exit discharge.

SECTION 106
REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

106.2.3 International Building Code. International Code Council (ICC) International Building Code-2024.

REASON: The IBC contains provisions for stairways that deal with the use of stairways by person with mobility and vision impairments that are not currently in the ICC A117.1. While the IBC does not scope the ICC A117.1 for stairways the A117.1 committee has stated that they would like this standard to be adoptable by any code. I am not proposing adding the text to the ICC A117.1 because I do not want conflicts over time.

Proposed Section 504.2 and 504.3 provide criteria for minimum widths to allow for save evacuation, but also address the width needed for the use of evacuation chairs and fire department carries during emergencies. Proposed 504.4 has minimum headroom, which is consistent with protruding object criteria. Proposed 504.7 for dimensional uniformity is an important factor for reducing falls since a stairway studies have shown your gait is established in just two steps – this is especially important for persons with stability or balance issues. Proposed Section 504.12 and 504.13 address two types of stairways, curved and spiral, that are extremely common in buildings. The IBC includes important tread and riser information that is not in the ICC A117.1.

The change to proposed 504.15 is addressing a current conflict with the IBC. Stairway information signage is only required where the interior exit stairway connect more than three stories.

Staff note: The *2021 International Building Code* can be viewed on the ICC website at https://codes.iccsafe.org/content/IBC2021P2.

05-10 – 2021 Modification

106.2.5(New), 504 (All)

Proponent: Sharon Toji, representing Communications Task Group

Further revise text as follows:

504.15 Tactile signage within the stairway enclosure. Stair level identification signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed stairways ~~connecting more than three stories~~. Such sign shall be located adjacent to the door leading from the stairwell into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge shall have a sign with raised characters and braille stating "EXIT."

Reason: The original proposal would eliminate the requirement for signs on stairs to be accessible if the stair connects 3 stories or less. The proponent's reason statement justifies this action on the basis that floor level identification 05-10-2021 signs are not required by the IBC on such stairways. While it is true that IBC Section 1023.9 does not require signs on these shorter stairways, it also does not prohibit them. If a designer elects to provide such signs, another Section, IBC 1023.11, would require them to be accessible because this provision applies where such signs are "provided", not where they are "required". Consequently, there is no conflict. Additionally, if this modification fails, this proposal will conflict with the DOJ ADA Standards Section 216.2 and 216.4.1.

Committee Action: 14-14-4 Chair votes to approve As Modified

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): 23-2-6 Mod approved

Further revise text as follows:

504.15 Tactile signage within the stairway enclosure. Stair level identification signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed stairways ~~connecting more than three stories~~. Such sign shall be located adjacent to the door leading from the stairwell into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge shall have a sign with raised characters and braille stating "EXIT."

Committee Reason: The purpose of the modification was so that stair level identification signage would be provided in any height building.
The provisions will provide a complete package of stairway requirements for persons with mobility and vision disabilities. Some of the important safety issues associated with stairways are not currently included in the ICC A117.1.

504.6-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *05-10– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 15-14-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise text as follows:** **504.15 Tactile signage within the stairway enclosure.** Stair level identification signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed stairways ~~connecting more than three stories~~. Such sign shall be located adjacent to the door leading from the stairwell into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge shall have a sign with raised characters and braille stating "EXIT."		
Committee Reason: The purpose of the modification was so that stair level identification signage would be provided in any height building. The provisions will provide a complete package of stairway requirements for persons with mobility and vision disabilities. Some of the important safety issues associated with stairways are not currently included in the ICC A117.1.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-11 – 2021
504.6

Proponent: Billie Louise (Beezy) Bentzen, PhD., Accessible Design for the Blind, representing Association for the Education and Rehabilitation of the Blind and Visually Impaired (AER)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 504
STAIRWAYS

504.6 Visual contrast. Visual contrast shall comply with either 1 or 2:

1. The leading 1 to 2 inches (25 to 51 mm) of every tread and landing, measured horizontally from the leading edge of the nosing, shall consist of a solid color having visual contrast of dark-on-light or light-on-dark from the remainder of the tread. The width of the visual contrast shall be consistent for the run of the stairway. The contrasting marking shall be durable and shall extend from one side of each tread to the other side of each tread.
2. Durable distinctive warning markings required by the adopted building code or ANSI safety standard.

REASON: Consistency in markings is important to the safety of vision disabled persons. It is my understanding that the optimal dimension is 2 inches.

Committee Action: 20-4-2 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the language was unclear as to if this requirement was for the width of the stripe or the width of the stairway. There was the question as to if this would apply to a stair run, the flight between stories or the entire run of the stairway.

504.6-BENTZEN.doc

Report for 0*5-11– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 20-4-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the language was unclear as to if this requirement was for the width of the stripe or the width of the stairway. There was the question as to if this would apply to a stair run, the flight between stories or the entire run of the stairway.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for 0*5-11– 2021*		
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-12 – 2021
504.6

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 504
STAIRWAYS

504.6 Visual contrast. Visual contrast shall comply with either 1, ~~or~~ 2 or 3:

1. The leading 1 to 2 inches (25 to 51 mm) of every tread and landing, measured horizontally from the leading edge of the nosing, shall consist of a solid color having visual contrast of dark-on-light or light-on-dark from the remainder of the tread. The contrasting marking shall be durable and shall extend from one side of each tread to the other side of each tread.
2. The leading 1 to 2 inches (25 to 51 mm) in the direction of moving down the stairway, the landing edge and the last tread before the a landing or floor , measured horizontally from the leading edge of the nosing, shall consist of a solid color having visual contrast of dark-on-light or light-on-dark from the remainder of the tread. The contrasting marking shall be durable and shall extend from one side of each tread to the other side of each tread.
3. ~~2.~~ Durable distinctive warning markings required by the adopted building code or ANSI safety standard.

504.9 Lighting. Lighting for interior stairways shall comply with Section 504.9.

504.9.1 Illumination level. Lighting facilities shall be capable of providing illuminance of stairs measured at the center of tread surfaces and on landing surfaces within 24 inches (610 mm) of step nosings as follows:

1. A 1-foot-candle (10.8 lux) minimum illumination at times other than conditions of stair use
2. A 10-foot-candle (108 lux) minimum illumination during conditions of stair use
3. The transition from 1 foot candle (10.8 lux) to 10 foot candle (108 lux) under conditions of stair use shall be permitted to be achieved by automatic, motion sensor-type lighting switches provided the switch controllers comply with all of the following:

   3.1 The switch controllers are equipped for fail-safe operation and evaluated for this purpose

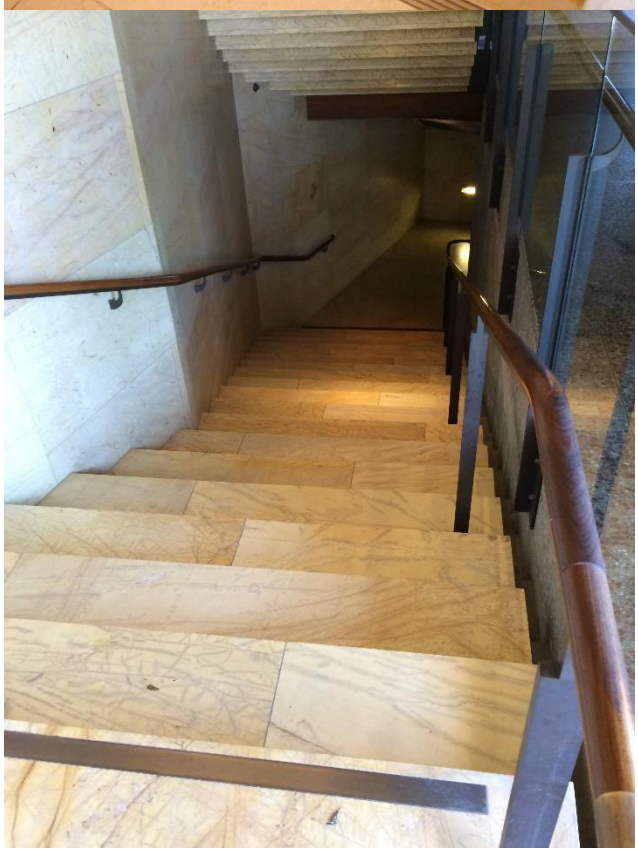
   3.2 The motion sensor is activated by occupant movement on the stair or stair landings

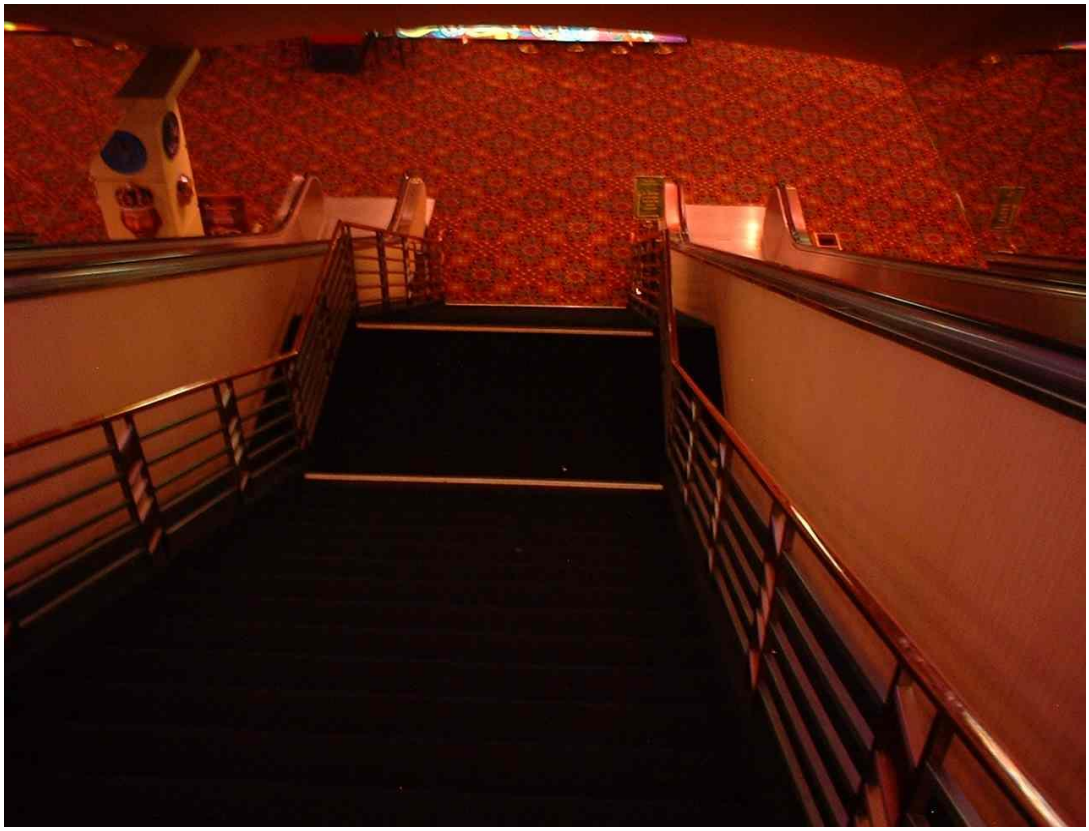
   3.3 The illumination timers are set for a minimum 15-minute duration.

504.9.2 Lighting controls. If provided, occupancy-sensing automatic controls shall activate the stairway lighting so the illuminance level required by Section 504.9.1 is provided on the

entrance landing, each stair flight adjacent to the entrance landing, and on the landings above and below the entrance landing prior to any step being used.

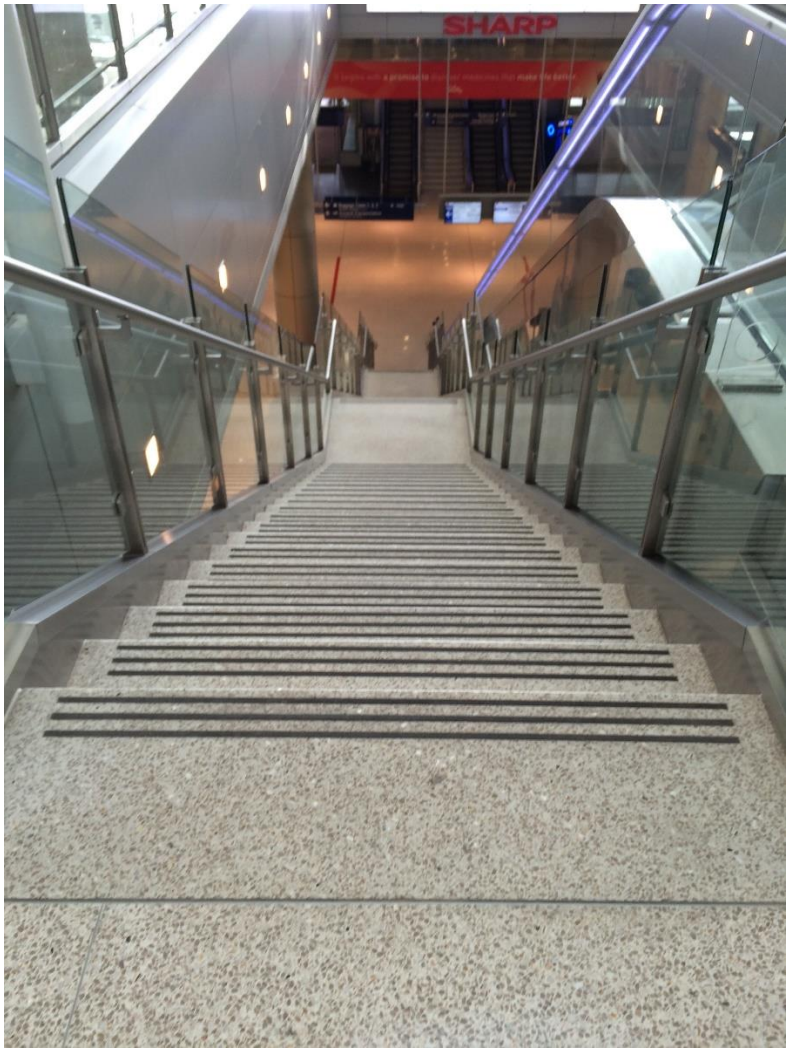
REASON: The intent of this proposal is to provide an alternative for marking stairways. Section 504.6 added an Item 2 to remove the conflict between the A117.1 stairway provisions and where stairways required warning markings are required in IBC. However, not all stairways are required to be marked in IBC. The A117.1 significantly improved the lighting on stairways. This is also in the 2021 IBC Section 1008.2.1. This was recommended as a means to notify visually impaired persons of the change in level to stairways. A stripe at each step is not needed since stairway safety studies indicate muscle memory put as person into a stairway gait in only two steps. See the examples for the new proposed Item 2 and the current Item 1.

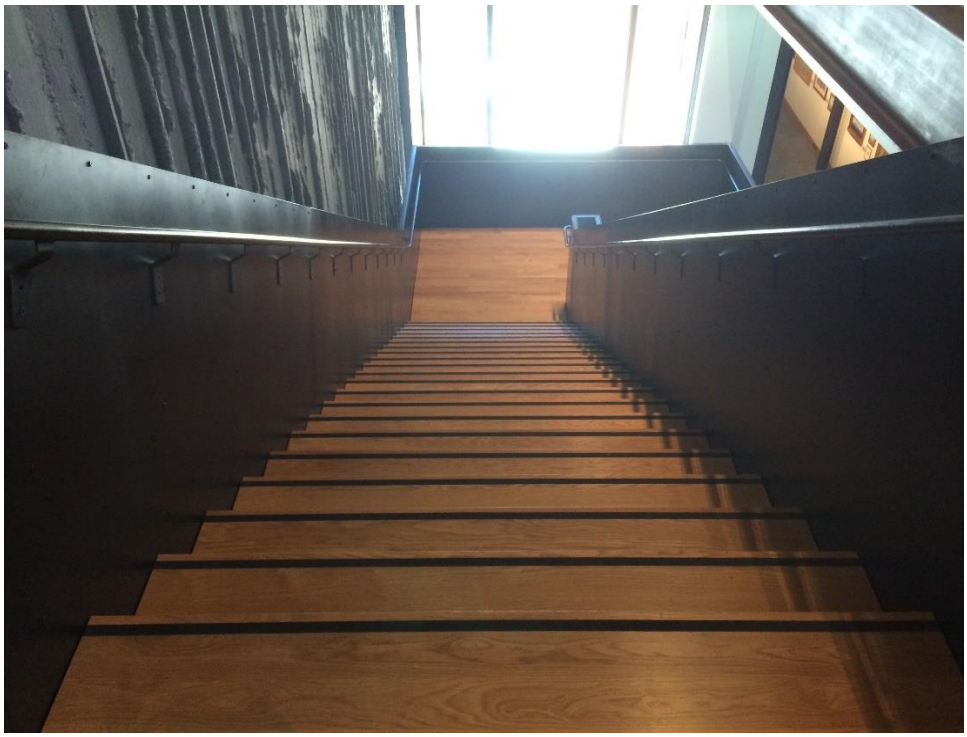




Examples of stairway markings in new exception.

This seems to provide a clearer message than steps that could comply with the current exception 1.


SHARP



Committee Action: 22-1-2 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved because the stairway striping is for persons with mobility impairments to be able to see each tread, as well as an indication of the stairway for the visually impaired.

504.6-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*5-12– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 22-1-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved because the stairway striping is for persons with mobility impairments to be able to see each tread, as well as an indication of the stairway for the visually impaired.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-14 – 2021
504.9, 504.9.1, 504.9.2

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 504
STAIRWAYS

504.9 Lighting. Lighting for ~~interior~~ stairways shall comply with Section ~~504.9~~ 1008.2 of the International Building Code.

~~**504.9.1 Illumination level.** Lighting facilities shall be capable of providing illuminance of stairs measured at the center of tread surfaces and on landing surfaces within 24 inches (610 mm) of step nosings as follows:~~

~~1. A 1-foot-candle (10.8 lux) minimum illumination at times other than conditions of stair use~~
~~2. A 10-foot-candle (108 lux) minimum illumination during conditions of stair use~~
~~3. The transition from 1 foot candle (10.8 lux) to 10 foot candle (108 lux) under conditions of stair use shall be permitted to be achieved by automatic, motion sensor-type lighting switches provided the switch controllers comply with all of the following:~~
~~3.1 The switch controllers are equipped for fail-safe operation and evaluated for this purpose~~
~~3.2 The motion sensor is activated by occupant movement on the stair or stair landings~~
~~3.3 The illumination timers are set for a minimum 15-minute duration.~~

~~**504.9.2 Lighting controls.** If provided, occupancy-sensing automatic controls shall activate the stairway lighting so the illuminance level required by Section 504.9.1 is provided on the entrance landing, each stair flight adjacent to the entrance landing, and on the landings above and below the entrance landing prior to any step being used.~~

REASON: This proposal is not intended to remove this requirement, but rather to reference the more complete requirements in the IBC. The requirement in the IBC are for interior exit access and exit stairways and exterior exit stairways – current A117.1 is only interior. The IBC has a reasonable exception for stepped aisles in auditoriums and theaters during a performance – the ICC A117.1 does not have this exception. The IBC Section 1008.2.1 required 1 foot candle on the stairways and landings when the building is occupies, and 10 foot candles when the stairway and landings are in use. There are more extensive provision for lighting controls in the International Energy Conservation Code in Section C405.2.2.1.

05-14 – 2021 modification

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Further revise text as follows:

SECTION 106
REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

106.2.5 International Building Code. International Code Council (ICC) International Building Code-2024.

Reason: A reference to IBC would require this to be a referenced standard in Section 106.

Staff Note: Mod is ruled editorial.

Committee Action: 23-2-1 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the committee felt that the lighting provisions for stairways should stay in the standard. A public comment to address exterior stairways or exceptions for steps in assembly seating venues could be considered.

504.6-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*5-14– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-2-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the committee felt that the lighting provisions for stairways should stay in the standard. A public comment to address exterior stairways or exceptions for steps in assembly seating venues could be considered.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-15 – 2021
405.11(New), 504.10

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 504
STAIRWAYS

504.10 Tactile signage within the stairway or ramp enclosure. ~~Stair~~ Floor level identification signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed exit stairways or ramps connecting more than three stories. Such sign shall be located adjacent to the door leading from the ~~stairwell~~ enclosed exit stairway or ramp into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge shall have a sign with raised characters and braille stating "EXIT."

504.11 Tactile signage at exits. A sign stating EXIT in raised characters and Braille and complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be provided adjacent to each door to an area of refuge providing direct access to a stairway, an exterior area for assisted rescue, an exit stairway, an exit ramp, an exit passageway and the exit discharge.

SECTI0N 405
RAMPS

405.11 Tactile signage. Provide tactile signage within and enclosed ramp in accordance with Section 504.10. Provide tactile exit signs adjacent to each door in accordance with Section 504.11.

REASON: The change to proposed 504.15 is addressing a current conflict/difference with the IBC for tactile signage. The IBC contains provisions for exit stairway and ramps identification signage only where the stairway or ramp is connecting more than three stories (2021 IBC Section 1023.9). The current provisions in 504.10 only address stairways, but 504.11 addresses stairways and ramps. Rather than repeat the signage information in ramps, a reference to the provisions in 504 seems appropriate.

05-15 – 2021 Modification
504.10

Proponent: Sharon Toji, representing Communications Task Group

Further modify text as follows:

504.10 Tactile signage within the stairway or ramp enclosure. Floor level identification signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed exit stairways or ramps ~~connecting more than three stories~~. Such sign shall be located adjacent to the door leading from the enclosed exit stairway or ramp into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge shall have a sign with raised characters and braille stating "EXIT."

Reason: As we explained in our reason statement for our modification to 05-1-2021, we believe that the proponent was mistaken in her belief that there was a conflict with IBC regarding floor level signs in stairways. While IBC Section 1023.9 does not require signs on stairways connecting 3 or fewer stories, it also does not prohibit them. If a designer elects to provide such signs, another Section, IBC 1023.11, would require them to be accessible because this provision applies where such signs are "provided", not where "required".

Committee Action: Committee unanimously approved as modified. 29-0-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): Committee unanimously approved. 29-0-2

504.10 Tactile signage within the stairway or ramp enclosure. Floor level identification signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed exit stairways or ramps ~~connecting more than three stories~~. Such sign shall be located adjacent to the door leading from the enclosed exit stairway or ramp into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge shall have a sign with raised characters and braille stating "EXIT."

Committee Reason: The purpose of the modification was so that stair level identification signage would be provided in any height building.

The current provisions in 504.10 only address stairways, but 504.11 addresses stairways and ramps. Rather than repeat the signage information in ramps, a reference to the provisions in 504 is appropriate.

504.6-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *05-15– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify text as follows:** **504.10 Tactile signage within the stairway or ramp enclosure.** Floor level identification signs in raised characters and braille complying with Sections 703.3 and 703.4 shall be located at each floor level landing in all enclosed exit stairways or ramps ~~connecting more than three stories~~. Such sign shall be located adjacent to the door leading from the enclosed exit stairway or ramp into the corridor to identify the floor level. The exit door discharging to the outside or to the level of exit discharge shall have a sign with raised characters and braille stating "EXIT."		
Committee Reason: The purpose of the modification was so that stair level identification signage would be provided in any height building. The current provisions in 504.10 only address stairways, but 504.11 addresses stairways and ramps. Rather than repeat the signage information in ramps, a reference to the provisions in 504 is appropriate.		

Report for *05-15– 2021*		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-17 – 2021
504.5, Figures 504.5(B) and 504.5(C)

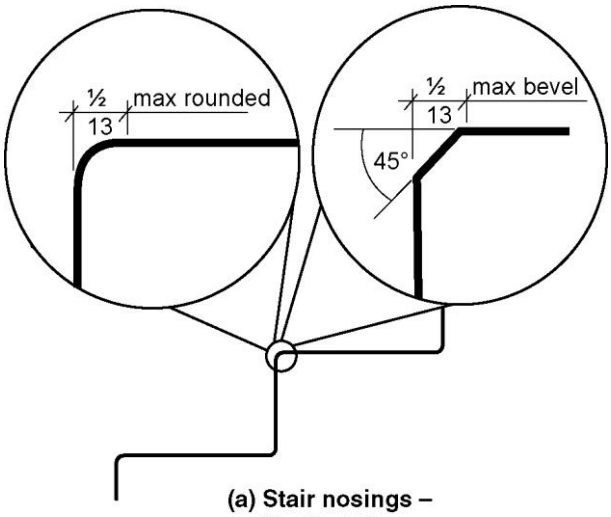
Proponent: David W. Cooper, Stair Design and Manufacturing Consultants, representing Stairbuilders and Manufacturers Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 504
STAIRWAYS

504.5 Nosings. Nosings shall comply with the following:

1. Nosings within a stairway shall be uniform.
2. If rounded, the radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum.
3. If beveled, the bevel at the leading edge shall slope at 45 degrees to the plane of the top surface of the tread and landing and extend for a horizontal distance of ½ inch (13 mm) maximum.
4. Nosings that project beyond risers shall have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled.
5. Risers shall be permitted to slope under the tread at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical.
6. The permitted projection of the nosing shall be ~~11/2~~ 1 ¼ inches (~~38~~ 32 mm) maximum over the tread or floor below.



(a) Stair nosings – Vertical Riser

FIGURE 504.5(A)
STAIR NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER - CURVE OR BEVEL AT LEADING EDGE

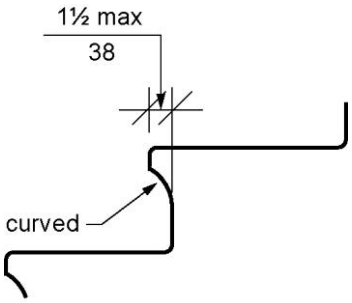


FIGURE 504.5(B)
STAIR NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER CURVED NOSING
(Note: Revise drawings to change 1-1/2 to 1-1/4)

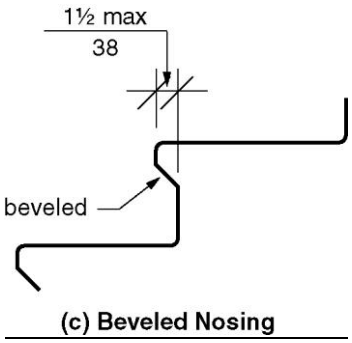


FIGURE 504.5(C)
STAIR NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER BEVELED NOSING
(Note: Revise drawings to change 1-1/2 to 1-1/4 and add 30 degrees maximum)

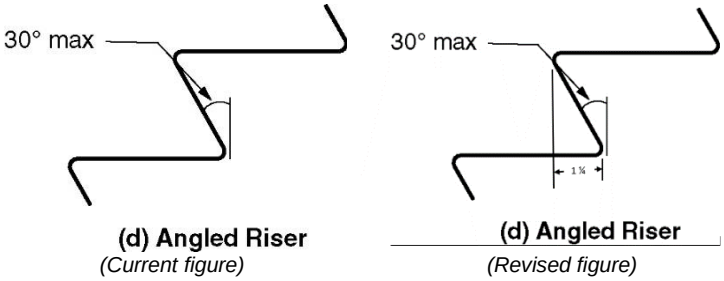


FIGURE 504.5(D)
STAIR NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER ANGLED RISER
(Note: Revise drawings to add 1-1/4)

REASON: The nosing projection allowed in the IBC is only 1 ¼ inches (32 mm) the A117.1 standard should cause confusion because it specifies a larger nosing projection that is contradictive.

05-17 – 2021 modification
504.5, Figures 504.5(B) and 504.5(C)

Proponent: David W. Cooper, Stair Design and Manufacturing Consultants, representing Stairbuilders and Manufacturers Association

Further modify as follows:

504.5 Nosings. Nosings shall comply with the following:

1. Nosings within a stairway shall be uniform.
2. If rounded, the radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum.
3. If beveled, the bevel at the leading edge shall slope at 45 degrees to the plane of the top surface of the tread and landing and extend for a horizontal distance of ½ inch (13 mm) maximum.
4. Nosings that project beyond risers shall have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from the vertical.
5. Risers shall be permitted to slope or curve under the tread provided the permitted projection of the nosing is not exceeded ~~at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical~~.
6. The permitted projection of the nosing shall be 1 ¼ inches (32 mm) maximum over the tread or floor below.

Revise drawings to match revision in Section 504.5 Item 6

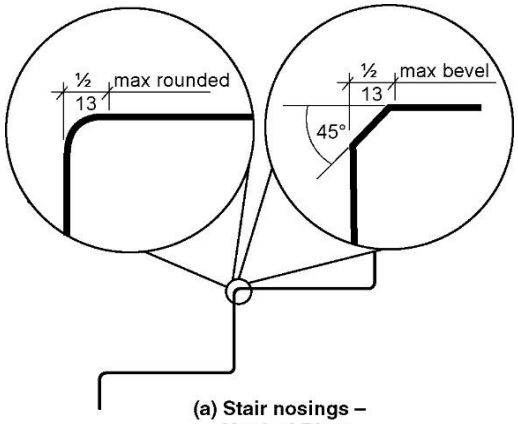
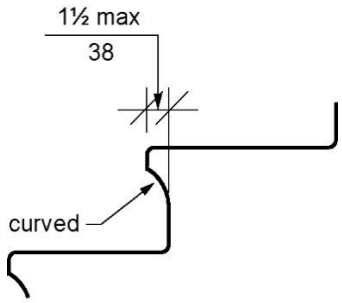
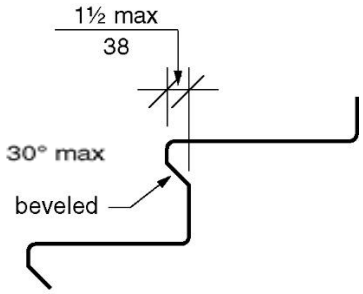


FIGURE 504.5(A)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER - CURVE OR BEVEL AT LEADING EDGE



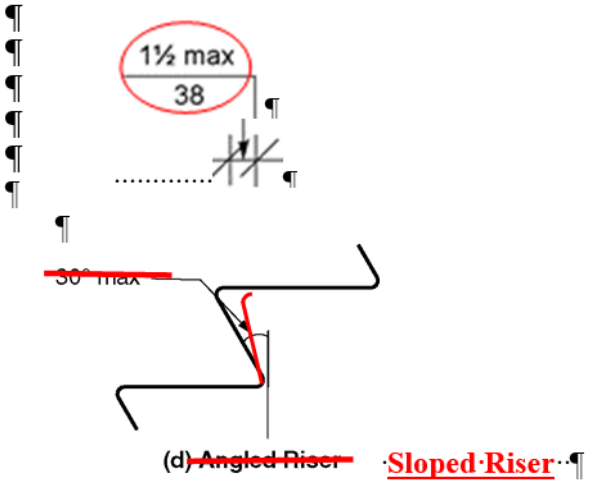
(b) Curved Nosing

FIGURE 504.5(B)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER CURVED NOSING OR CURVED RISER



(c) Beveled Nosing

FIGURE 504.5(C)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER BEVELED NOSING OR SLOPED RISER



(d) ~~Angled Riser~~ Sloped Riser

FIGURE 504.5(D)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - ~~VERTICAL~~ SLOPED RISER

Note: Dimension on Figure 504.5(B), 504.5(C) and 504.5(D) will be revised to 1-1/4”

Reason: The modification of the text of items 4 and 5 more aptly resolves the issue cited in the original proposal by correctly using the terms nosing and riser and references to their allowed shape and projection. It further corrects the drawings and their labels to accurately portray the text of the standard.

Committee Action: 21-3-4 Approved as Modified by the submitted modification

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Further modify as follows:

504.5 Nosings. Nosings shall comply with the following:

1. Nosings within a stairway shall be uniform.
2. If rounded, the radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum.
3. If beveled, the bevel at the leading edge shall slope at 45 degrees to the plane of the top surface of the tread and landing and extend for a horizontal distance of ½ inch (13 mm) maximum.
4. Nosings that project beyond risers shall have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from the vertical.
5. Risers shall be permitted to slope or curve under the tread provided the permitted projection of the nosing is not exceeded ~~at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical~~.
6. The permitted projection of the nosing shall be 1 ¼ inches (32 mm) maximum over the tread or floor below.

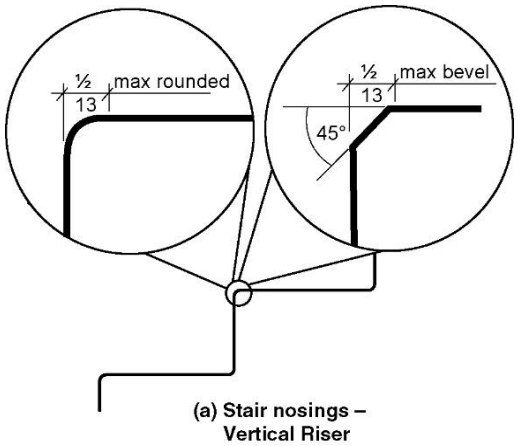
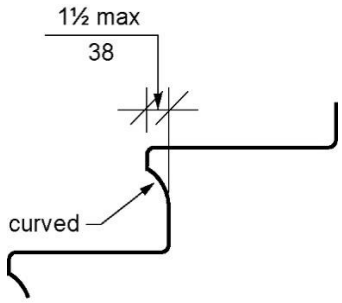
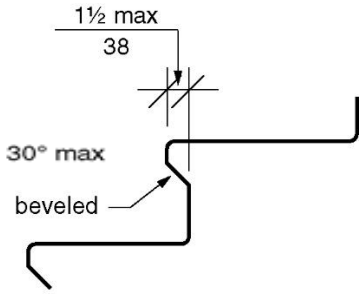


FIGURE 504.5(A)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER - CURVE OR BEVEL AT LEADING EDGE



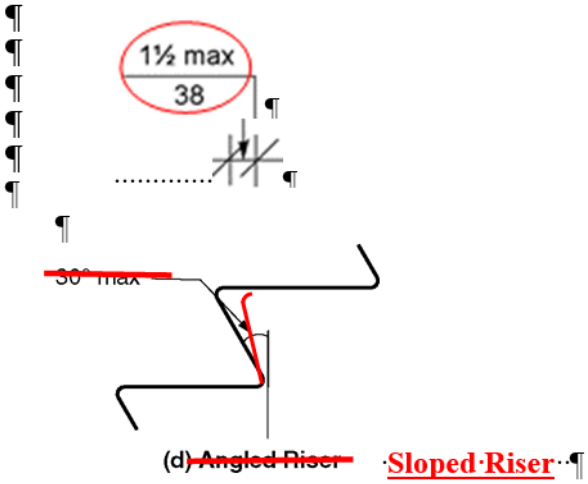
(b) Curved Nosing

FIGURE 504.5(B)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER CURVED NOSING OR CURVED RISER



(c) Beveled Nosing

FIGURE 504.5(C)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER BEVELED NOSING OR SLOPED RISER



(d) ~~Angled Riser~~ Sloped Riser

FIGURE 504.5(D)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - ~~VERTICAL~~ SLOPED RISER ~~ANGLED RISER~~

Note: Dimension on Figure 504.5(B), 504.5(C) and 504.5(D) will be revised to 1-1/4"

Committee Reason: The modification was approved as an improvement to the terminology for nosing and a clarification of the sloped risers. The committee agrees that the 1-1/4 inch limitations should be coordinated with the IBC requirements for consistency across codes. Figures will need to be revised to more accurately reflect the code language. Additional clarification is needed for the confusion between nosing versus sloped riser.

505.4-COOPER.doc

Report for *05-17– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-3-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):
Further modify as follows:

504.5 Nosings. Nosings shall comply with the following:

1. Nosings within a stairway shall be uniform.
2. If rounded, the radius of curvature at the leading edge of the tread shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum.
3. If beveled, the bevel at the leading edge shall slope at 45 degrees to the plane of the top surface of the tread and landing and extend for a horizontal distance of ½ inch (13 mm) maximum.
4. Nosings that project beyond risers shall have the underside of the leading edge curved or beveled at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from the vertical.
5. Risers shall be permitted to slope or curve under the tread provided the permitted projection of the nosing is not exceeded ~~at an angle of 30 degrees maximum from vertical~~.
6. The permitted projection of the nosing shall be 1 ¼ inches (32 mm) maximum over the tread or floor below.

FIGURE 504.5(A)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER - CURVE OR BEVEL AT LEADING EDGE

FIGURE 504.5(B)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER CURVED NOSING OR CURVED RISER

FIGURE 504.5(C)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - VERTICAL RISER BEVELED NOSING OR SLOPED RISER

FIGURE 504.5(D)
~~STAIR~~ NOSINGS - ~~VERTICAL~~ SLOPED RISER ~~ANGLED RISER~~

Note: Dimension on Figure 504.5(B), 504.5(C) and 504.5(D) will be revised to 1-1/4"

Committee Reason: The modification was approved as an improvement to the terminology for nosing and a clarification of the sloped risers. The committee agrees that the 1-1/4 inch limitations should be coordinated with the IBC requirements for consistency across codes. Figures will need to be revised to more accurately reflect the code language. Additional clarification is needed for the confusion between nosing versus sloped riser.

PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT:
Proponent:
Desired Action:
Modification:
Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT
Modification (if any):
Committee Reason:

PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:
Proponent:
Desired Action:
Modification:
Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

FINAL ACTION:
Modification (if any):
Committee Reason:

05-18 – 2021
505.5

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 504
STAIRWAYS

505.5 Clearance. Clearance between handrail gripping surface and adjacent surfaces shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the handrail and projecting objects above the handrail shall be 18 inches (455 mm) minimum. A projecting object shall not project further than the inside face of the handrail.

REASON: Although this was deleted from the provisions, it needs to be brought back. We have recently seen a handrail located in a recess that had only 3 inches clear above the top gripping surface. This makes the condition potentially unsafe since the top of the hand can contact the underside of the projecting wall above.

In researching this issue, it was found that other elements could become problematic as well. Wall sconces and artwork mounted to the wall can become elements that may adversely affect the ability to grasp the handrail in an emergency condition.

Committee Action: 19-6-5 Approved as submitted
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that there should be clearances above the handrails but did not agree on what that dimension should be. There was also concern that the first and 2nd added sentences do not work together and might conflict with the protruding object criteria in Section 307.

505.5-BOECKER.doc

Report for 0*5-18– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 19-6-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed that there should be clearances above the handrails but did not agree on what that dimension should be. There was also concern that the first and 2nd added sentences do not work together and might conflict with the protruding object criteria in Section 307.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		

Report for 0*5-18– 2021*		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-19 – 2021
505.10

Proponent: David W. Cooper, Stair Design and Manufacturing Consultants, representing Stairbuilders and Manufacturers Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 505
HANDRAILS

505.10 Handrail extensions. Handrails shall extend the minimum distance beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs without change in direction in accordance with Section 505.10.

Exceptions:

1. Continuous handrails at the inside turn of stairs and ramps.
2. Handrail extensions shall not be required in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within the aisle.
3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails shall not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration.

REASON: This change will provide for consistent enforcement of the measured length of handrail extensions at ramps and stairs.

Committee Action: 14-7-3 Approved as modified
REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): Mod passes 18-1-6, Second Mod to add 'required' passes 23-0-4

Further modify as follows:

505.10 Handrail extensions. ~~Handrails~~ Handrail extensions shall be in accordance with Section 505.10 and shall extend not less than the minimum required distance beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs without any change in direction or a decrease in clearances required by Sections 505.5 and 505.6 ~~in accordance with Section 505.10~~.

Exceptions:

1. Continuous handrails at the inside turn of stairs and ramps.
2. Handrail extensions shall not be required in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within the aisle.
3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails shall not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration.

Committee Reason: The modifications adds language that clarifies that the requirements for the handrail extension apply for the required distance and can bend down or sideways after that point. This is consistent with the intent of the original proposal but with more precise language.

505.10-COOPER.doc

Report for 05-19– 2021		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 14-7-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **505.10 Handrail extensions.** ~~Handrails~~ Handrail extensions shall be in accordance with Section 505.10 and shall extend not less than the minimum required distance beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs without any change in direction or a decrease in clearances required by Sections 505.5 and 505.6 ~~in accordance with Section 505.10~~.		
Committee Reason: The modifications adds language that clarifies that the requirements for the handrail extension apply for the required distance and can bend down or sideways after that point. This is consistent with the intent of the original proposal but with more precise language.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-20 – 2021
505.10

Proponent: Thomas B Zuzik Jr, Railingcodes.com, representing National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association (NOMMA)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 505
HANDRAILS

505.10 Handrail extensions. Handrails shall extend beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs, and shall extend the required minimum length before any change in direction in accordance with Section 505.10. The minimum length of the extension shall be measured to the extension's shorter usable area, per Sections 505.5 and 505.6.

Exceptions:

1. Continuous handrails at the inside turn of stairs and ramps.
2. Handrail extensions shall not be required in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within the aisle.

3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails shall not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration.

REASON: This change will provide for consistent enforcement of the measured length of handrail extensions at ramps and stairs.

Staff note: If this proposal is accepted, direction will be required for Figures 505.10.1, 505.10.2 and 505.10.3.

05-20 – 2021 modification

Proponent: Thomas B Zuzik Jr, Railingcodes.com, representing National Ornamental & Miscellaneous Metals Association (NOMMA)

Further modify:

505.10 Handrail extensions. Handrails shall extend beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs, and shall extend the required minimum length before any change in direction or decrease in clearances required by Sections 505.5 and 505.6, in accordance with Section 505.10. ~~The minimum length of the extension shall be measured to the extension's shorter usable area, per Sections 505.5 and 505.6.~~

Exceptions:

1. Continuous handrails at the inside turn of stairs and ramps.
2. Handrail extensions shall not be required in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within the aisle.
3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails shall not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration.

Reason: This proposed modification, brings this A117.1 proposal in-line with IBC code change E76-21 in the Part A code change cycle. The rest of the reason statement in the original proposal stand inline with this modification.

Committee Action: 29-1-3 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The issue was addressed in 05-19-2021.

505.10-COOPER.doc

Report for 0*5-20– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** 29-1-3	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The issue was addressed in 05-19-2021.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		

Report for 0*5-20– 2021*
Committee Reason:

05-21 – 2021
505.10.1, 505.10.2, 505.10.3, Figures 505.10.3

Proponent: David Cooper, Stair Design and Manufacturing Consultants, representing Stairbuilders and Manufacturers Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 505
HANDRAILS

505.10.1 Top and bottom extension at ramps. Ramp handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or floor, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp run or adjacent flight of stairs.

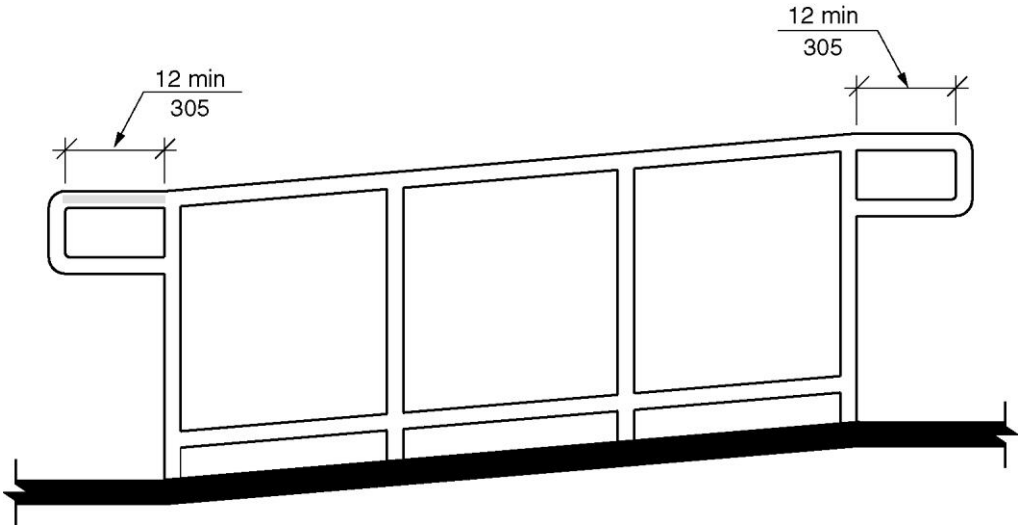


FIGURE 505.10.1
TOP AND BOTTOM HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT RAMPS

505.10.2 Top extension at stairs. At the top of a stair flight, handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beginning directly above the landing nosing. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight or adjacent ramp run.

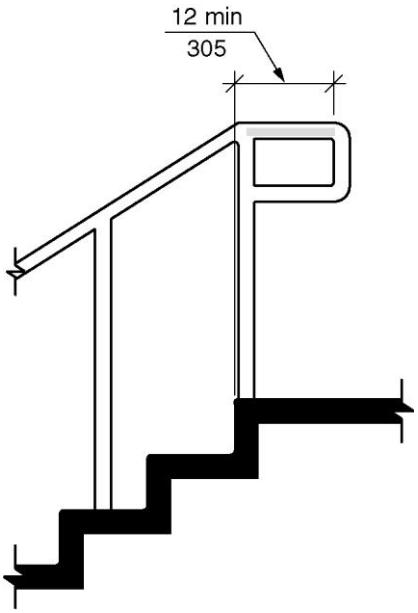


FIGURE 505.10.1
TOP AND BOTTOM HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT RAMPS

505.10.3 Bottom extension at stairs. At the bottom of a stair flight, handrails shall extend at the slope of the stair flight for a horizontal distance equal to one tread depth beyond the bottom tread nosing. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight or adjacent ramp run.

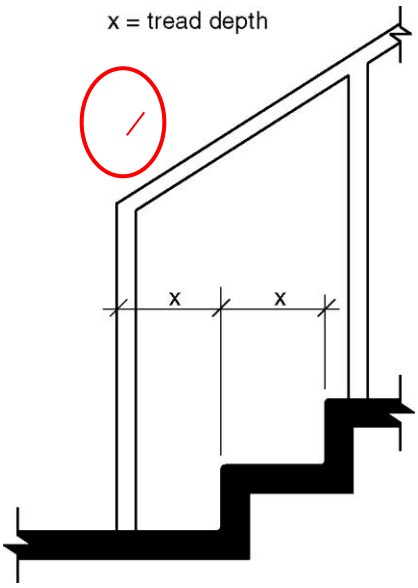


FIGURE 505.10.3
BOTTOM HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT STAIRS

REASON: It is very common for stairs and ramps in juxtaposition to leave no room for typical handrail extensions but it is often feasible to make the handrail continuous at the intersection of the ramp and stair just as it is to provide continuity at adjoining ramp runs and adjoining flights of stairs.

Committee Action: 32-0-2 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The language is confusing. The reason is not specific on why this change in needed. No supporting data was submitted. There is concern that 'continuous' handrails should be along the same path and direction of travel, not a ramp and stairway that come up to the same landing.

505.10.1-COOPER.doc

Report for *05-21– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** 32-0-2	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The language is confusing. The reason is not specific on why this change in needed. No supporting data was submitted. There is concern that 'continuous' handrails should be along the same path and direction of travel, not a ramp and stairway that come up to the same landing.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-22 – 2021
505.10.1, 505.10.2, 505.10.3, Figures 505.10.3

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 505
HANDRAILS

505.10 Handrail extensions. Handrails shall extend beyond and in the same direction of stair flights and ramp runs in accordance with Section 505.10.

Exceptions:

1. Continuous handrails at the inside turn of stairs and ramps.
2. Handrail extensions shall not be required in aisles serving seating where the handrails are discontinuous to provide access to seating and to permit crossovers within the aisle.
3. In alterations, full extensions of handrails shall not be required where such extensions would be hazardous due to plan configuration.

505.10.1 Top and bottom extension at ramps. Ramp handrails shall extend horizontally above the landing 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the top and bottom of ramp runs and shall extend the required minimum length before any change in direction or decrease in clearances required by Section 505.3 or 505.5. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or floor, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent ramp run.

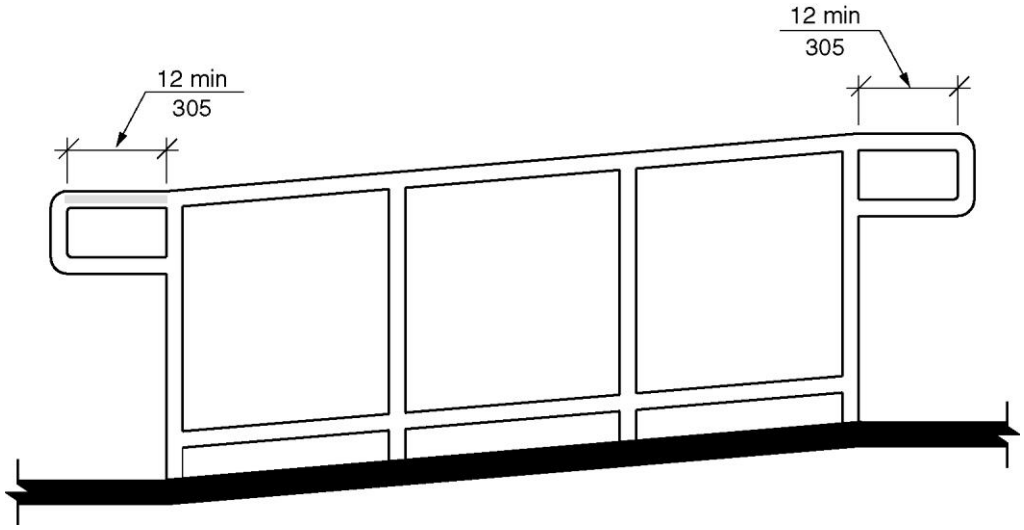


FIGURE 505.10.1
TOP AND BOTTOM HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT RAMPS

505.10.2 Top extension at stairs. At the top of a stair flight, handrails shall extend horizontally ~~above~~ beyond the landing nosing for 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and shall extend the required minimum length before any change in direction or decrease in clearances required by Section 505.3 or 505.5 ~~beginning directly above the landing nosing~~. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.

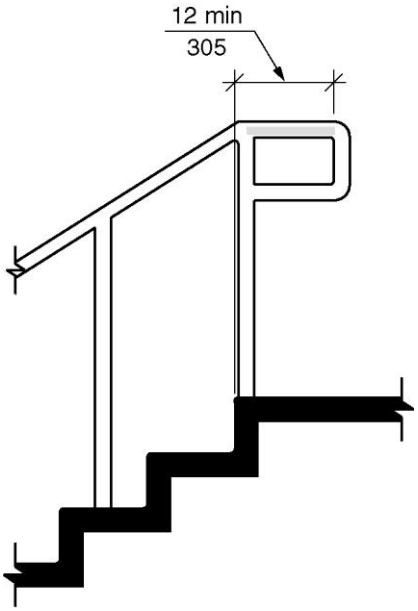


FIGURE 505.10.1
TOP AND BOTTOM HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT RAMPS

505.10.3 Bottom extension at stairs. At the bottom of a stair flight, handrails shall extend at the slope of the stair flight for a horizontal distance equal to one tread depth beyond the bottom tread nosing and shall extend the required minimum length before any change in direction or decrease in clearances required by Section 505.3 or 505.5. Extensions shall return to a wall, guard, or the landing surface, or shall be continuous to the handrail of an adjacent stair flight.

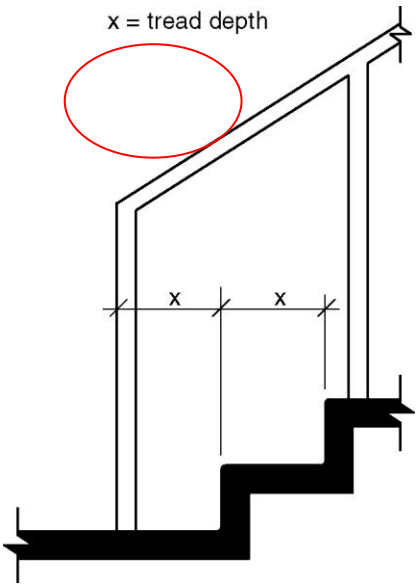


FIGURE 505.10.3
BOTTOM HANDRAIL EXTENSION AT STAIRS

REASON: There are two code changes into IBC to clarify where the extension is measured to E75-21 and E76-21. The intent of this proposal is to be consistent with these proposals. The handrail can turn down or out to a wall, so this needs to be addressed in both directions.

Section 505.3 Continuity cites clearances at handrail brackets and Section 505.5 cites clearances at walls and other surfaces. Clearances is relevant as the clearances decreases at the beginning of a horizontal bend or return. The change in direction identifies the end of the grasping surface.

Committee Action: 33-0-2 Disapproved
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The issue was addressed in 05-19-2021.

505.10-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*5-22– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 33-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The issue was addressed in 05-19-2021.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		

Report for 0*5-22– 2021*		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-23 – 2021
506.1, 1102.13

Proponent: Gina Hilberry, Cohen Hilberry Architects, representing United Cerebral Palsy

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 506
WINDOWS

506.1 General. Where operable windows are provided in an accessible room or space, at least one shall comply with Section 506. Where operable windows are required to provide natural ventilation or operable windows are required to provide an emergency escape and rescue opening, that window shall be the operable window that complies with Section 506.

Exceptions:
1. Operable windows that are operated only by employees shall not be required to comply with this section.
2. Operable windows in Type A units that comply with Section 1103.13.
3. Operable skylights shall not be required to comply with this section.
4. Operable windows in Type B and Type C units shall not be required to comply with this section.

SECTION 1102
ACCESSIBLE UNITS

1102.13 Windows. Operable windows shall comply with Section 506.1.

Exceptions:
1. Windows in kitchens and over a counter shall not be required to comply with Section ~~1102.13~~ 506.1 where an exhaust fan, a vented range hood or another operable is provided within the same general area.
2. Windows in bathrooms shall not be required to comply with Section 1102.13 where an exhaust fan is provided in the bathroom.

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS

1103.13 Windows. Operable windows shall comply with Section 1103.13.

Exceptions:
1. Windows in kitchens shall not be required to comply with Section 1103.13.
2. Windows in bathrooms shall not be required to comply with Section 1103.13.

1103.13.1 Natural ventilation. Operable windows required to provide natural ventilation shall comply with Sections 309.2 and 309.3.

1103.13.2 Emergency escape. Operable windows required to provide an emergency escape and rescue opening shall comply with Section 309.2.

REASON: Section 506.1 Exception 4 These residential facilities are not required to have windows with hardware within reach or that meet force requirements.

1102.13. In kitchen and bathrooms it is nearly impossible to locate the operating hardware and locks within reach. Where the need for ventilation is addressed by means of mechanical equipment or a window in an adjoining space, it is better to have the window than to create a regulatory situation that suggests omitting the window just to avoid the requirement.

Staff Note: WITHDRAWN BY PROPONENT

Committee Action: AS AM D
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

506.1-HILBERRY.doc

Report for 0*5-23– 2021*		
Committee decision: Withdrawn	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-24 – 2021
507.1

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 507
ACCESSIBLE ROUTES THROUGH PARKING

507.1 General. Where accessible routes pass through parking facilities, they shall be physically ~~separated~~ protected from vehicular traffic.

Exceptions:

1. Accessible routes crossings drive aisles shall not be required to comply with this section.
2. Accessible routes only from parking spaces complying with Section 502 and passenger loading zones complying with Section 503 to accessible entrances shall not be required to comply with this section.

REASON: Users are confused as to the meaning of the requirement to "physically separate" routes through parking from vehicular traffic. They ask if this means that the route must be raised above the traffic lanes and how high or if a yellow line would suffice. When considering this proposal, the committee also struggled with this wording. We believe the word "protected" works better than "separated" and is a more acceptable performance standard as it better conveys the purpose. The designer would have to determine how to protect the route – they might elevate it to curb level, provide barriers such as wheel stops, jersey barriers, railings, or anything else that affords some physical protection. A pavement marking would not comply because although it is a physical element, it fails to afford "protection". Under the current text, however, a pavement marking could be construed to meet the requirement for "physical separation".

Staff Note: Held to next meeting.

Committee Action: 25-1-4 As Submitted
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The term 'protect' better explains the purpose of this requirement.

507.1-MAZZ.doc

Report for 0*5-24– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-1-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The term 'protect' better explains the purpose of this requirement.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		

Report for 0*5-24– 2021*		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

05-25 – 2021
507, 507.1

Proponent: Billie Louise (Beezy) Bentzen, PhD., Accessible Design for the Blind, representing Association for the Education and Rehabilitation of the Blind and Visually Impaired (AER)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 507
ACCESSIBLE ROUTES ~~THROUGH PARKING~~ FROM PUBLIC TRANSIT STOPS OR STATIONS TO FACILITIES THEY SERVE

507.1 General. Where accessible routes pass through parking facilities and are intended to provide access from public transit stops or stations to facilities, they shall be physically separated from vehicular traffic by one or more of the following:

1. A vertical change in level of 4 inches, minimum.
2. Barriers or railings complying with MUTCD Chapter 6.
3. Landscaping.
4. Parking spaces having a barrier or wheel stops between the parking spaces and the accessible route.

Exceptions:

~~1.~~ Accessible routes crossing drive aisles shall not be required to comply with this section.

~~2. Accessible routes only from parking spaces complying with Section 502 and passenger loading zones complying with Section 503 to accessible entrances shall not be required to comply with this section.~~

REASON: Lack of protected accessible routes from public transit stops and stations to such facilities as medical facilities, education facilities, government agencies, shopping centers, malls, and other public spaces commonly surrounded by large parking areas presents a barrier to those who are dependent upon public transportation and pedestrian modes of travel. The need to walk through parking lots to get from public transportation stops to facilities they serve makes it difficult and unsafe for persons who have visual impairments or mobility impairments and persons of short stature, including children, to access many facilities.

Committee Action: WITHDRAWN BY PROPONENT
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

507-BENTZEN.doc

Report for *05-25– 2021*		
Committee decision: Withdrawn	*Committee Vote at Meeting:*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*

Report for *05-25– 2021*		
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent: Desired Action: Modification: Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent: Desired Action: Modification: Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		

ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report
Chapter 6

06-01 – 2021
602.4.1

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 602
DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND BOTTLE FILLING STATIONS

602.4.1 Clear floor space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 positioned for a forward or side approach shall be provided.

REASON: This is somewhat of a "style" issue for the committee to consider, but it also provides clarity for the standard. While Section 305 is a "building block" section and is titled "Clear Floor Space", since that is not a defined term, there truly is nothing to state that the clear space that this section is looking for must be of any specific size or configuration. If a designer or owner provided an 18" x 18" space similar to Section 703.3.11 or a space of any other size or configuration, how can any enforcing agency say it is not in compliance unless a specific reference or configuration is given?

This may be an item for an editorial task group to investigate. This is not the only section of the standard where this uncertainty exists. Plus, if a revision is made to only some locations, then the assumption would be that if any other section did not contain a reference that the intent was different and that a differently sized or configured space would be permitted. Unfortunately, the current standard is inconsistent. Many sections do contain the phrase "complying with Section 305" or they rely on references to other sections such as Section 309 and 309.2 which would then reference Section 305. In some sections a previous reference to Section 305 or 309 would be adequate and not every time the term "clear floor space" is used would the added reference be needed. Examples of other sections that could use this added reference are Sections 306.1, 407.2.1.3, 602.2.1 and others.

Committee Action: 27-0-4 As submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Adding the reference to this section is editorial and add clarity. The editorial committee should investigate for consistency throughout the document.

602.4.1-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*6-01– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 27-0-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Adding the reference to this section is editorial and add clarity. The editorial committee should investigate for consistency throughout the document.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-02 – 2021
602.4.2

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 602
DRINKING FOUNTAINS AND BOTTLE FILLING STATIONS

602.4.2 Controls. Controls for bottle filling stations shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated controls shall comply with Section 309. Automatic controls shall allow for bottle filling within the height requirements of Section 309.3.

REASON: As currently written, automatic controls are not regulated by Section 309 and therefore are not required to be within the reach range. The provisions of Sections 602.2 and 602.3 (specifically 602.2.2 and 602.3.1) require "operable parts" for the drinking fountains to comply with Section 309 and also establish a spout height requirement. Those height limits would be required whether the drinking fountains are hand operated or automatic. The bottle filling station provisions do not contain a similar requirement and therefore it could be argued that a bottle filling station may require either a reach above 48 inches or below 15 inches in order to operate. This requirement does not specify the filler height or require it to function within the entire range of 15 to 48 inches. The intent is simply that the automatic bottle filling controls should require the filling operation to be within the minimum and maximum reach ranges.

Committee Action: 25-4-2 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The ability to activate automatic controls for bottle fillers by a seating person should be considered as well as their ability to manual operate controls.

602.4.2-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*6-02– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-4-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The ability to activate automatic controls for bottle fillers by a seating person should be considered as well as their ability to manual operate controls.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		

Report for 0*6-02– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-03 – 2021
603.2.1

Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University at Buffalo, representing RESNA.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.2.1 Turning space. A turning space shall be provided within the room. ~~The required~~ ~~t~~ Turning spaces ~~shall~~ are not ~~be provided~~ required within ~~a~~ toilet ~~compartment~~ compartments. Where provided, such turning spaces shall not be the only turning space in the room.

REASON: As currently written, it is not allowable to include a turning space within a compartment. This revision clarifies that they are allowed but a turning space in the room is still required if they are provided.

Committee Action: 28-0-1 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The current language meets the intent of the proponent and is clearer than the proposed text. This could be explained further in commentary.

603.2.1-STEINFELD.doc

Report for 0*6-03– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The current language meets the intent of the proponent and is clearer than the proposed text. This could be explained further in commentary.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		

Report for 0*6-03– 2021*
Modification (if any):
Committee Reason:

06-04 – 2021
603.3

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.3 Mirrors. Where mirrors are located above lavatories, a mirror shall be located over the lavatory complying with Section 606 and shall be ~~mounted~~ installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface ~~40~~ 38 inches (~~1015~~ 965 mm) maximum above the floor. Where mirrors are located above ~~counters~~ work surfaces that do not contain lavatories, the mirror shall be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface ~~40~~ 38 inches (~~1015~~ 965 mm) maximum above the floor.

Exception: Other than within Accessible dwelling or sleeping units, mirrors ~~shall not be required~~ over ~~the~~ lavatories ~~or~~ and ~~counters~~ work surfaces shall not be required to comply with this section ~~if~~ where a mirror is located within the same toilet or bathing room and is ~~mounted~~ installed with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 35 inches (890 mm) maximum above the floor.

REASON: The term "work surface" is substituted in this section for "counter". Counters in toilet and bathing rooms are only indirectly covered – if they contain a lavatory or if one must reach across them to access an operable part. Counters with lavatories are already covered by this section. The other type of counter typically found in a toilet or bathing room is more similar to a work surface for which technical criteria is provided in Section 902.44 and where one can rest grooming products and personal belongings while combing their hair.

A common complaint among United Spinal members is that a mirror that is installed with the bottom of the reflecting surface at 40 inches min. above the floor do not reflect enough of their face and shoulders to allow for proper grooming. The front of an accessible lavatory or work surface cannot be higher than 34 inches (Sections 606.3and 902.3). Requiring the mirror to be installed no higher than 38 inches above the floor will allow adequate space (4 inches) for a back splash or other treatment. If space is limited, designers can opt for a frameless mirror.

We revised the exception because it was confusing. As written, it exempted a mirror from being installed over the lavatory – this is not required. We revised the exception to match the intent by allowing mirrors over lavatories and counters not to be accessible if a mirror with its bottom edge no higher than 35 inches is installed elsewhere in the toilet or bathing room.

We propose changing the word" mounted" to "installed" because "mounting" is what jockeys do to horses and "installing" is what contractors do for building products. CSI Master Format Division 1 defines "install": Unload, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to

dimension, finish, cure, connect to required services, store and protect, and similar operations required to put a product in place and make it functional and "provide": Furnish and install completely, ready for intended use.

Committee Action: 27-2-3 Disapprove

REPORT OF HEARING:
Staff note: The word 'maximum' was not included in the first sentence. The proponent did not intend to delete it.

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The lowering of the mirror could be too tight against the backsplash. There was no information given showing that the lowering of the mirror would improve seeing in the mirror. There is the option to provide a mirror someplace else in the room.

603.3-MAZZ.doc

Report for 0*6-04– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 27-2-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): Committee Reason: The lowering of the mirror could be too tight against the backsplash. There was no information given showing that the lowering of the mirror would improve seeing in the mirror. There is the option to provide a mirror someplace else in the room.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent: Desired Action: Modification: Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent: Desired Action: Modification: Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		

06-05 – 2021
603.5

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.5 Diaper changing tables. Diaper changing tables shall comply with Sections 309 and 902. Diaper changing tables shall not be located in toilet compartments required to comply with Section 604.9.

REASON: A common complaint among United Spinal Association members is that baby changing tables are left in the down position and are difficult, if not impossible, to return to a closed position because their location in an accessible compartment makes it impossible to get into position to close them. Even though Section 604.3.3 prohibits a diaper changing table from overlapping the clearance around the water closet, it can still block access to the toilet when in the open position.

Committee Action: 21-9-1 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The baby changing tables are often left in the open position. When this is in the accessible stall, this can be an obstruction for persons with disabilities that need that space to use the water closet.

603.5-MAZZ.doc

Report for 0*6-05– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-9-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The baby changing tables are often left in the open position. When this is in the accessible stall, this can be an obstruction for persons with disabilities that need that space to use the water closet.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		

Report for 0*6-05– 2021*		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-06 – 2021
603.5

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.5 Diaper changing tables. Diaper changing tables shall comply with Sections 309 and 902 and shall not be located within a toilet compartment.

REASON: It makes no sense to allow this combination. A person needing to use the water closet should not have to wait until the baby is changed and people are out of the compartment. Although the time for both activities may be somewhat similar there is no reason why the location of the diaper changing table should add to the possibility that someone is in the accessible compartment.

Conversely, it is equally unreasonable to ask for someone to stand by, holding a baby who needs changed and wait for someone to finish using the toilet compartment. This is a reasonable proposal and should be included in the standard.

Staff Note: As modified to match 06-05

Committee Action: 23-5-2 As Modified

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):
Replace the proposal with the following:

603.5 Diaper changing tables. Diaper changing tables shall comply with Sections 309 and 902. Diaper changing tables shall not be located in toilet compartments required to comply with Section 604.9.

Committee Reason: The intent of this proposal and 06-05 are the same. Rather than disapprove this change based on prior action the committee voted to modify this proposal to match 06-05. See 06-05 for the committee reason for this modification.

603.5-BOECKER.doc

Report for 0*6-06– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-5-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace the proposal with the following:** **603.5 Diaper changing tables.** Diaper changing tables shall comply with Sections 309 and 902. Diaper changing tables shall not be located in toilet compartments required to comply with Section 604.9.		
Committee Reason: The intent of this proposal and 06-05 are the same. Rather than disapprove this change based on prior action the committee voted to modify this proposal to match 06-05. See 06-05 for the committee reason for this modification.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-07 – 2021
603.6

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.6 Operable parts. Operable parts on at least one towel dispensers ~~and~~ or hand dryers serving lavatories ~~complying with Section 606~~ shall comply with Table 603.6.

TABLE 603.6
MAXIMUM REACH DEPTH AND HEIGHT

Maximum Reach Depth	0.5 inch (13 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)	5 inches (125 mm)	6 inches (150 mm)	9 inches (230 mm)	11 inches (280 mm)
Maximum Reach Height	48 inches (1220 mm)	46 inches (1170 mm)	42 inches (1065 mm)	40 inches (1015 mm)	36 inches (915 mm)	34 inches (865 mm)

REASON: The intent of this proposal is a coordination between this requirement typical minimum requirements in a toilet room.

Table 603.6 effectively does not allow for a towel dispenser or hand dryer to be located over a counter. Best/common design practice is to now make all lavatories in a bathroom comply with Section 606. By changing this required to say at least one towel dispense and hand dryers has to meet the reach depths, that allows for other towel dispensers to be located over the counters. Thus Little People of America will always have access to at least one, and other towel dispensers can be located over the lavatories. This would be consistent with the typical requirement for 'at least one' of other items in the toilet room. This would also allow for the reach in style of hand dryers is there was an accessible feature in the room (which I do not know how to make accessible). There is even a kind of hand dryer now that is in the lavatory.

Example of one towel dispenser meeting table and one not.

Example of reach in hand dryer.

Hand dryer in the lavatory.

Committee Action: 28-1-0 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal an 06-08 are addressing similar issues. See the committee reason for 06-08.

603.6-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-07– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-1-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal an 06-08 are addressing similar issues. See the committee reason for 06-08.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		

Report for *06-07– 2021*		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-08 – 2021
603.6

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.6 Operable parts. Operable parts on one towel dispensers ~~and~~ or one hand dryers in each toilet or bathing room ~~serving lavatories~~ ~~complying with Section 606~~ shall comply with Table 603.6.

TABLE 603.6
MAXIMUM REACH DEPTH AND HEIGHT

Maximum Reach Depth	0.5 inch (13 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)	5 inches (125 mm)	6 inches (150 mm)	9 inches (230 mm)	11 inches (280 mm)
Maximum Reach Height	48 inches (1220 mm)	46 inches (1170 mm)	42 inches (1065 mm)	40 inches (1015 mm)	36 inches (915 mm)	34 inches (865 mm)

REASON: This proposed change clarifies that only one towel dispenser or hand dryer must meet the requirements of the table. The current text could apply that every towel dispenser or hand dryer in a toilet or bathing room must comply with Table 603.6. This would be consistent with the other accessible requirements for plumbing fixtures and fixture fittings in a public bathroom.

Committee Action: 27-3-1 Disapprove

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee was concerned at 'or' instead of 'and' would not require both a hand dryer and a towel dispenser if both were provided. This proposal would address the hand dryer/towel dispenser for Little People of America (who originally proposed Section/Table 603.6, but it would not address the requirements for the hand dryer/towel dispenser for persons in a wheelchair using the accessible lavatory.

603.6-THOMPSON.doc

Report for 0*6-08– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 27-3-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING:		

Report for 0*6-08– 2021*		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee was concerned at 'or' instead of 'and' would not require both a hand dryer and a towel dispenser if both were provided. This proposal would address the hand dryer/towel dispenser for Little People of America (who originally proposed Section/Table 603.6, but it would not address the requirements for the hand dryer/towel dispenser for persons in a wheelchair using the accessible lavatory.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-09 – 2021
603.6

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.6 Operable parts. Operable parts and openings on towel dispensers and hand dryers serving lavatories complying with Section 606 shall comply with Table 603.6. Openings on seat cover dispensers serving accessible water closets complying with Section 604 shall be located within the reach ranges in accordance with Section 308.

TABLE 603.6
MAXIMUM REACH DEPTH AND HEIGHT

Maximum Reach Depth	0.5 inch (13 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)	5 inches (125 mm)	6 inches (150 mm)	9 inches (230 mm)	11 inches (280 mm)
Maximum Reach Height	48 inches (1220 mm)	46 inches (1170 mm)	42 inches (1065 mm)	40 inches (1015 mm)	36 inches (915 mm)	34 inches (865 mm)

REASON: Sometimes there are no parts of accessible elements that are "operable" so "openings for access to" is included in the sentence. Typically, paper towel dispensers have no operable parts; only the place where the towel is extracted from the dispenser.

Seat cover dispensers are added to this list since that are also elements provided within toilet rooms that should be within reach range. And, like paper towel dispensers, they require grasping and pulling to extract the seat cover from the dispenser. Therefore, they should be regulated the same as any other, similar dispenser.

The phrase "serving lavatories" isn't needed and could be counterproductive. How can a person know if the hand dryer is serving a lavatory? It is it serving a kitchen sink the need is the same. If it is serving some other function, then it is not a hand dryer. This also eliminates the confusion for what to do when the diaper changing table has a paper towel dispenser associated with it. It too should be within reach range.

The exception is added because the reach range provisions are primarily for wheelchair concerns and the wheelchair accessible compartment affords those needs. Also, the seat cover dispenser is often located on the rear wall of the ambulatory compartment because there is so little other available real estate within the compartment for things to be located.

Committee Action: 24-1-0 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This section is for toilet and bathing rooms. The requirement for seat covers is referencing toilet stalls, so this issue should addressed there or be applicable to single occupant toile rooms and stalls. This could be read to be the entire opening instead of just where you pull out the paper. This could be read to include all openings – including the mechanism to fill these dispensers.

603.6-BOECKER.doc

Report for 06-09– 2021		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-1-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This section is for toilet and bathing rooms. The requirement for seat covers is referencing toilet stalls, so this issue should addressed there or be applicable to single occupant toile rooms and stalls. This could be read to be the entire opening instead of just where you pull out the paper. This could be read to include all openings – including the mechanism to fill these dispensers.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-10 – 2021
603.7(New)

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.7 Dispensers for Accessories. Where provided, at least one of each type of dispenser for accessories shall be located on an accessible route and the operable parts of tth dispenser shall comply with Section 309.

REASON: We are proposing to add this new section to address dispensers typically provided in toilet and bathing rooms, such as those for feminine hygiene or other products for personal care. In our work, surveying properties for compliance with ICC A117.1, we find that installers frequently overlook accessibility to these amenities.

Committee Action: 24-4-3 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This new section to address dispensers typically provided in toilet and bathing rooms and what must be accessible.

603.7-MAZZ.doc

Report for 0*6-10– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-4-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This new section to address dispensers typically provided in toilet and bathing rooms and what must be accessible.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-11 – 2021
603.7(New)

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.7 Benches. Where shower rooms include space for changing clothes, accessible shower rooms shall include a bench complying with Section 903. Where benches are located within shower compartments, the accessible bench shall be provided within the accessible shower compartment.

REASON: To get into a shower and back into public spaces requires changing clothes. This is why the provisions in Section 803 were created because Dressing, Fitting and Locker rooms all involve changing clothes. Unfortunately, the way the current text is written, if a group locker room is provided with a Men's shower room and a Women's shower room, the accessible bench can comply and be located in the locker area, outside privacy separations. The bench should be provided where other benches are provided. If there are benches in the shower room, an accessible bench should be provided in the accessible shower room or compartment.

Committee Action: 19-9-5 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Dressing rooms adjacent to shower compartments need to be addressed. There was a concern about the terms in the first sentence not being commonly understood. In the 2nd sentence the bench is outside the shower compartment, not within. The proponent needs to bring forward some revisions.

603.7-BOECKER.doc

Report for 0*6-11– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 19-9-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Dressing rooms adjacent to shower compartments need to be addressed. There was a concern about the terms in the first sentence not being commonly understood. In the 2nd sentence the bench is outside the shower compartment, not within. The proponent needs to bring forward some revisions.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		

Report for 0*6-11– 2021*		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-12 – 2021
604.2, 604.11.2

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.2 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. In addition, where a floor mounted water closet is provided, the centerline of the drain connection shall be 10 inches minimum and 14 inches maximum measured from the rear wall. Water closets located in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.10 shall have the parallel centerline of the water closet 17 inches minimum and 19 inches maximum from the side wall or partition.

604.11 Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use.

604.11.2 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. In addition, where a floor mounted water closet is provided, the centerline of the drain connection shall be 10 inches minimum and 14 inches maximum measured from the rear wall. Water closets located in ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.10 shall be located as specified in Section 604.2.

REASON: Our Accessibility Services staff occasionally encounter a floor mounted water closet that is set far away from the back wall. Because clearances surrounding water closets are measured from the walls (Sections 604.3.1 and 604.3.2) this results in less space around the water closet available for transfer and to access to the flush control. A standard rough-in is centered 12 inches from the back wall and would result in the gap between the tank and the wall being approximately ¾ inch. Ten and 14 inch rough-ins are sometimes provided. With a rough-in 12 inches from the back wall, an elongated bowl will extend about 30 inches from the wall (see our alternate proposal below). We believe there is sufficient flexibility in the proposed range to accommodate nearly all floor mounted installations.

We consulted with a member of the Committee representing the plumbing industry to develop this proposal. He assured us that plumbers will have no difficulty identifying the centerline of the rough-in even once the fixture is installed because it is visible in the vitreous china. However, if the committee is not comfortable with dimensioning to the centerline of the drain connection, we would accept a friendly amendment to modify the proposal as follows:

604.2 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. In addition, where a floor mounted water

closet is provided, the front lip of the bowl shall extend a maximum of 31 inches from the rear wall. Water closets located in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.10 shall have the parallel centerline of the water closet 17 inches minimum and 19 inches maximum from the side wall or partition.

06-12 – 2021
604.2, 604.11.2

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise further as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.2 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. In addition, where a floor mounted water closet is provided, ~~the centerline of the drain connection shall be 10 inches minimum and 14 inches~~ the back space between the water closet and rear wall shall be 2 inches (51 mm) maximum measured from the rear wall. Water closets located in the ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.10 shall have the parallel centerline of the water closet 17 inches minimum and 19 inches maximum from the side wall or partition.

604.11 Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use.

604.11.2 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. In addition, where a floor mounted water closet is provided, ~~the centerline of the drain connection shall be 10 inches minimum and 14 inches~~ the back space between the water closet and rear wall shall be 2 inches (51 mm) maximum measured from the rear wall. Water closets located in ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.10 shall be located as specified in Section 604.2.

Reason: Though PMI in support of the intent of the original proposal and the need to maintain clearance space for accessibility in front of water closets. There are some concerns with the application of the original proposal as well as the friendly amendment suggested in the reason statement. These concerns are that rough in specifications, such as the location of the water closet drainline connection, should be included in plumbing or building codes, not within the A117.1 accessibility standard. Also, the friendly amendment suggested in the reason statement, to specify "maximum of 31 inches from the rear wall" could limit product design and may result in limiting the building owners choice of products that could be installed, regardless of the actual clearance space available in a water closet compartment.

Committee Action: 31-0-1 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proponent moved the modification instead of the original proposal. Water closet designs vary, so there could be a floor drain or a back drain. The choice of the finish material behind the wall could be an issue. The 2" may be too limiting. This proposed modification would result in a measurement not being able to be made until the water closet was installed – too late to make major changes to the plumbing connection. The real issue is the space in front of the water closet – so approaching this way is not a good solution.

604.2-MAZZ.doc

Report for 0*6-12– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Dressing rooms adjacent to shower compartments need to be addressed. There was a concern about the terms in the first sentence not being commonly understood. In the 2nd sentence the bench is outside the shower compartment, not within. The proponent needs to bring forward some revisions.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-13 – 2021

604.2, 604.3.1, 604.5, 604.9.6, 604.10.1, 604.11.5, 604.12(New), 607.1, 607.2, 607.9(New), 607.9.1(New), 607.9.2(New), 608.1, 608.9(New), 608.9.1(New), 608.9.2(New), 608.9.3(New), 609, 609.1, 609.2.1, 609.2.2, 609.3, 609.4, 609.4.1, 609.4.2, 609.5, 609.6, 609.7, 609.8, 609.9(New)

Proponent: Jake Pauls, Jake Pauls Consulting Service, representing self

Revise as follows:

CHAPTER 6
PLUMBING ELEMENTS AND FACILITIES

SECTION 601
GENERAL

601.1 Scope. Plumbing elements and facilities required to be accessible by scoping provisions adopted by the administrative authority shall comply with the applicable provisions of Chapter 6.

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.1 General. Water closets and toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604. Compartments containing more than one plumbing fixture shall comply with Section 603. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.10.

Exception: Water closets and toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall be permitted to comply with Section 604.11 as applicable.

604.2 Location. The water closet shall be located with a wall or partition to the rear and to one side. The centerline of the water closet shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition. Water closets located in ambulatory accessible toilet compartments specified in Section 604.10 shall have the centerline of the water closet 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum from the side wall or partition.

Exception: Ambulatory accessible water closets complying with Section 604.12.

604.3 Clearance.

604.3.1 Clearance width. Clearance around a water closet shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular from the sidewall.

Exception: Ambulatory accessible water closets complying with Section 604.12.

604.5 Grab bars and stanchions. Grab bars and stanchions for water closets shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Sections 604.5.1 and 604.5.2. Grab bars

shall be provided on the rear wall and on the side wall closest to the water closet.

Exceptions:

1. Grab bars and stanchions shall not be required to be installed in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 604.5.
2. In detention or correction facilities, grab bars and stanchions shall not be required to be installed in housing or holding cells or rooms that are specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.
3. Ambulatory accessible water closets served by vertical stanchions complying with Section 604.12.

604.9 Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.

604.9.6 Grab bars and stanchions. Grab bars and stanchions shall comply with Section 609. For ambulatory accessible toilet compartments, side wall grab bars complying with Section 604.5.1 located on the wall closest to the water closet, and a rear wall grab bar complying with Section 604.5.2, shall be provided.

604.10 Ambulatory accessible toilet compartments.

604.10.1 Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.10. Ambulatory accessible water closets shall comply with 604.12.

Exception: Water closets and toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall be permitted to comply with Section 604.11 as applicable.

604.11 Water closets and toilet compartments for children's use.

604.11.5 Grab bars and stanchions. Grab bars and stanchions for water closets shall comply with Section 604.5.

604.12 Grab bars or stanchions for ambulatory accessible water closets. A minimum of one grab bar or vertical stanchion, complying with Section 609 shall be provided in front of and to the side of the water closet such that the grab bar or stanchion center line is within 28 in (710 mm), measured horizontally, reachable distance from the center of the front of the water closet. The grab bar or vertical stanchion shall be graspable at a height, above the finished floor level, of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum. Such grab bar or stanchion shall be permitted to serve also for a required vertical grab bar or vertical stanchion, for an adjoining bathtub or shower, complying with Sections 607 or 608, provided that it is graspable at a height, above the finished floor level, of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum.

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.1 General. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.

Exception: Ambulatory accessible bathtubs shall comply with Sections 607.2, 607.8 and 607.9.

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

Exception: The clearance in front of an ambulatory accessible bathtub, complying with Section 607.8, shall extend half the length, minimum, of the bathtub.

607.9 Ambulatory Accessible Bathtubs Grab Bars or Stanchions. One grab bar or stanchion, minimum, shall be provided on the access side or an end wall (head end or control end) adjacent to the access side in accordance with one of the options in Section 607.9.1. This grab bar or stanchion shall be usable from the clear floor space required by Section 607.2**.** A second grab bar or stanchion, minimum, shall be provided on the non-access side (back wall) of the bathtub in accordance one of the options in Section 607.9.2.

607.9.1 Access side, or adjacent end, grab bar or stanchion options. The end wall vertical grab bar shall extend from 24 inches (610 mm) maximum to 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum above the finished floor. To avoid interference between a shower curtain rod or track for an access side set of sliding doors, the vertical grab bar on one end wall shall be provided between 9 inches (230 mm) and 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally, from the centerline of the grab bar to the exterior side of the bathtub. A second set of options for the access side vertical grab bar or stanchion shall have its centerline 2 inches (50 mm) maximum, measured horizontally, inside the exterior wall to 6 inches (150 mm) outside the exterior bathtub wall. The stanchion option, shall extend from the bathroom ceiling to either the floor or, with a steel bathtub, to the bathtub rim.

607.9.2. Non-access side grab bar or stanchion options. A horizontal or diagonal grab bar or a horizontal stanchion shall be provided on the back wall, or non-access side of each bathtub. Grab bars shall be 36 inches (915 mm) long, minimum. The centerline of the horizontal grab bar or stanchion, as well as the lower end of a diagonal grab bar, shall be 8 inches (200 mm) minimum and 10 inches maximum above the bathtub rim. The upper end of the diagonal grab bar shall extend to 12 inches (305 mm), maximum, horizontal, to the control end wall. Diagonal grab bar slope shall be 30 degrees minimum to 60 degrees maximum to horizontal. The horizontal stanchion shall extend to each of the end walls. The horizontal grab bar shall be centered between the end walls.

Exception: For relatively deep bathtubs, where the required centerline height for the horizontal grab bar exceeds 30 inches (762 mm) above the adjacent finished floor elevation, this height shall be permitted to be 3 inches (76 mm), maximum, from its centerline to either the bathtub rim height or the top of the deck for the bathtub installation which can also be the base into which the grab bar is fixed.

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.1 General. Shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.

Exception: Ambulatory accessible showers shall comply with Sections 608.8 and 608.9.

608.9 Grab bar or stanchion at the access to showers. A grab bar or stanchion shall be provided for the shower in accordance with Section 608.9.1, 608.9.2 or 608.9.3. Location dimensions in Section 608.9 are to the centerline of the grab bar or stanchion at the fixed end of its graspable tubing component.

608.9.1 At shower exterior. A vertical grab bar or stanchion shall be provided outside of the shower compartment, adjacent to the access opening within 28 inches (710 mm) of the center of the shower entrance opening width. The grab bar or stanchion shall extend from 24 inches (610 mm) maximum to 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum, measured vertically above the finished floor.

608.9.2 For smaller shower interior. For showers with interior plan dimensions, including diagonally between corners, 51 inches (1295 mm) maximum, a vertical grab bar shall be provided, interior to the shower compartment, 30 inches (762 mm) maximum, measured horizontally from the control wall on the side closest to the access opening. The grab bar shall extend from 24 inches (610 mm) maximum to 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum, measured vertically above the finished floor outside the shower.

608.9.3 For larger shower interior. For showers with any interior plan dimensions exceeding 51 inches (1295 mm), including diagonally between corners, a grab bar or stanchion located interior to the shower compartment shall be 28 inches (710 mm) maximum, measured horizontally to the access to the shower. If oriented vertically, the grab bar or stanchion shall extend from 24 inches (610 mm) maximum to 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum, measured vertically above the finished floor outside the shower. If oriented horizontally, the grab bar or stanchion shall have a length 36 inches (915mm) minimum at a height, measured vertically above the finished floor outside the shower, of 48 inches (1220 mm)minimum and 60 inches (1524 mm) maximum.

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS AND STANCHIONS

609.1 General. Grab bars and stanchions in toilet or bathing facilities shall comply with Section 609.

609.2 Cross section. Grab bars and stanchions shall have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.

609.2.1 Circular cross section. Grab bars and stanchions with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

609.2.2 Noncircular cross section. Grab bars and stanchions with a noncircular cross

section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum. Corner radius shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) minimum.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar or stanchionshall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar or stanchion and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar or stanchion shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space betweenthe grab bar or stanchion and projecting objects above the grab bar or stanchion shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars or stanchions and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars or stanchions above the grab bar or stanchion shall be permitted to be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of
the grab bar or stanchion.

609.4 Position of grab bars and stanchions.

609.4.1 General. Grab and stanchions shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items I through 3.

1. The lower grab bar or stanchion on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1, ~~or~~ 607.4.2.1 or 607.9.2.
2. Vertical grab bars and stanchions shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 604.9.6, 604.12, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2, 607.9, ~~and~~ 608.3.1.2 and 608.9.
3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

609.4.2 Position of children's grab bars and stanchions. At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.11, grab bars and stanchions shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. A vertical grab bar or stanchion shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar or stanchion located between 21 inches (535 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor and with the centerline of the bar or stanchion located between 34 inches (865 mm).

609.5 Surface hazards. Grab bars plus stanchions and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars and stanchions shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded.

609.6 Fittings. Grab bars and stanchions shall not rotate within their fittings.

609.7 Installation and configuration. Grab bars and stanchions shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space. Horizontal and vertical grab bars and stanchions shall be permitted to be

separate bars, a single piece bar, or combination thereof.

609.8 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, stanchion, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

609.9 Durability in presence of water. Grab bars and stanchions, including mountings, shall be installed and sealed, or provided with permanent drainage such as weep holes for components subject to water intrusion, to protect structural elements from moisture.

REASON:

Preliminary Justification for Proposal on Ambulatory Accessible Toilets, Bathtubs and Showers — Submitted by Jake Pauls

bldguse@aol.com & www.bldguse.com

Preamble. Two points to make right at the beginning.

First, the task of spearheading the A117 Committee consideration of usability of bathing, showering and toileting facilities, going under the label of "ambulatory accessible," is far beyond the capability of the proponent. In his 79th year, the proponent has seen the entire range of toileting and bathing facilities in his lifetime. Indeed, the first four years of his life took place in homes that totally lacked built-in facilities for toileting, bathing and showering which now take up the second longest chapter in A117.1. Thus it is ironic that, later in life, he has seen the complete spectrum, right up to occupying (for a couple of nights) the Presidential Suite of one of the world's largest hotel chain's properties, in addition to enjoying Japanese toileting and bathing facilities (mixing the ultra modern with the most traditional plumbing in Japan).

Second, A117.1—now in its seventh decade of life (just a bit over a decade younger than the proponent)—is now being asked to address not just the visible part of the iceberg that figuratively makes up this preeminent accessibility/usability standard's Chapter 6, but the huge part that has been mostly out of sight, below the surface with this "iceberg." All parts of the "iceberg" are important and the proponent asks for patience on the part of his fellow A117 Committee members as they are now being asked to help determine what we should know about—*and act on*—the largely uninvestigated topic of ambulatory, bipedal, use of facilities to which we have now devoted six decades of attention to largely wheel-based access and use.

This scope change is combined with a technical expansion to include the older of the two "Points of Control" we have come to rely upon. That is recognition, in A117.1, of ***stanchions*** which predated grab bars—*by perhaps a century*—and which are (in the proponent's professional opinion) often superior to grab bars in function and aesthetics.

Foundations. Connecting both wheeled and bipedal ambulation-based access to bathing, showering and toileting is the science and technology of ergonomics and, in a secondary way, public health. As a Certified Professional Ergonomist (like a few others on the A117 Committee) and now the longest serving representative on several ICC and NFPA committees formally representing the American Public Health Association, the proponent brings important perspectives to our (now virtual) deliberation table. These perspectives are not sufficient to achieve acceptance of this proposal. This will take a major effort.

Possible Need for a Task Group or Work Group. The proponent's first recommendation is

that a task/work group be formed of a small number of interested, informed members of the Committee (and a few experts from outside the Committee) to address the foregoing change proposal and this feeble justification statement, albeit accessible and vital to all with vision—both in functional and cerebral capabilities—to move the next edition of A117 to fill an important niche.

This niche, on bathing, showering and toileting, already is mostly addressed by another ANSI standard with a safety motivation (in NFPA 101); now we need to address such facilities with a usability focus in the most widely respected ANSI standard on usability—A117.1. (*The ball is now in our court and, like in a game, we need to play with some common rules, namely those set by ANSI to avoid contradictions among standards addressing similar issues*.) NFPA adopted requirements for safety of bathtubs and showers in its 2018 editions of NFPA 101 and 5000, updating the terminology to include "stanchions" in its 2021 editions. Both NFPA and ICC-ANSI A117.1 share a concern for ambulation of facility users, the latter recognizing the a large proportion of people with disabilities are, indeed, ambulatory and the former recognizing that a significant number of people requiring safety in buildings are not ambulatory.

Option If A117 Committee Does Nothing. Unless ICC wishes to reference NFPA 101 in A117.1 for requirements on grab bars and stanchions for usability as well as safety, A117.1 needs to develop its own requirements covering ambulatory accessible water closets, bathtubs and showers.

Basic Tools (Including Visual Aids). Fortunately, the tools we will employ in this task are largely identified. The build upon basic ergonomic concepts such as anthropometry, reach capabilities, balance (as affected by location of ones Center of Mass—COM), and points of control. At the beginning of the Justification you will be asked to view a few PowerPoint presentations that provide centrally important information forming the foundation for the proposed new language for A117.1 requirements in Chapter 6, Plumbing Elements and Facilities. These were developed only in recent days and there is not yet an audio description of the images publicly available. Sincere apologies to those not able to see the images. We will work on that, collectively, in coming months as a video, with descriptive audio track, is produced on this topic.

Related Efforts. Note that this topic, at least of bathing and showering, is being currently addressed by three organizations in relation to several documents, that will be published in the mid 2020s. They are:

- International Code Council (for the *International Building Code* and the *International Residential Code)*
- National Fire Protection Assn. (for the *Life Safety Code* and the NFPA *Building Construction and Safety Code)*
- Canadian Commission on Building and Fire Codes (for the *National Building Code of Canada)*

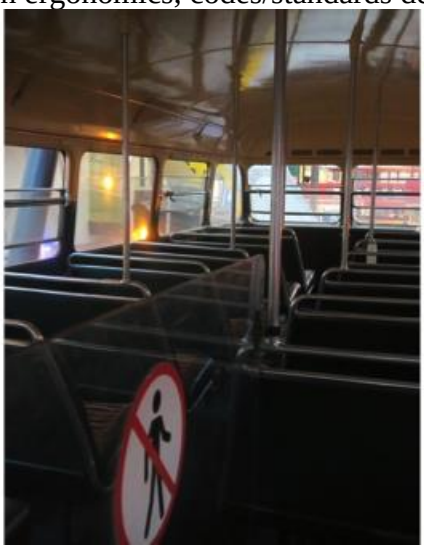
Borrowing from Other Deliberations. The proponent of the A117.1 changes is also the lead proponent of changes to all these documents affecting the technical requirements and scoping for all occupancies (with a very few exceptions for some institutional settings). Thus this proposal for A117.1 is an amalgam of several other proposals (dating back to 2007 in the case of one co-proponent's early proposal in Canada). This will explain any unevenness or inconsistencies (in concepts and terminology) in this proposal for A117.1. *Apologies for this.*

Terminology. We start with terminology in case the ANSI A117 Committee feels we should define what stanchions are (and perhaps what Points of Control are, including those involving

use of stanchions). For the following, the proponent borrows freely from proposals and explanatory presentations prepared for other codes/standards developing bodies in the USA and Canada in recent months of 2021.

> **Stanchion.** An often vertical, tubular structure serving as a hand-grasped, point of control that is fixed between separate supporting structures, surfaces or other railings as opposed to being mounted, in cantilever fashion, on walls as occurs with conventional grab bars.

The montage of photographs below represent about two centuries of development of stanchions in the field of transportation vehicle design and use by ordinary people without any formal background in ergonomics, codes/standards development, etc.


The term "*Point of Control*" has a shorter history with the meaning most relevant to bipedal ambulation being the human extremities used for bodily support on underfoot surfaces and various handholds to facilitate safe movement; stationary erect, sitting or other posture; and the states between these activities. We have, potentially, four major points of control: two feet and two hands. Occupational rules such as for safe ladder climbing or descent spell out three points of control are prudent to maintain reasonable safety. Building codes for home stairways are largely based on two points of control in stair descent and ascent, namely one weight-bearing foot and one hand grasping a functional (as opposed to mainly decorative) railing. Our bathtub and shower designs have largely been based on a single point of control—one weight-bearing foot on either a slip resistant surface (far from certain with bathing plus other surfaces and water)—or less than one point of control if the weight-bearing foot slips.

The whole point of the major changes submitted for the A117.1 standard is to add at least one point of control to the single weight-bearing foot in entry to and exiting from a bathtub or shower enclosure This is truly a very modest change but one that can double the points of control available to bathers. The table below sets out all the options for points of control showing how modest the change is—in merely doubling the single point of control (or less with slippery underfoot conditions) with the proposed additions to the A117.1 standard.

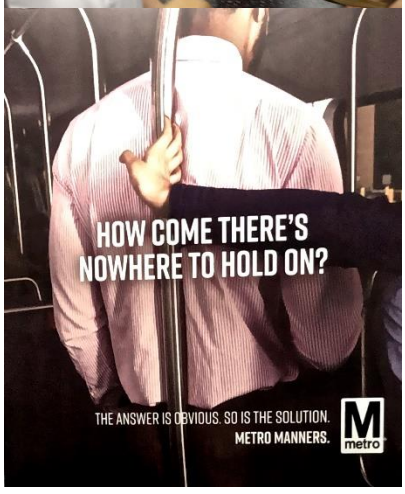
Number of Points of Control Via Hands or Feet	≤1	1	2	3	3-4
Standard walker for older adult with altered gait.					✔
Occupational settings with risk of worker falls from heights. Also, stairs where users can use two handrails simultaneously, one on each side.				✔	
Stairs where users have only a single handrail. ***Grab bar(s) usable for bathtub/shower entry/egress.***			✔ ★		
Bathtubs/showers with slip resistant underfoot surfaces when wet.		✔			
Bathtubs/showers without slip resistant underfoot surfaces when wet, the common condition currently.	✔				

For toilet use-related (stand-to-sit and sit-to-stand) transfers, both ergonomics and scientifically-established personal preferences are for points of control for each of our two arms/hands to be available. (See the paper, Kennedy, Arcelus, Guitard Goubran, and Sveistrup [2015]. Toilet Grab-Bar Preference and Center of Pressure Deviation During Toilet Transfers in Healthy Seniors, Seniors With Hip Replacements, and Seniors Having Suffered a Stroke. *Assistive Technology: The Official Journal of RESNA*, 27:2, 78-87. The leading preference, from this study, was for two handholds on vertical points of control—e.g., stanchions or grab bars—one on each side, and at the front of the toilet; second preference was for only one such point of control (out of five options including also horizontal, swing-away and diagonal options.)

Based on both the above table and the referenced study, the changes sought in this proposal for A117.1 are modest and well warranted by science and logic that can be understood intuitively by most primates, including humans on committees such as for A117.1 on the basic issues involved with toileting, bathing and showering. The photographic series, below with a century-old trolley, provides a brief story of how effective stanchions are, even for young children encountering steps comparable in height to what is needed to surmount the wall of a typical bathtub; the height depicted here is about 16 inches (400 mm), comparable to what is found in minimum standard (e.g., IRC) permitted stairways for dwelling units—except there is no intermediate step to use as many older people need to do when using stairs (with both feet using every step). Note also the relatively puny grab bar to the woman's left; it lacks the usefulness of the stanchion.



For a more contemporary transportation facility, albeit pre-Pandemic in crowding, see the very extensive use of stanchions, here captured on the Washington, DC, region Metro subway system. Stanchions are familiar to most people around the world for the postural control and personal space advantages they offer. They even appear in posters on such transit systems, giving social messages about these key features for our comfort and safety. The same message holds for adding stanchions to A117.1: “How come there is nowhere to hold on?”

An important lesson, from the photo sequence above, is that stanchions provide more options for placement and more options for users to choose the points of control they perceive as important to their task and safety. In other words ordinary people, even of young age, are displaying skill in ergonomics (the science and technology of how people utilize things, systems, etc. available to them to perform tasks effectively and safely).

For purposes of this A117.1 proposal, along with grab bars, it should be clear that stanchions are reliable, indeed superior, time-tested means of providing for "points of control" and they provide options for location and length that greatly exceed what conventional grab bars can provide—as they do not rely on walls from which they cantilever. (The can be *between* walls, *between floor and ceiling, etc*.) The illustration below combines all of the stanchion and conventional grab bar options set out in the accompanying detailed re-write of A117.1 Chapter 6, "Plumbing Elements and Facilities," specifically for **Section 607.9 Ambulatory Accessible Bathtubs Grab Bars or Stanchions.**

All of the eight options are illustrated in the graphic below. The options are in two groups, three options for the one stanchion or grab bar on the non access side or back wall and five options for the one required grab bar or stanchion on the access side (front). At the front, the vertical stanchion has options for placement anywhere along the length of the bathtub (depending on fixture layout in the bathroom and where the clear, half bathtub length area (required by Section 607.2) is located—here in front of the water closet (WC). Here it is shown mid-tub length (where it is mounted on the *steel* tub rim, but could also be floor mounted for other tubs) so it also serves the WC per proposed new Section 604.12 Grab bars or stanchions for ambulatory accessible WC.

607.9 Ambulatory Accessible Bathtubs Grab Bars or Stanchions.

One grab bar or stanchion, minimum, shall be provided on the access side or an end wall (head end or control end) adjacent to the access side in accordance with one of the options in Section 607.9.1. This grab bar or stanchion shall be usable from the clear floor space required by Section 607.2. A second grab bar or stanchion, minimum, shall be

provided on the non-access side (also referred to, where present, as the back wall) ofthe bathtub in accordance one of the options in Section 607.9.2.

Note the four options for the access side, end wall-mounted grab bar do not permit placing this grab bar where it would interfere with the installed shower curtain rod (or track) or installation of an enclosure system of sliding glass panels for example. Several inches of horizontal dimension are reserved on the end walls for such water control barriers, e.g., a shower curtain, to seal to the end walls. (The most common defect with grab placement the author saw repeatedly in his many stays in hotels around the world was having both the shower curtain and the vertical grab bar competing for the same region of the end wall. The result: during a shower, water ended up leaking to the bathroom floor, in some cases getting into end walls with moldy results.)

Here follow the proposed texts for the bathtub grab bars or stanchions with a graphic below them illustrating the full range of options, including diagonal grab bar slopes.

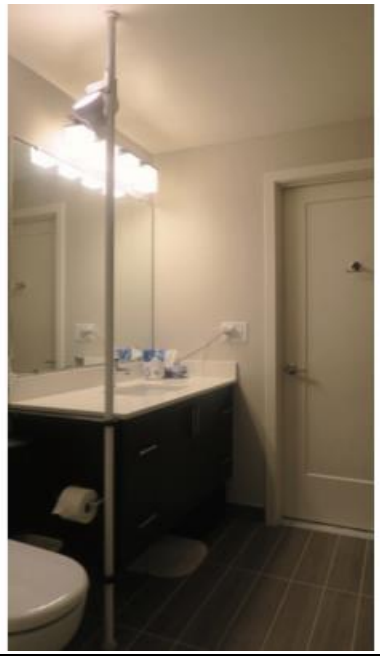
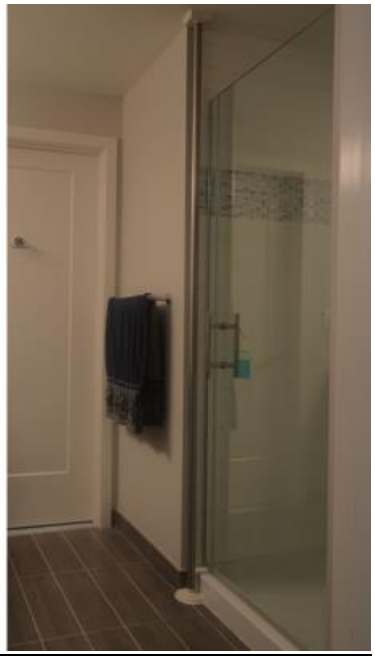
607.9.1 Access side, or adjacent end, grab bar or stanchion options.

The end wall vertical grab bar shall extend from 24 inches (610 mm) maximum to 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum above the finished floor. To avoid interference between a shower curtain rod or track for an access side set of sliding doors, the vertical grab bar on one end wall shall be provided between 9 inches (230 mm) and 12 inches (305 mm) horizontally, from the centerline of the grab bar to the exterior side of the bathtub. A second set of options for the access side vertical grab bar or stanchion shall have its centerline 2 inches (50 mm) maximum, measured horizontally, inside the exterior wall to 6 inches (150 mm) outside the exterior bathtub wall. The stanchion option, shall extend from the bathroom ceiling to either the floor or, with a steel bathtub, to the bathtub rim.

607.9.2. Non-access side grab bar or stanchion options.

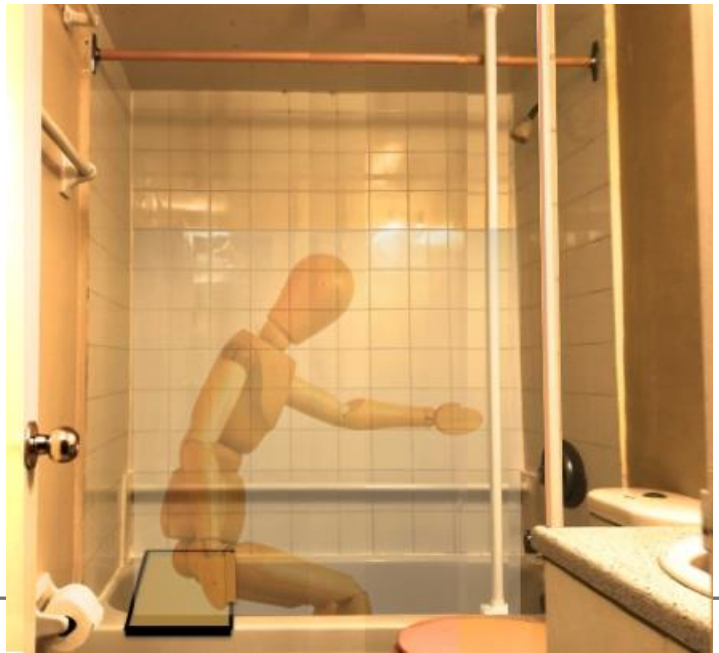
A horizontal or diagonal grab bar or a horizontal stanchion shall be provided on the back wall, or non-access side of each bathtub. Grab bars shall be 36 inches (915 mm) long, minimum. The centerline of the horizontal grab bar or stanchion, as well as the lower end of a diagonal grab bar, shall be 8 inches (200 mm) minimum and 10 inches maximum above the bathtub rim. The upper end of the diagonal grab bar shall extend to 12 inches (305 mm), maximum, horizontal, to the control end wall. Diagonal grab bar slope shall be 30 degrees minimum to 60 degrees maximum to horizontal. The horizontal stanchion shall extend to each of the end walls. The horizontal grab bar shall be centered between the end walls.

A significant aspect of the proposal for A117.1 is the introduction of stanchions, the history and ubiquity—outside of bathrooms—has already been addressed above. In the photos below, they are seen in three of the contexts at the heart of A117.1 Chapter 6, as it will be amended with the acceptance of this proposal which deals, typically with new construction. All of the examples below represent retrofit installations. Moreover, they are all retrofits in rental contexts where damage to walls is frowned upon by owners. Thus all of the examples shown of stanchions in this proposal narrative, include stanchions that can be removed (followed with the usual repainting between tenancies) without any screw holes in floors, ceilings and, most important (usually) walls. Modern RTV (Room Temperature Vulcanizing) adhesives hold these stanchions in place with holding capability meeting the 250-pound strength requirement. This adds new usefulness to A117.1 and, more importantly, to many people who develop disabilities of all types as they age and who want to "age in place" where they feel most at home. Stanchions also avoid any grab bar stigma issues as, evident especially in the two photos at the center and right sides below, the stanchions appear totally integrated with the décor, even serving as a much needed lighting pole to enhance bathroom lighting while saving energy. These stanchions all comply with the proposed requirements, completely for the contexts illustrated, from left to right: bathtub access side vertical stanchion (with a no-cost bonus of also serving as the newly required vertical stanchion for the WC). At the center is another stanchion, this one color coordinated with its surrounds and the structural supports—to the vanity—color coordinated with it (while giving extra structural support to the stanchion). At the right, the satin stainless steel stanchion matches the décor of the shower enclosure and is discretely tucked into a recess while being accessible for both entering and exiting, stepping over the 4-inch sill below the shower door. Both of the stanchions at the center and right occupy the same bathroom and both contend with the 8-foot ceiling there.

The photo at the left side demonstrates two options for a center tub-length stanchion, one affixed with RTV adhesive to a 60-year old enamel steel bathtub that has no problem with a test 330-pound, lateral load held for three hours. For newer, less rigid bathtub materials such as acrylic or fiberglass, manufacturers have raised a huge fuss over rim mounting of stanchions. They are easily appeased with the option of mounting on the adjacent floor—which is far more sturdy than the newer tubs are and has no issues with the RTV adhesive. Again, with many solid, well-performing steel bathtubs currently installed, there is much scope for both the rim- and floor-mounting options for securing stanchions in both new and existing bathrooms.

There was also some opposition—*quickly addressed*—from those concerned with the stanchion being in the way of some people with disabilities not being able to swing their fully extended legs over the tub rim when seated on a bathtub seat. Note that in the photo above, left side, there is barely room for such legs at the closely positioned WC which effectively blocks almost half the length of the tub. Notably the proposed language for A117 allows the vertical, access-side stanchion to be placed anywhere on or immediately adjacent to the entire length of the bathtub. Thus the stanchion can be placed where it suits a bather who desires to use a bathtub seat, etc.



This augmented photo illustrates the possible dilemma over such vertical stanchion placement. Is it too close to the seat; is it too far from the seat (like the water controls are), or is it just right? The proposal is open to all options on this matter (keeping in mind the value of the stanchion also serving the water closet as set out in proposed new Section 604.12 in which the performance requirement of a 28-inch

reach distance is utilized.) The 28 inches is based on a reachability analysis as well as being explained and illustrated in Appendix A to this proposal). Note also a second vertical stanchion digitally added at the vanity side serving the water closet.

Section 608 Shower Compartments. Focusing now on Section 608, there has been increasing evidence, especially in hotels, that bathtubs were being replaced with dedicated showers occupying the same generous space formerly taken up with a combination bathtub with shower. The showers were neither transfer type nor roll in showers, thus some new design considerations were in order for ambulatory accessible showers. The photograph which follows demonstrates what appears to be one of these conversions. This realization that showers, even in hotels, were becoming more spacious, led to the division of proposed Sections 608.9 with three options for the single required grab bar or stanchion for ambulatory users. This section needs some input from fellow A117 Committee colleagues. My effort on this is clearly preliminary but, like much else with ambulatory accessible bathroom facilities, a solution to the usability problem (along with safety issues that are the work of NFPA and other committees) is a start and is better than what exists currently.

As with the bathtub section and the water closet section, there is scope for dual utilization of stanchions especially for adjoining facilities. Thus a lot of work was done with reachability studies which is partly reflected in the accompanying Appendix A, a PowerPoint presentation prepared for the Canadians who are reaching the end of a long road, dating back to their first proposal for improved bathroom utilization of grab bars (submitted by a colleague, Dr. Nancy Edwards, an expert on falls) later augmented by my Canadian proposal in 2015 paralleling my proposals of that year to NFPA that led to changes in the 2018 NFPA 101 and 5000 on requirements for both grab bars and stanchions (first identified as "poles" in the 2018 editions). My relatively intensive work in the last year on grab bars and stanchions for bathing usability as well as safety is reflected in Appendix A.

Given the rush of dealing with multiple model codes and standards simultaneously, there is not as much time available for word-smithing and writing very detailed justifications. Appendix A makes up for a lot of that and, as has happened already in this justification, some sample pages from the presentation in Appendix A have been used in this justification that give a flavor for the analysis that has been done to treat the three facility types—water closets, bathtubs and showers—in as integrated a fashion as possible. The augmented photo below is the final example of this. It shows what appears to be a hotel bathroom conversion where the long footprint of the shower means that its entrance is possibly too far from the water closet to share the stanchion. (This is what happens when space is no longer at such a premium as it was in the humble 5 by 7 foot bathroom seen in a number of the illustrations herein and in Appendix A. Reachability becomes more of an challenge when trying to economize on number of stanchions needed.

Finally—*almost*— at least for this preliminary justification section of the proposal, a critical detail that, I hope will be accepted to no longer specify a fixed 1.5-inch clearance between a grab bar and the wall to which it is attached. Here follows the proposed change and below that is the experiment that was painfully executed in the course of addressing this matter empirically. The clearance in the photo sequence that follows was exactly 1.5 inches yet an older male adult's hand could pass through, sustaining bruising to the back of the hand. Surely this issue of adding one word, "minimum" will be accepted as a similar change has been accepted on related topics.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar or stanchion shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar or stanchion and projecting objects below

and at the ends of the grab bar or stanchion shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar or stanchion and projecting objects above the grab bar or stanchion shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Finally, just a brief introduction to the next page which includes a tiny portion Appendix A which is a separate, stand-alone document being provided with this proposal. There is a very strong case, based on injury evidence that there is a major distortion in the use of bathing and showering facilities by older adults who can give up frequent bathing and showering because of the real or feared dangers at worst, and hassles at best, with poorly designed and manufactured plumbing products of bathing and showering. It appears that the main reason, older adults have a reduced number of injuries associated with bathtubs and showers is not that they are reasonably safe but that people choose not to use them. This behavior differs drastically from how older adults use water closets. They have no choice but to use them and this exposure, combined with the lack of suitable points of control result in a major expansion in the number of injuries.

The page that follows, incorporating two of the slides in the PowerPoint presentation that is Appendix A, provides a preliminary examination and beginnings of an analysis which requires some further demographic study which will be done before the A117 Committee meets to discuss this and other proposals. In the meantime, you (the reader) can ponder the next page on your own.

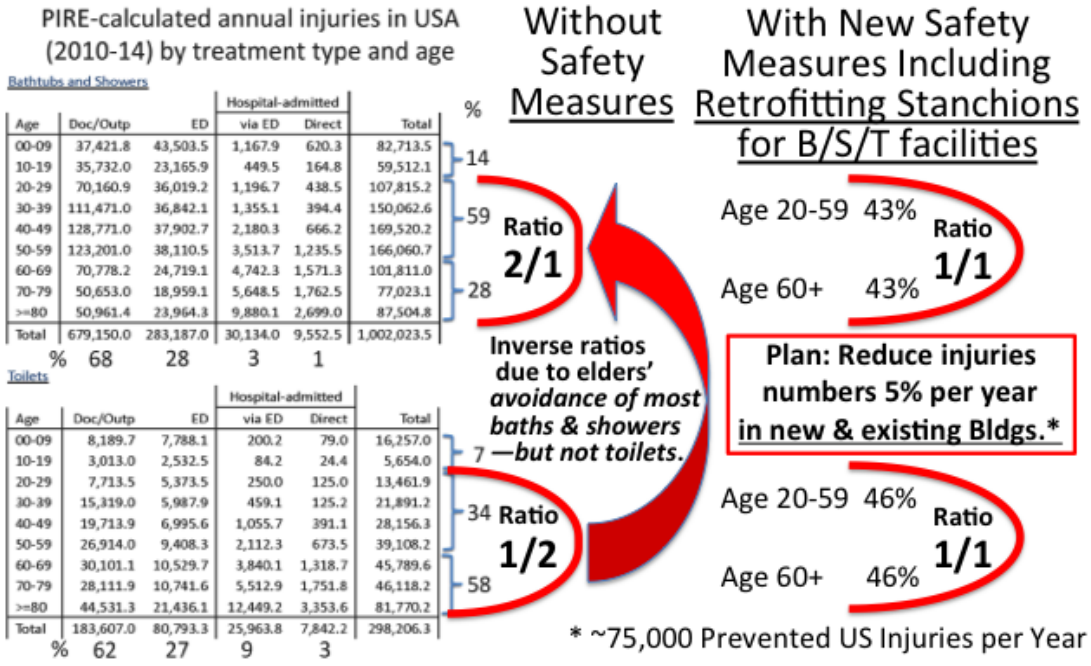
Bottom line, understanding the impact of exposure—i.e., use—is a huge factor that A117.1 can, and must address sooner rather than later. We have to enhance all bathroom activities. ***This is an issue within the scope of A117.1 as the National Standard on Accessibility and Usability*.**

the next slide provides another important insight into the role played by elderly people's exposure to another very serious fall risk—toilets—in bathrooms, especially in homes.

People increasingly want to "age in place" but this is needlessly more difficult and dangerous than should be the case with the hazardous trio of:

- home stairs
- Bathtubs
- toilets (water closets or commodes).

The following is more speculative than other relatively-tested ideas on bathroom usability and safety in this presentation. It is intended to further appreciate the need to study some issues and to be more proactive with improving usability and safety at very minimal cost (as illustrated in the largest section of this presentation—examples from actual bathrooms in Canada and beyond).



Staff Note 8-9-2022 and 8-25-2022: Question divided:

604 – AS 5-22-2/D 24-6-2
607 – AS 7-18-4/Motion to Disapprove;
Motion to table 17-9-2 till 8/25/2022 call
Motion to untable passed.
Motion to table part 2 to end of chapter 6 carries with 3 votes in opposition.
608 –
Modification to 608.9.1 and 608.9.3 passed 19-1-3

Motion to table parts 3 to end of chapter 6 carries with 1 vote in opposition

609 – Motion to table parts 4 to end of chapter 6 carries with 1 vote in opposition

---

06-13 – 2021 Replacement

604.2, 604.3.1, 604.5, 604.9.6, 604.10.1, 604.11.5, 604.12(New), 607.1, 607.2, 607.9(New), 607.9.1(New), 607.9.2(New), 608.1, 608.9(New), 608.9.1(New), 608.9.2(New), 608.9.3(New), 609, 609.1, 609.2.1, 609.2.2, 609.3, 609.4, 609.4.1, 609.4.2, 609.5, 609.6, 609.7, 609.8, 609.9(New)

Proponent: Jake Pauls, Jake Pauls Consulting Service, representing self

Replace and revise as follows:

CHAPTER 1

SECTION 107
DEFINITIONS

Stanchion. A vertical, horizontal or otherwise configured bar that provides for a power grip by one or both hands, to facilitate user ambulation and postural transitions involving sitting, standing, walking, plus stepping over obstacles and on wet underfoot surfaces. Unlike grab bars, stanchions are generally fixed between surfaces or other bars.

CHAPTER 6

SECTION 603
TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

603.1 General. Wheelchair accessible toilet and bathing rooms shall comply with Section 603.

603.2 through **603.6** [unchanged]

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.1 General. Wheelchair accessible water closets and toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604. Compartments containing more than one plumbing fixture shall comply with Section 603. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with Section 604.9. Ambulatory accessible compartments shall comply with Section ~~604.10~~ 612.

Exception: Water closets and toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall be permitted to comply with Section 604.11 as applicable.

Note: Consideration of additional Editorial changes, for example to Sections 607 and 608, designating these as dealing with "wheelchair accessible" facilities is recommended, to the Editorial Subcommittee, by this proponent to differentiate such sections from the newly proposed Section 612 on "Ambulatory Accessible" facilities. The Editorial Subcommittee should also decide where it is necessary to add, after certain references to "grab bars," the new option (for other comparable points of control), "and stanchions."

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS AND STANCHIONS

609.1 General. Grab bars and stanchions in toilet or bathing facilities shall comply with Section 609.

609.2 Cross section. Grab bars and stanchions shall have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.

609.2.1 Circular cross section. Grab bars and stanchions with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1 1/4 inches (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

609.2.2 Noncircular cross section. Grab bars and stanchions with a noncircular cross section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and ~~4.8~~ 6.3 inches (~~120~~ 160 mm) maximum. Corner radius shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) minimum.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar or stanchion shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar or stanchion and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar or stanchion shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar or stanchion and projecting objects above the grab bar or stanchion shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars or stanchions and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars or stanchions above the grab bar or stanchion shall be permitted to be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar or stanchion.

609.4 Position of grab bars and stanchions.

609.4.1 General. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through ~~3~~ 4.

1. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.

2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2, 607.9, and 608.3.1.2.
3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.
4. Grab bars and stanchions for ambulatory accessible toilets not in compartments, ambulatory accessible bathtubs, and ambulatory accessible shower compartments shall comply with Section 612**.**

609.4.2 Position of children's grab bars. *(No change proposed at this time.)*

609.5 Surface hazards. Grab bars and stanchions and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars and stanchions shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded with a corner radius of 1/4 inch (6 mm) minimum.

609.6 Fittings. Grab bars and stanchions shall not rotate within their fittings.

609.7 Installation and configuration. Grab bars and stanchions shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space. Horizontal and vertical grab bars and stanchions shall be permitted to be separate bars, a single-piece bar, or combination thereof.

Exception: Ambulatory accessible bathtubs and toilets complying with Section 612.3 and 612.4.1.1.

609.8 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, stanchion, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

609.9 Durability in presence of water. Grab bars and stanchions, including mountings, shall be installed and sealed, or provided with permanent drainage for components subject to water intrusion.

Possible further modification

609.9 Durability in presence of water. Grab bars and stanchions, including mountings, shall be installed ~~and sealed,~~ to protect structural elements from ~~or provided with permanent drainage for components subject to~~ water intrusion and moisture.

*** * * * ***

SECTION 612
AMBULATORY ACCESSIBLE TOILETS, BATHTUBS AND SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

612.1 Scope. Ambulatory accessible toilets, bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with Section 612.

612.1. General. Grab bars and stanchions, including clearances around them, shall comply with Section 609.

612.2. Installation Height Standards. Installation heights for grab bars or stanchions shall comply with Section 612.2.1 for horizontal installations and Section 612.2.2 for vertical installations.

612.2.1 Horizontal grab bars and stanchions. For bathtubs, horizontal grab bars or stanchions shall be installed with their centerline 24 inches (610 mm) minimum and 28 inches (710 mm) maximum above the floor. In showers, horizontal grab bars and stanchions shall be installed with their centerlines located 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum and 52 inches (1320 mm) maximum above the floor.

Exception: Where the rim height of a bathtub exceeds 25 inches (635 mm) above the floor, the stanchion or horizontal grab bar centerline shall be 3 inches (76 mm) minimum and 6 inches (152 mm) maximum above either the bathtub rim or the top of the deck.

612.2.2 Vertical grab bars and stanchions. Vertical grab bars and stanchions shall be installed so as to be graspable at a height of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the floor.

612.3 Water closets grab bars or stanchions. The vertical stanchion or grab bar shall be located within an area that is both to the side of the bowl and in front of the bowl within an arc measured 24 inches (610 mm) from the front and center of the bowl.

612.4 Bathtub grab bars or stanchions. Grab bars or stanchions shall be provided at bathtubs on the access side complying with Sections 612.4.1 and at the non-access side complying with Section 612.4.2.

612.4.1 Access side of bathtubs. A clearance shall be provided adjacent to the bathtub extending 30 inches (762 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (762 mm) in depth. A vertical grab bar or stanchion shall be provided on the access side of the bathtub, adjacent to the clearance and complying with Section 612.4.1.1, 612.4.1.2 or 612.4.1.3.

612.4.1.1 Vertical stanchion. A vertical stanchion shall be installed on the rim or the bathtub or on the outside of the bathtub within 4 inches (102 mm) measured horizontally from the centerline of the stanchion to the outside face of the bathtub at the stanchion.

612.4.1.2 End wall grab bar interior of bathtub. A vertical grab bar shall be installed on an end wall 9 inches (229 mm) minimum and 12 inches (305 mm) maximum measured horizontally from the centerline of the grab bar to the outside face of the bathtub below the grab bar.

612.4.1.3 End wall grab bar exterior of bathtub. A vertical grab bar shall be installed on an end wall 4 inches (102 mm) maximum measured horizontally from the centerline of the grab bar to the outside face of the bathtub below the grab bar.

612.4.2 Non-access Side of Bathtubs. A grab bar or stanchion shall be provided on the non-access side of the tub complying with Section 612.4.2.1, 612.4.2.2 or 612.4.2.3.

612.4.2.1. Horizontal Grab Bar. A horizontal grab bar shall be installed on the back wall and shall be of 36 (915 mm) minimum in length with the ends located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the from the head and control ends of the bathtub.

612.4.2.2 Horizontal Stanchion. A horizontal stanchion shall be installed between the head and control end walls.

612.4.2.3 Diagonal Grab Bar. The diagonal grab bar shall be installed on the back wall and shall be 36 inches (305 mm) minimum in length. Its slope shall be 30 degrees minimum to 60 degrees maximum to horizontal. The upper end shall extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall. The lower end of the diagonal grab bar shall be 3 inches (76 mm) minimum and 6 inches (152 mm) maximum above the bathtub rim.

612.5. Shower Compartment Grab Bars and Stanchions. For shower compartments having a diagonal dimension of 51 inches (1295 mm) maximum, a grab bar or stanchion shall be provided in accordance with Section 612.5.1, 612.5.2 or 612.5.3. For shower compartments having a diagonal dimension of greater than 51 inches (1295 mm), two grab bars or stanchions shall be provided with one in accordance with Section 612.5.1, 612.5.2 or 612.5.3 and a second grab bar or stanchion in accordance with Section 612.5.4 or 612.5.5.

612.5.1 Horizontal Grab Bar Option. A horizontal grab bar shall be installed with a minimum length of 24 inches (610 mm) and located inside the compartment with one end within 4 inches (100 mm) of the shower entrance opening.

612.5.2 Vertical Grab Bar Option. A vertical grab bar shall be installed with the grab bar centerline located within 3 inches (75 mm) of the shower entrance opening, either inside or outside the compartment.

612.5.3 Vertical Stanchion. A vertical stanchion shall be installed with the stanchion centerline located within 3 inches (75 mm) of the shower entrance opening, either inside or outside the compartment.

612.5.4. Second grab bar. A horizontal grab bar shall be provided on the back wall of the shower. The grab bar shall have its ends extending to within 12 inches (305 mm) of each end of the side walls.

612.5.5. Second stanchion A horizontal stanchion shall be provided on the back wall of the shower. The stanchion shall extend the full length of the back wall mounted between side walls.

Reason statement:

General Background to A117.1 Proposal 06-13 Now Being Replaced and Selected Details

A very large portion of the population, needing to use toilets, bathtubs and showers, have disabilities that still permit ambulation that ranges from fully capable to highly compromised. This is most marked with increasing age and is also manifested in missteps and falls through the entire lifespan.

Countermeasures for the injuries and further disabilities that result from falls and other incidents, are addressed in a preventative or mitigation fashion by other ANSI standards besides A117.1. However, it should be stressed that ICC ANSI A117.1 focuses on the architectural or general design and installation implications for use of essential facilities more generally. It addresses an important set of user needs.

Further use of toilets, bathtubs and showers is impacted as individual user experience with the facilities becomes increasingly problematic, difficult and consequential with time and exposure. Use and usability generally are the focus of A117.1. Maintaining and enhancing regular use of bathing and showering facilities should, for example, be as important as is regular toilet use.

With application of an expanded A117.1, all of these facilities can be made more usable, without sacrificing or complicating both voluntary and essential user exposure to the facilities by the entire population. The provisions set out in this proposal advance this objective, using comparable ergonomic expertise to that applied for decades, improving the lives of people with physical disabilities whose ambulation has been affected in the most consequential ways. The scope of affecting people's lives generally, by addressing ambulation more comprehensively, is now being expanded significantly with these initial recommendations on ambulatory accessible facilities. A comprehensive re-examination of children's use of facilities is outside of scope here.

One specific change from the original submission is that, as just noted (in the end of the prior paragraph), there was originally a minor change proposed to the first part of **609.4.2 Position of children's grab bars and stanchions.** These involved adding a few references to "stanchions" as options to grab bars, but in the revised proposal draft provided above, it was noted, "**609.4.2 Position of children's grab bars.** *(No change proposed at this time.)"* Although my personal library includes detailed anthropometric data for children as well as a copy of the landmark book, "***Ergonomics for Children***," for which I was the author invited to write the chapter on children and stairs which has some relevant information on children development and anthropometrics on matters such as capabilities with points of control, including reach, grasp height preferences, and hand grip capabilities, I was simply too busy to do further research with and beyond the ***Ergonomics for Children*** book which is in my Toronto office library.

Another change from the original submission was to reference tub grab bar heights relative to the floor rather than to the top of the tub rim. However, there remains, in the currently proposed text, one reference to height measured to the bathtub rim and that is for diagonal grab bars on the back wall. For these, given the option of using any grab bar slope from 30 to 60 degrees, there are some complications to the bar's height that might be further clarified at public comment stage. Diagonal bars on tub back walls are, apparently, a newer configuration in the US than they are in Canada.

Other matters where there were changes from the original proposal relate, for example, to adding exceptions for stanchions in Sections for toilets, bathtubs and showers. These did not get much support in the Work Group and the issue was better resolved by clarifying, with new (editorial) text that those few Sections could, editorially, be fixed by adding "Wheelchair Accessible" to their title headings. That would improve the Standard considerably in my opinion.

In terms of possible new requirements being added between my original submission of the Proposal and now, the addition, in my Proposal, to make the rule that grab bar edges be rounded should be improved by requiring a quarter-inch radius of rounding was made in only one of the sections of 609 where this was to be required. The second of the references to this topic occurs in 609.5, "Surface hazards" section, which I had misread to apply not to the grab bar's bar/tubing element but to the surrounding surfaces. I was told that the somewhat ambiguous wording meant both the grab and its surroundings had to meet the rounding rule which I had dealt with in 609.2.2, Noncircular cross section. During deliberations so far, there has been no objection to adding the minimum quarter inch rounding to both sections and it is clearly my hope that both sections get full public review as proper proposals and are accepted.

Related to these issues with Section 609, it would help if, *editorially*, the order of subsections be made a bit more rational keeping similar issues together. With the need to address my sweeping change in Chapter 6, including editorial cleanup, this might be appropriate for Editorial Subcommittee work later. Having already served my time on the Editorial Subcommittee, I hope to stay clear of its very important work load at this time. Other members of the A117 Committee should appreciate how valuable an education it is to serve on the editing task for the Standard.

For much more, see the accompanying, full Reason Statement which includes highlights of pre-2022 justification materials considered by the A117 Committee, especially its Work Group on Proposal 06-13, during 2022. The Work Group on Proposal 06-13, met several times during 2022 and the work by a few of its participants, such a Kim Paarlberg and Marsha Mazz, were notable.

Staff note: "The accompanying, full Reason Statement" is included below.

Justification for Revised Proposal
on Ambulatory Accessible Toilets, Bathtubs and Showers
Submitted by Jake Pauls, BArch, CPE, HonDSc
bldguse@aol.com & www.bldguse.com

December 12, 2022

Foundations. Connecting both wheeled and bipedal ambulation-based access to bathing, showering and toileting is the science and technology of ergonomics and, in a secondary way, public health. As a Certified Professional Ergonomist (like a few others on the A117 Committee) and now the longest serving representative on several ICC and NFPA committee formally representing the American Public Health Association, the proponent brings important perspectives to our (now virtual) deliberation table. This has taken a major group effort and more perspectives.

Work Group Formed. The proponent's first recommendation, made in 2021, was that a task/work group be formed of a small number of interested, informed members of the Committee (and a few experts from outside the Committee) to address the change proposal and, to a lesser extent, the justification or reason statement.

This niche, on bathing, showering and toileting, already is mostly addressed by another ANSI standard—one with a safety motivation and scope (i.e., NFPA 101). Now we need to address such facilities with a usability focus in the most widely respected ANSI standard on f a c i l i ty usability—A117.1. NFPA adopted requirements for safety of bathtubs and showers in its 2018 editions of NFPA 101 and 5000, updating the terminology to include "stanchions" in their 2021 editions. NFPA and the ANSI A117 Committee share a concern for ambulation of facility users, the latter recognizing that a large proportion of people with disabilities are, indeed, ambulatory and the former recognizing, decades ago, that a significant number of people requiring safety in buildings are not ambulatory.

An Option If A117 Committee Does Nothing. Unless ICC wishes to reference NFPA 101 in ICC A117.1 for requirements on grab bars and stanchions for usability as well as safety, the A117 Committee needs to develop its own requirements covering ambulatory accessible water closets, bathtubs and showers. (It did this for stairs decades ago.)

Basic Tools (Including Visual Aids). Fortunately, the tools we will employ in this task are largely identified. They build upon basic ergonomic concepts such as attention to anthropometry, including reach capabilities, plus balance (as affected by location of ones Center of Mass—COM), and points of control, especially upper body ones, etc.

Related but Disparate Efforts. Note that this topic, at least of bathing and showering, is being currently addressed—*or barely addressed*—in disparate ways, by three North American organizations in relation to several documents, that will be published in the 2020s. They are:

- *International Code Council* (for the *International Building Code* and the *International Residential Code)*
- *National Fire Protection Association* (for the *Life Safety Code* and the NFPA *Building Construction and Safety Code)*
- *Canadian Commission on Building and Fire Codes*, replaced on November 22, 2022 by the recently formed *Canadian Board for Harmonized Construction Codes* (CBHCC) to oversee development and adoption of the *National Building Code of Canada* (NBCC) but, apparently, with far less attention given to usability and safety of homes as well as human factors or ergonomics and public health principles generally in all new buildings.

Borrowing from Other Deliberations. The proponent of the A117.1 changes is (or recently has been) also a leading proponent of changes to all these documents affecting the technical requirements and scoping for all occupancies (with a very few exceptions for some institutional settings healthcare and detention/correction). Thus this proposal for A117.1 is an amalgam of several other proposals (dating back to 2007 in the case of one co-proponent's— Dr. Nancy Edwards'—early proposal for the NBCC in Canada).

Terminology and Implementation Criteria. We start with terminology in case the ANSI A117 Committee feels we should define what stanchions are (and perhaps what *Points of Control* are, including especially upper body points of control making use of stanchions). For the following, the proponent borrows freely from proposals and explanatory presentations prepared not only for other codes/standards- developing bodies in North America, but for world conferences on state-of-the-art ergonomics plus applications where usability is currently poorly provided. Before addressing stanchions (as well as grab bars), we need to understand "points of control."

> **Point of Control** (not being proposed as a definition for A117.1 as this requires more work and more expert input). The securely maintained contacts, including with a power grip by ones hand, on a stanchion, grab bar or handrail and the placing of ones foot on a slip-resistant, underfoot surface that permits efficient, comfortable and safe ambulation on a (near) level surface, climbing over an obstacle (e.g., a bathtub rim), and ascending or descending to a higher or lower stair tread.
>
> Although I am not able to provide an official definition of the term "Point of Control" (which is likely in one of the reference handbooks in my Toronto office library), there is a definition for "power grip"—which is what we hope to achieve for a "point of control." The definition "**Power Grip"** is a "prehensile grasp by either hand, with the thumb opposing the fingers, of an object to control or manipulate it." (Thompson, D.A. *et al.* 2005. A guide to forensic human factors terminology. In: Noy, Y.I. and Karwowski, W. (Eds.) *Handbook of Human Factors in Litigation.* New York: CRC Press, 38-1 – 38-46.) It is reported, by this same source, to be the most powerful manual gripping method, with a 50th percentile grip strength of approximately 500 Newtons, 112 pound force, for males and 270 Newtons, 60 pound force, for females. Thus there are relatively few men who, with such a one-handed grip on a grab bar or stanchion, could exceed its required 250 pound load strength.

See the previously provided table, below, for some examples of various extents of available or utilized points of control in several contexts. Those achieved with the implementation of the proposed new requirements for use of toilets, bathtubs and shower exist, *at a minimum*, in the 3 central red box—*with two points of control*—of the table of options.

Number of Points of Control Via Hands or Feet	≤1	1	2	3	3-4
Standard walker for older adult with altered gait.					✔
Occupational settings with risk of worker falls from heights. Also, stairs where users can use two handrails simultaneously, one on each side.				✔	
Stairs where users have only a single handrail. ***Grab bar(s) usable for bathtub/shower entry/egress.***			✔ ★		
Bathtubs/showers with slip resistant underfoot surfaces when wet.		✔			
Bathtubs/showers without slip resistant underfoot surfaces when wet, the common condition currently.	✔				

Where underfoot conditions, or capabilities of lower limbs do not provide a reliable point of control, the required two minimum points of control would be a secure handhold for both of ones arms. In some situations a single stanchion could provide two points of control, for example with a bathtub rim-mounted, vertical stanchion which both arms can effectively lock onto, with effective power grips of the hands; this permits pivoting during a sidestep over the rim and onto, or from, a relatively dangerous smooth, wet, curved bottom of a bathtub. Such an approach, which could be from any direction, cannot be achieved with a standard grab bar that is very close to a large wall surface.

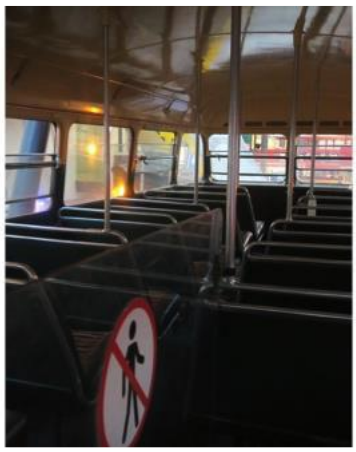
For a more detailed discussion of points of control, see the video (one of about 30) available for free streaming at my Website, http://www.bldguse.com/VideoPage.html, specifically https://vimeo.com/channels/866600/117572176 which addresses "points of control" with participation from a few members of the A117 Committee in a 2014 meeting at my Toronto office. Some of the discussion dealt with a related term, "point of contact."

Stanchions are, like grab bars and handrails, examples of points of control for which the following definition was developed by the Proposal 6-13 Work Group, with discussion of— *and later addition of the second (last) sentence which differentiates stanchions from grab bars.*

> **Stanchion** (as defined in the Public Comment Modification Form). A vertical, horizontal or otherwise configured bar that provides for a power grip by one or both hands, to facilitate user ambulation and postural transitions involving sitting, standing, walking, plus stepping over obstacles and on wet underfoot surfaces. Unlike grab bars, stanchions are generally fixed between surfaces or other bars.

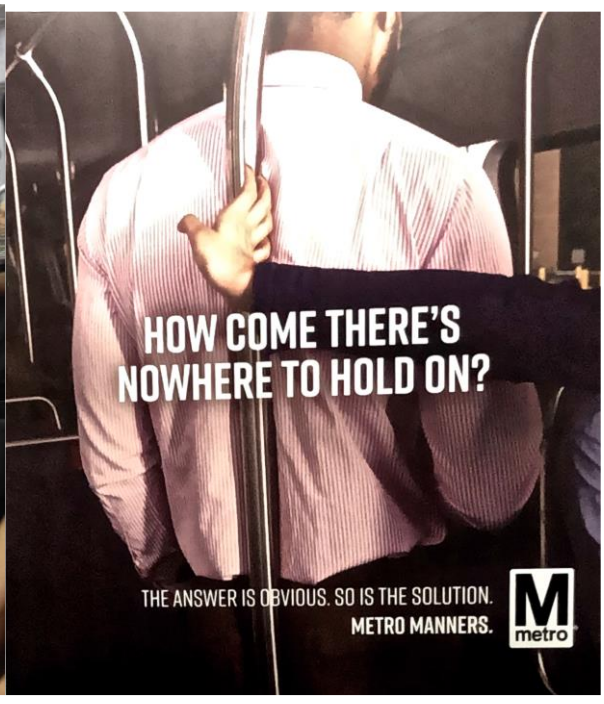
Photographs below represent about two centuries of development of stanchions in the field of transportation vehicle design and their use by ordinary people without formal background in ergonomics, standards development, etc. They also illustrate how stanchions can be attached to other bars as well as being positioned between floor and ceiling (bars or other surfaces).

While on the topic of transportation vehicles, pertinent ADA Guidelines refer to stanchions, e.g., *1192—Americans With Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines For Transportation Vehicles* refers repeatedly to "Interior circulation, handrails and stanchions."


The photos below depict the importance of such stanchions to riders as well as to transportation authorities, in this case in the Washington, DC region Metro system. They provided the poster, at the right, depicting one use of stanchions that is rarely seen, but represents an example of "point of contact" which prevents stanchion use as a "point of control" Also note, at the left, the height at which most standing users of the transportation system hold onto stanchions, namely at shoulder to head height, a height that all ages appear to favor—including toddlers' early use of handholds (discussed in the book chapter I authored, by invitation, years ago [Pauls, J., 2007]. "Stairways for Children." In *Ergonomics for Children: Designing products and places for toddlers to teens*, Lueder, R and Rice, V. [Eds.], CRC Press, Taylor and Francis, Boca Raton, FL, pp. 543-571.)

Note also the ubiquity of the provision of stanchions; one is generally within reach of every seated or standing passenger in the latest generation of Metro Subway cars (as well as buses).

Stanchions and Toilets. For toilet use-related (stand-to-sit and sit-to-stand) transfers, both ergonomics and scientifically-established personal preferences are for points of control for each of our two arms/hands to be available. (See the 2015 paper, *Toilet Grab-Bar Preference and Center of Pressure Deviation During Toilet Transfers in Healthy Seniors, Seniors With Hip Replacements, and Seniors Having Suffered a Stroke*, by Kennedy, Arcelus, Guitard, Goubran, and Sveistrup. Web link: http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/10400435.2014.976799.)

The leading preference, identified in this study, was for two handholds on vertical points of control—e.g., stanchions or grab bars—one on each side, and at the front of the toilet; second preference was for only one such point of control (out of five options including also horizontal, " swing-away" and diagonal options.) This is why the revised proposal has the following requirements applying generally (in the case of the first item) and to toilets (in the second item quoted here). Note that the height range specified for vertical stanchions and grab bars, 36 to 60 inches, includes over 95 percent of the US adult population's range of stature or shoulder height as well as including—at the 36-inch minimum, stature of children in the 3.5 to 4.5-year age range.

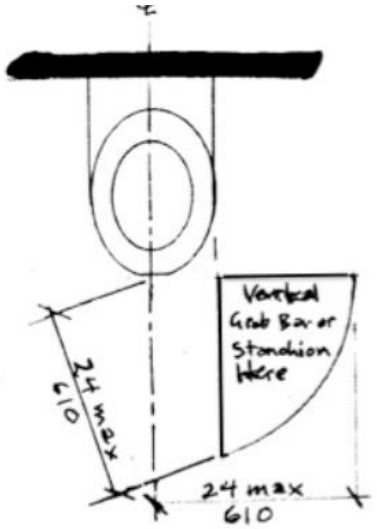
> **"612.2.2.** Vertical grab bars and stanchions shall be installed so as to be graspable at a height of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum above the floor.

Note that, in addition to taking care to utilize good sources of anthropometric data for heights of required vertical points of control, the proponent of Proposal 06-13 also provided a first draft of a plan view figure to help clarify the position of vertical grab bars or stanchions serving toilets. Here follows the proposed text as well as the first-draft sketch

> **612.3 Water closets grab bars or stanchions.** The vertical stanchion or grab bar shall be located within an area that is both to the side of the bowl and in front of the bowl within an arc measured 24" from the front and center of the bowl."

FIGURE 612.2
AMBULATORY ACCESSIBLE WATER CLOSET IN RELATION TO VERTICAL GRAB BAR OR STANCHION LOCATION

The Figure shows the grab bar or stanchion at the user's left side but it could be on either side or both sides. Note 24 inches is the radius of the curved portion of the boundary within which stanchion or grab bar centerline is located.



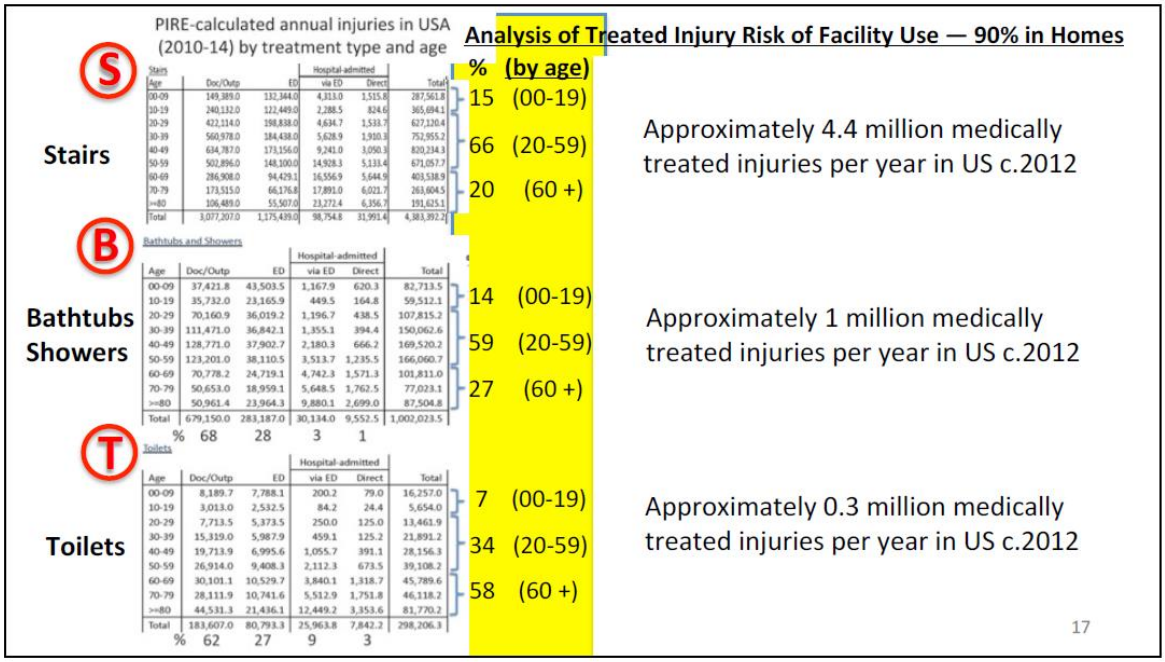
The whole point of the major changes submitted for the A117.1 standard, especially in Section 612 of the plumbing chapter is to add one or two upper body points of control to the single weight-bearing foot, for example, (1) in entry to, using, and exiting from a bathtub or shower enclosure and (2) sitting down on or arising from a water closet. An increasing proportion of the population is in need of such aids if ambulatory people are to remain independently capable, as long as possible, of common activities of daily living without avoidable risks of injury-created disabilities, either temporary or permanent. As well as being a reasonable advance in public health in terms of injury prevention, it is a major quality of life benefit, the value of which greatly exceeds the cost of installing the stanchions and grab bars.

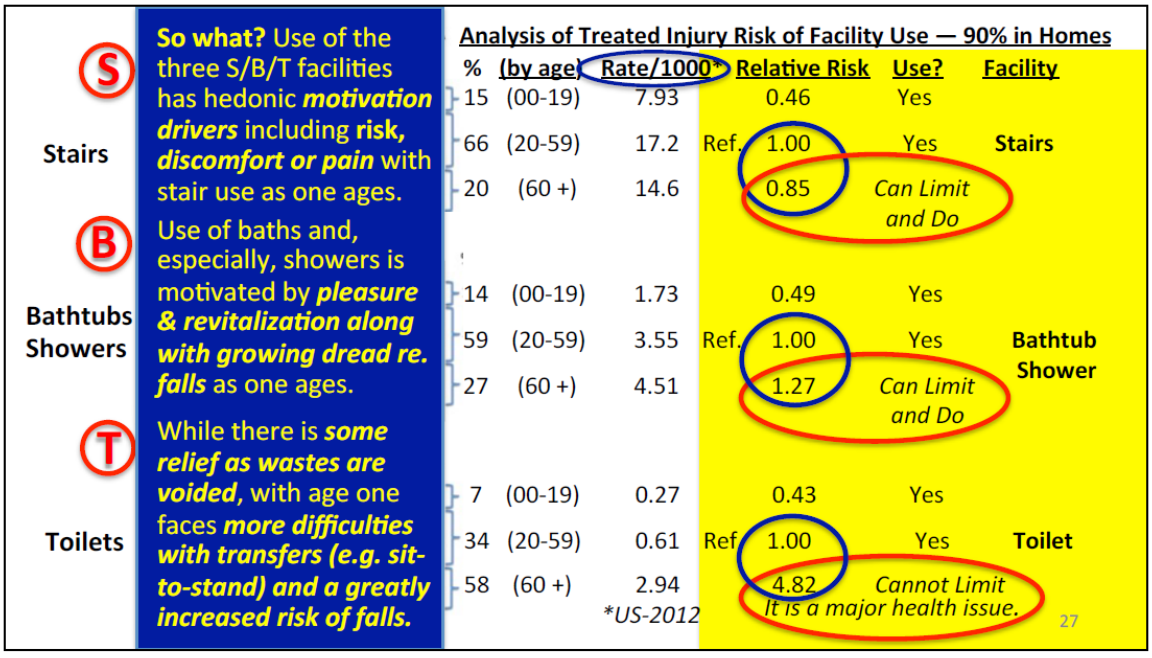
Moreover, as was pointed out in the first dozen or so slides of a very large slide set presentation provided to Committee members of A117 as well as other codes/standards bodies, people reduce their use of relatively dangerous facilities such as stairs, bathtubs, and even showers at an age well below normal retirement age because of the sad state of not just the safety risks but the lack of reasonable *usability* of the facilities. They can do this with stairs, bathtubs and showers, but they cannot do so with toilets. The results of this situation are clear in the statistics on the relatively rapid growth of toilet related injuries but not so with the stairs, bathtubs and showers. See the analyses provided with the original proposal for quantitative data on the extent of this disproportionate growth.

The information below sums up the situation as it can be understood from the injury data in the NEISS system of emergency department treatments augmented by colleagues of the Proponent (at the Pacific Institute for Research and Evaluation (PIRE), in Calverton, Maryland) who provided their expert estimates of how many more treatments were delivered, not in hospitals, but doctors' offices and clinics. The information below comes from the proponent's 144-slide, PowerPoint presentation for the A117 Committee Proposal 06-13-2021 Work Group meeting held 14 March 2022 with slight modifications in August 2022.

As only two slides (numbers 17 and 27 of 144 are extracted here, much is lost of the development of the proponent's realization that bathtubs, showers and toilets pose not only serious injury dangers to all ages but they also pose significant disincentives to use of these facilities as they do with (especially home) stair use also. This shows up in a reduced or only slightly increased relative population-corrected risk of professionally treated injuries for all users of stairs and bathtubs. However, for toilets, whose use cannot be reduced by any age group, the relative population corrected risk increases by a factor of 4.8 for older (age 60+) people relative to 1.00 for middle age (20-59) people. For bathtubs the older (age 60+) people have a population corrected risk of 1.27 relative to 1.0 for middle age (20-59)

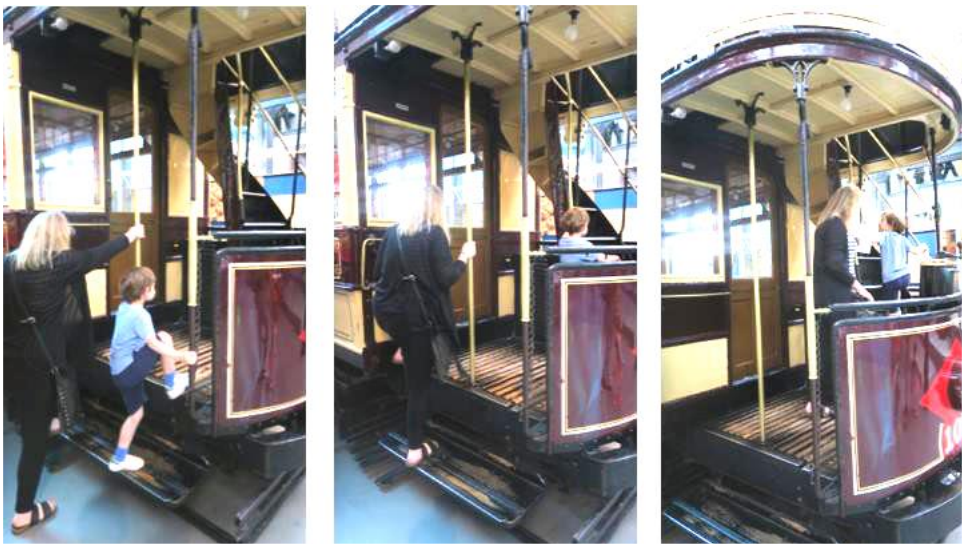
people.





The photographic series, below with a century-old trolley, provides a brief story of how effective stanchions are, even for young children encountering steps comparable in height to what is needed to surmount the wall of a typical bathtub; the height depicted here is about 16 inches (400 mm), comparable to what is found in minimum standard (e.g., *International Residential Code*) permitted stairways for dwelling units—except there is no intermediate step to

use as many older people need to do when using stairs (with both feet using every step). Note also the relatively puny grab bar to the woman's left; it lacks the usefulness of the two (platform to ceiling) stanchions, marked in yellow, better serving the formidable two-riser stair in terms of both length and location.



An important lesson, from the photo sequence above, is that stanchions provide more options for placement and more options for users to choose the points of control they perceive as important to their task and safety. In other words ordinary people, even of young age, are displaying skill in ergonomics (the science and technology of how people utilize things, systems, etc. available to them to perform tasks effectively, comfortably, and safely).

For purposes of this A117.1 proposal, along with grab bars, it should be clear that stanchions are reliable, indeed superior, time-tested means of providing for "points of control" and they provide options for location and length that greatly exceed what conventional grab bars can provide—as they do not rely on walls from which they cantilever. (The can be *between* walls, *between floor and ceiling*, *etc*.)

Section 612.4. Bathtub Grab Bars or Stanchions

The graphic on the next page combines all of the stanchion and conventional grab bar options set out in the partial re-write of A117.1 Chapter 6, "Plumbing Elements and Facilities," specifically for bathtubs**.**

All of the eight options are illustrated in the graphic below. The options are in two groups, three options for the one stanchion or grab bar on the non-access side or back wall and five options for the one required grab bar or stanchion on the access side (front). At the front, the vertical stanchion has options for placement anywhere along the length of the bathtub (depending on fixture layout in the bathroom and where the clear, half bathtub length area (required by **Section 612.4.1 Access side of bathtub**) is located—here in front of the water closet (WC).

On the next page the stanchion is shown mid-tub length (where it is *surface---mounted* (with Automotive Grade RTV adhesive) on the *steel* tub rim, but could also be floor mounted for other tubs with less strength or rigidity) so it also serves the WC per proposed new section quoted above.

612.4.1 Access side of bathtubs. A clearance shall be provided adjacent to the bathtub extending 30 inches minimum in length and 30 inches minimum in depth. A vertical grab bar or stanchion shall be provided on the access side of the bathtub, adjacent to the clearance and complying with Section 612.4.1.1, 612.4.1.2 or 612.4.1.3.

612.4.1.1 Vertical stanchion. A vertical stanchion shall be installed on the rim or the bathtub or on the outside of the bathtub within 4 inches measure horizontally from the centerline of the stanchion to the outside face of the bathtub at the stanchion.

612.4.1.2 End wall grab bar interior of bathtub. A vertical grab bar shall be installed on an end wall 9 inches minimum and 12 inches maximum measured horizontally from the centerline of the grab bar to the outside face of the bathtub below the grab bar.

612.4.1.3 End wall grab bar exterior of bathtub. A vertical grab bar shall be installed on an end wall 4 inches maximum measured horizontally from the centerline of the grab bar to the outside face of the bathtub below the grab bar.

Note the options for the access side, end wall-mounted grab bar do not permit placing this grab bar where it would interfere with the installed shower curtain rod (or track) or installation of an enclosure system of sliding glass panels for example. Several inches of horizontal dimension are reserved on the end walls for such water control barriers, e.g., a shower curtain, to seal to the end walls.

The most common defect with grab bar placement the author saw repeatedly in his many stays in hotels around the world was having both the shower curtain and the vertical grab bar competing for the same region of the end wall. The result: during a shower, water ended up leaking to the bathroom floor, in some cases getting into end walls with moldy results.

Here follow the proposed texts for the bathtub grab bars or stanchions with the graphic on the prior and next page illustrating the full range of options. *However, note that the illustration of the diagonal grab bars has incorrect lower end heights above the bathtub rim (based on another, early design) which must be corrected here to a 3 to 6-inch range above the tub rim.*

Again, disregard the dimension of 8" min to 10" max above the bathtub rim for the bottom of 10 *the diagonal grab bar examples; the distance in the current A117 proposal is 3 to 6 inches above the bathtub rim. The illustration was from an earlier draft proposal.*

612.4.2 Non-access Side of Bathtubs. A grab bar or stanchion shall be provided on the nonaccess side of the tub complying with Section 612.4.2.1, 612.4.2.2 or 612.4.2.3.

612.4.2.1. Horizontal Grab Bar. A horizontal grab bar shall be installed on the back wall and shall be of 36" minimum in length with the ends located 12 inches maximum from the from the head and control ends of the bathtub.

612.4.2.2 Horizontal Stanchion. A horizontal stanchion shall be installed between the head and control end walls.

612.4.2.3 Diagonal Grab Bar. The diagonal grab bar shall be installed on the back wall and shall be 36 inches minimum in length. Its slope shall be 30 degrees minimum to 60 degrees maximum to horizontal. The upper end shall extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from

the control end wall. The lower end of the diagonal grab bar shall be 3 inches minimum and 6 inches maximum above the bathtub rim.

612.5. Shower Compartment Grab Bars and Stanchions. For shower compartments having a diagonal dimension of 51 inches (1295 mm) maximum, a grab bar or stanchion shall be provided in accordance with Section 612.5.1, 612.5.2 or 612.5.3. For shower compartments having a diagonal dimension of greater than 51 inches (1295 mm), two grab bars or stanchions shall be provided with one in accordance with Section 612.5.1, 612.5.2 or 612.5.3 and a second grab bar or stanchion in accordance with Section 612.5.4 or 612.5.5.

612.5.1 Horizontal Grab Bar Option. A horizontal grab bar shall be installed with a minimum length of 24 inches (610 mm) and located inside the compartment with one end within 4 inches (100 mm) of the shower entrance opening.

612.5.2 Vertical Grab Bar Option. A vertical grab bar shall be installed with the grab bar centerline located within 3 inches (75 mm) of the shower entrance opening, either inside or outside the compartment.

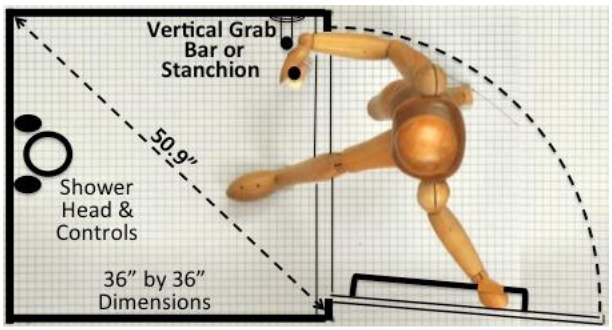
612.5.3 Vertical Stanchion. A vertical stanchion shall be installed with the stanchion centerline located within 3 inches (75 mm) of the shower entrance opening, either inside or outside the compartment.

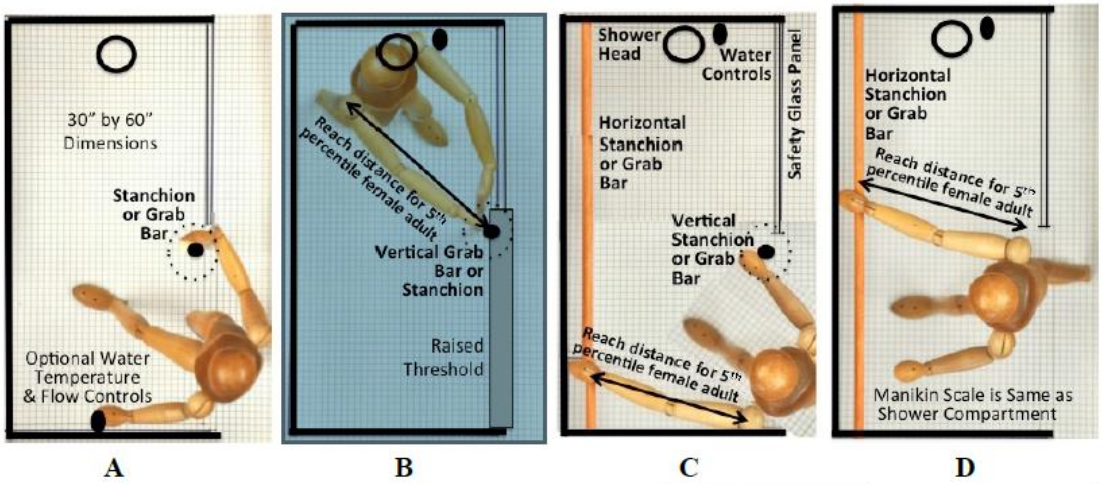
612.5.4. Second grab bar. A horizontal grab bar shall be provided on the back wall of the shower. The grab bar shall have its ends extending to within 12 inches of each end of the side walls.

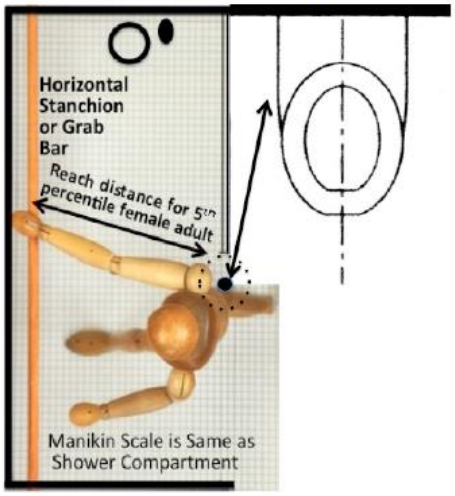
612.5.5. Second stanchion A horizontal stanchion shall be provided on the back wall of the shower. The stanchion shall extend the full length of the back wall mounted between side walls.

To help understanding of these conditions and grab bar plus stanchion options, the proponent initiated a different form of illustration of options for two increasingly standard shower compartment plans differing by the maximum horizontal, diagonal dimension being no greater than 59 inches or being greater than 59 inches. The latter include showers replacing, in approximately the same space a fairly standard, roughly 30-inches by 60-inches bathtub area.

The different form of illustration of options involved use of ¼-size plans and ¼-size artists manikins photographed, with a (faint) 1-inch grid, from an overhead position, using a mirror to get a longer shot and better perspective (as the manikins were about 16 inches high). Here are the options explored starting with plan view of 36-inch by 36-inch (915 mm by 915 mm) in plan size, addressed in 612.5.2 and 612.5. (612.5.1, with the horizontal GB or stanchion option is not shown for this smaller size of shower, although it is a permitted option).


Vertical Grab Bar or Stanchion
50.9"
Shower Head & Controls
36" by 36" Dimensions





Option C Augmented to show vertical stanchion also serving adjacent WC. See accompanying illustration below.

Options for Using Vertical Stanchions or Grab Bars At Shower Entrance With And Without Full Length Horizontal Stanchion or Grab Bar Per 612.5.4.

Pending discussion with the A117 Committee and its Chair on suitability of invoking an option to restrict larger showers to Option C based an individual case assessment of adequate slip

resistance underfoot in the shower, only a two grab bar or stanchion combination should be accepted for the larger showers. This is due to much greater consequences of slipping in the larger plan showers. Committee views on this matter are requested before or during the December 15th meeting. A simple pass/fail test of onsite, wet, shower pan slip resistance, performable *without* a tribometer (or other specialized equipment) and skilled operator, will be presented to the entire committee.

Appendix of Some Expanded Consideration of Certain Topics that are prominent in this Proposal: Consumer acceptance of stanchions and the proposal (within 06-13) on changing the 1.5 inch clearance between a grab bar (or stanchion) surface to a minimum requirement.

Stanchion Acceptance. A significant aspect of the proposal for A117.1 is the introduction of stanchions, the history and ubiquity—*outside of bathrooms*—has already been addressed above. In the photos below, they are seen in three of the contexts at the heart of A117.1 Chapter 6, as it will be amended with the acceptance of this proposal which deals, typically with new construction.

All of the examples below represent retrofit installations. Moreover, they are all retrofits in rental contexts where damage to walls is frowned upon by owners. Thus all of the examples shown of stanchions in this proposal narrative, include stanchions that can be removed (followed with the usual repainting between tenancies) without any screw holes in floors, ceilings and, most important (usually) walls.

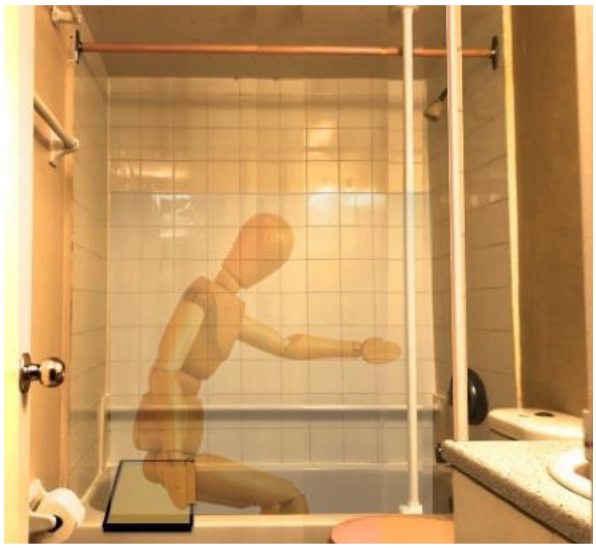
Modern RTV (Room Temperature Vulcanizing) adhesives hold these stanchions in place with holding capability e a s i l y meeting the 250-pound strength requirement. This adds new usefulness to A117.1 and, more importantly, to many people who develop disabilities of all types as they age and who want to “age in place” where they feel most at home.

Stanchions also avoid any grab bar stigma issues as, evident especially in the two photos at the center and right sides below, the stanchions appear totally integrated with the décor, even serving as a much needed lighting pole to enhance bathroom lighting while saving energy. These stanchions all comply with the proposed requirements, completely for the contexts illustrated, from left to right: bathtub access side vertical stanchion (with a no-cost bonus of also serving as the newly required vertical stanchion for the WC).

At the center is another stanchion, this one color coordinated with its surrounds and the structural supports—to the vanity—color coordinated with it (while giving extra structural support to the stanchion). At the right, the satin stainless steel stanchion matches the décor of the shower enclosure and is discretely tucked into a recess while being accessible for both entering and exiting, stepping over the 4-inch sill below the shower door. Both of the stanchions at the center and right occupy the same bathroom and both contend with the 8-foot ceiling there (which has been tested to the 250-pound criterion—without any plastic deformation)

The photo at the left side demonstrates two options for a center tub-length stanchion, one affixed with RTV adhesive to a 60-year old enamel steel bathtub that has no problem with a test 330-pound, lateral load held for three hours. For newer, less rigid bathtub materials such as acrylic or fiberglass, manufacturers have raised a huge fuss over rim mounting of stanchions. They are easily appeased with the option of mounting on the adjacent floor—which is far more sturdy than the newer tubs are and has no issues with the RTV adhesive. Again, with many solid, well performing steel bathtubs currently installed, there is much scope for both the rim- and floor mounting options for securing stanchions in both new and existing bathrooms.

There was also some opposition—*quickly addressed*—from those concerned with the stanchion being in the way of some people with disabilities not being able to swing their fully extended legs over the tub rim when seated on a bathtub seat. Note that in the photo above, left side, there is barely room for such legs at the closely positioned WC which effectively blocks almost half the length of the tub. Notably the proposed language for A117 allows the vertical, access-side stanchion to be placed anywhere on or immediately adjacent to the entire length of the bathtub. Thus the stanchion can be placed where it suits a bather who desires to use a bathtub seat, etc. (BTW, the bathroom is totally inaccessible to a standard wheelchair and the 60-year old apartment building is not very accessible as well as being difficult to evacuate for those unable to use stairs.)



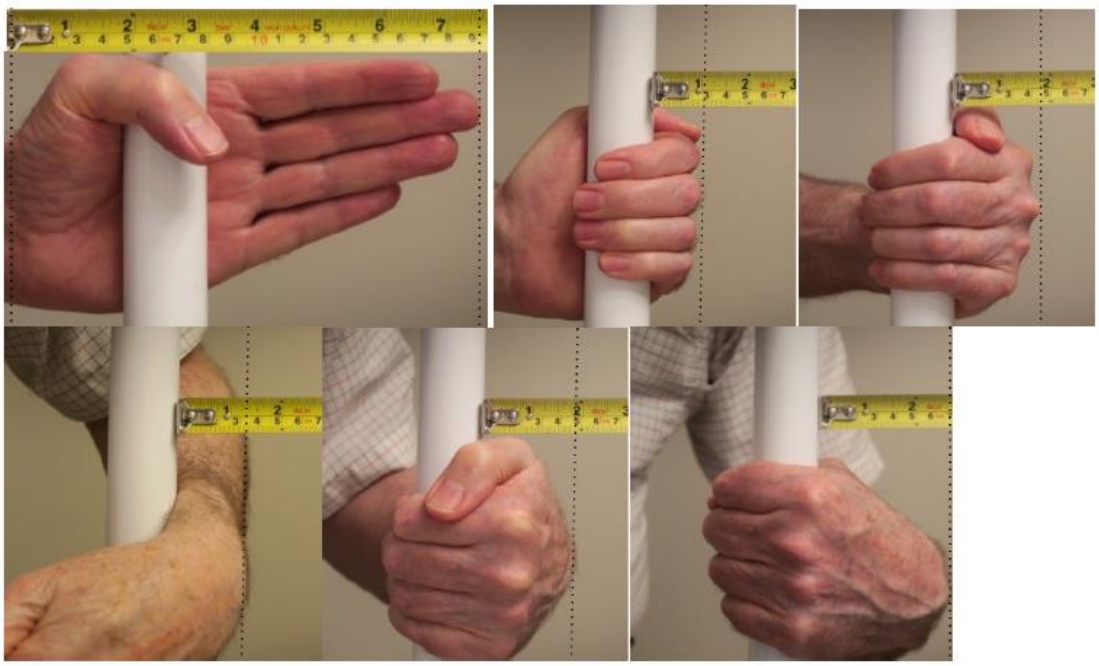
This augmented photo illustrates the possible dilemma over such vertical stanchion placement. Is it too close to the seat; is it too far from the seat (like the water controls are), or is it just right? The proposal is open to all options on this matter (keeping in mind the value of the stanchion also serving the water closet as set out in proposed new Section 604.12 in which the performance requirement of a 28-inch reach distance is utilized.) The 28 inches is based on a reachability analysis as well as being explained and illustrated in Appendix A to this proposal; a very large (200-plus) slide presentation. Note there is also a second vertical stanchion digitally added at the vanity side serving the water closet.

Finally—*almost*— at least for this supplementary "REASON" section of the proposal, a critical detail that, I hope will be accepted to no longer specify a fixed 1.5- inch clearance between a grab bar and the wall to which it is attached. Here follows the proposed change and below that is the experiment that was painfully executed in the course of addressing this matter empirically. The clearance in the photo sequence that follows was exactly 1.5 inches yet an older male adult's hand could pass through, sustaining bruising to the back of the hand. Surely this issue of adding one word, "minimum" will be accepted as a similar change has been accepted on related topics. Moreover (recognizing Figures do not govern over requirements in text), A117-2017 has a Figure (609.3 on page 88) showing the 1.5-inch spacing as a minimum for a horizontal grab bar.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar <u>or stanchion</u> shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar <u>or stanchion</u> and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar <u>or stanchion</u> shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar <u>or stanchion</u> and projecting objects above the grab bar or stanchion shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Finally, for more insights into the 1.5-inch clearance in 609.3, there is not just the risk of difficult- to-heal internal hand injuries with the current absolute 1.5-inch spacing, but also bruising and abrasions to ones knuckles. See the photos below.

Here follows a sequence of photographs taken of the proponent's hand size (of 7 1/2- inch, 190 mm length) and grasping a 1.3-inch (33 mm) diameter stanchion complete with a scale showing how much of the hand projects into the space that would be available with a wall surface nearby.



Clearly for hand sizes such as for an 80-year old US male (depicted here), the absolute spacing of 1.5 inches (38 mm), currently in the ANSI A117.1 standard needs to be reassessed if knuckle damage is to be prevented along with injuries to the thickest part—and very complex part—of the hand, at the base of the thumb. *For these areas of a large adult male hand, 1 3/4 inches (45 mm) would be an improved minimum and 2 inches would be even more prudent.* The most preferred option would consist of revising the (minimum) clearance, throughout 609.3 and 609.5 to 2 inches (51 mm) in which case it could be left as an

absolute clearance—*if that was still desired for some reason*—for horizontal grab bars as well as the stipulated minimum clearance everywhere else.]

Thank you all.

Jake Pauls, BArch, CPE, HonDSc, PROPONENT OF PROPOSAL 06-13-2021
Web: www.bldguse.com
Mobile: 301-706-8830

Committee Action: Tabled

Notes 8-9-2022 and 8-25-2022: Motion is AS

Question divided:

604 – AS 5-22-2/D 24-6-2
607 – AS 7-18-4/Motion to Disapprove;
Motion to table 17-9-2 till 8/25/2022 call
Motion to untable passed.
Motion to table part 2 to end of chapter 6 carries with 3 votes in opposition.
608 –
Modification to 608.9.1 and 608.9.3 passed 19-1-3
Motion to table parts 3 to end of chapter 6 carries with 1 vote in opposition
609 – Motion to table parts 4 to end of chapter 6 carries with 1 vote in opposition

Modification (if any):

Divided question Item 3: ***Modification passed 19-1-3***
Further modify as follows:

608.9.1 At shower exterior. A vertical grab bar or stanchion shall be provided outside of the shower compartment, adjacent to the access opening within ~~28 inches (710 mm)~~ 24 inches (610 mm) of the center of the shower entrance opening width. The grab bar or stanchion shall extend from 24 inches (610 mm) maximum to 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum, measured vertically above the finished floor.

608.9.3 For larger shower interior. For showers with any interior plan dimensions exceeding 51 inches (1295 mm), including diagonally between corners, a grab bar or stanchion located interior to the shower compartment shall be ~~28 inches (710 mm)~~ 24 inches (610 mm) maximum, measured horizontally to the access to the shower. If oriented vertically, the grab bar or stanchion shall extend from 24 inches (610 mm) maximum to 60 inches (1524 mm) minimum, measured vertically above the finished floor outside the shower. If oriented horizontally, the grab bar or stanchion shall have a length 36 inches (915mm) minimum at a height, measured vertically above the finished floor outside the shower, of 48 inches (1220 mm)minimum and 60 inches (1524 mm) maximum.

Notes 8-25-2022:

Reason for modification: The modification is based on anthropometric data for reach. The 28" is arm length, and the 24" would be to the center of the hand. This is a bar that is intended to be graspable and needs to be closer for stability reasons.

Notes 12-15-2022:
This proposal was split and tabled during the 8-25-2022 meeting. The proponent submitted a replacement proposal that was substantially different from the original proposal. Therefore, the actions taken on 8-25-2022 are void and the discussion will start over.

- 06-13-2021 Replacement: AM based on replacement modification; divided question
  - Discussion begun on 12-15-2022
  - Part 1 - Definition for 'stanchion' – AM 5-21-2; D 23-3-3
  - Part 2 - Section 603 and 604; The chair ruled that the revision of Section 604.10 to 612 is out of order. This change is not included. AM 11-13-1; D 25-4-2

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.1 General. Wheelchair accessible water closets and toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604. Compartments containing more than one plumbing fixture shall comply with Section 604. Wheelchair accessible compartments shall comply with Section ~~604.10~~ 612.

Exception: Water closets and toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall be permitted to comply with Section 604.11 as applicable.

  - Part 3 – Section 609 –
    - The chair ruled that 609.2.2 change from 4.8 to 6.3 for grab bars is out of order and is therefore only applicable to stanchions.

609.2.2 Noncircular cross section. Grab bars and stanchions with a noncircular cross section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and ~~4.8~~ 6.3 inches (~~120~~ 160 mm) maximum. Corner radius shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) minimum.

  - Part 4 – Motion to hear Section 609.9 separated out from 609
  - The item was tabled due to the discussion extending 45 minutes past the scheduled meeting time. Tabled 12-9-0

Notes 1-5-2023:
  - Removed from table at start of 1/5/2023 meeting - unanimous
  - Part 3 – 609.1 through 609.8
    - Jake requested to remove from Section 609.2.2 change from 4.8 to 6.3. The chair ruled that this will be included as part of proposed modification.
    - Question was called at 1:28 p.m. – 6 against, motion passes

        - Part 3 – Section 609.1 through 609.8 - AM 4-26-3; D 24-6-2
    - Part 4 – Section 609.9
        - Modification – strike 'and sealed' 24-0-1
        - Modification – see report for complete mod 22-2-3
        - Part 4 AM with 2 modifications - 26-1-4
    - Part 5 – Section 612 –
        - Divided to consider conceptual vote of 612 and 612.1 (1st of 2 sections with this number) separately – AM 14-14-2; The chair votes in support to break tie
        - Discussed remainder by parts, 612.2, 612.3, 612.4 – no votes taken
        - Discussion will start again at the 1/19/2023 call with Section 612.5

Notes 1-19-2023:

- Removed from table at start of 1/19/2023 meeting
- Part 6 –
    - Discussion of Section 612.5
    - Two documents from Larry Schneider were sent out with the email for the general meeting reminder on Tuesday, Jan. 17.
        - Stanchions for A117.1_LMS
        - Conflict between Grab bars NFPA vs Accessibility Model_LMS
    - Section 612.1 (2nd of 2 sections with this number) through 612.5.5 – AM 1-21-2; D 25-1-2

Committee Action: The committee voted on the replacement proposal, so the standing motion was AM

- Part 1 - Definition for 'stanchion' – AM 5-21-2; D 23-3-3
- Part 2 - Section 603 and 604 - AM 11-13-1; D 25-4-2
- Part 3 – Section 609.1 through 609.8 - AM 4-26-3; D 24-6-2
- Part 4 – Section 609.9 - AM with 2 modifications - 26-1-4
- Part 5 – Section 612 and 612.1 (Scope) –AM 15-14-2
- Section 612.1 (General) through 612.5.5 – AM 1-21-2; D 25-1-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Part 4 - Further modify as follows:

609.9 Durability in presence of water. Grab bars and stanchions, including mountings, shall be installed ~~and sealed,~~ to protect structural elements from ~~or provided with permanent drainage for components subject to~~ water intrusion and moisture.

Committee Reason:
Part 1 – definition of stanchion
The new definition was disapproved for the following reasons. The description is more about the purpose of the stanchion rather than a definition of what a stanchion is. The proposed language

does not clearly define a difference between a grab bar and a stanchion – this could be read to apply to both.

Part 2 - Section 603 and 604
The chair ruled that the revision of the reference in Section 604.1 from Section 604.10 to 612 is out of order. This change is not included.
Part 2 was disapproved for the following reasons. The proposal to add 'wheelchair accessible' is incomplete – it revised only two sections. This is not an editorial change as indicated in notes in the proposal. This revision does not add clarity to the confusion between the new requirements proposed for 'ambulatory accessible bathrooms' and the current 'ambulatory accessible compartments.'

Part 3 – Section 609.1 through 609.8
The chair ruled that 609.2.2 change from 4.8 to 6.3 for grab bars is out of order and is therefore only applicable to stanchions.
Jake requested to remove from Section 609.2.2 the change from 4.8 to 6.3. The chair ruled that this will be included as part of proposed modification.
Part 3 was disapproved for the following reasons. In Section 609.2.2, the ¼" edge for a grab bar or stanchion is greater than the 0.01" edge for handrails currently in the IBC that is based on studies provided by the Stairway Manufacturer's Association. There was no justification provided for the significant difference. In Section 609.3, the ½" minimum gap proposed for behind the grab bar would be a conflict with the ADA. There is also a safety concern for persons that rest their forearm on top of the grab bar if the gap was larger. In Section 609.5 the ¼" edge for surfaces would be confusing for wall surfaces such as tile. The justification provided for grasping of a bar does not translate to edges on surfaces behind a grab bar or stanchion. In Section 609.7, it is not clear what the exception is attempting to exempt you from in the main text.

Part 4 – Section 609.9
The intent of the modification was to provide performance language instead of prescriptive language to protect connections from failing. The second modification to remove "and sealed" was to coordinate with that intent, since 'and sealed' could be read to not allow drainage holes. There were concerns that adding "structural elements" could be read to apply only to the walls or floors and not the screws in the connections. Common failure is a mis-match of metal types between the screws and the grab bars, or the rusting of the screws holding the grab bars in place. If the proposal to add stanchions is disapproved, the removal of "and stanchions" would be referred to the editorial committee. The committee agreed with the original intent of the proposal – to reduce failure of the grab bar connections over time.

Part 5 – Section 612 and 612.1 (Scope)
Section 612.1 was acted on separately in order to determine the committee's desired direction on the remainder of the section. If disapproved, the proponent indicated the intent to move for disapproval of the remainder. The vote on the motion to approve 612 and 612.1 Scope was tied with the chair voting in favor of the motion to allow for complete discussion of the topic.

Part 6 – 612.1 (General) through 612.5

The proposal was disapproved.
While this proposal does not include scoping, the committee was reluctant to adopt these requirements without knowing where they would be scoped due to concerns that if this applied to units that are required to meet other accessibility standards, these grab bar locations would conflict with the requirements in other standards.
While specific methods of attachment of vertical stanchions are not specified, there were concerns that the attachment of the vertical stanchion to the edge of the bathtub could cause damage and/or affect the fixture's warranty. Regarding use of adhesives, it is not clear how one would document compliance with loading requirements and suitable adhesive type.
612.3 – There were concerns that the vertical stanchions at water closets would be an obstruction for persons trying to get to the water closet with a walker, cane or crutches. Swing up grab bars should also be considered as a possible option.
612.4 – There were concerns that vertical stanchion at bathtubs that comply with these location requirements could be an obstruction for persons who wanted to transfer to a bathing seat and/or parents trying to bath their children in the tub.
There were concerns that with a vertical stanchion on the edge of a tub, a shower curtain would not adequately contain water and may contribute to a slip and fall hazard on a wet floor.
The diagonal grab bars on the rear wall, if located with the front edge close to the wall, would place the diagonal bar close to the front of the tub. This is not consistent with the intent expressed in the examples in the reason statement.
612.5 – The requirements for the vertical grab bars and stanchions are stated in relation to the shower opening, but do not address fixtures with swinging or sliding doors.

604 et al-PAULS.doc

Report for 0*6-13– 2021*

Committee decision:	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** *See notes in first column*	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
The committee voted on the replacement proposal, so the standing motion was AM • Part 1 - Definition for 'stanchion' D 23-3-3 • Part 2 - Section 603 and 604 - D 25-4-2 • Part 3 – Section 609.1 through 609.8 - D 24-6-2 • Part 4 – Section 609.9 - AM with 2 modifications - 26-1-4 • Part 5 – Section 612 and 612.1 (Scope) –AM 15-14-2 • Section 612.1 (General) through 612.5.5 –D 25-1-2		

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Part 4 - Further modify as follows:

609.9 Durability in presence of water. Grab bars and stanchions, including mountings, shall be installed ~~and sealed,~~ to protect structural elements from ~~or provided with permanent drainage for components subject to~~ water intrusion and moisture.

Committee Reason:
Part 1 – definition of stanchion
The new definition was disapproved for the following reasons. The description is more about the purpose of the stanchion rather than a definition of what a stanchion is. The proposed language does not clearly define a difference between a grab bar and a stanchion – this could be read to apply to both.

Part 2 - Section 603 and 604
The chair ruled that the revision of the reference in Section 604.1 from Section 604.10 to 612 is out of order. This change is not included.
Part 2 was disapproved for the following reasons. The proposal to add 'wheelchair accessible' is incomplete – it revised only two sections. This is not an editorial change as indicated in notes in the proposal. This revision does not add clarity to the confusion between the new requirements proposed for 'ambulatory accessible bathrooms' and the current 'ambulatory accessible compartments.'

Part 3 – Section 609.1 through 609.8
The chair ruled that 609.2.2 change from 4.8 to 6.3 for grab bars is out of order and is therefore only applicable to stanchions.
Jake requested to remove from Section 609.2.2 the change from 4.8 to 6.3. The chair ruled that this will be included as part of proposed

Report for 0*6-13– 2021*		
modification. Part 3 was disapproved for the following reasons. In Section 609.2.2, the ¼" edge for a grab bar or stanchion is greater than the 0.01" edge for handrails currently in the IBC that is based on studies provided by the Stairway Manufacturer's Association. There was no justification provided for the significant difference. In Section 609.3, the ½" minimum gap proposed for behind the grab bar would be a conflict with the ADA. There is also a safety concern for persons that rest their forearm on top of the grab bar if the gap was larger. In Section 609.5 the ¼" edge for surfaces would be confusing for wall surfaces such as tile. The justification provided for grasping of a bar does not translate to edges on surfaces behind a grab bar or stanchion. In Section 609.7, it is not clear what the exception is attempting to exempt you from in the main text. **Part 4** – Section 609.9 The intent of the modification was to provide performance language instead of prescriptive language to protect connections from failing. The second modification to remove "and sealed" was to coordinate with that intent, since 'and sealed' could be read to not allow drainage holes. There were concerns that adding "structural elements" could be read to apply only to the walls or floors and not the screws in the connections. Common failure is a mis-match of metal types between the screws and the grab bars, or the rusting of the screws holding the grab bars in place. If the proposal to add stanchions is disapproved, the removal of "and stanchions" would be referred to the editorial committee. The committee agreed with the original intent of the proposal – to reduce failure of the grab bar connections over time. **Part 5** – Section 612 and 612.1 (Scope) Section 612.1 was acted on separately in order to determine the committee's desired direction on the remainder of the section. If disapproved, the proponent indicated the intent to move for disapproval of the remainder. The vote on the motion to approve 612 and 612.1 Scope was tied with the chair voting in favor of the motion to allow for complete discussion of the topic. **Part 6** – 612.1 (General) through 612.5 The proposal was disapproved. While this proposal does not include scoping, the committee was reluctant to adopt these requirements without knowing where they would be scoped due to concerns that if this applied to units that are required to meet other accessibility standards, these grab bar locations would conflict with the requirements in other standards. While specific methods of attachment of vertical stanchions are not specified, there were concerns that the attachment of the vertical stanchion to the edge of the bathtub could cause damage and/or affect the fixture's warranty. Regarding use of adhesives, it is not clear how one would document compliance with loading requirements and suitable adhesive type. 612.3 – There were concerns that the vertical stanchions at water closets would be an obstruction for persons trying to get to the water closet with a walker, cane or crutches. Swing up grab bars should also be considered as a possible option. 612.4 – There were concerns that vertical stanchion at bathtubs that comply with these location requirements could be an obstruction for persons who wanted to transfer to a bathing seat and/or parents trying to bath their children in the tub. There were concerns that with a vertical stanchion on the edge of a tub, a shower curtain would not adequately contain water and may contribute to a slip and fall hazard on a wet floor. The diagonal grab bars on the rear wall, if located with the front edge close to the wall, would place the diagonal bar close to the front of the tub. This is not consistent with the intent expressed in the examples in the reason statement. 612.5 – The requirements for the vertical grab bars and stanchions are stated in relation to the shower opening, but do not address fixtures with swinging or sliding doors.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-14 – 2021

604.3.1, 1103.11.2.4.2, 1104.11.3.1.2.2.1, Figures 604.3, 1103.11.2.4(C), 1104.11.3.1.2(D)

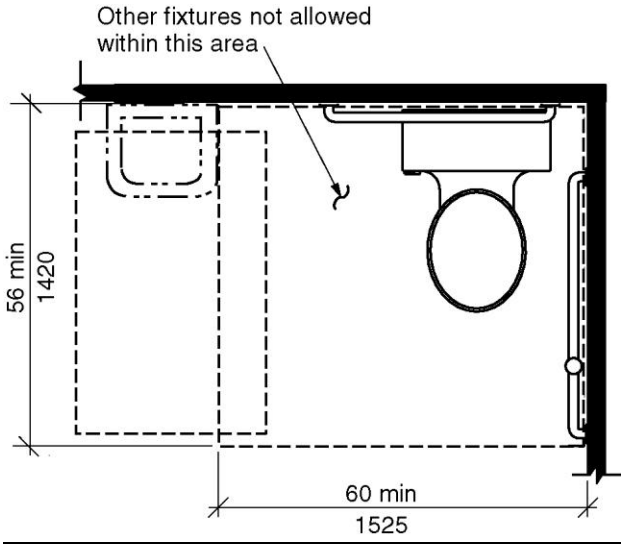
Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University at Buffalo, representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.3 Clearance.

604.3.1 Clearance width. Clearance around a water closet shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular from the sidewall. The clearance shall be measured to the face of vanity cabinets, where provided.

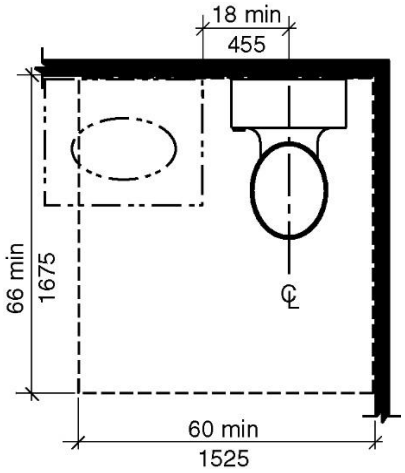


Note: Clearances shall be measured to the face of vanity cabinets, where provided.

FIGURE 604.3
SIZE OF CLEARANCE FOR WATER CLOSET

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS

1103.11.2.4.2 Clearance width. Clearance around the water closet shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular from the side wall. The clearance shall be measured to the face of vanity cabinets, where provided.

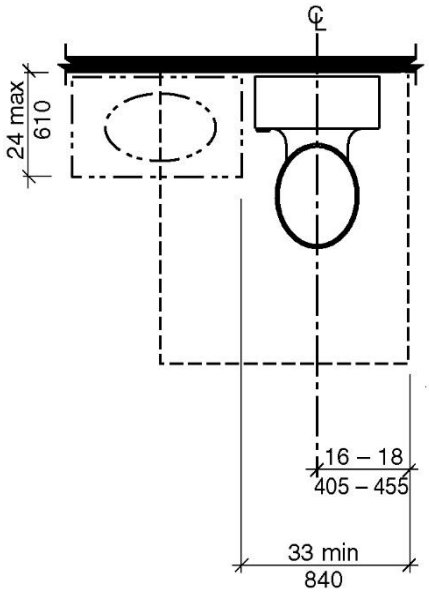


Note: Clearances shall be measured to the face of vanity cabinets, where provided.

FIGURE 1103.11.2.4(C)
WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE A UNITS - CLEARANCE WITH LAVATORY (OVERLAP EXCEPTION)

SECTION 1104
TYPE B UNITS

1104.11.3.1.2.2.1 Clearance width. Clearance around the water closet shall be 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular from the side of the clearance that is 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 18 inches (455 mm) maximum from the water closet centerline. Clearances shall be measured to the face of vanity cabinets, where provided.



Note: Clearances shall be measured to the face of vanity cabinets, where provided.

FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.2(D)

CLEARANCE AT WATER CLOSETS IN TYPE B UNITS CLEARANCE WITH LAVATORY OVERLAP

REASON: The current requirements and figures do not state clearly where the clearances should be measured at vanity cabinets. The lack of specificity leads to confusion in the field when checking compliance and citations for inconsequential differences, e.g. ¼ or ½ in. overhangs of countertops. Slight overhangs, which is a common practice makes no difference in accessibility.

Committee Action: 23-2-0 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Designers should be able to design accordingly with acceptable degree of construction tolerance taking into consideration comparable vanity size. Proposed language did not establish a maximum overhang.

604.3.1-STEINFELD.doc

Report for *06-14– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-2-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Designers should be able to design accordingly with acceptable degree of construction tolerance taking into consideration comparable vanity size. Proposed language did not establish a maximum overhang.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-15 – 2021
604.3.3

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.3 Clearance.

604.3.3 Clearance overlap. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, ~~paper dispensers, sanitary napkin receptacles, coat hooks, shelves,~~ accessible routes, clear floor space at other fixtures and the turning space. In addition, paper dispensers, trash receptacles, coat hooks, and shelves shall be permitted to overlap 4 inches (100 mm) maximum into the water closet clearance. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.

REASON: In our inspections, Accessibility Services has observed that very large paper dispensers, trash receptacles, coat hooks, and shelves often obstruct access to the water closet and also can interfere with the legs of a person seated on the water closet. We believe that if these elements are to be permitted in the clearance, a 4-inch overlap should be sufficient to accommodate them – anything more is a potential obstruction limiting access to the water closet and reducing the maneuvering space around it.

We replace the term “sanitary napkin receptacles” with “trash receptacles” so that they are not prohibited in the water closet clearance in toilet rooms for men.

Committee Action: As Modified 29-3-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):
Further modify as follows:
604.3.3 Clearance overlap. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, accessible routes, clear floor space at other fixtures and the turning space. In addition, paper dispensers, trash receptacles, coat hooks, and shelves shall be permitted to overlap ~~4~~ 6 inches (100 ~~150~~ mm) maximum into the water closet clearance. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.

Committee Reason: The modification from 4” to 6” was to allow for standard paper rolls and their dispensers – 4” would be too tight. The proposal will provide a limit on the possible obstructions caused by these elements within the clear floor space for a water closet.

604.3.3-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-15– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-3-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **604.3.3 Clearance overlap.** The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, accessible routes, clear floor space at other fixtures and the turning space. In addition, paper dispensers, trash receptacles, coat hooks, and shelves shall be permitted to overlap ~~4~~ 6 inches (100 ~~150~~ mm) maximum into the water closet clearance. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be located within the required water closet clearance.		
Committee Reason: The modification from 4” to 6” was to allow for standard paper rolls and their dispensers – 4” would be too tight. The proposal will provide a limit on the possible obstructions caused by these elements within the clear floor space for a water closet.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-16 – 2021
604.3.3

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.3 Clearance.

604.3.3 Clearance overlap. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, paper dispensers, sanitary napkin receptacles, coat hooks, open or enclosed shelves, medical and security alert devices, accessible routes, clear floor space at other fixtures and the turning space. No other fixtures or obstructions shall be within the required water closet clearance.

REASON: Two additional notations need to be included in the list.

First, there should be no difference between an open shelve and an enclosed shelf like that of a wall cabinet. This has been interpretive in the past but should be clear. The depth of such shelves is not addressed. Perhaps the committee should include some limitation of the depth of the shelf or location so that it is not an obstruction.

Second, in medical care facilities such as hospitals, nursing homes and rehabilitation centers, it is common to have a pull cord and alert device next to the water closet. These are also provided in assisted living facilities and many large retail stores. These devices, due to their nature have typically not been an issue with enforcement agencies. However, occasionally we have seen these be forced out of the clear floor space and a series of strings and pulleys be required in its place, making its use complicated and more likely to be ineffective when needed.

Committee Action: As Submitted 26-3-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): The proposal clarifies that the overlap could be cabinets or shelves. The medical devices are common in hospitals and nursing homes and need to be located close to the water closet.

Committee Reason:

604.3.3-BOECKER.doc

Report for *06-16– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	*Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-3-2*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*
REPORT OF HEARING:		

Report for *06-16– 2021*		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal clarifies that the overlap could be cabinets or shelves. The medical devices are common in hospitals and nursing homes and need to be located close to the water closet.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-18 – 2021
604.4, Figure 604.4

Proponent: Edward Steinfeld, IDEA Center, School of Architecture and Planning, University at Buffalo, State University of New York, representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.4 Height. The height of water closet seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum ~~and~~ to ~~19~~ 20 inches (~~485~~ 510 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. An accessible water closet which is adjustable in height ~~by the user is permitted~~ or which provides multiple hinged seats shall be permitted to provide adjustability within a range of 17 inches (430 mm) minimum to 25 inches (635 mm) maximum, provided that at least one adjustment setting provides a seat within the range specified in Section 604.4.
2. A water closet in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, shall not be required to comply with this section.

(Note: Revise figure 604.4 to show 17-20)

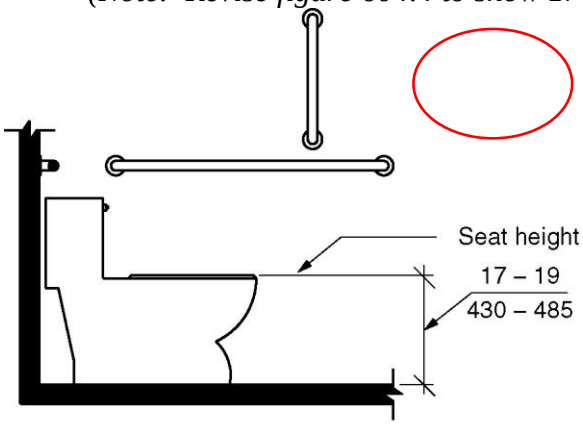


FIGURE 604.4
WATER CLOSET SEAT HEIGHT

REASON: The current standard does not reflect the findings of recent research. The existing dimensions are based on 1970's data. Since that time, new wheelchair technology, particularly the common use of cushions and other seating supports designed to reduce pressure ulcers and position people for improved social interaction and use of equipment, have led to increased seat heights. See Design Resources: Analysis of Seat Height for Wheeled Mobility Devices at http://idea.ap.buffalo.edu/wp-content/uploads/sites/110/2019/08/23.pdf The above proposed revision is consistent with this research. The findings indicate that a range of 17-25 in. (430-635 mm) will accommodate almost all of the wheeled mobility population. This exception will provide guidance to manufacturers who are developing adjustable height toilets. Without this guidance, they may not address the full range of needs in the population.

Staff Note: Question was split between Section 604.4 and Exception 2

Committee Action:
Part 1- Section 604.4 As submitted 24-2-3
Part 2 – Exception 1 Disapproval 32-0-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Replace the proposal as follows:

604.4 Height. The height of water closet seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum ~~and~~ to ~~19~~ 20 inches (~~485~~ 510 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. An accessible water closet which is adjustable in height by the user is permitted provided that at least one adjustment setting provides a seat within the range specified in Section 604.4.
2. A water closet in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, shall not be required to comply with this section.

Committee Reason: The committee split the proposal; with the change to 604.4 main paragraph approved and the change to the exception disapproved. The end result is a modified proposal that just change the maximum seat height to 20". This is appropriate as it is based on Dr. Steinfeld's research showing that the seat height for different mobility devices is higher. The specifics for the hinged seating proposed to be added in the exception was not needed as this option is already permitted in the current exception.

604.4-STEINFELD.doc

Report for *06-18– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-2-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		

Report for *06-18– 2021*		
Replace the proposal as follows: **604.4 Height.** The height of water closet seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum ~~and~~ to ~~19~~ 20 inches (~~485~~ 510 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the top of the seat. Seats shall not be sprung to return to a lifted position. **EXCEPTIONS:** 1. An accessible water closet which is adjustable in height by the user is permitted provided that at least one adjustment setting provides a seat within the range specified in Section 604.4. 2. A water closet in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, shall not be required to comply with this section.		
Committee Reason: The committee split the proposal; with the change to 604.4 main paragraph approved and the change to the exception disapproved. The end result is a modified proposal that just change the maximum seat height to 20". This is appropriate as it is based on Dr. Steinfeld's research showing that the seat height for different mobility devices is higher. The specifics for the hinged seating proposed to be added in the exception was not needed as this option is already permitted in the current exception.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-19 – 2021
604.5.2

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.5.2 Rear-wall grab bars. The fixed rear-wall grab bar shall

1. Be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length,
2. Be located 6 inches maximum (150 mm) from the side wall, and
3. Extend 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum from the side wall.

Exceptions:

1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a grab bar 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet.
2. Where ~~an administrative authority requires~~ ~~flush~~ flushing devices and controls ~~for flush valves~~ ~~to be~~ are located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, that grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.

REASON: The entire standard is under the jurisdiction of the administrative authority and it makes no sense to specify such a requirement in Exception 2. By adding "flushing devices" and striking out "flush valves" the proposed revisions clarify that Exception 2 would apply to the entire flushometer valve and flush tank, besides the controls. Proposed revisions to Exception 2 are necessary because flushometer valves have various heights because of the vacuum breakers (which are necessary for protecting the potable water supply from dirty toilet water) which can be unique per plumbing system. Furthermore, most bedpan washers in the marketplace do not fit under the rear grab bar when you factor in the height of the bedpan washer arm, vacuum breaker and location of the flush controls.

Committee Action: Approved as modified: 19-8-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Twice Modification (if any): Approved 21-9-0, Approved 17-10-2

Replace with the following:

604.5.2 Rear-wall grab bars. The fixed rear-wall grab bar shall

1. Be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length,
2. Be located 6 inches maximum (150 mm) from the side wall, and
3. Extend 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum from the side wall.

   Exceptions:

   1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a grab bar 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet.
   2. Where an administrative authority permits ~~requires~~ ~~flush~~ flushing devices and controls ~~for flush valves~~ to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, that grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.

Committee Reason: The modification to change 'requires' to 'permits' was needed because administrative authorities do not specify specific types of flushing devices. The modification to restore 'administrative authority' was to that the AHJ makes the decision on if this type of flushing device is appropriate to address plumbing requirements. The change in terminology clarifies that Exception 2 would apply to the entire flushometer valve and flush tank, besides the controls.

604.5.2-THOMPSON.doc

Report for *06-19– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 19-8-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace with the following:** **604.5.2 Rear-wall grab bars.** The fixed rear-wall grab bar shall 1. Be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length, 2. Be located 6 inches maximum (150 mm) from the side wall, and 3. Extend 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum from the side wall. **Exceptions:** 1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a grab bar 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet. 2. Where an administrative authority permits ~~requires~~ ~~flush~~ flushing devices and controls ~~for flush valves~~ to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, that grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.		
Committee Reason: The modification to change 'requires' to 'permits' was needed because administrative authorities do not specify specific types of flushing devices. The modification to restore 'administrative authority' was to that the AHJ makes the decision on if this type of flushing device is appropriate to address plumbing requirements. The change in terminology clarifies that Exception 2 would apply to the entire flushometer valve and flush tank, besides the controls.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		

Report for *06-19– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-20 – 2021
604.6

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.6 Flush controls. Flush controls shall be hand-operated or automatic. Where only hand ~~Hand~~ operated flush controls are provided, they shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated flush controls shall be located on the open side of the centerline of the water closet.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. In ambulatory accessible toilet compartments complying with Section 604.10, flush controls shall be permitted to be located on either side of the water closet.
2. Hand-operated flush controls shall be permitted to cross the centerline of the water closet, provided that the portion of the control that is located to the open side of the centerline independently complies with Section 309.4.

REASON: This proposal accomplishes two things. First, it clarifies that where automatic flush controls are provided, the override button, sometimes called a courtesy button, near not be accessible. While this seems picayune, the inspectors in at least one large city have interpreted the requirement, as written, to apply to these small buttons which typically are not accessible.

Second, the proposal clarifies that a type of control that is common for dual flush toilets is compliant if a portion of the control is located to the open side of the water closet and is operable in compliance with the force requirements of Section 309.4.

Committee Action: 24-0-1 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal allows for the types of controls that are on the top of tanks or on the wall over the water closet. This also clarifies that the automatic controls can be centered since they do not require activation by the user.

604.6-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-20– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal allows for the types of controls that are on the top of tanks or on the wall over the water closet. This also clarifies that the automatic controls can be centered since they do not require activation by the user.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		

Report for *06-20– 2021*		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-21 – 2021
604.6

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.6 Flush controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309. Flush controls shall be located on the open side of the water closet. Hand operated flush controls must be usable from a point between the centerline and the open side of the fixture. A portion of the control can be outside the range where it is usable without having to reach beyond the water closet centerline from the open side.

Exception: In ambulatory accessible toilet compartments complying with Section 604.10, flush controls shall be permitted to be located on either side of the water closet.

REASON: Are flush controls located on valves, walls, or tanks that are centered on the fixture compliant (i.e., on the open side)?

Manual flush controls, including push buttons, must be usable from a point between the centerline and the open side of the fixture. A portion of the control can be outside the range if it is usable without having to reach beyond the water closet centerline from the open side. To see the interpretation, go to: Chapter 6: Toilet Rooms (access-board.gov)

Committee Action: 23-2-1 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the committee preferred the resolution for center controls on water closets provided in 06-20-2021.

604.6-THOMPSON.doc

Report for *06-21–2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-2-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the committee preferred the resolution for center controls on water closets provided in 06-20-2021.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for *06-21–2021*		
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-22 – 2021
604.9.1

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.9 Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.

604.9.1 General. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604.9.
Exception: Toilet compartments shall be permitted to comply with Section 603.

REASON: The primary reason for the toilet compartment dimensions is because turning requires a toe clearance that extends under the partitions. Even with an expanded compartment a true turning space is not provided. However, if a true turning space is provided, the compartment is large enough to be considered a room. In such a case the option of an in-swinging door complying with Section 603.2.2 should be allowed, regardless of the number of fixtures within the compartment.

Committee Action: 23-1-4 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This reference is already in Section 604.1. Adding it here under compartments would be confusing.

604.9.1-BOECKER.doc

Report for 0*6-22– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-1-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This reference is already in Section 604.1. Adding it here under compartments would be confusing.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for 0*6-22– 2021*
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any): Committee Reason:

06-23 – 2021
604.9.3, Figures 604.9.2.3, 604.9.3(B)

Proponent: Gina Hilberry, Cohen Hilberry Architects, representing United Cerebral Palsy

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.9 Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.

604.9.2.3 Alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartments. Where an alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartment is provided, the minimum area of the compartment shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width, measured perpendicular to the side wall, and 84 inches (2135) minimum in depth, measured perpendicular to the rear wall.

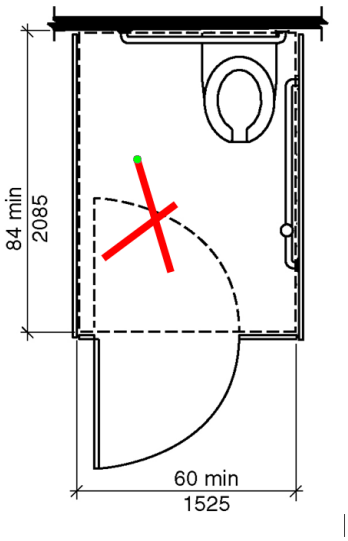


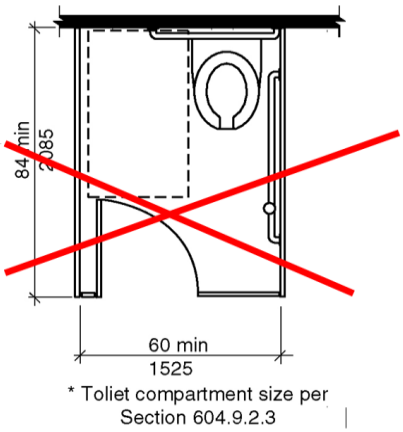
Figure 604.9.2.3
WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENTS
ALTERNATE WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT

604.9.3 Doors. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 404**.** The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment.

Exceptions:

1. Outside of the compartment, where the approach is to the latch side of the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, door clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum.

2. Within the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, maneuvering clearances at the door shall not be required to comply with Section 404.
3. In an alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, the door shall be permitted to swing into the ~~stall~~ compartment where the minimum depth of the stall is 90 inches (2286 mm) ~~a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the stall beyond the arc of the door swing~~.



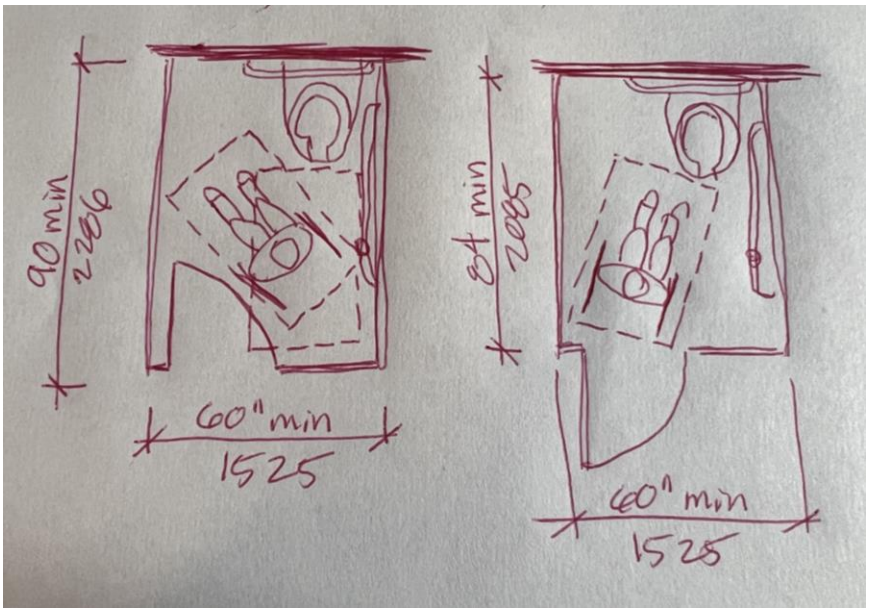


Figure 604.9.3(B)
Wheelchair Toilet Compartment Doors
Exception 3 – Alternate Wheelchair Compartment

REASON: The intent of the alternate wheelchair toilet compartment is to allow for use of the toilet with a forward transfer while maintaining the ability to close door for privacy. For this to work, the person must be able to position themselves directly in front of the toilet without

obstructing the door swing. In a standard wheelchair compartment, it is impossible to close the door with a wheelchair extending straight out from the toilet.

Forward approach to the toilet fixture is used frequently by people who cannot complete a side transfer due to physical needs or due to equipment limitations. While not the most common transfer method, it is common for people with cerebral palsy. UCP was the original proponent for this compartment design and this revision clarifies the technical issues incorporated into the design during the end of the 2017 review process.

This change is about ease of use and maneuvering. An alcove requires a 60 length. The space in front of the water closet would be considered confined on three sides. The current depth would allow for an angles front approach with the door swinging out but would be tight for directly in front (29" toilet + 52"clear floor space = 81"). The 84" depth is 5" short of the alcove, but the door swinging out should allow access. If the door swings in, in order to get past the swing of the door, and allow for the alcove length, the depth of the stall would be 90 inches (29" toilet + 60" alcove = 79"). Most water closets are 22" to 29" deep.

Scoping for this alternate wheelchair toilet compartment is submitted separately.

Committee Action: 22-4-1 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further modify as follows (editorial):

604.9.3 Doors. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 404**.** The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment.

Exceptions:

1. Outside of the compartment, where the approach is to the latch side of the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, door clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum.
2. Within the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, maneuvering clearances at the door shall not be required to comply with Section 404.
3. In an alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, the door shall be permitted to swing into the ~~stall~~ compartment where the minimum depth of the stall is 90 inches (2286 mm).

Committee Reason: There was an editorial modification to change 'stall' to 'compartment' for consistency with the terminology for water closet compartments. The modification will allow for the person to using the wheelchair to get in front of the water closet for a front transfer without interference from the compartment door.

604.9.2.3 fig-HILBERRY.doc

Report for *06-23– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 22-4-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING:		

Report for *06-23– 2021*		
Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows (editorial):** **604.9.3 Doors.** Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 404**.** The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment. **Exceptions**: 1. Outside of the compartment, where the approach is to the latch side of the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, door clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. 2. Within the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, maneuvering clearances at the door shall not be required to comply with Section 404. 3. In an alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, the door shall be permitted to swing into the ~~stall~~ compartment where the minimum depth of the stall is 90 inches (2286 mm).		
Committee Reason: There was an editorial modification to change 'stall' to 'compartment' for consistency with the terminology for water closet compartments. The modification will allow for the person to using the wheelchair to get in front of the water closet for a front transfer without interference from the compartment door.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-24 – 2021
604.9.3

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.9 Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.

604.9.3 Doors. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors, including door hardware, shall comply with Section 404**.** The door shall be self-closing. A door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Wheelchair accessible toilet compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment.

Exceptions:
1. Outside of the compartment, where the approach is to the latch side of the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, door clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction shall be 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum.
2. Within the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment, maneuvering clearances at the door shall not be required to comply with Section 404.
3. In an alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartment complying with Section 604.9.2.3, a door located in the front wall or partition ~~the door~~ shall be permitted to swing into the stall where a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the stall beyond the arc of the door swing.

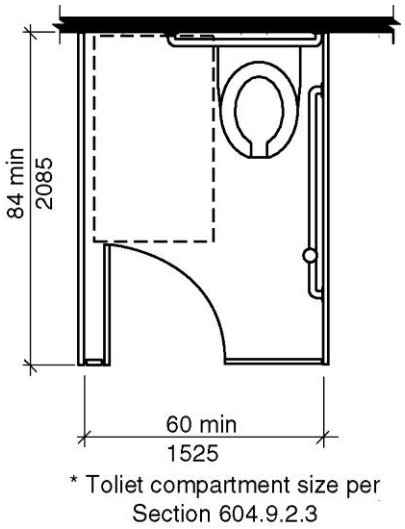


FIGURE 604.9.3(B)

WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT DOORS
EXCEPTION 3 – ALTERNATE WHEELCHAIR TOILET COMPARTMENT

REASON: When the "alternate" compartment requirements were added into the 2017 the original intent of the proponent was to allow for a larger size compartment that might allow the mobility-device user to do a forward approach to the water closet while being able to close the compartment door for privacy. The standard compartment is set up only for a transfer from the side. As a part of the committee's revisions they looked at the prohibition of doors swinging into the minimum-sized compartment. Because of the larger depth in front of the water closet, the availability of a clear floor space beside the fixture, and the increased space for maneuvering within the compartment, the committee added what is shown as the existing Exception 3.

This proposal ties and limits the third exception directly to the alternate compartment provisions of Section 604.9.2.3 and ensures that the door is located to allow a user to move straight into the stall. Without a limitation for the door to be located in the front wall (as was the original intent), Section 604.9.3.1 could be used to allow a side wall door. Again the original proponent and the committee were expecting the door for the "alternate" compartment to be located as shown in Figure 604.9.3(B) and to allow the user to move directly into the compartment and to allow a forward approach to the water closet.

By specifically referencing Section 604.9.2.3, the exception will clearly indicate when it is permitted to be used. This will ensure the exception is limited to the compartment configuration that was intended and that it is not used for other "alternate" (atypical) designs such as what is shown in Figure 604.9.3(A). Because a code user may select and use any of the exceptions, it is important that Exception 3 be limited to the specific alternate configuration which was intended and not be applied to other configurations which were not discussed and may not adequately address maneuvering within the compartment.

Without the added text of this proposal, there is nothing that specifically addresses the compartment size or configuration and therefore the exception could be viewed as having broader application, or other configurations such as a side wall door could be used for the alternate compartment, even though that was never proposed, discussed or anticipated.

Committee Action: 18-8-0 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal ties and limits the third exception directly to the alternate compartment provisions of Section 604.9.2.3 and ensures that the door is located to allow a user to move straight into the stall.

604.9.3-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-24– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 18-8-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal ties and limits the third exception directly to the alternate compartment provisions of Section 604.9.2.3 and ensures that the door is located to allow a user to move straight into the stall.		

Report for *06-24– 2021*		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-26-2021
604.9.5.1

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.9 Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.

604.9.5 Toe clearance. Toe clearance for wheelchair accessible toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 604.9.5.2. Toe clearance for other wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604.9.5.1.

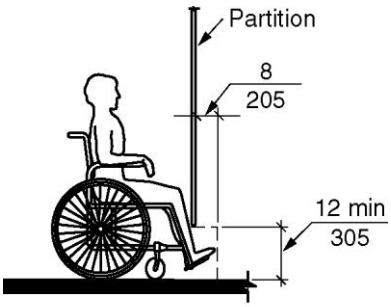


FIGURE 604.9.5(A)
TOE CLEARANCE - ELEVATION

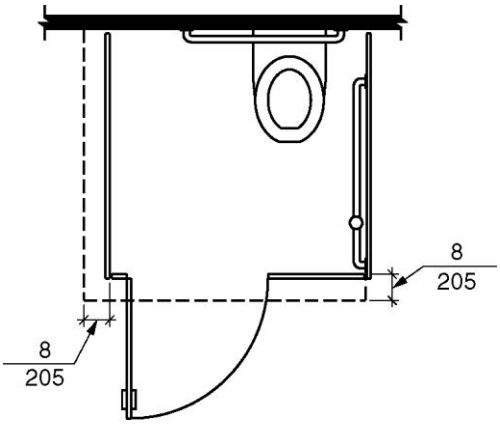


FIGURE 604.9.5(B)
TOE CLEARANCE – PLAN

604.9.5.1 Toe clearance at wheelchair accessible toilet compartments and alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartments. The front partition and at least one side partition of wheelchair accessible toilet compartments and alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the floor and extending 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the compartment side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members.

Exceptions:

1. Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment or alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartments greater than 64 inches (1625 mm) in depth with a wall-hung water closet, or greater than 67 inches (1700 mm) in depth with a floor-mounted water closet.
2. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment or alternate wheelchair accessible toilet compartments greater than 68 inches (1725 mm) in width.

REASON: The purpose of this proposal is to clarify the partition requirements for the new alternate stall since the toe clearance is required. This would cover the stall with the door swinging in in Section 604.9.3(B).

Committee Action: 23-2-4 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal clarifies the partition requirements for the new alternate stall since the toe clearance is required.

604.9.5.1-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-26– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-2-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal clarifies the partition requirements for the new alternate stall since the toe clearance is required.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-27 – 2021
604.9.5.1, 604.9.5.2

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.9 Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.

604.9.5 Toe clearance. Toe clearance for wheelchair accessible toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 604.9.5.2. Toe clearance for other wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall comply with Section 604.9.5.1.

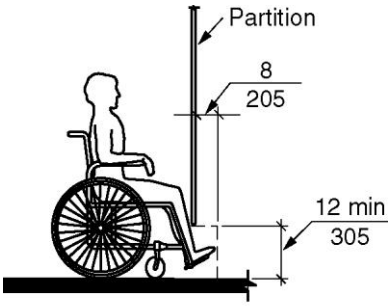


FIGURE 604.9.5(A)
TOE CLEARANCE - ELEVATION

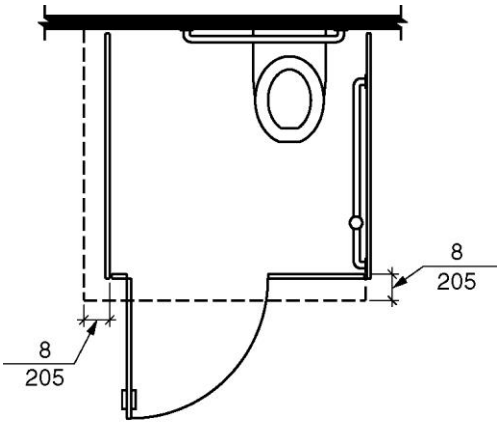


FIGURE 604.9.5(B)
TOE CLEARANCE – PLAN

604.9.5.1 Toe clearance at wheelchair accessible toilet compartments
The front partition and at least one side partition of wheelchair accessible toilet compartments shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the floor and extending 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the compartment side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members.

Exceptions:

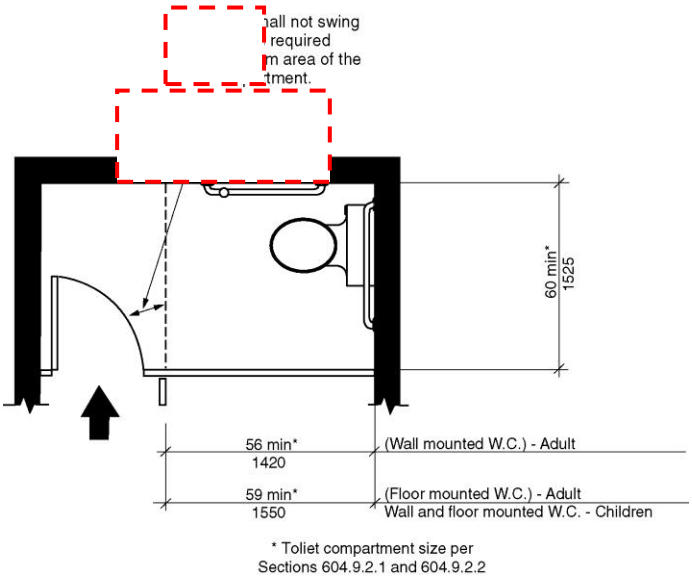
1. Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment greater than 64 inches (1625 mm) in depth with a wall-hung water closet, or greater than 67 inches (1700 mm) in depth with a floor-mounted water closet.
2. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment greater than 68 inches (1725 mm) in width.
3. Toe clearance is not required in a wheelchair accessible compartment that includes a turning space complying with Section 304.

604.9.5.2 Toe clearance at wheelchair accessible toilet compartments for children's use.
The front partition and at least one side partition of wheelchair accessible toilet compartments primarily for children's use shall provide a toe clearance of 12 inches (305 mm) minimum above the floor and extending 8 inches (205 mm) beyond the wheelchair accessible toilet compartment side face of the partition, exclusive of partition support members.

Exceptions:

1. Toe clearance at the front partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment greater than 67 inches (1700 mm) in depth.
2. Toe clearance at the side partition is not required in a wheelchair accessible toilet compartment greater than 68 inches (1725 mm) in width.
3. Toe clearance is not required in a wheelchair accessible compartment that includes a turning space complying with Section 304.

REASON: Where a turning space is located within the wheelchair toilet compartment, the need for the toe clearances at the front and one side privacy partition is not warranted. This proposal will be conducive for the popular "end-stall" configuration where the privacy partition extends down to the floor, which are becoming more popular especially with the advent of "universal' multi-user restroom which may be used by all persons regardless of sex, gender or affiliations.



Committee Action: 20-4-4 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee felt that where a turning space was provided within a compartment, that the additional width or length required in Exception 1 and 2 were not needed. This will increase design options.

604.9.5.1-2-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*6-27– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 20-4-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee felt that where a turning space was provided within a compartment, that the additional width or length required in Exception 1 and 2 were not needed. This will increase design options.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-28 – 2021
604.9.7 (New)

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.9 Wheelchair accessible toilet compartments.

604.9.7 Identification. The wheelchair accessible compartment shall be identified with the International Symbol for Accessibility complying with Section 703.6.3.1.

REASON: In a typical toilet room, the accessible compartment was usually identified by the wide door and extra wide blank panel next to it. However, recent design changes with full height panels or walls with standard doors and lever set hardware have created the condition where it is a game of hide and seek to find behind which door is the large compartment with grab bars. The trend toward gender neutral toilet rooms has led to designs with common lavatory areas and toilet compartments which are enclosed by walls and doors.

This is a similar provision to that for checkout aisles. Where not all the accessible, something needs to be done to identify the accessible element without trying to open all the doors.

Notes 9-22-2022: Committee discussed if the compartments should be identified. Moved to end of Chapter 6 or until the Communications task group has a symbol suggestion, whichever comes first.

Committee Action: Disapprove 25-2-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee was split on if this is designating a room or space, so it was not clear if this would have to meet all the signage requirements including raised, braille and placement next to the compartment door. Putting this identification on the compartment could be read to be wheelchairs only, like parking. There are no clear requirements for size or location. Is this really a problem? The wheelchair stall is already easily identifiable by the wider door.

604.9-BOECKER.doc

Report for 0*6-28– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-2-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: The committee was split on if this is designating a room or space, so it was not clear if this would have to meet all the		

Report for 0*6-28– 2021*		
signage requirements including raised, braille and placement next to the compartment door. Putting this identification on the compartment could be read to be wheelchairs only, like parking. There are no clear requirements for size or location. Is this really a problem? The wheelchair stall is already easily identifiable by the wider door. Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent: Desired Action: Modification: Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent: Desired Action: Modification: Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		

06-29 – 2021
604.10.5(New), 604.10.6(New)

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

604.10 Ambulatory accessible toilet compartments.

Add new text as follows:

604.10.5. Height. The height of water closet seats shall comply with Section 604.4.

604.10.6 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall comply with Section 604.7.

REASON: The height of the seat in the ambulatory compartment is interpreted as being the same as that for the wheelchair accessible compartment since the provisions are all in Section 604. The same is true for the toilet paper dispenser. The reasons for their placement is the specific locations is applicable to individuals needing both types of fixtures. However, because the wheelchair accessible compartment is deemed "accessible" the ambulatory compartment often does not get the same recognition. We frequently see these two elements improperly installed. If a little more ink will make it clear that the intent is the same for the ambulatory compartment as the wheelchair compartment, it will be a big help to proper installations.

Committee Action: 17-6-4 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The additional sections will provide references for items that are commonly missed for ambulatory compartments. However, there was a request to make this a complete list for ambulatory compartment requirements.

604.10-BOECKER.doc

Report for *06-29– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 17-6-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The additional sections will provide references for items that are commonly missed for ambulatory compartments. However, there was a request to make this a complete list for ambulatory compartment requirements.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for *06-29– 2021*		
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-30 – 2021
604.10.5(New), 703.6.3.5(New), Figure 703.6.3.5(New)

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

Add new text as follows:

604.10 Ambulatory accessible toilet compartments.

604.10.5 Identification. The ambulatory stall shall be identified with the United Nations Symbol for Elderly complying with Section 703.6.3.5.

703.6 Symbols of accessibility.

703.6.3.5 Symbol for the elderly. The ambulatory stall shall be identified by the United Nations Symbol for the Elderly complying with Figure 703.6.3.5

FIGURE 703.6.3.5
UNITED NATIONS SYMBOL FOR THE ELDERLY

REASON: In a typical toilet room, the ambulatory compartment was usually identified by the wide out-swinging door and loop handle. However, recent design changes with full height panels or walls with standard doors and lever set hardware have created the condition where it is a game of hide and seek to find behind which door is the ambulatory compartment. The trend toward gender neutral toilet rooms has led to designs with common lavatory areas and toilet compartments which are enclosed by walls and doors.

This is a similar provision to that for checkout aisles. Where not all the accessible, something needs to be done to identify the accessible element without trying to open all the doors.

A new symbol is being proposed for inclusion as a result of the need to identify the ambulatory compartment. This symbol is the recommended symbol for "elderly" according to the United Nations Office for the Coordination of Humanitarian Affairs (UNOCHA). After a search of multiple symbols for this use, the most easily recognizable one was this symbol.

Additional information can be found at https://thenounproject.com/ochavisual/collection/ocha-humanitarian-icons-v02/

Notes 9-22-2022: Committee discussed if the compartments should be identified. Moved to end of Chapter 6 or until the Communications task group has a symbol suggestion, whichever comes first.

Committee Action: Disapprove 20-2-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee felt the choice of symbol was not appropriate, and there was no agreement for any other alternatives shown during the discussion. There were also the same concerns for this being a space designation and having to comply with the signage requirements or raised, braille and placement. This compartment also has a door wider than typical compartments and swings out instead of in, so you should be able to identify this compartment without signage.

604.10.5-BOECKER.doc

Report for 06-30– 2021		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 20-2-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee felt the choice of symbol was not appropriate, and there was no agreement for any other alternatives shown during the discussion. There were also the same concerns for this being a space designation and having to comply with the signage requirements or raised, braille and placement. This compartment also has a door wider than typical compartments and swings out instead of in, so you should be able to identify this compartment without signage.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-31 – 2021
604.10.5(New)

Proponent: Sharon Toji, Access Communications

SECTION 604
WATER CLOSETS AND TOILET COMPARTMENTS

Add new text as follows:

604.10 Ambulatory accessible toilet compartments.

604.10.5 Signs. Ambulatory accessible toilet compartment shall be identified with a visual sign stating "Ambulatory Stall". Where a toilet room does not contain an accessible stall, but does include an ambulatory stall, a visual sign shall be located on or adjacent to the toilet room door stating "Ambulatory stall inside."

REASON: People who need ambulatory stalls often have difficulty walking, but if an interior restroom or an unattached restroom building on a large campus cannot be made fully accessible but can have a stall remodeled to conform to standards for ambulatory use, there are not only no markings to inform those who need the stall that it is available, but they may see a sign outside stating the restroom is not accessible, and be directed a significant distance away to another restroom. Although an ambulatory accessible compartment is outwardly slightly distinctive in that it is more narrow than a regular inaccessible stall, nevertheless in a large restroom it may not stand out enough to be identified by someone who needs it. A visual sign on the door would solve that problem with a very small expense.

We have developed a pictogram for an ambulatory accessible compartment (see Fig. A) which would provide additional assistance, but at a minimum, visual text would be helpful.

Fig. A - Ambulatory Pictogram

Notes 9-22-2022: Committee discussed if the compartments should be identified. Moved to end of Chapter 6 or until the Communications task group has a symbol suggestion, whichever comes first.

Committee Action: WITHDRAWN BY PROPONENT

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

604.10.5-TOJI.doc

Report for 0*6-31– 2021*		
Committee decision: Withdrawn	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-32 – 2021
605.3

Proponent: Richard Williams, CWA Consultants representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 605
URINALS

605.3 Clear Floor Space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for forward approach, shall be provided. Where the depth of the forward approach to the urinal exceeds 24 inches (610 mm), the width of the clear floor space shall be a minimum 36 inches (914 mm) and shall comply with Section 305.7.2.

REASON: The proposed change to Section 605.3 is an attempt to clarify the requirement for additional clear floor space with for urinals when the depth of surrounding walls or partitions exceeds 24". This proposal does not change the requirement but as is currently written, we find this increased width requirement is often overlooked by designers. Adding the reference to Section 305.7.2 will help to clarify this requirement.

Committee Action: 14-10-2 As Submitted

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: While the committee felt that it is important to remind designers that a urinal might be in an alcove and then the approach would be wider, the text should not repeat the requirements in the alcove building block in Section 305.7.2. Public comments are expected to address this.

605.3_Williams.doc

Report for *06-32– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 14-10-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: While the committee felt that it is important to remind designers that a urinal might be in an alcove and then the approach would be wider, the text should not repeat the requirements in the alcove building block in Section 305.7.2. Public comments are expected to address this.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		

Report for *06-32– 2021*		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-33 – 2021
605.5(New), 605.5.1(New), 605.5.2(New), 605.5.3(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 605
URINALS

605.5 Urinal compartments. Urinal compartments, where provided shall comply with Section 605.5.

605.5.1 Size. The minimum area of a urinal compartment shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in depth and a width of 35 inches (890 mm) minimum and 37 inches (940 mm) maximum.

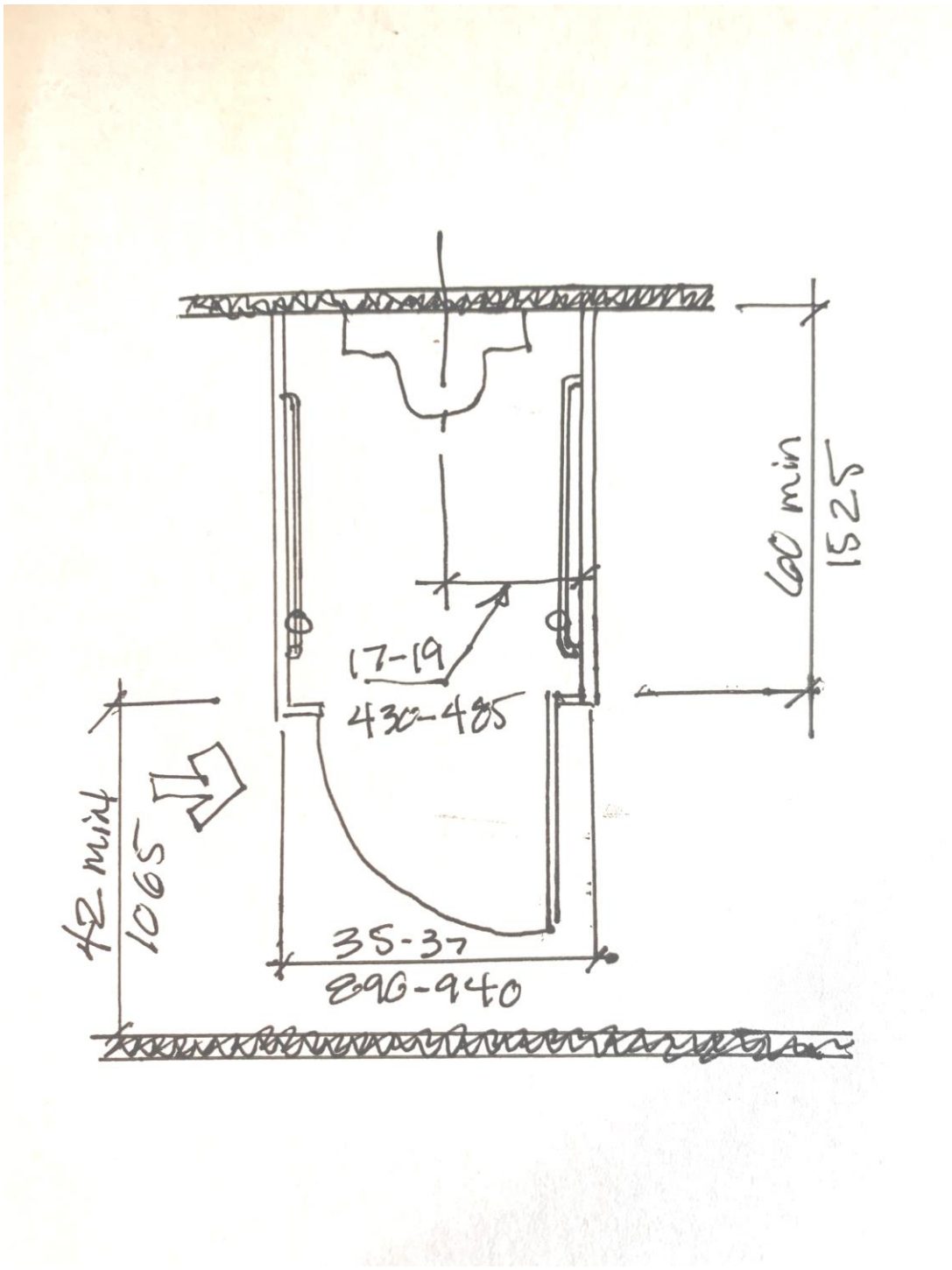
605.5.2 Doors. Doors for urinal compartments shall comply with Sections 404.2.2, 404.2.3.2, 404.2.4 and 404.2.9. The door shall be self-closing with a balanced door or spring hinges. Door hardware shall comply with Section 404.2.6. In addition a door pull complying with Section 404.2.6 shall be placed on both sides of the door near the latch. Compartment doors shall not swing into the required minimum area of the compartment.

Exceptions:

1. Outside of the urinal compartment, the door shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.3.2 where the approach is to the latch side of the compartment door, clearance between the door side of the compartment and any obstruction is 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum. Hinge and latch side of the doors are permitted to be oriented so that the door opens in the direction of the approach.
2. Within the ambulatory accessible toilet compartment, maneuvering clearances at the door shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.3.2.

605.5.3 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609. Horizontal side wall grab bars complying with Section 604.5.1.1 shall be provided on both sides of the compartment.

REASON: The 2021 IPC and IBC allows gender neutral multi-stall toilet rooms. For privacy, this may result in the required accessible urinal being located in a compartment. It is my understanding that persons choosing to use the urinal instead of transferring to the water closet will have some weight bearing ability, therefore, this proposal is based on an ambulatory stall requirement.



2021 IPC

SECTION 403
MINIMUM PLUMBING FACILITIES

403.1.1 Fixture calculations. To determine the occupant load of each sex, the total occupant load shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the occupant load of each sex in accordance with Table 403.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios of Table 403.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving multiple occupancies, such fractional numbers for each occupancy shall first be summed and then rounded up to the next whole number.

Exception**s:**

1. The total occupant load shall not be required to be divided in half where *approved* statistical data indicate a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.
2. Where multiple-user facilities are designed to serve all genders, the minimum fixture count shall be calculated 100 percent, based on total occupant load. In such multiple-user facilities, each fixture type shall be in accordance with ICC A117.1 and each urinal that is provided shall be located in a stall.
3. Distribution of the sexes is not required where single-user water closets and bathing room fixtures are provided in accordance with Section 403.1.2.

403.2 Separate facilities. Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be provided for each sex.

Exceptions:

1. Separate facilities shall not be required for dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. Separate facilities shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 15 or fewer.
3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile occupancies in which the maximum occupant load is 100 or fewer.
4. Separate facilities shall not be required in business *occupancies* in which the maximum occupant load is 25 or fewer.
5. Separate facilities shall not be required to be designated by sex where single-user toilet rooms are provided in accordance with Section 403.1.2.
6. Separate facilities shall not be required where rooms having both water closets and lavatory fixtures are designed for use by both sexes and privacy for water closets is provided in accordance with Section 405.3.4. Urinals shall be located in an area visually separated from the remainder of the facility or each urinal that is provided shall be located in a stall.

Committee Action: 19-2-3 Disapproved

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee felt that additional information on the use of urinals by persons with disabilities is needed to determine if an ambulatory type compartment or a wheelchair accessible type compartment is needed. With the more common design of multi-gender toilet room this is a gap in the current standard.

605 NEW-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-33– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 19-2-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee felt that additional information on the use of urinals by persons with disabilities is needed to determine if an ambulatory type compartment or a wheelchair accessible type compartment is needed. With the more common design of multi-gender toilet		

Report for *06-33– 2021*		
room this is a gap in the current standard.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-34 – 2021
605.3, 605.4

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 605
URINALS

605.3 Clear floor space. A clear floor space positioned for forward approach shall be provided measured from front, exterior the rim of the urinal.

605.4 Flush controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309.

Exception: The clear floor space shall not be required to extend under the urinal for the purposes of Section 308.2 where the controls have a high reach of 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum.

REASON: These two proposals seek to address commonly understood but not written ways that the provisions are interpreted. First, due to the height and configuration of the urinal, a clear floor space cannot be provided under the urinal so the measurement must begin at the front rim of the fixtures. However, this creates a problem for proper application of the flush control section. Now that we clearly state in 308.2.2 that the "knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall extend beneath the element for a distance not less than the required reach depth over the obstruction" the text effectively prohibits a flush control that does not project at least as far from the wall as the rim of the urinal. This type of configuration has never been applied and would interfere with the effective use of the urinal.

The exception recognizes the fact that the reach must by necessity be further than the obstruction and reinserts the 44-inch height that was in earlier editions of the A117.1 and ADAAG. It is also consistent with the height noted in the California Building Code's amended text for urinal flush control height. Together, these two provisions put in writing the manner in which these provisions have been interpreted.

06-34 – 2021 modification
605.3, 605.4

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 605
URINALS

605.3 Clear floor space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 positioned for forward approach shall be provided measured from the front, exterior the rim of the urinal.

605.4 Flush controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309.

Exception: The clear floor space shall not be required to extend under the urinal for the purposes of Section 308.2 where the controls have a high reach of 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum.

Reason:
There are two modifications. The first is to make it clear that the clear floor space must comply with all the provisions of Section 305, including any alcove conditions. By referring to Section 305, not only the floor space dimensions but all parts of 305 come into play. This is often considered intuitive, but the added language will make it clear to the novice standard user. The second modification is essentially editorial.

Committee Action: AM 26-3-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further modify as follows:

SECTION 605
URINALS

605.3 Clear floor space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 positioned for forward approach shall be provided measured from the front, exterior ~~the~~ of the urinal rim ~~of the urinal~~.

605.4 Flush controls. Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309.

Exception: The clear floor space shall not be required to extend under the urinal for the purposes of Section 308.2 where the controls have a high reach of 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum.

Committee Reason: The modification to add a reference to Section 305 in Section 605.3 emphasizes that a urinal may be in an alcove due to walls, partitions or privacy screens. Thus the space between the partitions may need to be 36" instead of 30". The proposal provides direction for where to measure the clear floor space at the urinal. It needs to be in front of the urinal, since the person stands to use the urinal. Section 605.4 would require the clear floor space under the urinal for access to controls. Per the exception, assuming the clear floor space is now in front of the urinal, the access to the controls could meet the criteria for obstructed forward reach.

605.3_605.4-BOECKER.doc

Report for *06-34– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-3-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **SECTION 605** **URINALS** **605.3 Clear floor space**. A clear floor space complying with Section 305 positioned for forward approach shall be provided measured from the front, exterior ~~the~~ of the urinal rim ~~of the urinal~~. **605.4 Flush controls.** Flush controls shall be hand operated or automatic. Hand operated flush controls shall comply with Section 309. **Exception**: The clear floor space shall not be required to extend under the urinal for the purposes of Section 308.2 where the controls have a high reach of 44 inches (1120 mm) maximum.		
Committee Reason: The modification to add a reference to Section 305 in Section 605.3 emphasizes that a urinal may be in an alcove due to walls, partitions or privacy screens. Thus the space between the partitions may need to be 36" instead of 30". The proposal provides direction for where to measure the clear floor space at the urinal. It needs to be in front of the urinal, since the person stands to use the urinal. Section 605.4 would require the clear floor space under the urinal for access to controls. Per the exception, assuming the clear floor space is now in front of the urinal, the access to the controls could meet the criteria for obstructed forward reach.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-35 – 2021
606.2

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 606
LAVATORIES AND SINKS

606.2 Clear floor space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for forward approach, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.

Exceptions:

1. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided.
2. For other than sinks in kitchens, where a sink requires a deep basin to perform its intended purpose or requires a specialized drain that cannot be located outside of the knee space, a parallel approach shall be permitted to be located adjacent to the sink.

~~2~~.3 The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to a lavatory in a toilet or bathing facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use.

~~3~~.4 A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 6 through 12 where the higher of the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the floor.

~~4~~.5 A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 5 and younger.

~~5~~.6 The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multibowl sink.

~~6~~ 7. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at wet bars.

REASON: This was proposed to the I-codes in E143-21. An added exception is provided that allows a parallel approach to the sink where the sink must be of a kind that a forward approach is not possible. This happens at medical scrub sinks, art sinks, laboratory sinks and similar sinks where caustic or extremely hot liquids may be poured and the sink is of a depth to minimize the potential that these dangerous liquids could splash out and adversely affect the surrounding materials or people. In certain instances, the drain configuration itself, in order to provide this protection, is designed such that adequate knee space is not possible for a forward approach. In these cases, although access is not possible for a forward approach, a parallel approach would still be acceptable, in order to limit the hazard to an individual using a mobility device and yet afford access. In work environments, this can be addressed through reasonable accommodations. However, teaching facilities such as high school art rooms, college labs, teaching hospitals and

similar facilities require accessibility since the student station is not an employee workstation. This addresses the issue directly without the need to seek a waiver or code modification. Access to the faucet and any other controls would still be required and would still need to be addressed in the design. It provided access but recognizes that different types of sinks may require different solutions for that access.

Committee Action: AS 28-0-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal provides clarification for sinks that need a deep bowl and may or may not be considered a 'service sink' (which are exempted). The sink will be able to used as intended and a person would have side approach for access. This is a reasonable compromise.

606.2-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-35– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal provides clarification for sinks that need a deep bowl and may or may not be considered a 'service sink' (which are exempted). The sink will be able to used as intended and a person would have side approach for access. This is a reasonable compromise.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		

Report for *06-35– 2021*		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-36 – 2021
606.2

Proponent: Richard Williams, CWA Consultants representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 606
LAVATORIES AND SINKS

606.2 Clear floor space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for forward approach, shall be provided. Cabinetry or doors that open and retract into surrounding cabinetry are not permitted. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.

Exceptions:

1. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided.
2. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to a lavatory in a toilet or bathing facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use.
3. A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 6 through 12 where the higher of the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the floor.
4. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 5 and younger.
5. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multibowl sink.
6. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at wet bars.
7. Cabinetry that can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory is permitted in Type A and Type B units and shall comply with Sections 1103 and 1104 respectively.

REASON: This is the first of two proposals recommending a change to Section 606.2. This clarifies the requirement for forward approach under lavatories and sinks to be clear and unobstructed. We also added an exception to clarify that cabinetry that can be removed is permitted in Type A and Type B units.

At least a couple of occasions per year we will receive plans where the designer proposes cabinets under a lavatory or sink where forward approach is required (for example, in kitchens with cooking appliances in common use areas). It is our opinion that this is not permitted per A117.1 since Section 305.6 requires the following: One full, unobstructed side of a clear floor space shall adjoin or overlap an accessible route or adjoin another clear floor space.

The addition of cabinet doors, even if they can be opened and then pushed into the cabinet to provide the required clear width, would require an additional step for someone who needs forward approach to a sink or lavatory, and we do not feel this is in keeping with the requirements of 305.6.

Committee Action: D 31-0-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved because the committee preferred the options in Proposal 06-37-2021.

606.2-1_Williams.doc

Report for *06-36– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 31-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved because the committee preferred the options in Proposal 06-37-2021.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent: Desired Action: Modification: Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent: Desired Action: Modification: Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any): Committee Reason:		

06-37 – 2021
606.2

Proponent: Richard Williams, CWA Consultants representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 606
LAVATORIES AND SINKS

606.2 Clear floor space. A clear floor space complying with Section 305.3, positioned for forward approach, shall be provided. Knee and toe clearance complying with Section 306 shall be provided. The dip of the overflow shall not be considered in determining knee and toe clearances.

Exceptions:

1. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at a kitchen sink in a space where a cook top or conventional range is not provided.
2. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to a lavatory in a toilet or bathing facility for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use.
3. A knee clearance of 24 inches (610 mm) minimum above the floor shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 6 through 12 where the higher of the rim or counter surface is 31 inches (785 mm) maximum above the floor.
4. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at lavatories and sinks used primarily by children ages 5 and younger.
5. The requirement for knee and toe clearance shall not apply to more than one bowl of a multibowl sink.
6. A clear floor space providing a parallel approach shall be permitted at wet bars.
7. Doors that open and retract into surrounding cabinetry are permitted, provided all requirements are met for clear floor space and knee and toe clearance.
8. Cabinetry that can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory is permitted in Type A and Type B units and shall comply with Sections 1103 and 1104 respectively.

REASON: This is the second of two proposals recommending a change to Section 606.2. Our first proposal seeks to clarify that an open space under a lavatory or sink (no cabinets or cabinet doors) is to be provided when forward approach is required. In other words, cabinetry or doors that open and retract into surrounding cabinetry are NOT permitted. This proposal adds language that ALLOWS for cabinet doors that can be pushed into the cabinet to provide the required forward approach. We also added an exception to clarify that cabinetry that can be removed is permitted in Type A and Type B units.

We are submitting two contradictory proposals in the hopes that the committee will clarify which of these two approaches are actually recognized by the ADA community. We would find either approach acceptable, but we feel that the important part is to specify the correct interpretation, and the best way to do this is by modification of Section 606.2.

Committee Action: AM 28-1-4
Notes:
Mod submitted by proponent was original motion for AM – "Within dwelling units" and "where doors are full retracted" added to Exception 7
Mod to delete Exception 8 – 27-1-4
Mod to add "and sleeping units" to Exception 7 - 31-0-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise as follows:

606.2 Clear floor space. ...

7. Within dwelling units and sleeping units, Doors that open and retract into surrounding cabinetry are permitted, provided all requirements are met for clear floor space and knee and toe clearance where doors are fully retracted.
8. ~~Cabinetry that can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory is permitted in Type A and Type B units and shall comply with Sections 1103 and 1104 respectively.~~

Committee Reason: The modification to delete Exception 8 was because the exceptions specific to Type A and Type B dwelling units are in Section 1103 and 1104, so this is redundant and not needed. In addition, the reference is too broad and the terminology is not the same as in 1103.11.2.2, 1103.12.3.1, 1104.11.3.1.1 and 1104.12.2.1, do this could be confusing.

The modification to Exception 7 was to limit the option for retractable cabinet fronts to dwelling units where the people would be familiar with and have control of the space. Sleeping units were also added for situations where someone wanted to provide a more accessible front approach rather than the required side approach.

Exception 7 would provide an option for cabinet fronts at front approach lavatories and sinks similar to what is common in television cabinets – and it eliminates the question about such cabinet doors obstructing other parts of the kitchen where they do not retract.

606.2-2_Williams.doc

Report for *06-37– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-1-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise as follows:** 7. Within dwelling units and sleeping units, Doors that open and retract into surrounding cabinetry are permitted, provided all requirements are met for clear floor space and knee and toe clearance where doors are fully retracted. 8. ~~Cabinetry that can be removed without removal or replacement of the lavatory is permitted in Type A and Type B units and shall comply with Sections 1103 and 1104 respectively.~~		
Committee Reason: The modification to delete Exception 8 was because the exceptions specific to Type A and Type B dwelling units are in Section 1103 and 1104, so this is redundant and not needed. In addition, the reference is too broad and the terminology is not the same as in 1103.11.2.2, 1103.12.3.1, 1104.11.3.1.1 and 1104.12.2.1, do this could be confusing.		

Report for *06-37– 2021*		
The modification to Exception 7 was to limit the option for retractable cabinet fronts to dwelling units where the people would be familiar with and have control of the space. Sleeping units were also added for situations where someone wanted to provide a more accessible front approach rather than the required side approach. Exception 7 would provide an option for cabinet fronts at front approach lavatories and sinks similar to what is common in television cabinets – and it eliminates the question about such cabinet doors obstructing other parts of the kitchen where they do not retract.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-38 – 2021
606.4

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 606
LAVATORIES AND SINKS

606.4 Faucets. Faucets shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.

Exception: Automatic faucets shall be permitted where the activation complies with Section 308.2.2 ~~not be required to comply with Section 309 provided that the reach depth to activate the faucets and the reach depth to the water flow is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum~~.

REASON: With new technology allowing automatic faucets to be activated with motion or touch, they should be allowed to comply with the same reach requirements as manual-operated faucets as required in Section 308.2.2. This proposed change does not impact the more restrictive reach range requirements in Section 606.5.

Note: Motion to table to end of Chapter 6 proposals

06-38 – 2021 Replacement
606.4

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Replace the proposal and revise as follows:

606.4 Faucets. Faucets shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.

Exception: Automatic faucets shall not be required to comply with Section 309 where the location to activate the faucet and the water flow complies with Section 308.2.2 for sinks and lavatories provided with a front approach and Section 308.3.2 for sinks provided with a side approach. ~~provided that the reach depth to activate the faucets and the reach depth to the water flow is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum~~.

Reason: The committee was concerned that the proposed language did not address getting your hands into the water, and that the forward obstructed reach did not address the requirements for a sink that could have a side approach. This replacement proposal will address both issues.

Notes 12-1-22: Tabled till Dec. 15 meeting

06-38 – 2021 2nd Replacement
606.4

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Replace the proposal and revise as follows:

606.4 Faucets. Faucets shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.

Exception: Automatic faucets shall not be required to comply with Section 309 ~~provided that the reach depth to activate the faucets and the reach depth to the water flow is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.~~ where the faucets comply with one of the following:

1. For sinks and lavatories provided with a forward approach, the reach to activate the faucet and the reach to the water flow comply with Section 308.2.2 (obstructed forward reach).
2. For sinks and lavatories provided with a side approach, the reach to activate the faucets and the reach to the water flow comply with Section 308.3.2 (obstructed side reach).

Reason: The committee was concerned that the proposed language did not address getting your hands into the water, and that the forward obstructed reach did not address the requirements for a sink that could have a side approach. This replacement proposal will address both issues.

Committee Action: As Modified 22-1-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Replace the proposal and revise as follows:

606.4 Faucets. Faucets shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum.

Exception: Automatic faucets shall not be required to comply with Section 309 ~~provided that the reach depth to activate the faucets and the reach depth to the water flow is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.~~ where the faucets comply with one of the following:

1. <u>For sinks and lavatories provided with a forward approach, the reach to activate the faucet and the reach to the water flow comply with Section 308.2.2 (obstructed forward reach).</u>

2. <u>For sinks and lavatories provided with a side approach, the reach to activate the faucets and the reach to the water flow comply with Section 308.3.2 (obstructed side reach).</u>

Committee Reason: The 2nd replacement modification was approved by the committee as this revised exception clarified that rather than reach the faucet, where automatic water is used, the activation of the faucet and the water flow is what is required to be within the associated reach range. It was noted that this language will now be different from Section 606.4.1 for enhanced reach range; whereas before they were coordinated.

606.4-THOMPSON.doc

Report for *06-38– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 22-1-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace the proposal and revise as follows:** **606.4 Faucets.** Faucets shall comply with Section 309. Hand-operated metering faucets shall remain open for 10 seconds minimum. **Exception:** Automatic faucets shall not be required to comply with Section 309 ~~provided that the reach depth to activate the faucets and the reach depth to the water flow is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.~~ <u>where the faucets comply with one of the following:</u> <u>1. For sinks and lavatories provided with a forward approach, the reach to activate the faucet and the reach to the water flow comply with Section 308.2.2 (obstructed forward reach).</u> <u>2. For sinks and lavatories provided with a side approach, the reach to activate the faucets and the reach to the water flow comply with Section 308.3.2 (obstructed side reach).</u>		
Committee Reason: The 2nd replacement modification was approved by the committee as this revised exception clarified that rather than reach the faucet, where automatic water is used, the activation of the faucet and the water flow is what is required to be within the associated reach range. It was noted that this language will now be different from Section 606.4.1 for enhanced reach range; whereas before they were coordinated.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-39 – 2021
606.5

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 606
LAVATORIES AND SINKS

606.5 Lavatories with enhanced reach range. Where enhanced reach range is required at lavatories, faucets and soap dispenser controls shall have a reach depth of 11 inches (280 mm) maximum. Water and soap ~~outlets~~ streams shall be provided with a reach depth of 11 inches (280 mm) maximum. The lavatory shall be 34 inches (865 mm) maximum above the floor, measured to the higher of the rim or counter surface.

Exceptions:
1. Enhanced reach range faucets shall not be required on lavatories provided with automatic faucets where the reach depth to activate the faucets and the reach depth to the water ~~outlet~~ stream is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.
2. Enhanced reach range soap dispensers shall not be required on lavatories provided with automatic dispensers where the reach depth to activate the soap dispensers and the reach depth to the soap ~~outlet~~ stream is 11 inches (280 mm) maximum.

REASON: The user's concern is reaching the water or soap stream and not necessarily the outlet on the faucet or soap dispenser. The proposed change clarifies the intent of the section.

Committee Action: D 27-1-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved because the direction of the stream may vary depending on how hard the water is turned on, and it is much harder to measure to a stream. The outlet provides a specific measurable point.

606.5-THOMPSON.doc

Report for *06-39– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 27-1-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved because the direction of the stream may vary depending on how hard the water is turned on, and it is much harder to measure to a stream. The outlet provides a specific measurable point.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT:		

Report for *06-39– 2021*		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-40 – 2021

607.2, 607.3(New), 607.5, Figures 607.2(A), 607.2(B), 607.3(New), 607.5, 1103.2.5.1(A), 1103.2.5.1(B)

Proponent: Thomas Hirsch, FAIA, Hirsch Group Architecture, representing self; M. Bradley Gaskins, AIA; Gina Hillberry for United Cerebral Palsy; Joe Jurkiewicz, AIA; Marsha Mazz for United Spinal Association; Edward Steinfeld, Arch.D, AIA; and Steven R. Winkel, FAIA, PE, CASp

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.2 <u>Transfer</u> Clearance. A <u>transfer</u> clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the <u>transfer</u> clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

Note: The wall in the Figures 607.2(A) and 607.2(B) would be jogged to indicate the additional 4 inch toe clearance in the new Figure 607.3. The committee will need to decide if Figures 607.2(A) and 607.2 (B) should be revised to show the control clearance with the transfer clearance or if the control clearance should be in a separate Figure 607.3. The figure submitted indicates the transfer clearance moving forward, not an addition 4 inch control clearance as the text indicates.

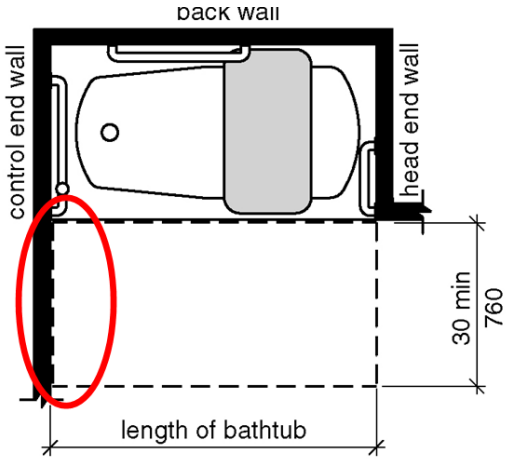


FIGURE 607.2(A)
<u>TRANSFER</u> CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE IN TUB SEATS

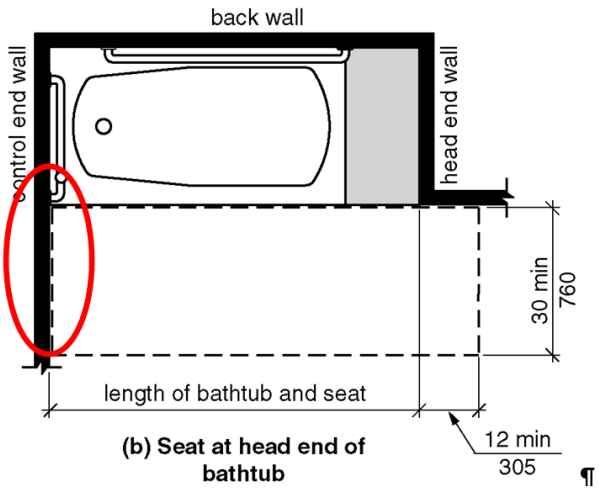


FIGURE 607.2(B)
TRANSFER CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB

607.3 Control Clearance. The clear floor space for toe clearance at the controls shall extend 4 inches (100 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall.

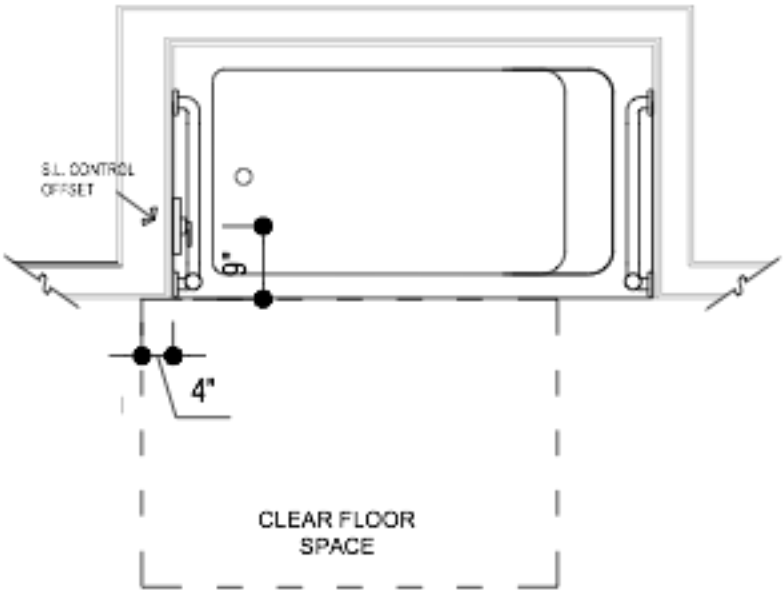


FIGURE 607.3
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS CONTROLS

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, ~~shall be provided on an end wall,~~ located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and ~~between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub~~ the centerline of controls measured from the approach side

of the bathtub shall be located 5 inches (127 mm) minimum and 9 inches (229 mm) maximum from the clear floor space. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

Note: The area for the controls in Figure 607.5 would be revised to the smaller area indicated in the revised text.

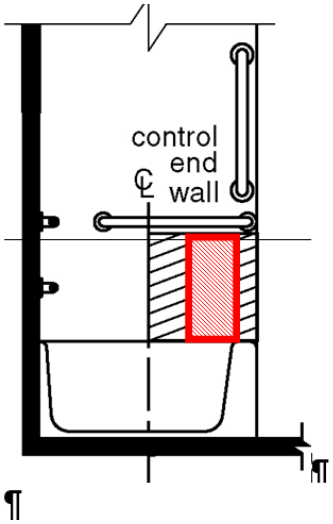


FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

Note: The references from Accessible and Type A units are shown so that the committee is clear on how this proposal will affect unit requirements.

SECTION 1102
ACCESSIBLE UNITS

1102.11.2 Toilet and bathing facility. At least one toilet and bathing facility shall comply with Section 603. At least one lavatory, one water closet and either a bathtub or shower within the unit shall comply with Sections 604 through 610. These toilet and bathing fixtures shall be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit.

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS

1103.11.2.5 Bathing fixtures. The bathing fixture shall be a bathtub complying with Section 1103.11.2.5.1 or a shower compartment complying with Section 1103.11.2.5.2.

1103.11.2.5.1 Bathtub. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.

Exception: Countertops and cabinetry shall be permitted at one end of the clearance, provided the following criteria are met:

1. The countertop and cabinetry can be removed;
2. The floor finish extends under the countertop and cabinetry; and

3. The walls behind and surrounding the countertop and cabinetry are finished.

Note: The wall in the Figures 1103.11.2.5.1(A) and 1103.11.2.5.1(B) would be jogged to indicate the additional 4 inch control clearance in the new Figure 607.2.1

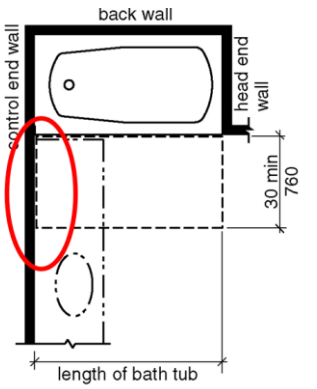
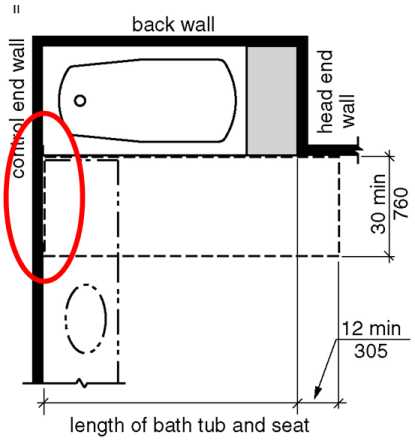


Figure 1103.11.2.5.1(A)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS IN TYPE A UNITS WITH REMOVABLE SEATS



(b) With Permanent Seat

Figure 1103.11.2.5.1(B)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS IN TYPE A UNITS WITH PERMANENT SEATS

REASON: Based on anthropometry, the provision of toe space past the control end of the fixture accomplishes realistic reach of the control for 90% of persons measured. In existing buildings "technical infeasibility" provides an exception for difficult situations.

Notes: Table till end of Chapter 6

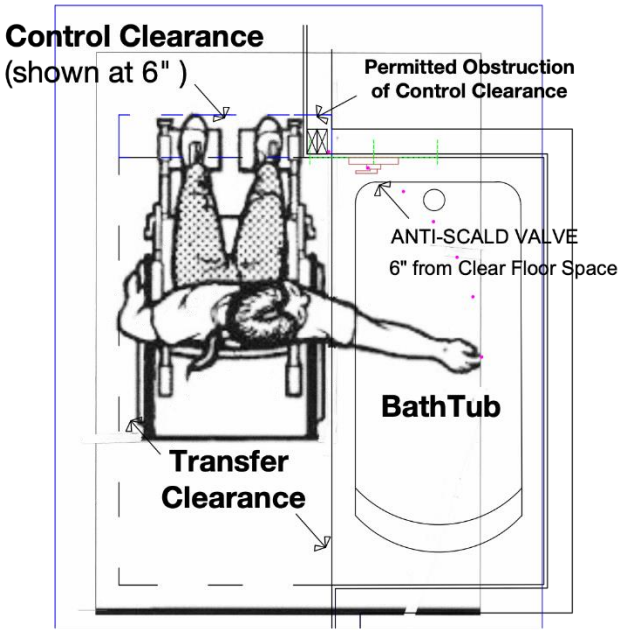
06-40 – 2021 Modification

607.2, 607.3(New), 607.5, Figures 607.2(A), 607.2(B), 607.3(New), 607.5, 1103.2.5.1(A), 1103.2.5.1(B)

Proponent: Thomas Hirsch, FAIA, Hirsch Group Architecture, representing self

Further revise as follows:

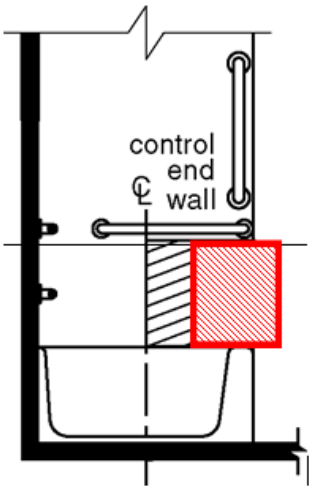
607.3 Control Clearance. The clear floor space for toe clearance complying with Section 306.2 at the controls shall extend ~~4~~ 6 inches (~~100~~ 152 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall. An obstruction by the control wall of 4 inches (102 mm) maximum shall be permitted.



Note: This is a replacement figure. The clear floor space location was revised in the figure, but the location of the valve does not match the text in Section 607.5.

FIGURE 607.3
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS CONTROLS

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and the centerline of the control valve shall be located ~~controls measured from the approach side of the bathtub shall be located 5 inches (127 mm) minimum and~~ 9 inches (229 mm) maximum from the clear floor space. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.



Note: The area for the controls in Figure 607.5 would be revised to the smaller area indicated in the revised text. 9" is from the clear floor space, not from the front of the tub.

FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

Reason:
1. Conforms "toe space" with prior use of the term in Sec. 306.2.
2. Allows intrusion of wall framing without interfering with user's toes
3. Allows for plumbing valves & piping in typical use.

Staff note: This requirement would apply to Accessible and Type A units.

Staff Note 12-1-2022: Tabled till 12-15-2022 meeting and first in order of discussion.

Committee Action: As Modified
Notes 12-15-2022: Proposal split
Chair decided changes to Section 607.2 revisions are editorial
Part 1 Section 607.3 (control clearance) AM 18-7-5
Part 2 Section 607.5 (control location) AM 5-22-2; D 25-0-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Replace the proposal with the following:

607.2 Transfer Clearance. A transfer clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the transfer clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE 607.2(A)
TRANSFER CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE IN TUB SEATS

FIGURE 607.2(B)
TRANSFER CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB

607.3 Control Clearance. The clear floor space for toe clearance complying with Section 306.2 at the controls shall extend 6 inches (152 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall. An obstruction by the control wall of 4 inches (102 mm) maximum shall be permitted.

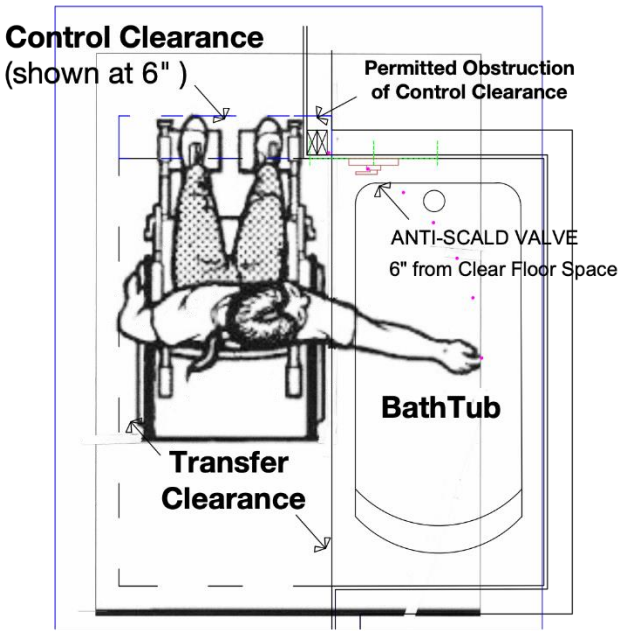
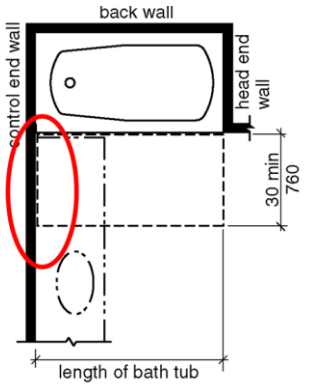


FIGURE 607.3
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS CONTROLS

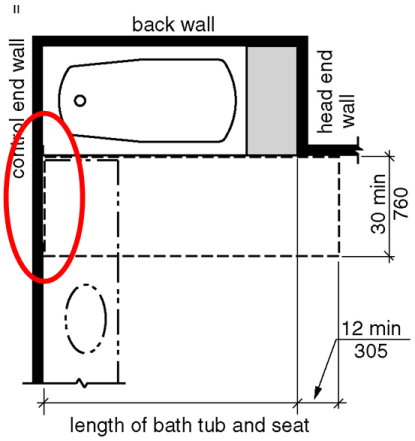
Note: The figure submitted is the suggested start for a new figure.

Note: The wall in the Figures 1103.11.2.5.1(A) and 1103.11.2.5.1(B) would be jogged to indicate the additional 6-inch control clearance in the new Figure 607.3



(a) Without Removable Seat ¶

Figure 1103.11.2.5.1(A)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS IN TYPE A UNITS WITH REMOVABLE SEATS



(b) With Permanent Seat ¶

Figure 1103.11.2.5.1(B)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS IN TYPE A UNITS WITH PERMANENT SEATS

Committee Reason: The proposal was divided for discussion. For clarity, the modification shows the final version approved by the committee. The acting chair, Gina Hilberry, determined that the change to Section 607.2 was editorial due to the change for control clearance. The replacement for the new Section 607.3 for control clearance aligns better with the information for reach based on the anthropometric information from Dr. Steinfeld. The obstruction in the control clearance would allow for the physical elements in the wall needed to construct a corner. Since the widest part of the wheelchair is at the rear wheels, this will not be an obstruction for reach. There were concerns raised that the language was not clear and additional modifications are necessary. The committee felt that the current language in Section 607.5 for control location provided better direction since it included all of the controls (temperature, on/off, diverters) instead of just to the center of a valve. The proposed

language assumed one center control, was too restrictive, and did not address the handle locations, spread mount controls or the diverter location.

607.2-HIRSCH.doc

Report for *06-40– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 18-7-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace the proposal with the following:** **607.2 Transfer Clearance.** A transfer clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the transfer clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub. **FIGURE 607.2(A)** **TRANSFER CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE IN TUB SEATS** **FIGURE 607.2(B)** **TRANSFER CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB** **607.3 Control Clearance.** The clear floor space for toe clearance complying with Section 306.2 at the controls shall extend 6 inches (152 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall. An obstruction by the control wall of 4 inches (102 mm) maximum shall be permitted. *Note: This figure submitted is the suggested start for a new figure.* **FIGURE 607.3** **CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS CONTROLS** *Note: The wall in the Figures 1103.11.2.5.1(A) and 1103.11.2.5.1(B) would be jogged to indicate the additional 6-inch control clearance in the new Figure 607.3* **Figure 1103.11.2.5.1(A)** **CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS IN TYPE A UNITS WITH REMOVABLE SEATS** **Figure 1103.11.2.5.1(B)** **CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS IN TYPE A UNITS WITH PERMANENT SEATS**		
Committee Reason: The proposal was divided for discussion. For clarity, the modification shows the final version approved by the committee. The acting chair, Gina Hilberry, determined that the change to Section 607.2 was editorial due to the change for control clearance. The replacement for the new Section 607.3 for control clearance aligns better with the information for reach based on the anthropometric information from Dr. Steinfeld. The obstruction in the control clearance would allow for the physical elements in the wall needed to construct a corner. Since the widest part of the wheelchair is at the rear wheels, this will not be an obstruction for reach. There were concerns raised that the language was not clear and additional modifications are necessary. The committee felt that the current language in Section 607.5 for control location provided better direction since it included all of the controls (temperature, on/off, diverters) instead of just to the center of a valve. The proposed language assumed one center control, was too restrictive, and did not address the handle locations, spread mount controls or the diverter location.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-41 – 2021
607.2, Figure 607.2(C)(New)

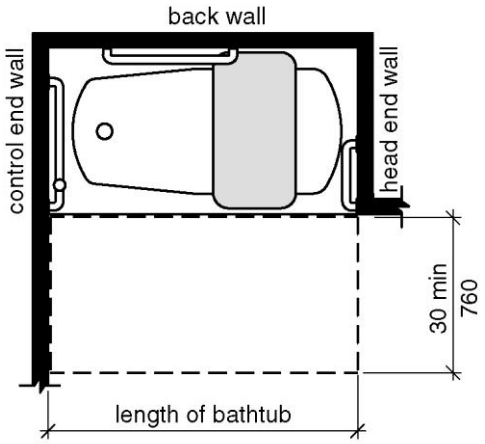
Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a permanent seat or fixed folding in-tub seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

Exception: In an existing bathtub where the interior size of the bathroom is not enlarged and a fixed folding in-tub seat is installed, the 12 inches (305 mm) clearance beyond wall at the head end of the bathtub is not required.



(a) Removable in tub seat

FIGURE 607.2(A)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE IN TUB SEATS

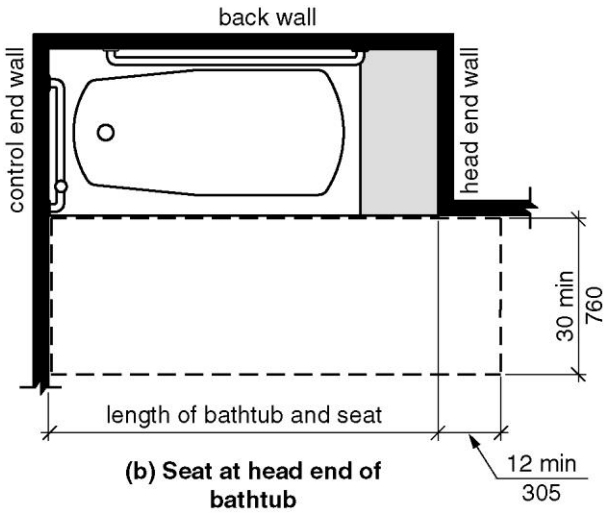


FIGURE 607.2(B)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB

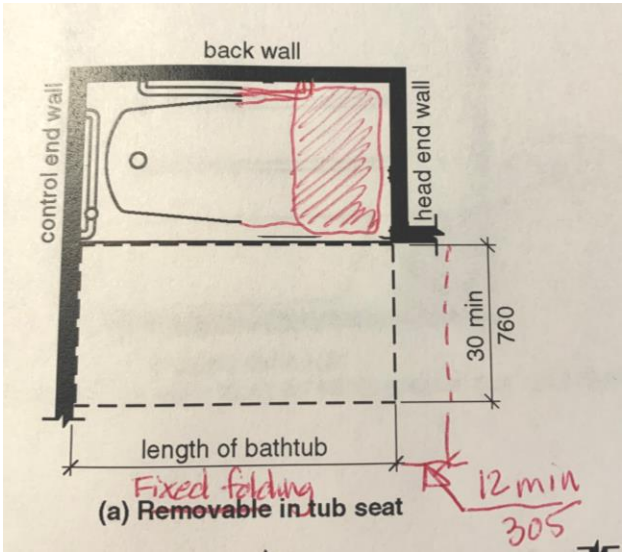


FIGURE 607.2(C)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH FIXED FOLDING IN-TUB SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB

Reason: Additional clearance would be needed when in tub seats are mounted on the headwall. The photos are to illustrate what this proposal is talking about.

Staff Note: This proposal is from the A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group. Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs with a fixed folding in-tub seat.

06-41 – 2021 Replacement

Figure 607.2(A), 607.4.2, , Figure 607.4.2(A), Figure 607.4.2(B), 610.2, Figure 610.2(A), Figure 610.2(B), 610.2.1(New), 610.2.2(New)

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Note: Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

Replace with the following:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.1 General. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a permanent seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

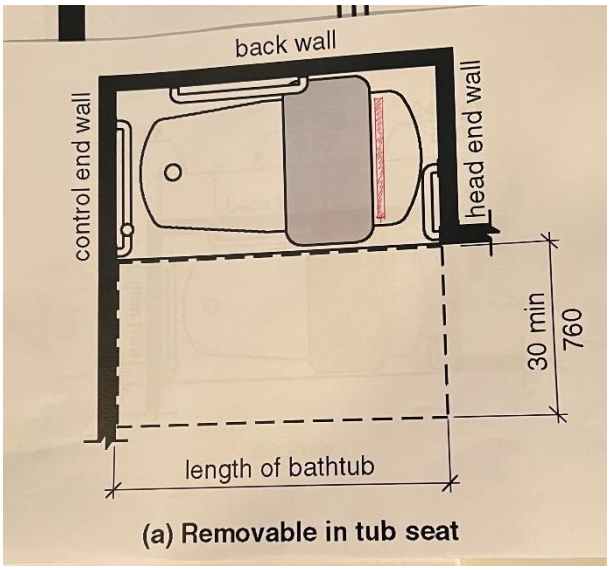


FIGURE 607.2(A)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS
Note – seat would have to move forward in graphic

FIGURE 607.2(B)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB

607.3 Seat. A permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats shall comply with Section 610.

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

607.4.1 Bathtubs with permanent seats. For bathtubs with permanent seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.1(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Seat at Head End of Tub - Elevation

Figure 607.4.1(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Seat at Head End of Tub - Plan

607.4.1.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.1.2 Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

Exception: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

607.4.1.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.1.2.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For bathtubs with removable in-tub seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.

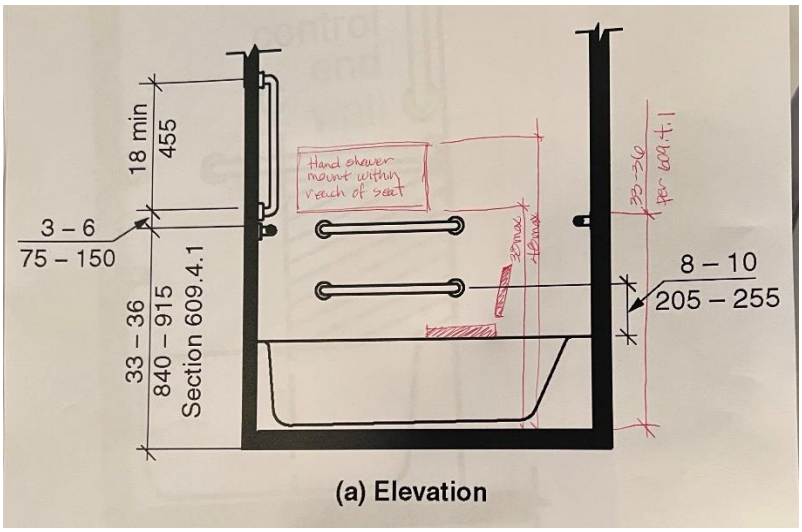


Figure 607.4.2(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats – Elevation
Note – seat would have to move forward in graphic

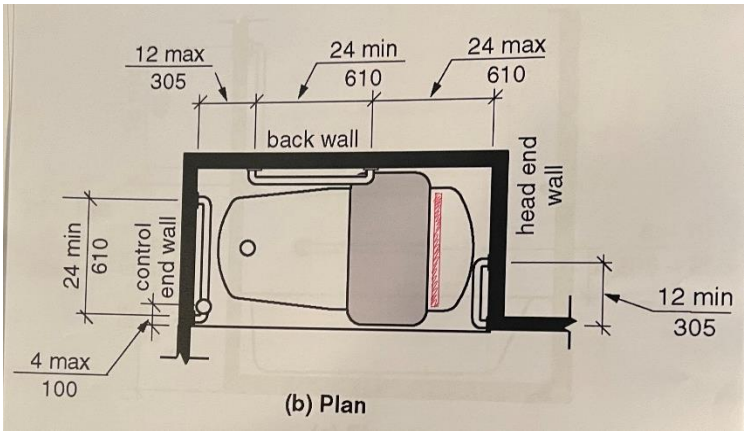


Figure 607.4.2(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats - Plan
Note – seat would have to move forward in graphic

607.4.2.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, located 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.2.2 Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

607.4.2.3 Head end wall. A horizontal grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

(Note - see task group recommendation for controls in 06-49)

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

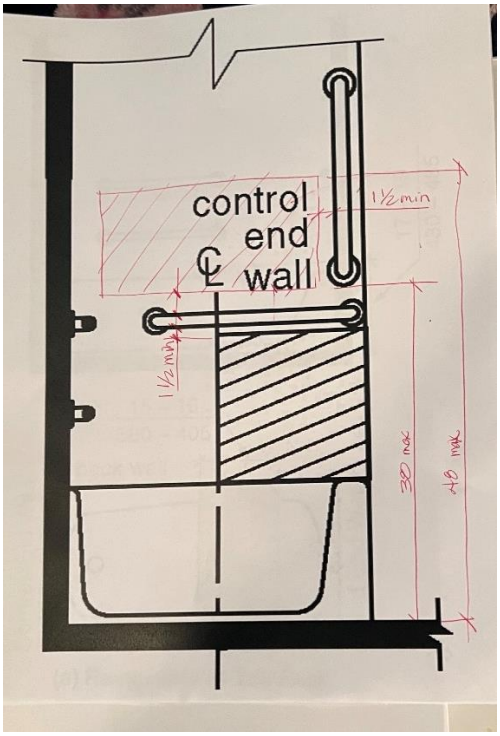


FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

(Note - see task group recommendation for mounts for hand showers in 06-49)

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length~~,~~ that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. Where provided, an

adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

607.7 Bathtub enclosures. Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the bathtub.

607.8 Water temperature. Bathtubs shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.1 General. Grab bars in toilet or bathing facilities shall comply with Section 609.

609.2 Cross section. Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.

Figure 609.2 Size of Grab Bars

609.2.1 Circular cross section. Grab bars with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of $1^{1}/_{4}$ inch (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

609.2.2 Noncircular cross section. Grab bars with a noncircular cross section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be $1^{1}/_{2}$ inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall $^{1}/_{4}$ inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the $1^{1}/_{2}$-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.

Figure 609.3 Spacing of Grab Bars

609.4 Position of grab bars.

609.4.1 General. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3.

1. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.

2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.
3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

609.4.2 Position of children's grab bars. At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.11, grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. A vertical grab bar shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located between 21 inches (535 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor and with the centerline of the bar located between 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear wall.

Figure 609.4.2(A) Positions of Children's Grab Bars - Side-wall View

Figure 609.4.2(B) Positions of Children's Grab Bars - Rear-wall View

609.5 Surface hazards. Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded.

609.6 Fittings. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.

609.7 Installation and configuration. Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space. Horizontal and vertical grab bars shall be permitted to be separate bars, a single piece bar, or combination thereof.

609.8 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

SECTION 610
SEATS

610.1 General. Seats in bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with Section 610.

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. The seat shall provide back support with the top edge of the back support 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement with the rear edge of the seat surface positioned 36 inches (914 mm) maximum from the control wall.

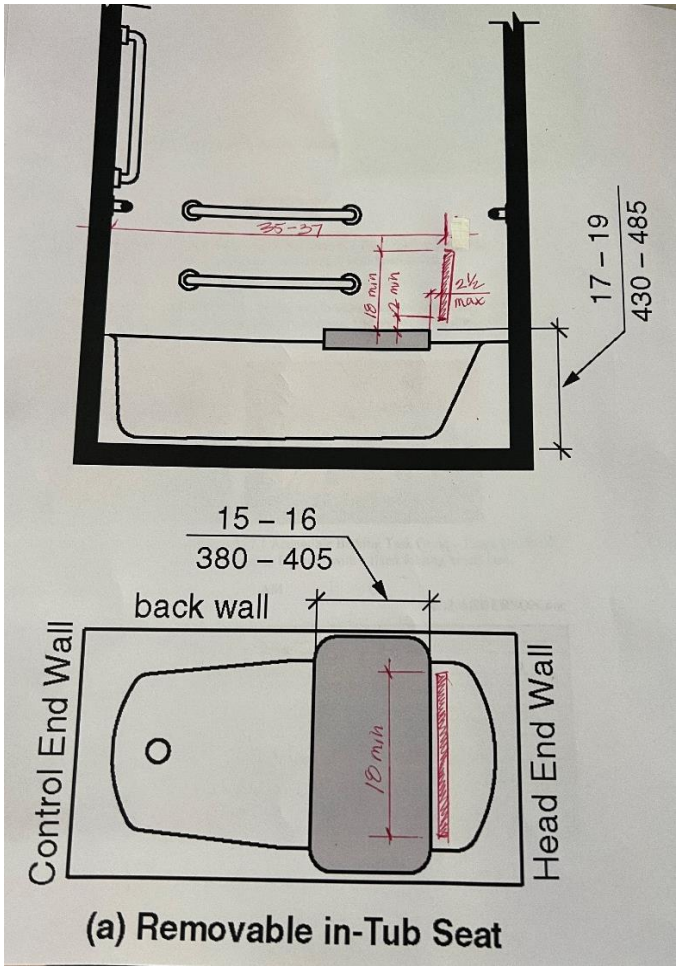


FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1
BATHTUB SEATS
REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

Note – seat would have to move forward in graphic; add dimensions in the final text to the graphic

610.2.2 Permanent seats. Permanent seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. Permanent seats shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2
BATHTUB SEATS
SEAT PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

610.3 Shower compartment seats. The height of shower compartment seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to

the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.

610.3.1 Rectangular seats. The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall of a transfer-type shower and 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the control wall of a roll-in-type shower.

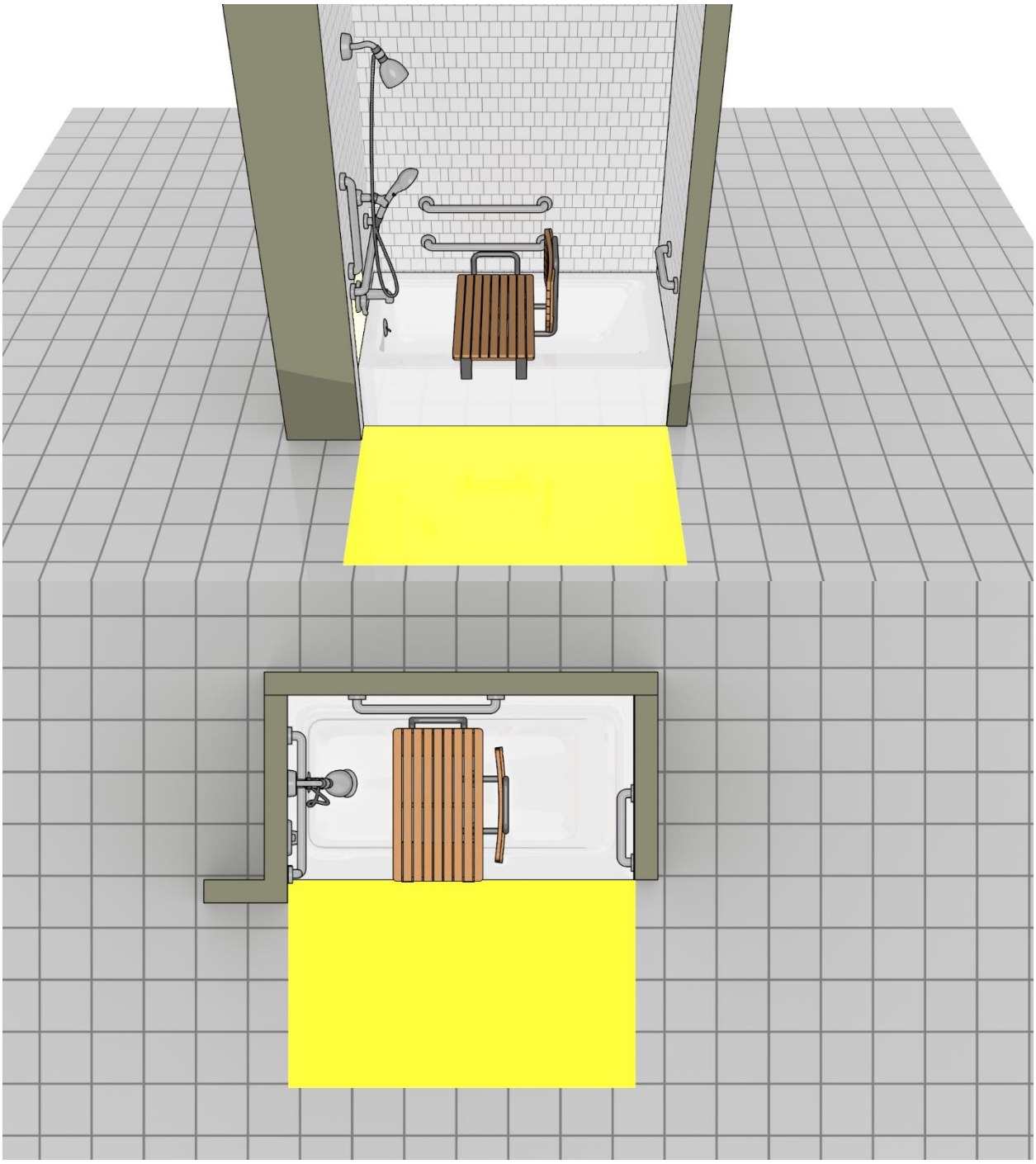
Figure 610.3.1 Rectangular Shower Compartment Seats

610.3.2 L-shaped seats. The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (560 mm) minimum and 23 inches (585 mm) maximum from the main seat wall.

Figure 610.3.2 L-shaped Shower Compartment Seats

610.4 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

Reason:
Purpose - The task group would like a seat back, but there were no examples of seats with backs that met all of the discussed criteria. The task group would like input from the industry on the back size and any structural/attachment considerations.
Change term to 'removeable in-tub seat' for consistency throughout the document.
Have the seat be capable of being located within reach of the controls.
The clarification of the controls and mount for the hand shower will be addressed in the task group modification to 06-49.



Committee Action: Approval As Modified 17-8-4

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

See the replacement proposal above to see the changes in context. The Report of Hearing will only indicate the changes to text and titles of figures. Revisions to the figures is the responsibility of the Editorial committee. It was noted that the task group did not have sufficient time to fully update the graphics submitted.

607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For bathtubs with removable in-tub seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.2(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats – Elevation

Figure 607.4.2(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats - Plan

(Note - see task group recommendation for controls and hand showers in 06-49)

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. The seat shall provide back support with the top edge of the back support 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement with the rear edge of the seat surface positioned 36 inches (914 mm) maximum from the control wall.

FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1
BATHTUB SEATS
REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Permanent seats. Permanent seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. Permanent seats shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2
BATHTUB SEATS
SEAT PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

Committee Reason: Locating the removable seat within the reach of controls will provide better access for persons using the seat while bathing. Adding a seat back will allow for greater stability. The task group noted that there were no examples of seats with backs currently available that met all of the discussed criteria. The task group would like input from the industry on the back size and any structural/attachment considerations.

607.2_ANDERSON

Report for *06-41– 2021*

Committee decision: AM	*Committee Vote at Meeting: 17-8-4*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

See the replacement proposal above to see the changes in context. The Report of Hearing will only indicate the changes to text and titles of figures. Revisions to the figures is the responsibility of the Editorial committee. It was noted that the task group did not have sufficient time to fully update the graphics submitted.

607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For bathtubs with removable in-tub seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.2(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats – Elevation

Figure 607.4.2(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats - Plan

(Note - see task group recommendation for controls and hand showers in 06-49)

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. The seat shall provide back support with the top edge of the back support 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement with the rear edge of the seat surface positioned 36 inches (914 mm) maximum from the control wall.

FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1 BATHTUB SEATS REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Permanent seats. Permanent seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. Permanent seats shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2 BATHTUB SEATS SEAT PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

Committee Reason: Locating the removable seat within the reach of controls will provide better access for persons using the seat while bathing. Adding a seat back will allow for greater stability. The task group noted that there were no examples of seats with backs currently available that met all of the discussed criteria. The task group would like input from the industry on the back size and any structural/attachment considerations.

PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT:

Proponent:

Desired Action:

Modification:

Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	*Committee Vote at Meeting:*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*

REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:

Proponent:

Desired Action:

Modification:

Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	*Committee Vote at Meeting:*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*

FINAL ACTION:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

06-42 – 2021
607.3

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.3 Seat. A permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub, a fixed folding in-tub seat or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats shall comply with Section 610.

REASON: The industry is installing fixed folding in-tub seats and is proposing language to provide specifications for the location and adjacent features. The photos are to illustrate what this proposal is talking about.

Staff Note: This proposal is from the A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group. Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs with a fixed folding in-tub seat.

06-42 – 2021 Replacement
607.2, Figure 607.2(B), 607.3, 607.4.1, Figure 607.4.1(A), Figure 607.4.2(B), 610.2, 610.2.1(New), 610.2.2(New), Figure 601.2(B)

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Note: Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposals (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

Replace with the following:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.1 General. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a ~~permanent seat~~ transfer platform is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE 607.2(A)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE IN TUB SEATS

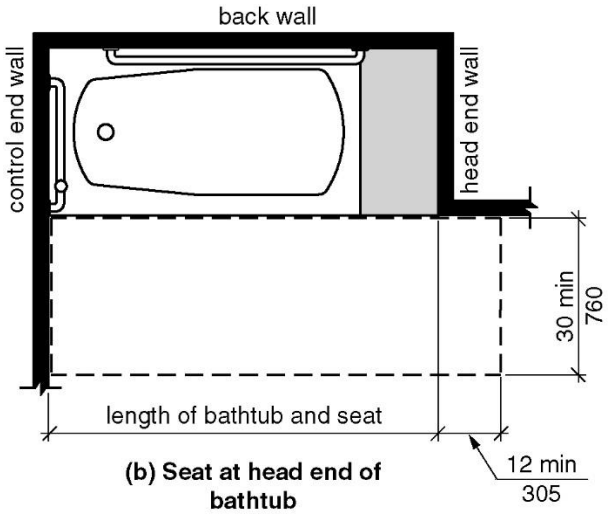


FIGURE 607.2(B)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH TRANSFER PLATFORMS ~~SEAT~~ AT HEAD END OF TUB
Note: Add removeable seat to drawing

607.3 Seats. A ~~permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a~~ removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Removable in-tub Seats and transfer platforms shall comply with Section 610.

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

607.4.1 Bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms. For bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.

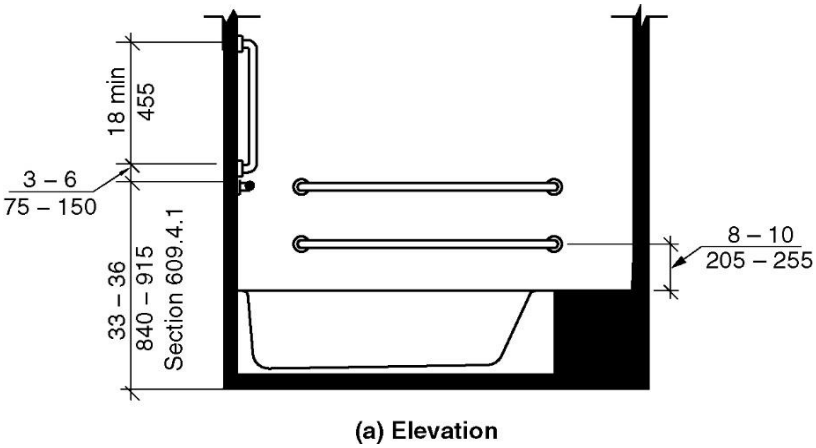


Figure 607.4.1(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Elevation

Note: Add removable seat to drawing

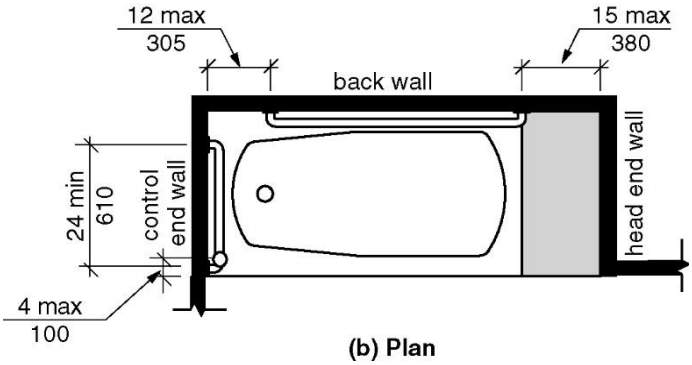


Figure 607.4.1(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Plan

Note: Add removable seat to drawing

607.4.1.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.1.2 Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

Exception: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

607.4.1.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.1.2.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable seats. For bathtubs with removable seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.2(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable Seats – Elevation
Figure 607.4.2(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable Seats - Plan

607.4.2.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, located 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.2.2 Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

607.4.2.3 Head end wall. A horizontal grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

(Note - see task group recommendation for controls in 06-49)

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

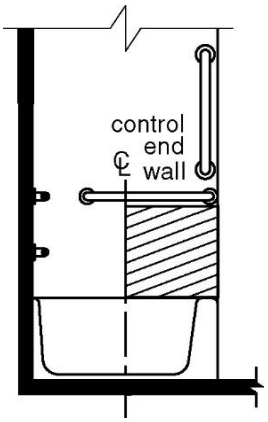


FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

(Note - see task group recommendation for controls in 06-49)

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The

hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

607.7 Bathtub enclosures. Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the bathtub.

607.8 Water temperature. Bathtubs shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.1 General. Grab bars in toilet or bathing facilities shall comply with Section 609.

609.2 Cross section. Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.

Figure 609.2 Size of Grab Bars

609.2.1 Circular cross section. Grab bars with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1¼ inch (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

609.2.2 Noncircular cross section. Grab bars with a noncircular cross section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall ¼ inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1½-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.

Figure 609.3 Spacing of Grab Bars

609.4 Position of grab bars.

609.4.1 General. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3.

1. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.
2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.
3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

609.4.2 Position of children's grab bars. At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.11, grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. A vertical grab bar shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located between 21 inches (535 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor and with the centerline of the bar located between 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear wall.

Figure 609.4.2(A) Positions of Children's Grab Bars - Side-wall View
Figure 609.4.2(B) Positions of Children's Grab Bars - Rear-wall View

609.5 Surface hazards. Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded.

609.6 Fittings. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.

609.7 Installation and configuration. Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space. Horizontal and vertical grab bars shall be permitted to be separate bars, a single piece bar, or combination thereof.

609.8 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

SECTION 610
SEATS

610.1 General. Seats in bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with Section 610.

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement.

FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1
~~BATHTUB SEATS~~
REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Bathtubs with transfer platforms. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

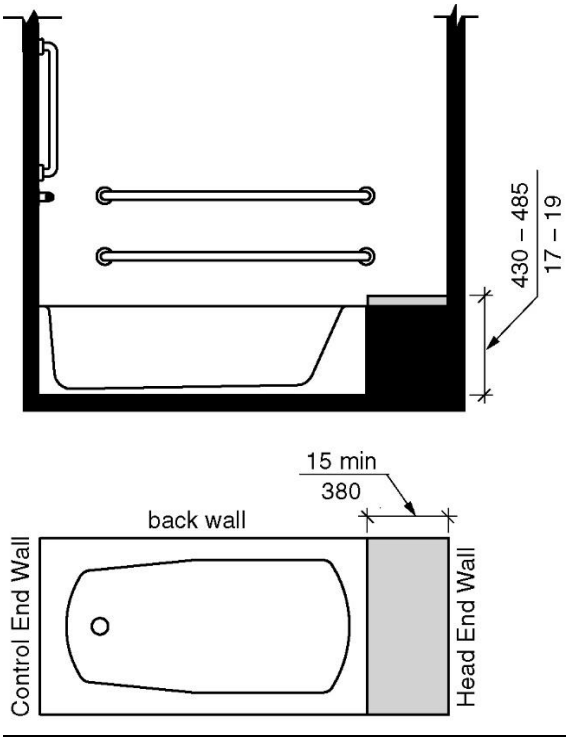


FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2
~~BATHTUB SEATS~~
~~SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB
Note: Show removeable seat in figures

610.3 Shower compartment seats. The height of shower compartment seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.

610.3.1 Rectangular seats. The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall of a transfer-type shower and 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the control wall of a roll-in-type shower.

Figure 610.3.1 Rectangular Shower Compartment Seats

610.3.2 L-shaped seats. The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be 1½ inches

(38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (560 mm) minimum and 23 inches (585 mm) maximum from the main seat wall.

Figure 610.3.2 L-shaped Shower Compartment Seats

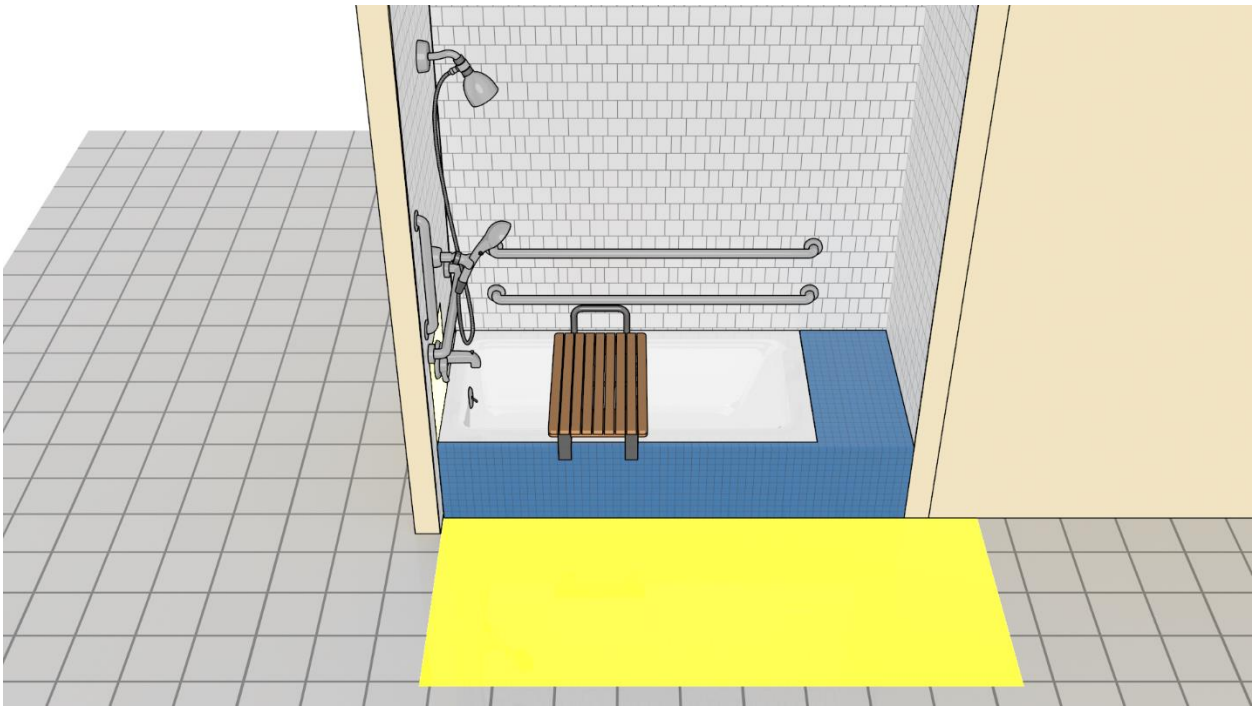
610.4 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

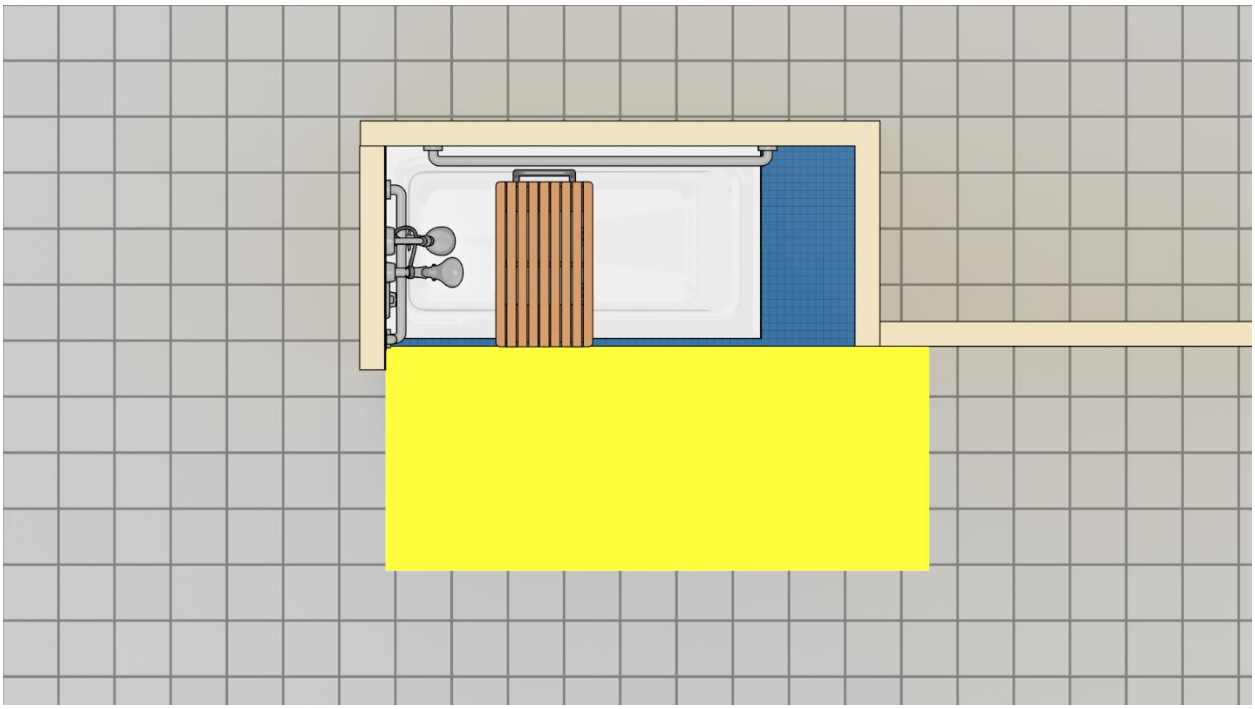
Reason:
Purpose -Want to require moveable seat in bathtub with fixed head end seat option as the fixed head end seat is not good for bathing on the seat. However, the fixed head end seat is the only good way we know of to be able to transfer down into the tub for someone who does not want a seat, so this option should remain.

Change name from 'fixed head end seat' or 'permanent seat' to 'transfer platform' so differences are easier to understand.

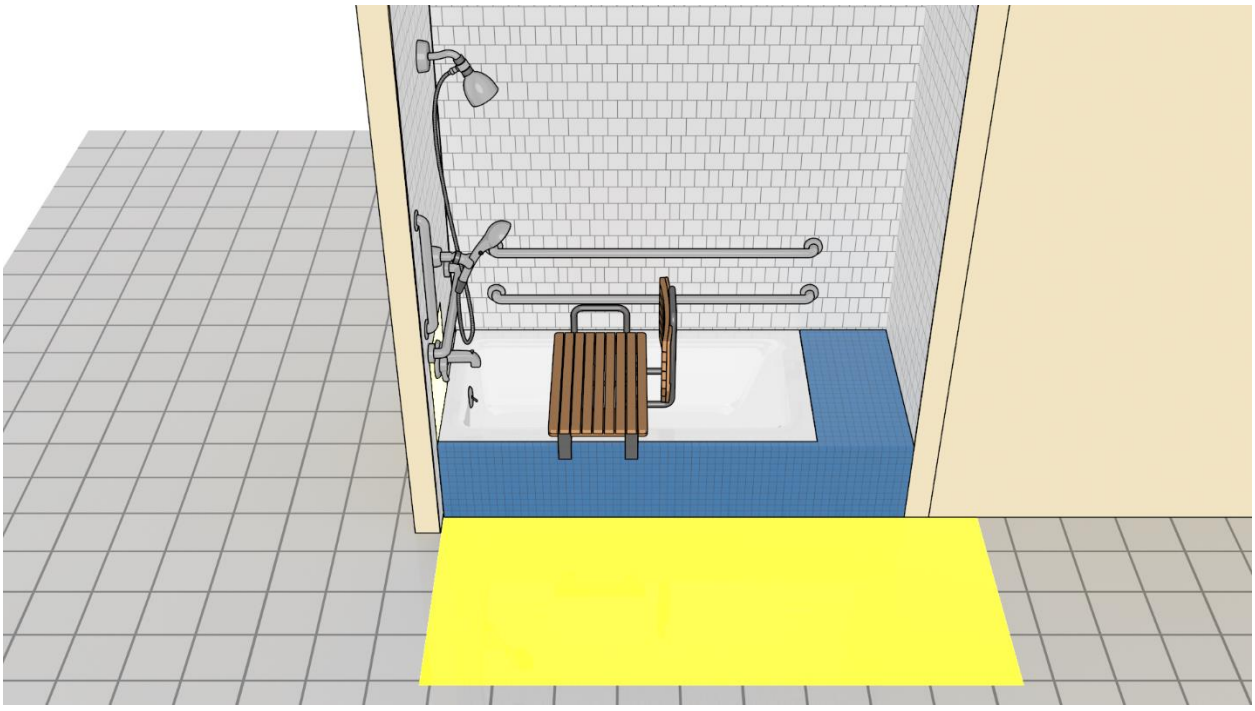
If the removable seat will have a back or not is dependent on the committee decision for removeable seats.

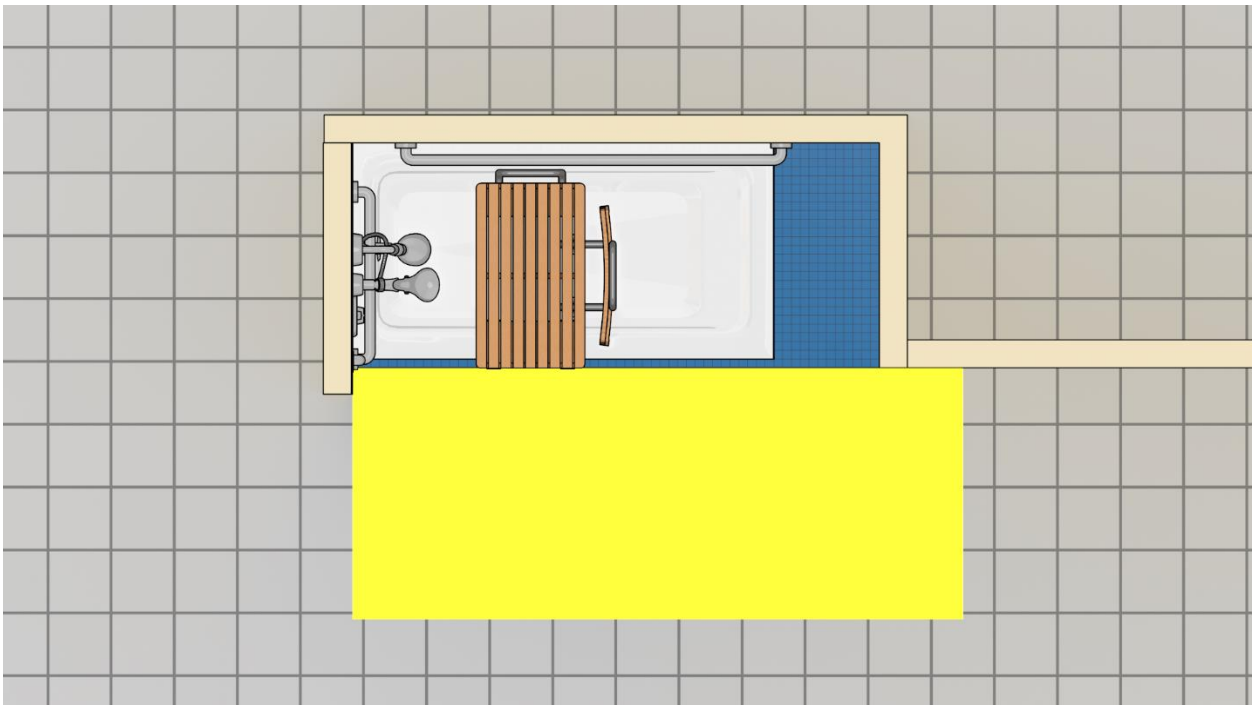
The clarification of the controls and mount for the hand shower will be addressed in the task group modification to 06-49.





Option without seat back on removeable seat.





Option with seat back on removeable seat.

Committee Action: Approval As Modified 22-7-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

See the replacement proposal above to see the changes in context. The Report of Hearing will only indicate the changes to text and titles of figures. Revisions to the figures is the responsibility of the Editorial committee. It was noted that the task group did not have sufficient time to fully update the graphics submitted.

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a ~~permanent seat~~ transfer platform is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE 607.2(B) CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH TRANSFER PLATFORMS ~~SEAT~~ AT HEAD END OF TUB

607.3 Seats. A ~~permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a~~ removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Removable in-tub Seats and transfer platforms shall comply with Section 610.

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

607.4.1 Bathtubs with ~~permanent~~ ~~seats~~ transfer platforms. For bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.1(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Elevation

Figure 607.4.1(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Plan

(Note - see task group recommendation for controls and hand showers in 06-49)

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement.

FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1 ~~BATHTUB SEATS~~ REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Bathtubs with transfer platforms. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2 ~~BATHTUB SEATS SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

Committee Reason: The 'head end seat' as currently written does not work well for someone to bath. It appears to be more for someone to transfer to move into the tub from the head end. Therefore, changing the name to a transfer platform is appropriate.
Adding the removable seat within the reach of controls will provide better access for persons using the seat while showering. While a seat with a back (see 06-41) would add additional support, the committee felt that adding the moveable seat improved access with or without a back.

607.3 ANDERSON.doc

Report for *06-42– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 22-7-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		

Report for *06-42– 2021*

Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

See the replacement proposal above to see the changes in context. The Report of Hearing will only indicate the changes to text and titles of figures. Revisions to the figures is the responsibility of the Editorial committee. It was noted that the task group did not have sufficient time to fully update the graphics submitted.

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a ~~permanent seat~~ transfer platform is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE 607.2(B) CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH TRANSFER PLATFORMS ~~SEAT~~ AT HEAD END OF TUB

607.3 Seats. A ~~permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub or a~~ removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Removable in-tub Seats and transfer platforms shall comply with Section 610.

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

607.4.1 Bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms. For bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.1(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Elevation
Figure 607.4.1(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Plan

(Note - see task group recommendation for controls and hand showers in 06-49)

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement.

FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1 ~~BATHTUB SEATS~~ REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Bathtubs with transfer platforms. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2 ~~BATHTUB SEATS SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

Committee Reason: The 'head end seat' as currently written does not work well for someone to bath. It appears to be more for someone to transfer to move into the tub from the head end. Therefore, changing the name to a transfer platform is appropriate.
Adding the removable seat within the reach of controls will provide better access for persons using the seat while showering. While a seat with a back (see 06-41) would add additional support, the committee felt that adding the moveable seat improved access with or without a back.

PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-43 – 2021
607.4

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2. Horizontal grab bar height shall be measured to the top of the gripping surface and vertical grab bars distance from an object shall be measured to the centerline of the bar.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

REASON: Section 609.4 requires horizontal grab bars to be measured to the top of the gripping surface. However, for bathtubs, that section allows an option to comply with Sections 607.4.1.1 (with permanent seats) or Section 607.4.2.1 (with removable seats). We don't believe this should be an option and will propose a correlating change to Section 609.1 to address this and other problems with the requirements.

This proposal specifies that horizontal grab bars installed in bathtubs must be measured to the top of the gripping surface just as is required by Section 609.4.1 for all other horizontal grab bars. The standard contains specifications for where vertical grab bars are to be measured only in one of six sections referenced in by Section 609.4.1, Section 604.5.1.2. Therefore, we are proposing a new requirement consistent with that section, to measure to the centerline of the vertical bar both in this section and in Section 609.4.1.

Please see our companion proposal to revise Section 609.4.

Staff Note: If this proposal passes, staff will correlate Figures 607.4.1(A) and (B), 607.4.2(A) and (B).

Committee Action: D 25-1-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Disapprove based on action to 06-80. The replacement proposal combines and addresses all the measurements for grab bars.

607.4-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-43– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-1-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Disapprove based on action to 06-80. The replacement proposal combines and addresses all the measurements for grab bars.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-44 – 2021
607.4.1.2.1, 607.4.2.3

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.4.1.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall ~~beginning near~~ 1 inch (25 mm) minimum and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

Note: Change dimension to match text.

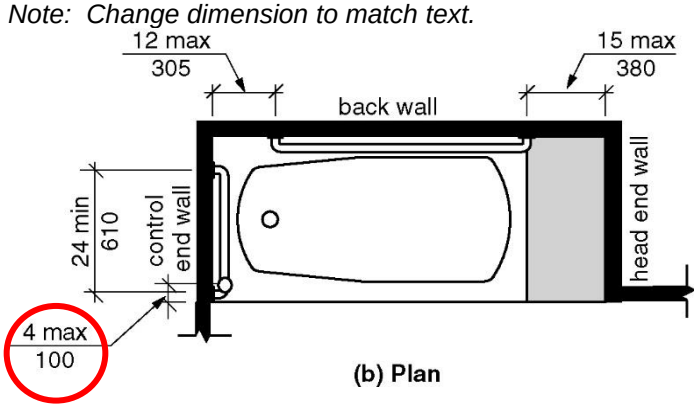


FIGURE 607.4.1(B)
GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB - PLAN

607.4.2.3 Head end wall. A horizontal grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the head end wall ~~at~~ 1 inch (25 mm) minimum and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the bathtub.

Note: Change dimension to match text.

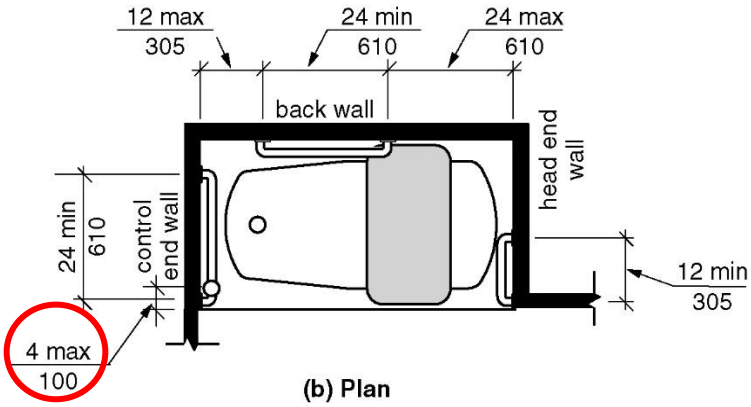


FIGURE 607.4.2(B)
GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE SEATS - PLAN

REASON: In Section 607.4.1.2.1, the word "near" does not provide enough guidance to avoid disagreements in the field. A specific dimension will help to avoid the potential that an installation will be rejected because it is not "near enough" to the front edge of the bath tub. We are proposing the same change to Section 607.4.2.3 for the sake of consistency and to provide some flexibility so that the grab bar does not interfere with a shower curtain.

Staff note: If this proposal passes, figures will be revises.

Committee Action: D 27-0-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Disapprove based on action to 06-80. The replacement proposal combines and addresses all the measurements for grab bars.

607.4.1.2.1-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-44– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 27-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Disapprove based on action to 06-80. The replacement proposal combines and addresses all the measurements for grab bars.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		

Report for *06-44– 2021*		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-45 – 2021

607.4.3(New), 607.4.3.1(New), 607.4.3.2(New), 607.4.3.2.1(New), 607.4.3.2.2(New), Figures 607.4.3(A) and (B)(New)

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.4.3 Bathtubs with fixed folding in-tub seats. For bathtubs with fixed folding in-tub seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.3 shall be provided.

607.4.3.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 30 inches (610mm) minimum in length, located 18 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.3.2.

Exception: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

607.4.3.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.3.2.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

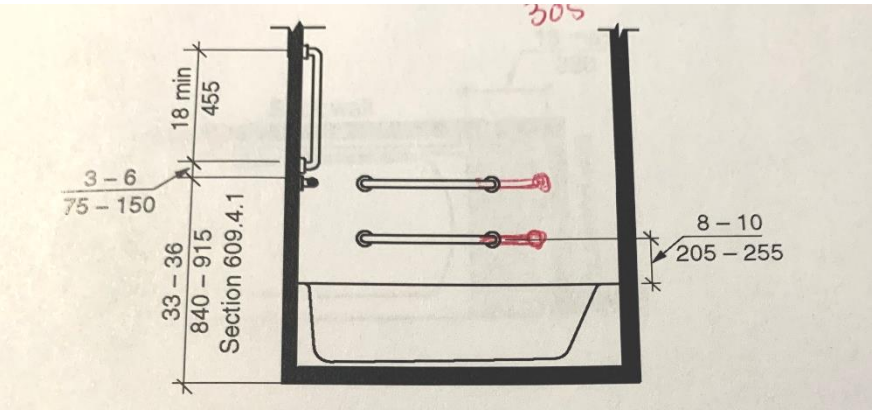


FIGURE 607.4.3(A)

GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH FIXED FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS – ELEVATION

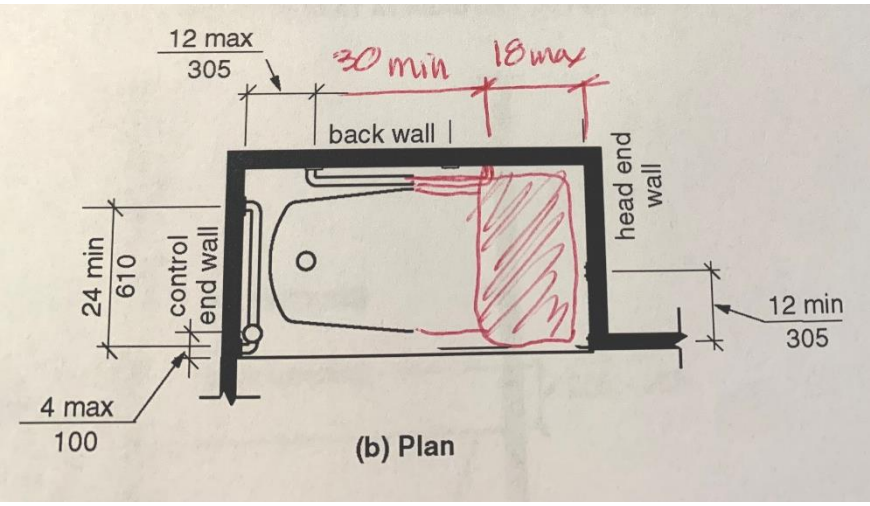


FIGURE 607.4.3(B)
GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH FIXED FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS –PLAN

REASON: Grab bars need to be closer to the head wall when the in-tub seats is mounted on the headwall. The photos are to illustrate what this proposal is talking about.

Staff Note: This proposal is from the A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group. Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs with a fixed folding in-tub seat.

06-45 – 2021 Replacement

607.2, Figure 607.2(B), Figure 607.2(C), 607.3, 607.4.1, Figure 607.4.1(A), Figure 607.4.1(B), 607.4.3(New), 607.4.3.1(New), 607.4.3.2.2(New), Figure 607.4.3(A) (New), Figure 607.4.3(B) (New), 607.5, 607.6, 607.6.1(New), 607.6.2(New), Figure 607.6.2(New), 609.4.1, 610.2, 610.2.1(New), 610.2.2(New), Figure 610.2(B), 610.2.3(New), Figure 610.2.3(New)

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Note: Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

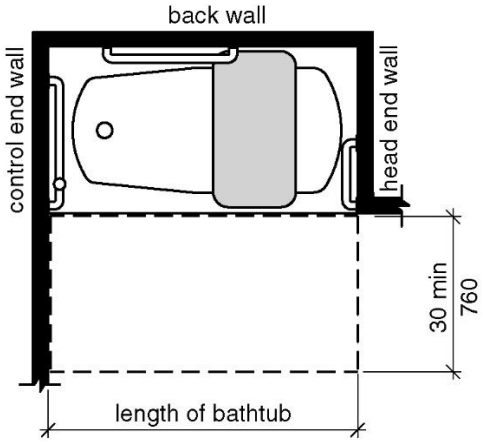
Replace with the following:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.1 General. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a ~~permanent~~ ~~seat~~ transfer platform or folding in-tub seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

Exception: In an existing bathtub where bathroom is not reconfigured and a folding in-tub seat is installed, the additional the 12 inches (305 mm) transfer clearance beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub is not required.



(a) Removable in tub seat

FIGURE 607.2(A)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE IN TUB SEATS

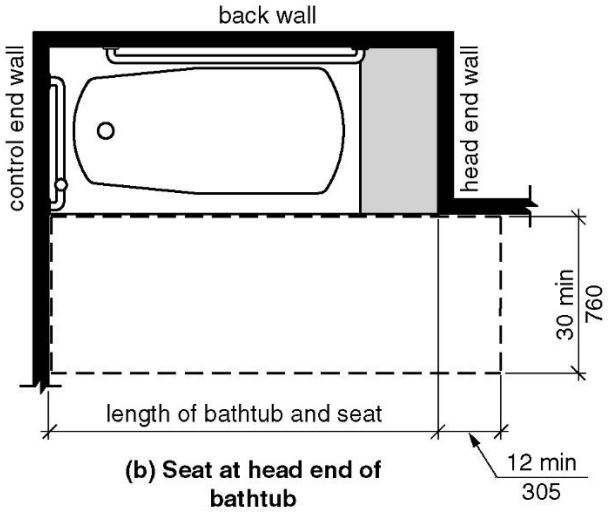


FIGURE 607.2(B)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH ~~SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM AT HEAD END OF TUB

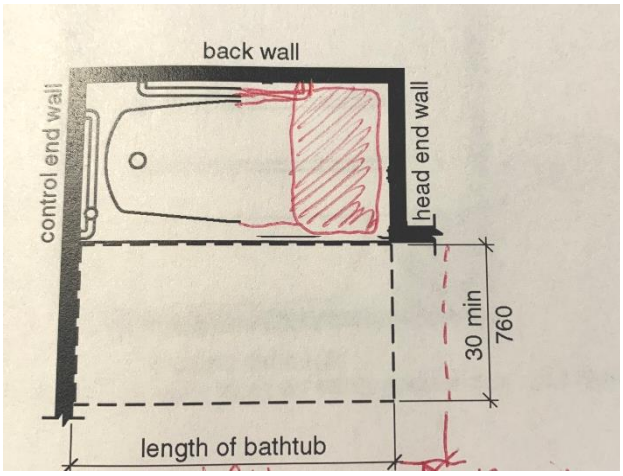


FIGURE 607.2(C)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB

607.3 Seat. A ~~permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub~~ folding in-tub seat at the head end of the tub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats and transfer platforms shall comply with Section 610.

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

607.4.1 Bathtubs with ~~permanent~~ ~~seats~~ transfer platforms. For bathtubs with ~~permanent~~ ~~seats~~ transfer platforms, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.1(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Elevation
Figure 607.4.1(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Plan

607.4.1.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.1.2 Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

Exception: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

607.4.1.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.1.2.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For bathtubs with removable in-tub seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.2(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats – Elevation
Figure 607.4.2(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats - Plan

607.4.2.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, located 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.2.2 Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

607.4.2.3 Head end wall. A horizontal grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the head end wall at the front edge of the bathtub.

607.4.3 Bathtubs with folding in-tub seats. For bathtubs with folding in-tub seats at the head end of the tub, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.3 shall be provided.

607.4.3.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10

inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 30 inches (610mm) minimum in length, located 18 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.3.2.

Exception: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

607.4.3.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.3.2.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

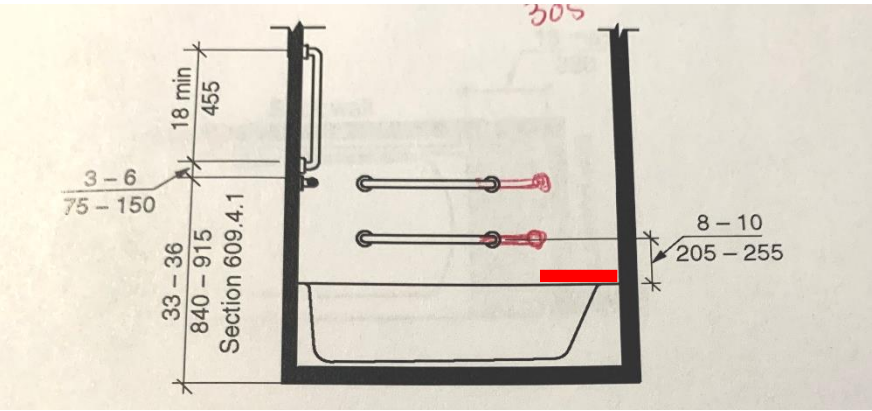


FIGURE 607.4.3(A)
GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS – ELEVATION

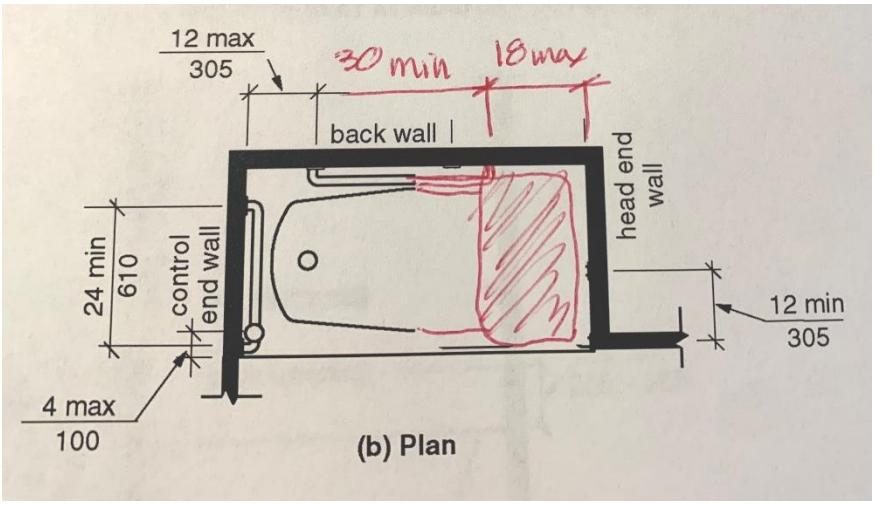


FIGURE 607.4.3(B)
GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS –PLAN

(Note: The intent is to be coordinated with the modification for controls for all tubs.)
607.5 Controls. The operable parts of the on/off water floor, temperature and diverter controls ~~Controls, other than drain stoppers~~, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Such Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

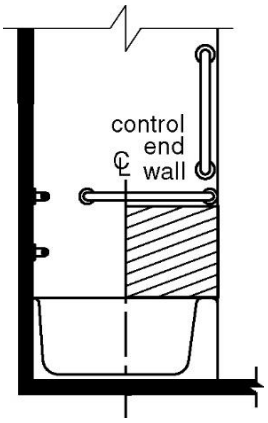


FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

(Note: The intent is to be coordinated with the modification for hand showers for all tubs.)
607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length~~,~~ that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have ~~a control with~~ a nonpositive shut-off feature. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

A mount to hold the hand shower shall be provided and located in accordance with Section 607.6.1 or 607.6.2 as applicable. ~~Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.~~

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and the mount can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

607.6.1 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For a bathtub with a moveable in-tub seat, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

2. Located on the control wall opposite the seat and located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

607.6.2 Bathtubs with folding seats. For a bathtub with a folding seat, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.
2. Located on the back wall 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

   Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

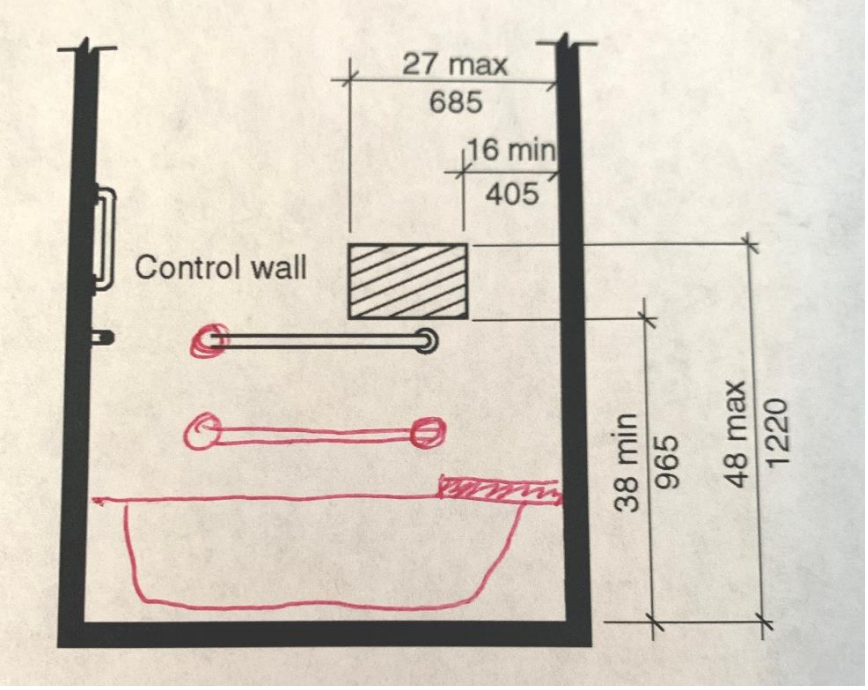


FIGURE 607.6.2
LOCATION OF MOUNT FOR BATHTUB WITH FOLDING SEAT

607.7 Bathtub enclosures. Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the bathtub.

607.8 Water temperature. Bathtubs shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.1 General. Grab bars in toilet or bathing facilities shall comply with Section 609.

609.2 Cross section. Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.

Figure 609.2 Size of Grab Bars

609.2.1 Circular cross section. Grab bars with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1¼ inch (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

609.2.2 Noncircular cross section. Grab bars with a noncircular cross section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall ¼ inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1½-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.

Figure 609.3 Spacing of Grab Bars

609.4 Position of grab bars.

609.4.1 General. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3.

1. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1, ~~or~~ 607.4.2.1 or 607.4.3.1.
2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2, 607.4.3.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.
3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

609.4.2 Position of children's grab bars. At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.11, grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. A vertical grab bar shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located between 21 inches (535 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor and with the centerline of the bar located between 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear wall.

Figure 609.4.2(A) Positions of Children's Grab Bars - Side-wall View

Figure 609.4.2(B) Positions of Children's Grab Bars - Rear-wall View

609.5 Surface hazards. Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded.

609.6 Fittings. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.
609.7 Installation and configuration. Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space. Horizontal and vertical grab bars shall be permitted to be separate bars, a single piece bar, or combination thereof.
609.8 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

SECTION 610
SEATS

610.1 General. Seats in bathtubs and shower compartments shall comply with Section 610.

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. Bathtub seats shall be rectangular in shape.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement.

FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1
BATHTUB SEATS
REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Bathtubs with transfer platforms. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2
~~BATHTUB SEATS~~
~~SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

610.2.3 Folding in-tub seats. Folding in-tub seats shall be mounted on the head wall. The rear edge of a seat shall be 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the seat shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. The side edge of the seat shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall.

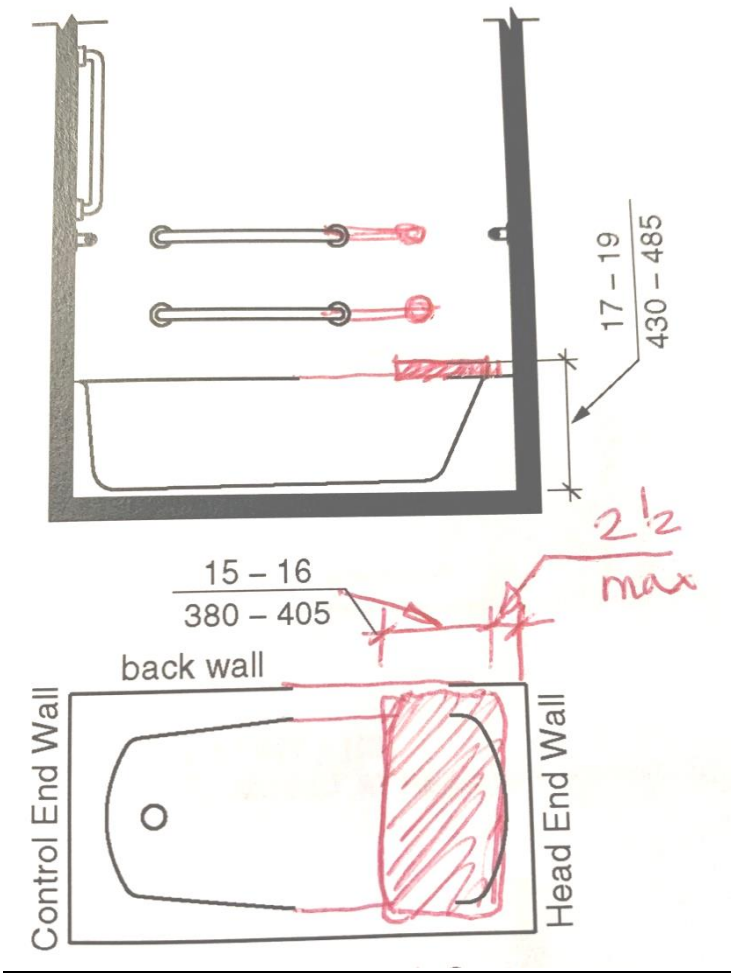


FIGURE 610.2.3
BATHTUB SEATS
FOLDING IN-TUB SEAT PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

610.3 Shower compartment seats. The height of shower compartment seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.

610.3.1 Rectangular seats. The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum

from the back wall of a transfer-type shower and 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the control wall of a roll-in-type shower.

Figure 610.3.1 Rectangular Shower Compartment Seats

610.3.2 L-shaped seats. The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2½ inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (560 mm) minimum and 23 inches (585 mm) maximum from the main seat wall.

Figure 610.3.2 L-shaped Shower Compartment Seats

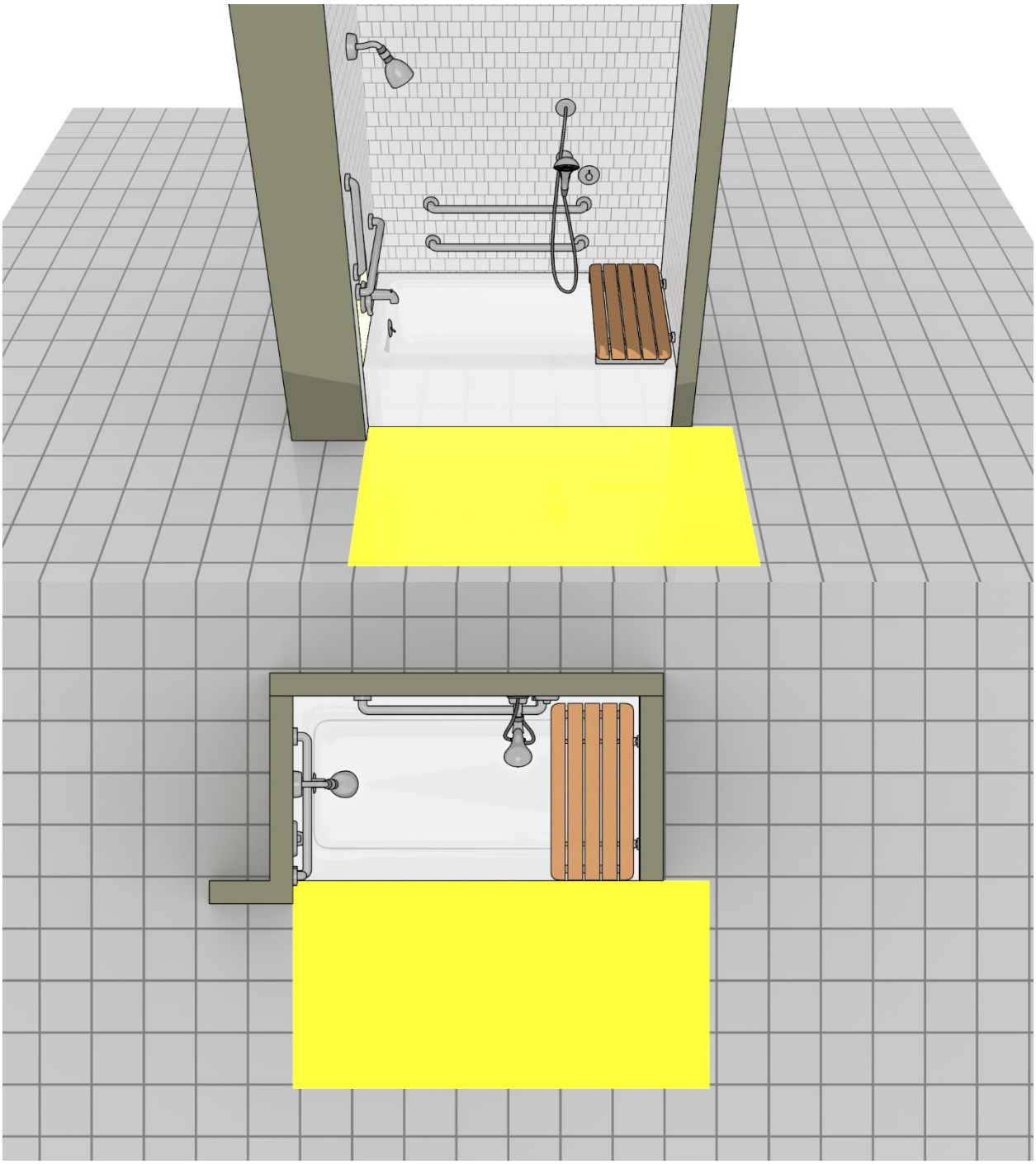
610.4 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the seat, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

Reason:

Purpose: Allow for foldable seat that is attached at the head end of tub. By being mounted this reduces the chance of the seat slipping and makes sure that the seat does not disappear from the room. This also allow for the person to put down the seat themselves rather than needed staff to come and install the portable seat. This should improve safety when using the seat. This also provides a back rest for a person using the tub. Some of the task group felt that providing for a back rest and having the seat overlap the tub so that it could be used for showering was an improvement for accessibility, even without being able to adjust the water while showering.

Steps. –
For consistency with terminology for showers, separate fixed seats/transfer platforms and folding seats.
Clearance to have similar transfer requirements as transfer shower for lining up back of seat with back of chair.
Exception - For existing bathrooms allow for this installation without increasing size of room.
Set grab bar criteria – same as other current options at front. Extend back wall grab bars to be within reach of seat.
Set up criteria for turning on water and temperature from outside tub.
Set up area to reach shower hand held shower mount. Locate in front folding seat since you cannot reach the control wall.
Set criteria for seat similar to shower requirements.

There were many discussions during the task group calls about this option not allowing for control of the water temperature. This would allow for the ability to turn the shower head on and off from the seat. Water use restrictions do not allow for two separate sets of controls. Since this is a bathtub, if you move the controls to the back wall you then have to consider the spout being in front of the seat and that reaching over the tub would be a safety issue for persons trying to turn on the water from outside the tub.



Committee Action: Approval As Modified 24-3-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

See the replacement proposal above to see the changes in context. The Report of Hearing will only indicate the changes to text and titles of figures. Revisions to the figures is the responsibility of the Editorial committee. It was noted that the task group did not have sufficient time to fully update the graphics submitted.

This additional modification was proposed to the exception in Section 607.2. This was made part of the replacement proposal.

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a transfer platform or folding in-tub seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

Exception: In an existing bathtub where bathroom is not reconfigured and a folding in-tub seat is installed, the additional ~~the~~ 12 inches (305 mm) transfer clearance beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub is not required if it would result in a reconfiguration of the space.

The full modification is as follows:

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a ~~permanent~~ ~~seat~~ transfer platform or folding in-tub seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

Exception: In an existing bathtub where bathroom is not reconfigured and a folding in-tub seat is installed, the additional 12 inches (305 mm) transfer clearance beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub is not required if it would result in a reconfiguration of the space.

FIGURE 607.2(B) CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH ~~SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM AT HEAD END OF TUB

FIGURE 607.2(C)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB

607.3 Seat. A ~~permanent~~ ~~seat~~ ~~at the head end of the bathtub~~ folding in-tub seat at the head end of the tub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats and transfer platforms shall comply with Section 610.

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

607.4.1 Bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms. For bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.1(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Elevation
Figure 607.4.1(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Plan

607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For bathtubs with removable in-tub seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.2(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats – Elevation
Figure 607.4.2(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats - Plan

607.4.3 Bathtubs with folding in-tub seats. For bathtubs with folding in-tub seats at the head end of the tub, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.3 shall be provided.

607.4.3.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 30 inches (610mm) minimum in length, located 18 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.3.2.

Exception: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

607.4.3.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.3.2.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

FIGURE 607.4.3(A) GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS – ELEVATION

FIGURE 607.4.3(B) GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS – PLAN

(Note: The intent is to be coordinated with the modification for controls for all tubs.)

607.5 Controls. The operable parts of the on/off water floor, temperature and diverter controls ~~Controls, other than drain stoppers~~, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Such Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

(Note: The intent is to be coordinated with the modification for hand showers for all tubs.)

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length~~,~~ that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have ~~a control with~~ a nonpositive shut-off feature. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

A mount to hold the hand shower shall be provided and located in accordance with Section 607.6.1 or 607.6.2 as applicable. ~~Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.~~

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and the mount can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

607.6.1 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For a bathtub with a moveable in-tub seat, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the tub floor.
2. Located on the control wall opposite the seat and located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

607.6.2 Bathtubs with folding seats. For a bathtub with a folding seat, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the tub floor.
2. Located on the back wall 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

FIGURE 607.6.2 LOCATION OF MOUNT FOR BATHTUB WITH FOLDING SEAT

609.4.1 General. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3.

1. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1, ~~or~~ 607.4.2.1 or 607.4.3.1.
2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2, 607.4.3.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.
3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. Bathtub seats shall be rectangular in shape.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement.

FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1 BATHTUB SEATS REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Bathtubs with transfer platforms. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2 ~~BATHTUB SEATS SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

610.2.3 Folding in-tub seats. Folding in-tub seats shall be mounted on the head wall. The rear edge of a seat shall be 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the seat shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. The side edge of the seat shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall.

FIGURE 610.2.3 BATHTUB SEATS FOLDING IN-TUB SEAT PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

Committee Reason: The option for a folding seat at the head end of a tub provides some definite advantages over the removeable seat. By being mounted this reduces the chance of the seat slipping and makes sure that the seat does not disappear from the room. This also allow for the person to put down the seat themselves rather than needed staff to come and install the portable seat. This also provides a back rest for a person using the tub. Some of the task group felt that providing for a back rest and having the seat overlap the tub so that it could be used for showering was an improvement for accessibility, even without being able to adjust the water while showering. The proposal does put the hand shower mount within reach of the seat. Since

there was some concern about the limited leg space with the removeable seat close to the control wall, this option also provides space for someone that needed more leg room.
There was discussion about the scoping for the three options for bathtubs. The task group stated that the intent was for no change to the scoping and to allow for any of the three options.

607.4.3-ANDERSON.doc

Report for *06-45– 2021*

Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-3-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

See the replacement proposal above to see the changes in context. The Report of Hearing will only indicate the changes to text and titles of figures. Revisions to the figures is the responsibility of the Editorial committee. It was noted that the task group did not have sufficient time to fully update the graphics submitted.

607.2 Clearance. A clearance in front of bathtubs extending the length of the bathtub and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided. Where a ~~permanent seat~~ transfer platform or folding in-tub seat is provided at the head end of the bathtub, the clearance shall extend 12 inches (305 mm) minimum beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub.

Exception: In an existing bathtub where bathroom is not reconfigured and a folding in-tub seat is installed, the additional 12 inches (305 mm) transfer clearance beyond the wall at the head end of the bathtub is not required if it would result in a reconfiguration of the space.

FIGURE 607.2(B) CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH ~~SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM AT HEAD END OF TUB

FIGURE 607.2(C)
CLEARANCE FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB

607.3 Seat. A ~~permanent seat at the head end of the bathtub~~ folding in-tub seat at the head end of the tub or a removable in-tub seat shall be provided. Seats and transfer platforms shall comply with Section 610.

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

607.4.1 Bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms. For bathtubs with ~~permanent seats~~ transfer platforms, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.1(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Elevation
Figure 607.4.1(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with ~~Seat~~ Transfer Platforms at Head End of Tub – Plan

607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For bathtubs with removable in-tub seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.2(A) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats – Elevation
Figure 607.4.2(B) Grab Bars for Bathtubs with Removable In-tub Seats - Plan

607.4.3 Bathtubs with folding in-tub seats. For bathtubs with folding in-tub seats at the head end of the tub, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.3 shall be provided.

607.4.3.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 30 inches (610mm) minimum in length, located 18 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.3.2.

Exception: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

607.4.3.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning near the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.3.2.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

FIGURE 607.4.3(A) GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS – ELEVATION

FIGURE 607.4.3(B) GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS –PLAN

(Note: The intent is to be coordinated with the modification for controls for all tubs.)
607.5 Controls. The operable parts of the on/off water floor, temperature and diverter controls ~~Controls, other than drain stoppers~~, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the

bathtub. Such Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

(Note: The intent is to be coordinated with the modification for hand showers for all tubs.)

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length~~,~~ that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have ~~a control with~~ a nonpositive shut-off feature. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

A mount to hold the hand shower shall be provided and located in accordance with Section 607.6.1 or 607.6.2 as applicable. ~~Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.~~

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and the mount can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

607.6.1 Bathtubs with removable in-tub seats. For a bathtub with a moveable in-tub seat, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the tub floor.
2. Located on the control wall opposite the seat and located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

607.6.2 Bathtubs with folding seats. For a bathtub with a folding seat, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the tub floor.
2. Located on the back wall 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

FIGURE 607.6.2 LOCATION OF MOUNT FOR BATHTUB WITH FOLDING SEAT

609.4.1 General. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3.

1. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1, ~~or~~ 607.4.2.1 or 607.4.3.1.
2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2, 607.4.3.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.
3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. Bathtub seats shall be rectangular in shape.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement.

FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1 BATHTUB SEATS REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Bathtubs with transfer platforms. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. ~~Permanent seats~~ Transfer platforms shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2 ~~BATHTUB SEATS SEAT~~ TRANSFER PLATFORM PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

610.2.3 Folding in-tub seats. Folding in-tub seats shall be mounted on the head wall. The rear edge of a seat shall be 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the seat shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth. The side edge of the seat shall be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall.

FIGURE 610.2.3 BATHTUB SEATS FOLDING IN-TUB SEAT PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

Committee Reason: The option for a folding seat at the head end of a tub provides some definite advantages over the removeable seat. By being mounted this reduces the chance of the seat slipping and makes sure that the seat does not disappear from the room. This also allow for the person to put down the seat themselves rather than needed staff to come and install the portable seat. This also provides a back rest for a person using the tub. Some of the task group felt that providing for a back rest and having the seat overlap the tub so that it could be used for showering was an improvement for accessibility, even without being able to adjust the water while showering. The proposal does put the hand shower mount within reach of the seat. Since there was some concern about the limited leg space with the removeable seat close to the control wall, this option also provides space for someone that needed more leg room.

There was discussion about the scoping for the three options for bathtubs. The task group stated that the intent was for no change to the scoping and to allow for any of the three options.

PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT:

Proponent:

Desired Action:

Modification:

Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT

Modification (if any):

Report for *06-45– 2021*		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-46 – 2021
607.5, 607.5.1(New), 607.5.2(New), Figure 607.5, 607.5.1(New)

Proponent: Hope Reed, ADA Accessibility Consultant, representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided at two locations, on an end wall and the back wall. Back walls controls shall comply with Section 607.5.1. End wall controls shall comply with Section 607.5.2.

607.5.1 Back wall controls. Controls shall be located on the back wall at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the bathtub floor and 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

Note: Add two new figures with dimensions to match text for rear wall controls.

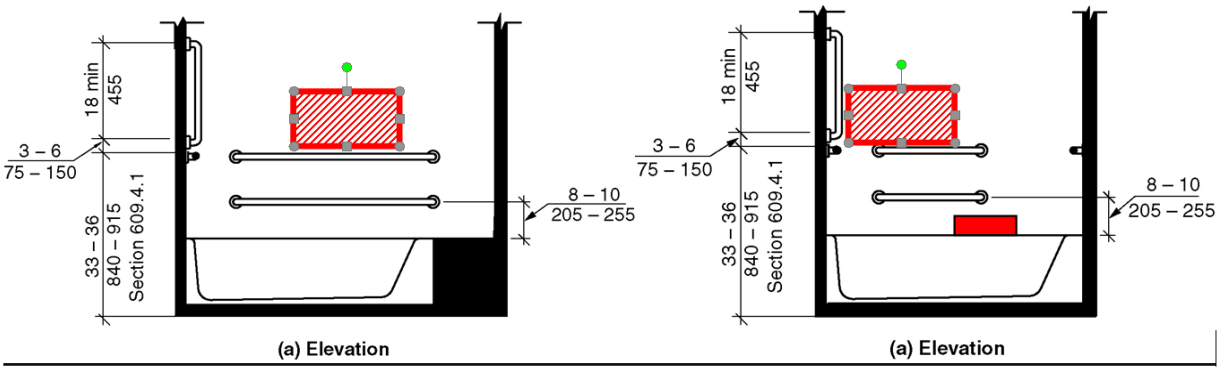


FIGURE 607.5.1
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS ON BACK WALLS

607.5.2 End wall controls. Controls shall be located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with 309.4.

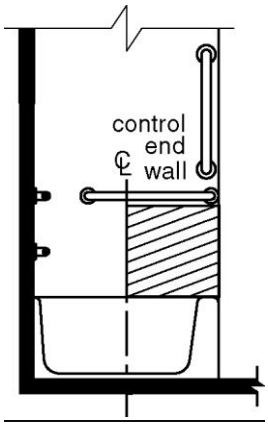


FIGURE ~~607.5~~ 607.5.2
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS ON END WALL

REASON: *Provide controls* for people using the *permanent seat* and those who need to stand using *the permanently fixed shower head* located at the foot end. Serve varying levels of disability and allow a standard showering set up for care giver, spouse, and friends who will be sharing one bathroom with a person who uses the shower seat. Controls at both locations are important for safety by reducing the need to turn on a wet shower floor.

06-46 – 2021 modification

607.5, 607.5.1(New), 607.5.2(New), Figure 607.5, 607.5.1(New)

Proponent: Hope Reed, ADA Accessibility Consultant, representing self

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided ~~at two locations~~, on an end wall and the back wall. Back walls controls shall comply with Section 607.5.1. End wall controls shall comply with Section 607.5.2. Controls shall comply with 309.4.

607.5.1 Back wall controls. ~~Controls~~ Diverters that control water to the hand shower and a mount to hold the hand shower shall be located on the back wall at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the bathtub floor and 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

Note: Add two new figures with dimensions to match text for rear wall controls.

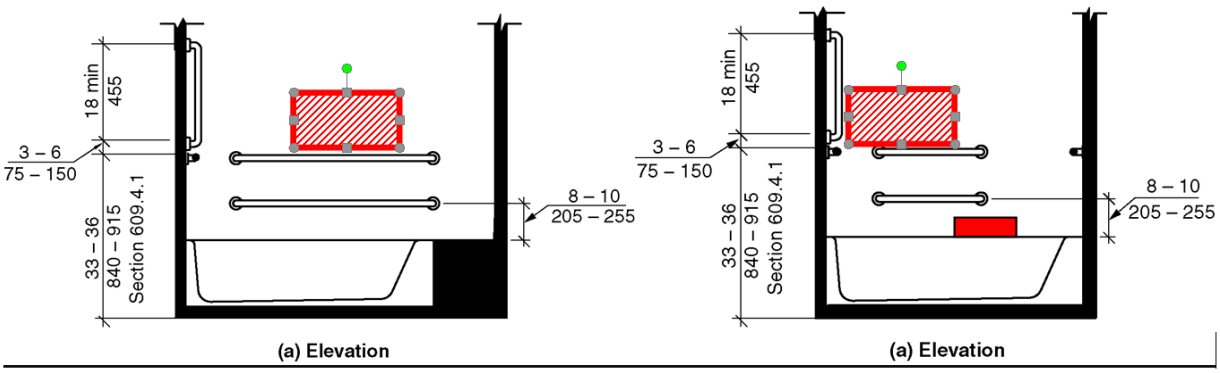


FIGURE 607.5.1
LOCATION OF BATHTUB ~~CONTROLS~~ DIVERTERS AND MOUNTS ON BACK WALLS

607.5.2 End wall controls. Controls shall be located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. ~~Controls shall comply with 309.4.~~

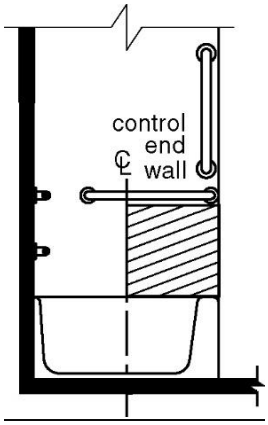


FIGURE 607.5.2
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS ON END WALL

REASON: The plumbing regulations do not allow for two sets of controls in the same tub enclosure due to water use limitations. Allowing for the shower diverter and a mount to hold the hand shower on the back wall within reach of the seat would allow the person on the seat to turn the water on and off.

Committee Action: D 24-2-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee felt that the hand shower on the back wall was not needed for the removable seat since you could position the seat to have access to the controls and hand shower on the back wall. There were concerns raised about the seat past the head of the tub not being a place someone could shower. If the purpose is for someone to use this transfer platform as a tub instead of a shower, the hand shower is not needed on the back wall.

607.5-REED.doc

Report for *06-46– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-2-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee felt that the hand shower on the back wall was not needed for the removable seat since you could position the seat to have access to the controls and hand shower on the back wall. There were concerns raised about the seat past the head of the tub not being a place someone could shower. If the purpose is for someone to use this transfer platform as a tub instead of a shower, the hand shower is not needed on the back wall.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-47 – 2021
607.5, 608.4, 608.4.1, 608.4.2, 608.4.3

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. Temperature and on-or-off flow controls for bathtubs or combination tub-or-showers, and controls for shower diversion, ~~Controls other than drain stoppers,~~ shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Such controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

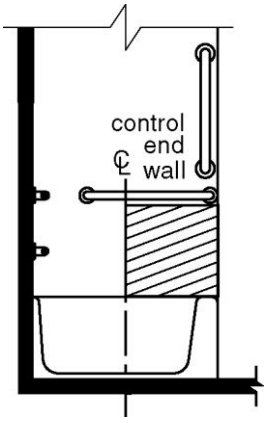


FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.4 Controls ~~and hand showers~~. Controls for temperature and on-or-off flow controls for showers and where provided, controls for shower diversion, ~~and hand showers~~ shall comply with Sections 608.4.1 through Section 608.4.3 and Section 309.4.

608.4.1 Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located in accordance with all of the following:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
3. 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening.

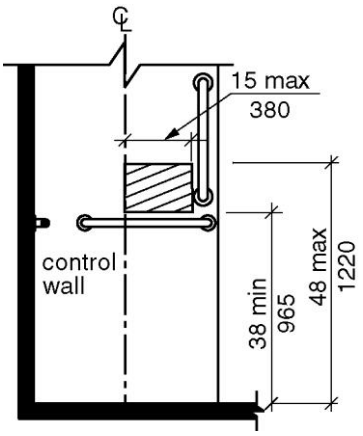


FIGURE 608.4.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

608.4.2 Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located above the seat. The controls ~~and hand showers~~ shall be located in accordance with all of ~~according to~~ the following:

1. On the back wall,
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

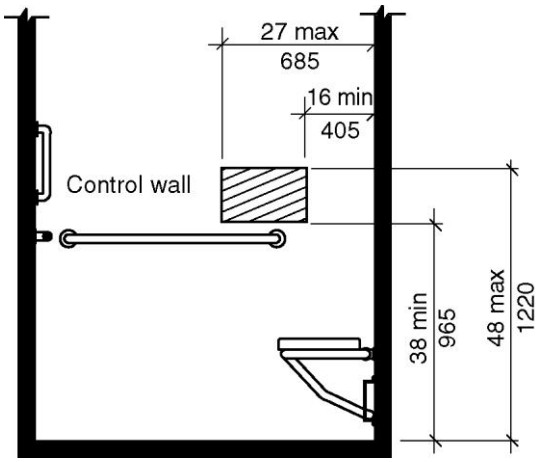
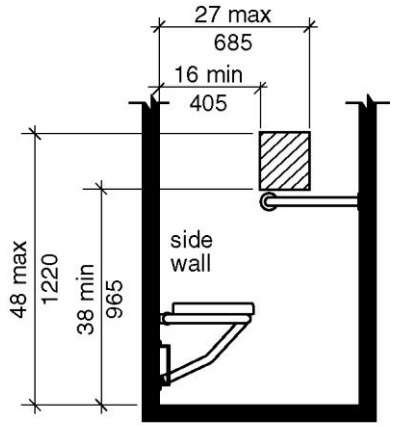


FIGURE 608.4.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

608.4.3 Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located at a height of not less than 38 inches (965 mm) and not greater than 48 inches above the shower floor, and in accordance with one of the following:

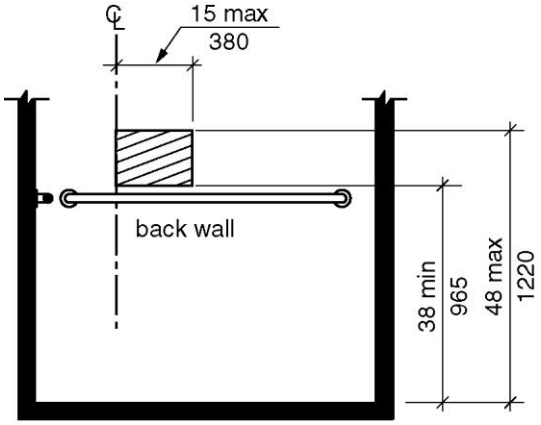
~~1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and~~

1. ~~2.~~ Where the controls ~~and hand shower~~ are located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat wall.~~, or~~
2. ~~3.~~ Where the controls ~~and hand shower~~ are located on the back wall opposite the seat, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the transfer space.



(a)
Side Wall
(Elevation)

FIGURE 608.4.3(A)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION - END WALL – ELEVATION



(b)
Back Wall
(Elevation)

FIGURE 608.4.3(B)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION - CONTROL WALL - ELEVATION

REASON: As shown in Figures 607.5, 608.4.1, 608.4.2, 608.4.3(A) and 608.4.3(B) below, inspectors have on occasion enforced that the means to hold the hand shower be located in the

shaded area along with other controls. The proposed code change clarifies that only temperature, on-or-off flow and shower diversion controls are required to be located in the shaded area as it impossible in most instances to include all of these controls along with the means to hold the hand shower in such small spaces. Also, the proposed modifications make it clear that only temperature, on-or-off flow controls and shower diversion controls are required to meet the requirements of Section 309.4. It should be noted that requirements for hand showers are already addressed in Sections 607.6 and 608.5.

06-47 – 2021 Replacement

607.5, 608.4, 608.4.1, 608.4.2, 608.4.3

Proponent: Accessible Bathing Task Group

Replace with the following:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. ~~Controls other than drain stoppers,~~ The operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Such controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

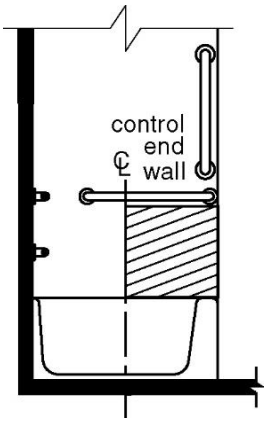


Figure 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length~~,~~ that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have ~~a control with~~ a nonpositive shut-off feature. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

A mount to hold the hand shower shall be provided and located on the control wall at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the tub floor. ~~Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.~~

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and the mount can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

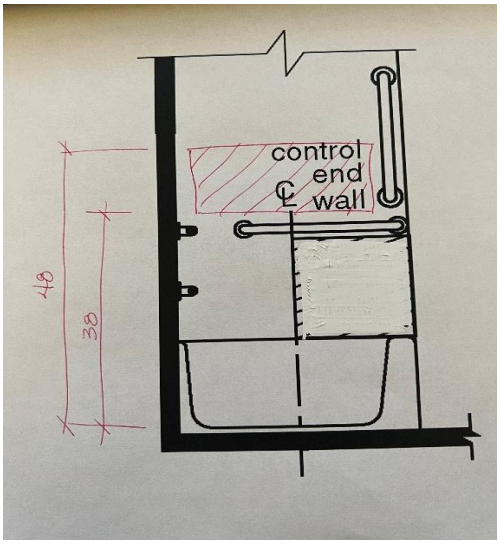


Figure 607.6
LOCATION OF BATHTUB HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.4 Controls ~~and hand showers.~~ The operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor Controls ~~and hand showers~~ shall comply with Section 309.4 and Sections ~~608.4~~ 608.4.1, 608.4.2 or 608.4.3 as applicable ~~and 309.4~~.

608.4.1 Controls in Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located in accordance with all of the following:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor~~, and~~

3. 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening.

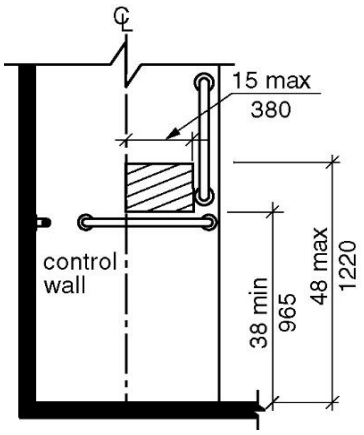


FIGURE 608.4.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION

608.4.2 Controls in Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers, the operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall ~~not be located above the seat. Controls and hand showers shall~~ be located in accordance with all of ~~according~~ to the following:

1. On the back wall~~,~~ .
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor ~~and~~
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

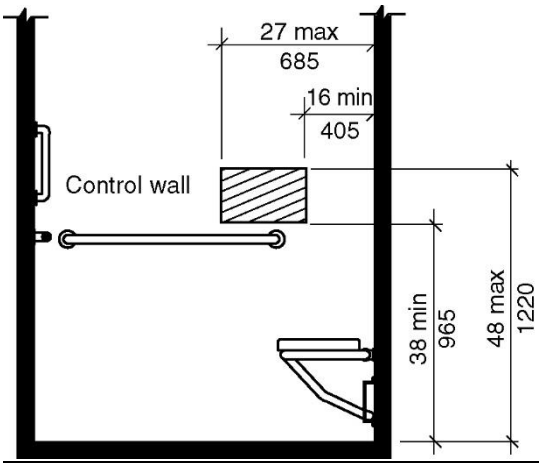
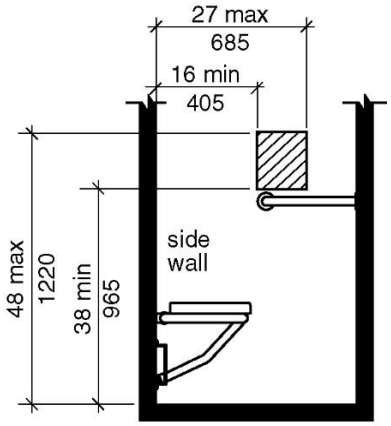


FIGURE 608.4.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION

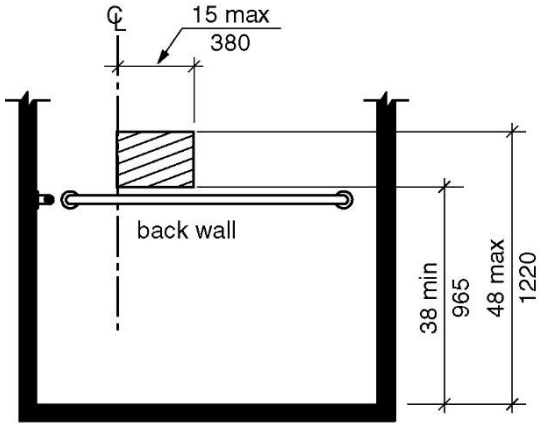
608.4.3 Controls in Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls and ~~hand shower~~ shall be located in accordance with the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor~~, and~~
2. Where the controls ~~and hand shower~~ are located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat ~~wall~~. ~~, or~~
3. Where the controls ~~and hand shower~~ are located on the back wall opposite the seat, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the transfer space.



(a)
Side Wall
(Elevation)

FIGURE 608.4.3(A)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~
LOCATION - END WALL – ELEVATION



(b)
Back Wall
(Elevation)

FIGURE 608.4.3(B)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION - CONTROL WALL – ELEVATION

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have ~~a control with~~ a nonpositive shut-off feature. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

A ~~means~~ mount to hold the hand shower ~~wand while in the on or off position~~ shall be provided and located in accordance with Sections 608.5.1, 608.5.2 or 608.5.3 as applicable. ~~at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.~~

608.5.1 Hand Showers mounts in Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.
2. Where the mount is located on the back wall, the mount shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.
3. Where the mount located on the control wall opposite the seat, the mount shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat.
   Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

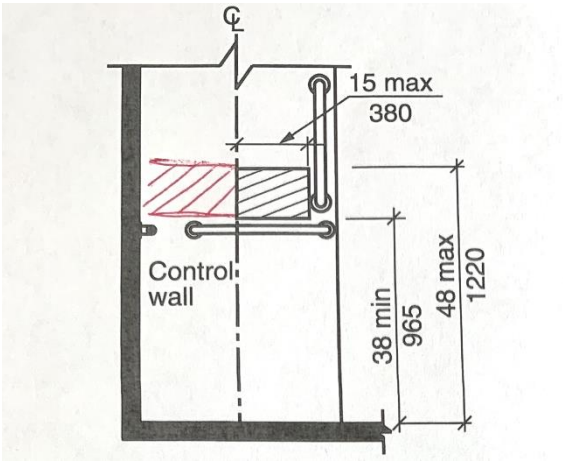


FIGURE 608.5.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION

608.5.2 Hand Showers mounts in Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

2. Located on the back wall 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

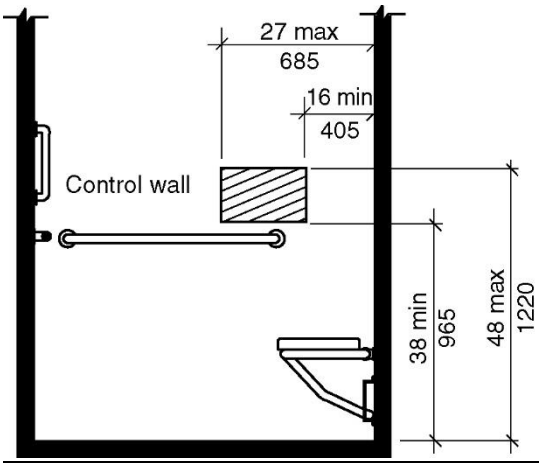


FIGURE 608.4.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION

608.5.3 Hand Showers mounts in Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.
2. Where the mount is located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the mount shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.
3. Where the mount is located on the back wall opposite the seat, the mount shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

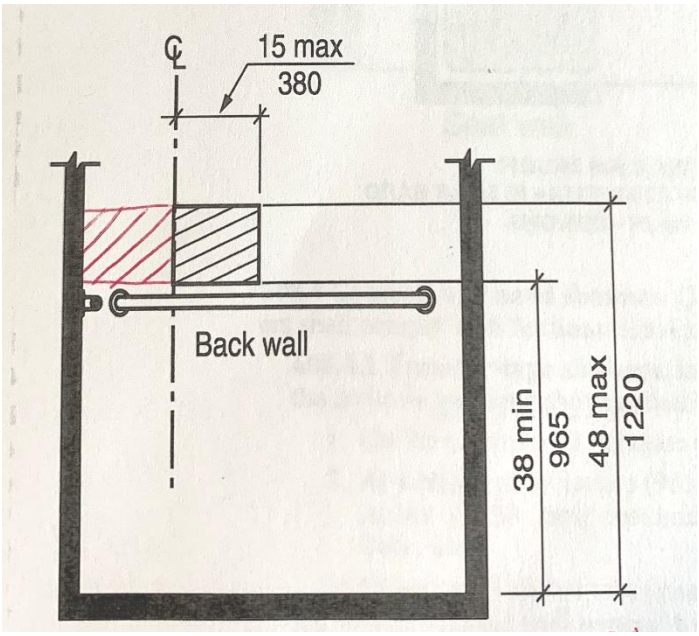


FIGURE 608.4.3(C) ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION - END WALL – ELEVATION

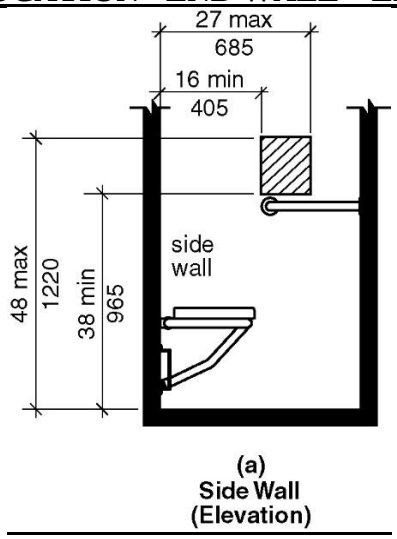


FIGURE 608.4.3(D)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION - CONTROL WALL – ELEVATION

SECTION 609

GRAB BARS

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and ~~shower~~ operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls, shower or bathtub fittings, including the vertical bar for the adjustable mount for the hand shower, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall ¼ inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1½-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.

Reason: The Accessible Bathing Task Group took a look at all the proposal for clarification of the location of the controls and the requirements for hand showers used in tubs and showers. This modification does not address proposals that reduced or increased the size of the control area.

The work group feels that this will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68
06-53 – Mazz modification to Exception 2
06-54, 06-55, 06-69, 06-70 – except for the part about allow adjustment of spray direction
06-67 - Could be adding additional control area for transfer showers. Should be expanded to alternate roll-in showers.
The following would need coordination –
06-61- If passes, coordination needed with controls and hand showers.
06-62 - If passes, coordination needed with controls and hand showers.

Assumptions - In other than roll-in showers, the water is turned on before you transfer, so access to the controls is from the transfer space. In the roll-in shower access to controls is from the seat. The location of the mount to hold the hand shower is convenient to the person when they are on the seat.

- The current text is inconsistent in language. This modification uses consistent terminology in tubs and showers.
- The current text is inconsistent for what is included in the control area (sometimes including hand showers) – to address this the task group is recommending a split between requirements for controls, and requirements for hand showers and the supporting mount.

- There were question about what controls or included – to address this the task group is recommending "operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls". Some tub/shower controls have temperature
- There were questions about what part of the controls had to be within the area specified – to address this the committee is suggesting "operable parts" so you do not have to include back plate escutcheons.
- There are questions about if the hand shower has to serve as the fixed shower head or a tub/shower could have a fixed head and a hand shower with a diverter to switch from one to the other – to address this the task group is recommending "A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted."
- The hand shower consists of the hose, the shower head and the non-positive shut off valve. For clarification, this modification specifies a mount to hold the hand shower within reach of the seat and above the grab bar. Current language does exist to allow for an adjustable height mount on a vertical grab bar – this modification clarifies the text and moves it to an exception.
- Current language says the vertical bar shall not obstruct the grab bars, but this was open to interpretation - The general provisions for grab bars (609.3) has been revised to clarify how close that vertical bar can be to grab bars.

Committee Action: Approval as Modified 26-0-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): See the replacement proposal above.

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that this modification will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.
This proposal will coordinate the requirements and terminology for controls and hand showers across tubs and showers. The revision for which controls are expected within the specified area, and that the operable parts of those controls need to be within this area is a good clarification. The proposal clarifies that a fixed shower head in addition to the hand shower is permitted. The committee felt that requirements for a hand shower mount was always intended, and the revisions clarify that the mount for the hand shower is within reach of the seat. The allowance for an adjustable mount on a vertical grab bar is clarified with the relocation to the exception, the rewording and the added text in Section 609.3 Exception 1**.**

607.5 THOMPSON.doc

Report for *06-47– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): See the replacement proposal above. **607.5 Controls.** ~~Controls other than drain stoppers,~~ The operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Such controls shall comply with Section 309.4.		

Report for *06-47– 2021*

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length~~,~~ that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have ~~a control with~~ a nonpositive shut-off feature. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

A mount to hold the hand shower shall be provided and located on the control wall at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the tub floor. ~~Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.~~

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and the mount can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

608.4 Controls ~~and hand showers~~. The operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor Controls ~~and hand showers~~ shall comply with Section 309.4 and Sections ~~608.4~~ 608.4.1, 608.4.2 or 608.4.3 as applicable ~~and 309.4~~.

608.4.1 Controls in Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located in accordance with all of the following:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor~~, and~~
3. 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening.

FIGURE 608.4.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION

608.4.2 Controls in Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers, the operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall ~~not be located above the seat. Controls and hand showers shall~~ be located in accordance with all of ~~according to~~ the following:

1. On the back wall~~, .~~
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor ~~and~~
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

FIGURE 608.4.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION

608.4.3 Controls in Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the operable parts for the on/off water flow, temperature and divertor controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located in accordance with the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor~~, and~~
2. Where the controls ~~and hand shower~~ are located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat ~~wall. , or~~
3. Where the controls ~~and hand shower~~ are located on the back wall opposite the seat, the controls ~~and hand shower~~ shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the transfer space.

FIGURE 608.4.3(A)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION - END WALL – ELEVATION

FIGURE 608.4.3(B)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION - CONTROL WALL – ELEVATION

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have ~~a control with~~ a nonpositive shut-off feature. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

A ~~means~~ mount to hold the hand shower ~~wand while in the on or off position~~ shall be provided and located in accordance with Sections 608.5.1, 608.5.2 or 608.5.3 as applicable. ~~at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.~~

608.5.1 Hand Showers mounts in Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.
2. Where the mount is located on the back wall, the mount shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.
3. Where the mount is located on the control wall opposite the seat, the mount shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

FIGURE 608.5.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION

608.5.2 Hand Showers mounts in Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.
2. Located on the back wall 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

Exception: The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

FIGURE 608.4.2

Report for *06-47– 2021*

STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION

608.5.3 Hand Showers mounts in Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in accordance with to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.
2. Where the mount is located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the mount shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.
3. Where the mount is located on the back wall opposite the seat, the mount shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat.
    a. **Exception:** The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

FIGURE 608.4.3(C) ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION - END WALL – ELEVATION

FIGURE 608.4.3(D)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER MOUNT LOCATION - CONTROL WALL – ELEVATION

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that this modification will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68. This proposal will coordinate the requirements and terminology for controls and hand showers across tubs and showers. The revision for which controls are expected within the specified area, and that the operable parts of those controls need to be within this area is a good clarification. The proposal clarifies that a fixed shower head in addition to the hand shower is permitted. The committee felt that requirements for a hand shower mount was always intended, and the revisions clarify that the mount for the hand shower is within reach of the seat. The allowance for an adjustable mount on a vertical grab bar is clarified with the relocation to the exception, the rewording and the added text in Section 609.3 Exception 1**.**

PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-48 – 2021
607.5, 608.4, 608.4.1, 608.4.2, 608.4.3

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. The operable portion of controls ~~Controls~~, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

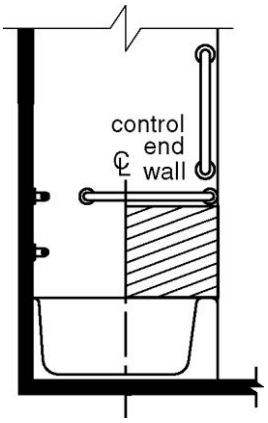


FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.4 Controls and hand showers. The operable portion of controls ~~Controls~~ and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.4 and 309.4.

608.4.1 Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the operable portion of controls and hand shower shall be located:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
3. 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening.

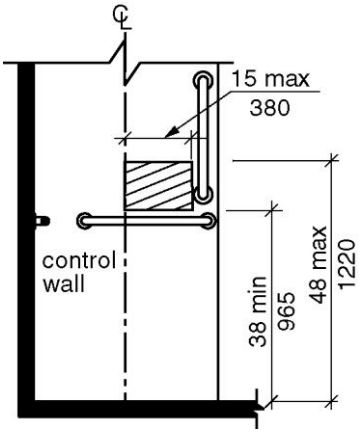


FIGURE 608.4.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

608.4.2 Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers, the operable portion of controls and hand shower shall not be located above the seat. Controls and hand showers shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall,
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

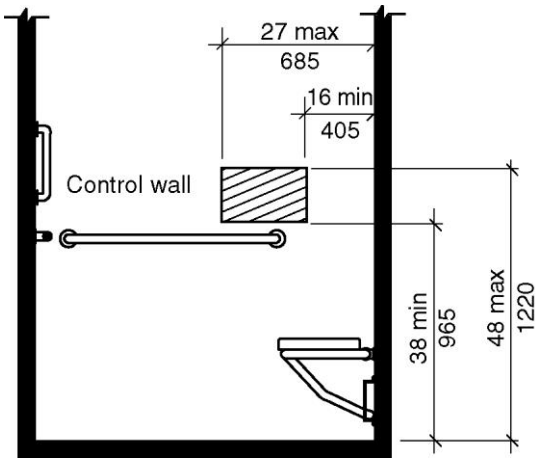
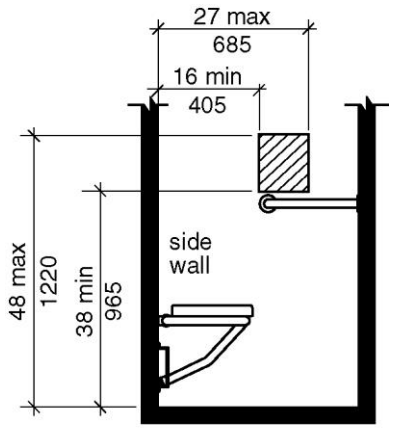


FIGURE 608.4.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

608.4.3 Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the operable portion of controls and hand shower shall be located

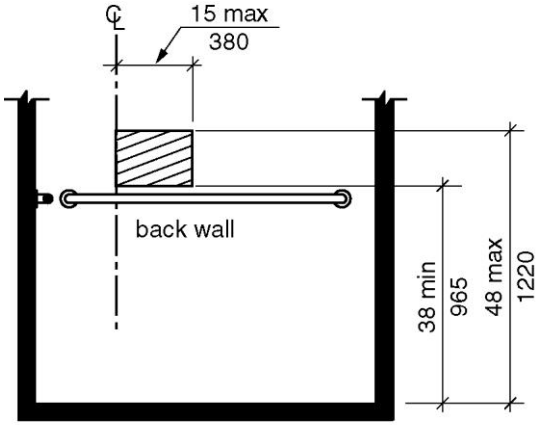
1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
2. Where the controls and hand shower are located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the operable portion of controls and hand shower shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat wall, or

3. Where the controls and hand shower are located on the back wall opposite the seat, the operable portion of controls and hand shower shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the transfer space.



(a)
Side Wall
(Elevation)

FIGURE 608.4.3(A)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION - END WALL – ELEVATION



(b)
Back Wall
(Elevation)

FIGURE 608.4.3(B)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION - CONTROL WALL - ELEVATION

REASON: This is somewhat a continuation of the discussions the committee has previously had regarding how the location of controls is to be done. The intent of this proposal is to provide

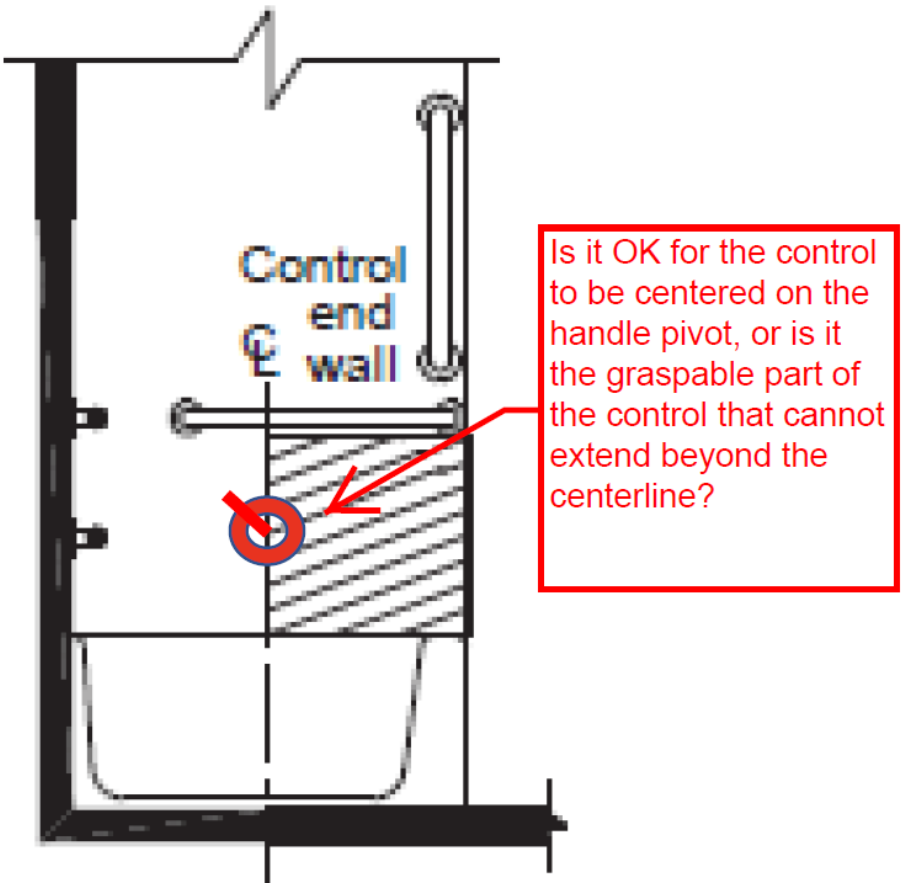
clarity and eliminate some of the debate or confusion that arises when the standard is not clearly stating the requirement. See the attached figures for some illustrations of the problem.

If a control is located at the centerline or slightly inside of the accepted space, is that adequate or because the handle of the control may rotate to be outside of the space does that make the control noncompliant? In addition, is the entire control expected to be within the space, or is it only the actual operable part of the control that must be located within the space? We have received inquiries from both designers and jurisdictions where a portion of a control – such as the trim piece behind the handle – extends outside of the designated location. While it could be argued that the trim piece is not the "control", some people have viewed it as all being a part of the control element. And in the case of the lever faucet handle shown, is it only the pivot point that must be located within the space, or should either the entire length or a minimum length of the handle be expected to be entirely within the space?

Realistically when you look at the normal reach depths allowed by the standard, a 24-inch reach depth is permitted. Where dealing with a typical 30 or 32 inch tub (or a 36" transfer shower) a control which is centered would still be within the reach range even if the operable portion of the handle spun outside of the designated control area shown within the standard. While the intent of having the control located toward the open side of the tub or shower is to permit someone to reach in and operate the control without getting wet, a control located at the centerline will typically make the same allowance and still will be located within the normally accepted reach range. From that standpoint this concern about whether the control is located completely within the designated space or not seems like much ado about nothing. However, where this issue comes up in the field, especially after the plumbing has been placed in the project, the lack of clarity within the standard causes a lot of unneeded debate.

This proposal does not argue that one option is correct or more appropriate, it simply is trying to clarify the requirement so that the language is applied more consistently and designers and enforcers have a better understanding of what the expectation is.

I elected to place the revised requirement for the showers into Section 608.4 so that it applied to all three types of showers instead of modifying each provision separately. Locating the requirement in Section 608.4 will apply to Item 3 of Section 608.4.1 for transfer showers, Item 3 of Section 608.4.2 for Standard roll-in showers, as well as Item 3 of Section 608.4.3 for alternate roll-in showers. If the committee prefers they could modify any or all of those three shower sections versus relying on a general section that would be applicable to all three shower types.


Control
end
℄
wall
Is it OK for the control to be centered on the handle pivot, or is it the graspable part of the control that cannot extend beyond the centerline?

Committee Action: Disapproval 26-0-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.

607.5 et al-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-48– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		

Report for *06-48– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-49 – 2021
607.5, 607.6, 609.3, Figures 607.6(A)(New), 607.6(B)(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. The on/off and temperature and diverter ~~Controls, other than drain stoppers~~, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower head shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. A means to hold the hand shower while in the on or off position shall be provided and located within the forward reach of the seat and at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the tub floor. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

Exception: Where the means to hold the hand shower head is adjustable on a vertical bar, the vertical bar is permitted to extend above 48 inches.

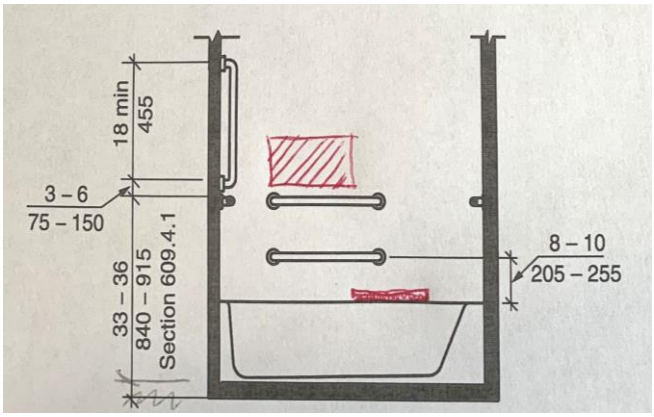


FIGURE 607.6(A)
HAND SHOWER LOCATION WITH REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

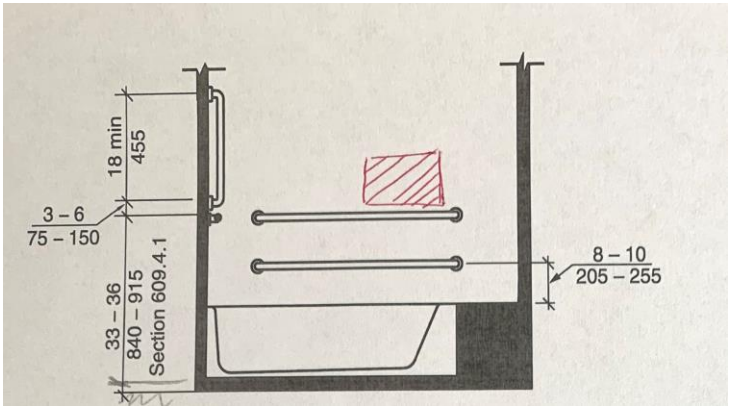


FIGURE 607.6(B)
HAND SHOWER LOCATION WITH SEATS AT HEAD END OF TUB

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower/bathtub on/off and temperature controls, diverters, shower/bathtub fittings including the vertical bar for the adjustable means to hold the hand shower, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall ¼ inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1½-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.

REASON: This is for bathtubs; there is a similar proposal for showers. The intent of this proposal is to 1) leave the controls in the current location; but allow additional options for the means to hold the hand shower within reach of the seat and 2) use consistent and precise terminology and 3) coordinate current requirements.

It is important that we are all using and understanding the terms in the same way -

The ‘on/off and temperature controls’, depending on the system chosen, can be one, two or three handles. This controls the water flow and the temperature of the water.

The ‘diverter’ is for situations where there is both a fixed shower head and a hand held shower. The diverter can also be used to change the water spray to a variety of devices, such as back sprays or tub spouts. I have spoken with a group of ICC plumbing experts on what would be involved for relocating the diverter or providing additional sets of controls. Basically the

response was extensive added plumbing behind the wall, or in some scenarios, cannot be done without options way past standard plumbing.

The hand shower consists of the 59" hose and the hand shower head. A means to turn the water on and off (non-positive shut off valve) is required on the shower head. The 'means to hold the hand shower head' can be a bracket on the wall or a sliding bracket on a vertical pole. The figures would be in addition to the current to show the options for the means to hold the hand shower head. The changes to 608.5 is to keep the information for hand showers in one location – currently we have it mixed up in both. The exception indicates that a slider bar can be used for adjustment. The changes to 609.3 is to clarify what 'not obstruct the grab bar' means.

Committee Action: Disapproval 25-0-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.

607.5-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-49– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-50 – 2021
607.5, 607.6, Figure 607.5(B)(New)

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

Exception: In bathtubs with fixed folding in-tub seats where the mount for the hand shower complying with Section 607.6 is located on the back wall, the diverter for the hand shower shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall,
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the head wall behind the seat.

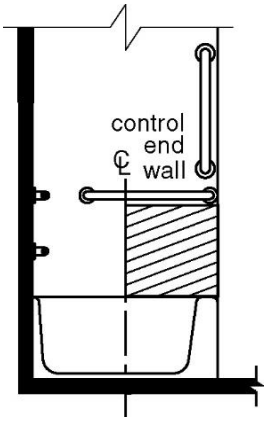


FIGURE 607.5(A)
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

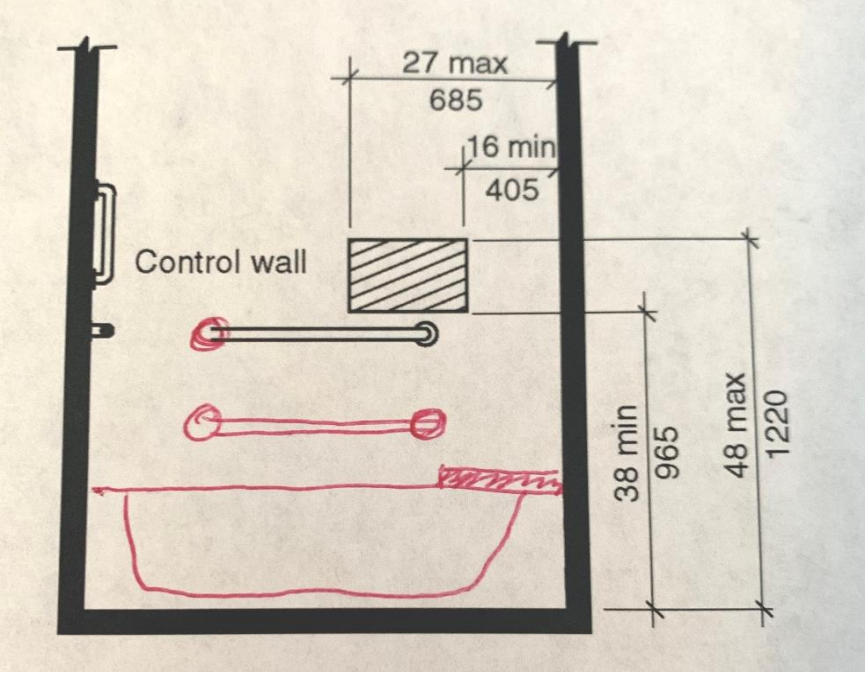


FIGURE 607.5(B)
EXCEPTION-LOCATION OF DIVERTER FOR BATHTUB WITH FIXED FOLDING IN-TUB SEAT

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length~~, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower,~~ shall be provided. A fixed mount or an adjustable-height mount on a vertical bar shall be provided so the hand shower can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower. The mount shall be on the back wall within reach of the seat or on the control wall. The hand shower shall have ~~a control with~~ a nonpositive shut-off feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

REASON: The industry is installing fixed folding in-tub seats and is proposing language to provide specifications for an optional location for diverter for a hand shower. The photos are to illustrate what type of seat this proposal is talking about. This photo shows how the current requirements make the hand shower impossible to reach from the seat.

The intent of this proposal is to allow for the mount to hold the hand shower, the hand shower and the diverter to move the water to the hand shower the option of being located on the back wall.

The clarification in Section 607.6 would be beneficial for all 3 types of bathtubs with seats.

Staff Note: This proposal is from the A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group. Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs with a fixed folding in-tub seat.

Committee Action: Disapproval 24-3-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

This proposal was disapproved based on the committee actions for 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45.

607.5-ANDERSON.doc

Report for *06-50– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-3-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration). This proposal was disapproved based on the committee actions for 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-51 – 2021
607.5, 608.4

Proponent: Ed Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University of Buffalo representing RESNA

Revise text as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

Exception: Shut off features are permitted to be located outside the designated control area.

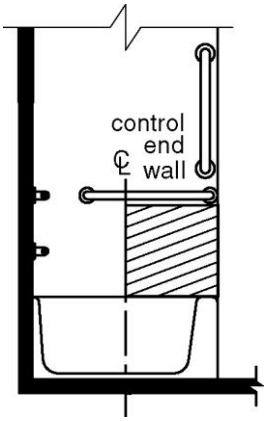


FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.4 Controls and hand showers. Controls and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.4 and 309.4.

Exception: Shut off features are permitted to be located outside the designated control area.

REASON: In the field, the shut off valve on hand held showers are being interpreted as controls that have to be located within the control area.

06-51 – 2021 Replacement Modification
607.5, 608.4

Proponent: Ed Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University of Buffalo representing RESNA

Replace text as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.5 Controls. Controls, other than drain stoppers, shall be provided on an end wall, located between the bathtub rim and grab bar, and between the open side of the bathtub and the centerline of the width of the bathtub. Controls shall comply with Section 309.4.

Exception: Non-positive shut off features on hand showers complying with Section 607.6 are not required to be located in the control area.

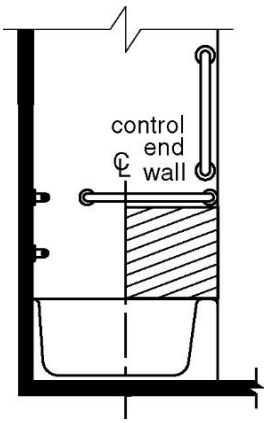


FIGURE 607.5
LOCATION OF BATHTUB CONTROLS

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.4 Controls and hand showers. Controls and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.4 and 309.4.

Exception: Non-positive shut off features on hand showers complying with Section 608.5 are not required to be located in the control area.

Reason: The modification clarifies that the proposal is only about shut off valves that are part of a hand-held shower device. When a hand-held shower is provided with a shut off valve at the head it is literally in the users hand so it is within reach. This is an economic issue. In affordable housing, the simplest way to provide a shut off valve is to incorporate it within the shower head or right below it on the hose. Currently, this is not allowed. Without the exception, shut off valves will not be incorporated into accessible units in affordable housing. This also makes it easier to include shut off valves in renovations, including those that are intended to redress non-compliance with the standard.

. https://www.amazon.com/Faucet-Single-Spray-Touch-Clean-Shower-59462-B-PK/dp/B006FYBI92/ref=dp_prsubs_2?pd_rd_i=B006FYBI92&th=1

Committee Action: Disapproved 25-1-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved based on previous action on 06-47. In 06-47 the hand shower and shut off valve are addressed separately from controls to turn the water on and off for the tub or shower.

607.5-STEINFELD.doc

Report for *06-51– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-1-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved based on previous action on 06-47. In 06-47 the hand shower and shut off valve are addressed separately from controls to turn the water on and off for the tub or shower.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-52 – 2021
607.6, 608.5

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.6 Hand ~~shower~~ showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be permitted to be installed within 12 inches above ~~so as to not obstruct the use of~~ horizontal grab bars. A means to hold the hand shower while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the bottom of the bathtub, and the hand shower shall be located within reach of the seat.

Exceptions:

1. Where a vertical bar is used to hold a hand shower, the vertical bar shall be permitted to extend above 48 inches (1220 mm). The device to adjust the height of the hand shower shall not be required to comply with Section 309.
2. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the bottom of the bathtub shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENT

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be permitted to be installed within 12 inches above ~~so as to not obstruct the use of~~ horizontal grab bars. A means to hold the hand shower ~~wand~~ while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor, and the hand shower shall be located within reach of the seat.

~~**Exception**~ **Exceptions:**

1. Where a vertical bar is used to hold a hand shower, the vertical bar shall be permitted to extend above 48 inches (1220 mm). The device to adjust the height of the hand shower shall not be required to comply with Section 309.
2. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48inches (1220 mm) ~~maximum~~ above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

REASON: Consistency in hand shower requirements is being applied to both tubs and showers in Sections 607.6 and 608.5. The requirement to install a hand shower between 38 and 48 inches would cause a hand shower to be considered as an obstruction with horizontal grab bars. Therefore, the need to add text to Sections 607.6 and 608.5 to allow the vertical bar to be installed within 12 inches above horizontal grab bars in accordance with Section 609.3. Additionally, a new requirement is being added to mandate that the means to hold the hand shower be located within reach of a tub or shower seat without being required to be located in the same box as temperature, on or-off flow and shower diversion controls. Furthermore, the new exception permits a hand shower to be used as either a fixed shower or hand shower. This allows for hand showers to be used in universal designs.

06-52 – 2021 Replacement modification

607.6, 608.5

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Replace and revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.6 Hand ~~shower~~ showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. A mount to hold the hand shower while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the bottom of the bathtub, and shall be located within reach of the seat. Where provided, an adjustable-height ~~hand shower mounted~~ mount on a vertical bar for the hand shower shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

Exceptions:

1. Where a vertical bar supports an adjustable height mount, the vertical bar shall be permitted to extend above 48 inches (1220 mm). The device to adjust the height of the hand shower mount shall not be required to comply with Section 309.2 or 309.3.
2. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the bottom of the bathtub shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENT

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand

shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. ~~Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.~~ A ~~means~~ mount to hold the hand shower while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor, and shall be located within reach of the seat. Where provided, an adjustable-height mount on a vertical bar for the hand shower shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

~~Exception~~ Exceptions:

1. Where a vertical bar is used to hold a hand shower, the vertical bar shall be permitted to extend above 48 inches (1220 mm). The device to adjust the height of the hand shower shall not be required to comply with Sections 309.2 or 309.3.
2. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) ~~maximum~~ above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 11/2 inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 11/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, vertical bars and mounts used to hold hand showers, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 11/2-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.

REASON: Requirements in tubs and showers should be the same. Requirements currently in showers has been moved into tubs.
The intent of the modifications are for clarification of the requirements for hand showers and the mounts they sit on. The language often says ‘hand shower’ when it means the mount to hold the hand shower.
Added clarifications are:

- that the mount has to be within reach of the seat
- the elements that allow for a mount for the shower head can be close to the grab bar to facilitate reach;
- the slide on the vertical grab bar can be moved up so that the hand shower can also serve as a standard fixed head shower

Committee Action: Disapproval 25-0-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.

607.6 THOMPSON.doc

Report for *06-52– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-53 – 2021
607.6, 608.5

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the bottom of the bathtub shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
2. In Accessible units, a fixed shower head located at not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the tub floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the clinical needs of a person receiving care or security concerns would consider the shower hose a safety hazard.

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENT

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the hand shower ~~wand~~ while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48inches (1220 mm) ~~maximum~~ above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
2. In Accessible units, a fixed shower head located at not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the tub floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the clinical needs of a person receiving care or security concerns would consider the shower hose a safety hazard.

REASON: This proposal has two points.

The first exception in 607.5 is intended to be consistent between the current exception in 608.5. The fixed head should be an option in tubs or showers.
The second exception in 607.5 and 608.5 is in consideration of suicide prevention and security concerns in some hospitals and jails (which require Accessible units). I found several studies indicating that suicides are the number one cause of deaths in jails. In addition, there is a concern that the hose could be ripped out of the wall and used as some kind of weapon.

06-53 – 2021 modification

607.6, 608.5

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, United Spinal Assoc.

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the bottom of the bathtub shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
2. In Accessible units, a fixed shower head located at not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the tub floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the ~~clinical needs of a person receiving care or security concerns would consider the shower hose a safety hazard~~ toilet or bathing room is specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENT

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the hand shower ~~wand~~ while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48inches (1220 mm) above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
2. In Accessible units, a fixed shower head located at not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the tub floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the ~~clinical needs of a person receiving care or security concerns would consider the shower hose a safety hazard~~ toilet or bathing room is specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

Reason: Proposed Exception 2 requires the enforcing authority to "know" when a specific person's "clinical needs" warrant concern regarding potential suicide. Not only is there no way for a code official to make this determination, but it is also unlikely that the prospective occupant of the unit will be: (1) known at the time of construction, and (2) a permanent resident, thereby necessitating reevaluation when the occupant changes. Further, Accessible units are scoped for both transient lodging and institutional occupancies. I don't think we can assume that every occupant of an Accessible space has "clinical needs".

Unlike proposed Exception 2, the modification provides visible and unambiguous criteria for determining where the exception for suicide concerns applies using language from a current exception in the Standard that addresses the same concern related to grab bars, Exception 2 to § 604, which is based on Exception 3 to § 604.5 of the 2010 ADA Standards.

We have NOT included the portion of the exception meant to address "security concerns" because we are not convinced that these are significant issues in transient lodging and institutional occupancies. Furthermore, an Exception in the 2010 ADA Standards to §608.6 allows a fixed shower head in all bathing facilities EXCEPT: "medical care facilities, long-term care facilities, transient lodging guest rooms, or residential dwelling units". Consequently, the proposed exception applied to Accessible units would directly conflict with the ADA Standards and, in practicality, could not be used.

BACKGROUND INFORMATION:
2017 ICC A117.1
604.5 Grab bars. Grab bars for water closets shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Sections 604.5.1 and 604.5.2. Grab bars shall be provided on the rear wall and on the side wall closest to the water closet.

Exceptions: 1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 604.5.

2. In detention or correction facilities, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in housing or holding cells or rooms that are specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

2010 ADA Standards
608.6 Shower Spray Unit and Water
A shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum that can be used both as a fixed-position shower head and as a hand-held shower shall be provided. The shower spray unit shall have an on/off control with a non-positive shut-off. If an adjustable-height shower head on a vertical bar is used, the bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. Shower spray units shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.

EXCEPTION: A fixed shower head located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor shall be permitted instead of a hand-held spray unit in facilities that are not medical care facilities, long-term care facilities, transient lodging guest rooms, or residential dwelling units.

Committee Action: Approval as Modified 21-2-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): Per the modification indicated above.

Further modify as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

Exceptions:

3. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the bottom of the bathtub shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
4. In Accessible units, a fixed shower head located at not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the tub floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the ~~clinical needs of a person receiving care or security concerns would consider the shower hose a safety hazard~~ toilet or bathing room is specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENT

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the hand shower ~~wand~~ while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor.

Exceptions:

3. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48inches (1220 mm) above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
4. In Accessible units, a fixed shower head located at not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the tub floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the ~~clinical needs of a person receiving care or security concerns would consider the shower hose a safety hazard~~ toilet or bathing room is specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

Committee Reason: The addition of the exception for a fixed shower head in bathtubs is coordinating with the same allowance in showers and is needed to address locations where the chance of vandalism is high. This may need to be coordinated with the allowance for seats on the head wall in the replacement to 06-45.
The new exception for locations were there may be concerns for resident safety is needed in areas such as psych wards or dementia wards in hospitals and suicide watch areas in jails. The modification was for consistency with the terminology used in Section 604.5.

607.6 THOMPSON.doc

Report for *06-53– 2021*

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	*Committee Vote at Meeting:*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):
Further revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used as both a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the bottom of the bathtub shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
2. In Accessible units, a fixed shower head located at not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the tub floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the ~~clinical needs of a person receiving care or security concerns would consider the shower hose a safety hazard~~ toilet or bathing room is specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENT

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shutoff feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the hand shower ~~wand~~ while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor.

Exceptions:

1. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located not greater than 48inches (1220 mm) above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
2. In Accessible units, a fixed shower head located at not greater than 48 inches (1220 mm) above the tub floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower where the ~~clinical needs of a person receiving care or security concerns would consider the shower hose a safety hazard~~ toilet or bathing room is specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

Committee Reason: The addition of the exception for a fixed shower head in bathtubs is coordinating with the same allowance in showers and is

Report for *06-53– 2021*		
needed to address locations where the chance of vandalism is high. This may need to be coordinated with the allowance for seats on the head wall in the replacement to 06-45. The new exception for locations were there may be concerns for resident safety is needed in areas such as psych wards or dementia wards in hospitals and suicide watch areas in jails. The modification was for consistency with the terminology used in Section 604.5.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-54 – 2021
607.6

Proponent: Hope Reed, ADA Accessibility Consultant, representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature that complies with Section 309.4. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. The hand shower wand shall be configured to allow adjustment of the water spray direction and limit rotation during use.

REASON: The hose for hand shower wands is usually twisted and when water pressure comes on it becomes even more twisted. When the spray wand is attached to a vertical bar and water is turned, it may rotate even further within the mounting. Often the spray wand ends up spraying in only one direction from its attachment. A person with disabilities who stands while showering may have to hover in the back corner and get only a small, small portion of the spray, or they may have to stand where they can block the water from spraying out into the room. A holder and handle need to fit without allowing rotation. *See alternate proposal we provided with 607.6(b).*

Committee Action: The proposal was slit between the revisions to the 2nd and the new 4th sentence.
Part 1 – Revision to 2nd sentence – AS 11-9-1
Part 2 – Addition of 4th sentence – D 20-3-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):
Replace with the following:
607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature that complies with Section 309.4. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.

Committee Reason: The committee felt that it was appropriate to ask for a non-positive shut off valve to meet Section 309.4 instead of all of Section 309 since the shower head is intended to be

hand held and not fixed. There was a discussion about if specific provisions over ride general requirements or not. The intent is that the more specific provisions would override the general provisions for operable parts (i.e., clear floor space, reach, and operation).

The addition of the last sentence was disapproved because the committee felt that the language was too open for interpretation and unenforceable.

607.6(a)-REED.doc

Report for *06-54– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS & D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 11-9-1 & 20-3-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace with the following:** **607.6 Hand shower**. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature that complies with Section 309.4. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars.		
Committee Reason: The committee felt that it was appropriate to ask for a non-positive shut off valve to meet Section 309.4 instead of all of Section 309 since the shower head is intended to be hand held and not fixed.). There was a discussion about if specific provisions over ride general requirements or not. The intent is that the more specific provisions would override the general provisions for operable parts (i.e., clear floor space, reach, and operation. The addition of the last sentence was disapproved because the committee felt that the language was too open for interpretation and unenforceable.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-55 – 2021
607.6

Proponent: Hope Reed, ADA Accessibility Consultant, representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.6 Hand shower. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. The hand shower mount shall require the hand shower water spray to be directed without rotating during use and shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall,
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

REASON: The hose for hand shower wands is usually twisted and when water pressure comes on it becomes even more twisted. When the spray wand is attached to a vertical bar and water is turned, it may rotate even further within the mounting. Often the spray wand ends up spraying in only one direction from its attachment. A person with disabilities who stands while showering may have to hover in the back corner and get only a small, small portion of the spray, or they may have to stand where they can block the water from spraying out into the room. A holder and handle need to *fit* without allowing rotation. *See alternate proposal we provided with 607.6(a).*

Staff Note: 06-55 and 06-70 were both dispensed with one vote.

Committee Action: Disapproved 29-3-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the vague language would not be uniformly enforceable. In addition, rotation of the hand held shower is a convenience issue, not an accessibility issue.

607.6b-REED.doc

Report for *06-55– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-3-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the vague language would not be uniformly enforceable. In addition, rotation of the hand held shower is a convenience issue, not an accessibility issue.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-56 – 2021
607.8, 608.8

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Delete without substitution:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

~~**607.8 Water temperature.** Bathtubs shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.~~

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

~~**608.8 Water temperature.** Showers shall deliver water that is 120°F (49°C) maximum.~~

REASON: The intent of this proposal is to remove the water temperature limit for bathtubs and showers. This is a plumbing code issue, not an accessibility issue – and the plumbing code does have similar limits. The person using the tub or shower will adjust the temperature before the enter the water the same as anyone else. The handheld shower heads have a shut off as a backup if they cannot reach the water controls from the seat. Some people prefer hotter showers.

Committee Action: As submitted 21-9-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Water temperature at bathtubs and showers are regulated by the plumbing codes. This is not an accessibility issue.

608.8-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-56– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-9-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Water temperature at bathtubs and showers are regulated by the plumbing codes. This is not an accessibility issue.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-57 – 2021
607.4(New)

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, United Spinal Association

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.4 Bathtub rim. The height of the bathtub rim shall not exceed the height of the bathtub seat required by Section 607.3.

REASON: The intent of this proposal is to ensure that people transferring to a bathtub set will not have to also transfer over the rim of the bathtub and down into the seat and back up over the rim. This will better protect users from injuries due to complex transfers.

Committee Action: As submitted 19-10-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was approved because the rim of the tub should not be higher than the seat height in order to allow for smooth transfer to the seat. The committee discussed tubs where the rim height varies. This measurement should be taken at the seat location.

607.9-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-57– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 19-10-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was approved because the rim of the tub should not be higher than the seat height in order to allow for smooth transfer to the seat. The committee discussed tubs where the rim height varies. This measurement should be taken at the seat location.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION:		

Report for *06-57– 2021*
Modification (if any):
Committee Reason:

06-58 – 2021
608.2.1.1, Figure 608.2.1.1

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Revise as follows:

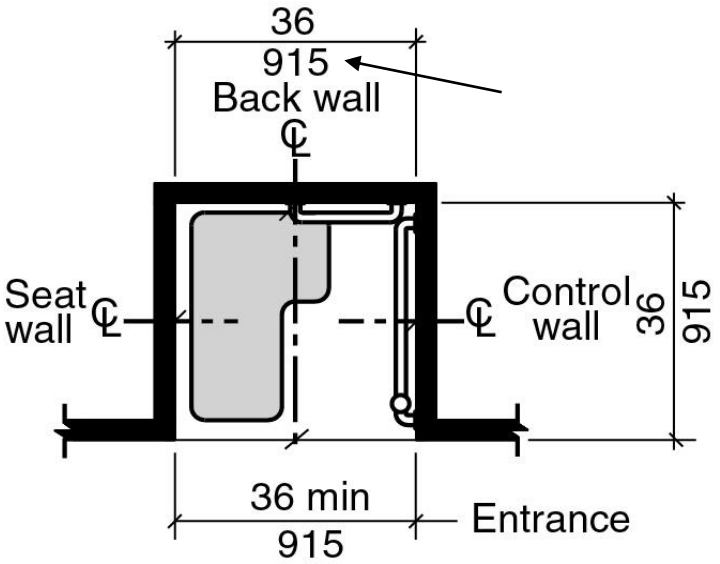
SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.1 General. Shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.

608.2 Size, clearance and seat. Shower compartments shall have sizes, clearances and seats complying with Section 608.2.

608.2.1 Transfer-type shower compartments. Transfer-type shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.1.

608.2.1.1 Size. Transfer-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of ~~36~~ 35 to 37 inches (~~915~~ 889-940 mm) in width measured at the center point of opposing sides and ~~36~~ 35 to 37 inches (~~915~~ 889-940 mm) in depth measured from the center point of ~~opposing sides~~ the rear wall to the to the outside of the threshold. An entry 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.



Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

FIGURE 608.2.1.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE

Note: Modify figure to include new dimension range.

REASON: This proposal is seeking to build in construction tolerance to the transfer shower inside dimensions.

06-58 – 2021 modification

608.2.1.1, Figure 608.2.1.1

Proponent: Scott Brady, representing Fiat and Stern-Williams

Further modify as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.1 General. Shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.

608.2 Size, clearance and seat. Shower compartments shall have sizes, clearances and seats complying with Section 608.2.

608.2.1 Transfer-type shower compartments. Transfer-type shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.1.

608.2.1.1 Size. Transfer-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 35 to 37 inches (889-940 mm) in width measured at the center point of opposing sides and 35 to 37 inches (889-940 mm) in depth measured from the center point of the rear wall to the outside of the threshold. Shower compartment dimensions shall be measured at a height from 20 inches (508) minimum to 72 inches (1828 mm) maximum above the shower floor. An entry 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.

Reason: I like the proposed modification to allow for 35-37 inches on the inside wall dimensions. I would like to add that this dimension apply to a certain height range – the working area inside the shower. I'm suggesting this range be from the top of the seat to a height of 6 feet.

Both Fiat and Stern-Williams make shower floors. In typical construction, tile walls sit on top of a ledge on the floor base. We make the floor base 36x36 to meet the standard, but as you move up from the floor, the walls of the base draft outward with radiused corners, then there's the ledge the wall sits on, so the distance between, centers of the walls can be 40" x 40". The keep the walls at 36"x36", we need to make the insides of the floors a little smaller. The same logic applies above the shower. Once you get above a certain height (I'm guessing 6'), the 36" x 36"

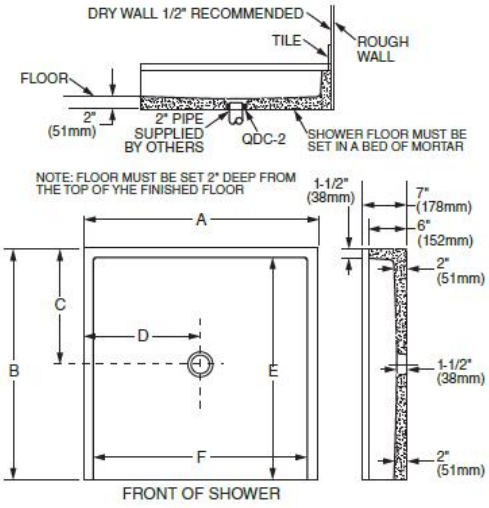
working area doesn't matter. The shower may be sitting in an area that expands out another few inches above it.

FIAT PRODUCTS

TERRAZZO WHEELCHAIR SHOWER RECEPTOR

TERRAZZO WHEELCHAIR SHOWER RECEPTOR

- No threshold terrazzo wheelchair receptor with stainless steel strainer plate.
- One piece floor fabricated from precast terrazzo, made of black and white marble chips cast in white Portland cement.
- Min compressive strength of 3,000 p.s.i. after seven days of curing.
- Recessed for floor installation.
- Factory grounded and polished to remove air holes and/or excess pits grouted.
- Min shoulder of 4" high inside, 6" high outside, with a min of 1/2" wide.
- Integral tiling flange made of galvanized bonderized steel with min of 1" above shoulder.
- Stainless steel and cast integral drain provide a min caulked lead connection of 1" deep, to a 2" pipe. Quick drain connection using a QDC-4 connector can also be used.
- Complies to 2010 ADA guideline.



Nominal Dimensions:

- ❑ **ADATN3636** 41.23" x 38.62" (1047 x 981mm)
- ❑ **ADATN6030** 65.23" x 32.62" (1657 x 829mm)
- ❑ **ADATN6036** 65.23" x 38.62" (1657 x 981mm)

NOTES:
Establish 1/4" clearance between shower floor and wall. It is required that the entire area between the receptor and the building floor have a 1/2" layer of mortar in order that shower floors be level.

It is recommended that a floor drain be installed at or near the entrance of the shower.

All models comply with Americans With Disabilities Act and A117.1 handicapped standards.

IMPORTANT: Rough-in dimensions may vary 1/2" and are subject to change or cancellation without prior notice.

MEETS THE AMERICANS WITH DISABILITIES ACT GUIDELINES AND ANSI A117.1 ACCESSIBLE AND USABLE BUILDINGS AND FACILITIES - CHECK LOCAL CODES.

	OUTSIDE DIMENSIONS				MINIMUM INSIDE DIMENSIONS	
	A	B	C	D	E	F
ADATN-3636	41.23" (1047mm)	38.62" (981mm)	18.31" (465mm)	20.62" (524mm)	36" (914mm)	36" (914mm)
ADATN-6030	65.23" (1657mm)	32.62" (829mm)	15.75" (400mm)	32.62" (829mm)	30" (762mm)	60" (1542mm)
ADATN-6036	65.23" (1657mm)	38.62" (981mm)	15.75" (400mm)	32.62" (829mm)	36" (914mm)	60" (1542mm)

OFFERED IN 081 FINISH ONLY - WHITE CEMENT W/ BLACK & WHITE CHIPS

Arch. to confirm if finish is acceptable.

FIAT QUALITY FOR LIFE

Customer Service Canada
1-800-387-0369
www.fiat.ca

Customer Service United States
1-800-442-1902
www.fiatproducts.com

Revised 12/17

81

Committee Action: Modification from Brady – failed 7-20-4; As modified 26-4-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):
Further modify as follows:

608.2.1.1 Size. Transfer-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 35 to 37 inches (889-940 mm) in width measured at the center point of opposing sides and 35 to 37 inches (889-940 mm) in depth measured from the center point of the ~~rear~~ back wall to the to the centerline ~~outside~~ of the threshold. An entry 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.

Committee Reason: The modification from 'rear' to 'back' is to match the terminology in the figure. The modification from 'outside' to 'centerline' was an attempt to clarify that the size is within the shower, and the width and the location of a threshold are not addressed in the standard or the plumbing codes. There was additional discussion on if the depth of the shower should be the 'entrance' since the threshold could be from fully inside to fully outside of the shower itself. There was concern about at what height the shower size should be measured – at the floor (where there can be a curve or side curb) or at the elevations where the size was the concern – knee height for seating and shoulder height for reach to controls and grab bars.

608.2.2.1-ANDERSON.doc

Report for *06-58– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-4-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **608.2.1.1 Size.** Transfer-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 35 to 37 inches (889-940 mm) in width measured at the center point of opposing sides and 35 to 37 inches (889-940 mm) in depth measured from the center point of the ~~rear~~ back wall to the to the centerline ~~outside~~ of the threshold. An entry 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.		
Committee Reason: The modification from 'rear' to 'back' is to match the terminology in the figure. The modification from 'outside' to 'centerline' was an attempt to clarify that the size is within the shower, and the width and the location of a threshold are not addressed in the standard or the plumbing codes. There was additional discussion on if the depth of the shower should be the 'entrance' since the threshold could be from fully inside to fully outside of the shower itself. There was concern about at what height the shower size should be measured – at the floor (where there can be a curve or side curb) or at the elevations where the size was the concern – knee height for seating and shoulder height for reach to controls and grab bars.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-59 – 2021

608.2.1.2, 608.2.1.2.1, 608.2.1.3(New), 608.4.1, Figures 608.2.1.2(A), 608.2.1.2(B), 608.2.1.2(C), 608.2.1.3(New), 608.4.1

Proponent: Thomas Hirsch, FAIA, Hirsch Group Architecture, representing self; M. Bradley Gaskins, AIA; Gina Hillberry for United Cerebral Palsy; Joe Jurkiewicz, AIA; Marsha Mazz for United Spinal Association; Edward Steinfeld, Arch.D, AIA; and Steven R. Winkel, FAIA, PE, CASp

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.1.2 <u>Transfer</u> Clearance.

608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities. In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the ~~clear floor space~~ <u>transfer clearance</u> shall be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall.

608.2.1.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities. In existing buildings and facilities, a clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment.

Note: The committee will need to decide if Figures 608.2.1.2(A), 608.2.1.2(B) and 608.2.1.2(C) should be revised to show the control clearance with the transfer clearance or if the control clearance should be in a separate Figure 608.2.1.3. The figure submitted indicates the clearance moving forward, not an addition 4 inch toe clearance as the text indicates.

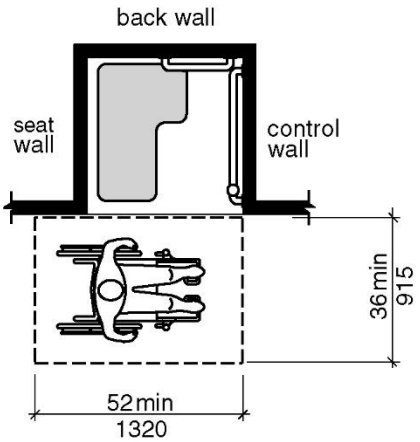


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(A)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT TRANSFER CLEARANCES
NEW BUILDINGS –OPTION 1

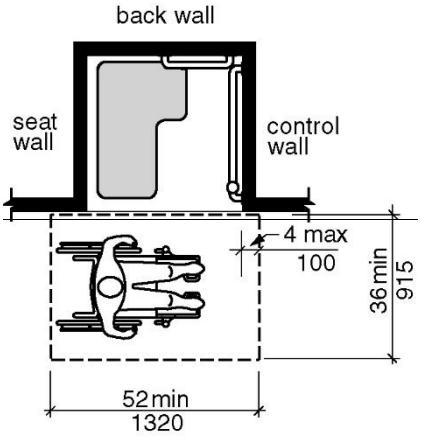


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(B)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT TRANSFER CLEARANCES
NEW BUILDINGS - OPTION 2

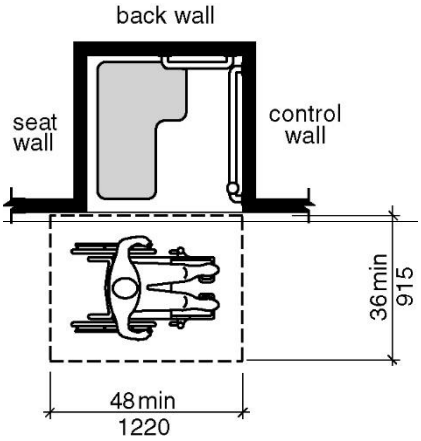


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(C)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT TRANSFER CLEARANCES

EXISTING BUILDINGS

608.2.1.3 Control Clearance. The clear floor space for toe clearance at the controls shall extend 4 inches (100 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall.

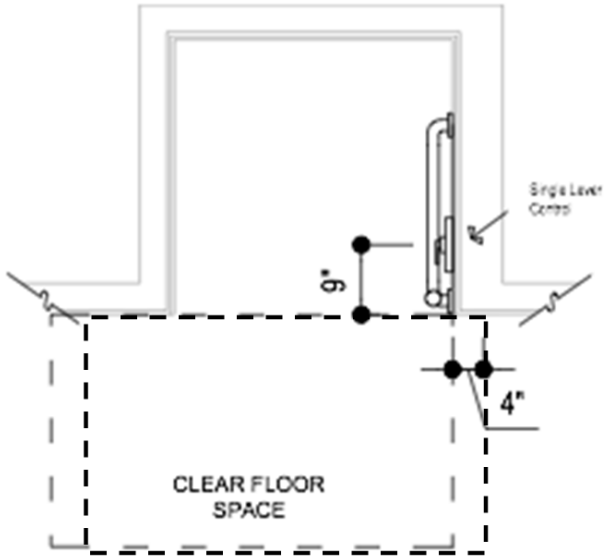


FIGURE 608.2.1.3
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT
CLEARANCES FOR SHOWER CONTROLS

608.4 Controls and hand showers. Controls and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.4 and 309.4.

608.4.1 Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
3. ~~15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening~~ The centerline of controls measured from the approach side of the shower shall be located 5 inches (127 mm) minimum and 9 inches (229 mm) maximum from the clear floor space.

Note: The area for the controls in Figure 608.4.1 would be revised to the smaller area indicated in the revised text. Figure 608.3.1(B) indicates the vertical grab bar is 4 inches maximum to the center line of the bar. Section 609.2.1 indicates the diameter of the grab bar is 1-1/4" to 2". Since the control itself is past the control center line on both sides, the committee is requested to address the question of a possible overlap of the vertical grab bar with the controls.

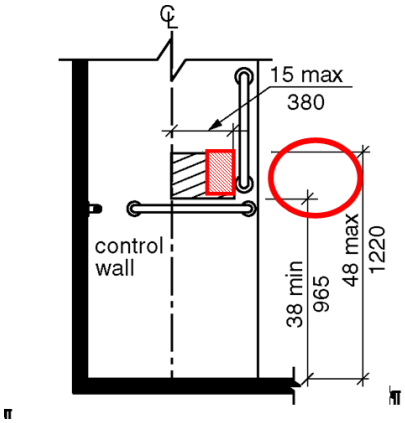


FIGURE 608.4.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

Note: The references from Accessible and Type A units are shown so that the committee is clear on how this proposal will affect unit requirements.

SECTION 1102
ACCESSIBLE UNITS

1102.11.2 Toilet and bathing facility. At least one toilet and bathing facility shall comply with Section 603. At least one lavatory, one water closet and either a bathtub or shower within the unit shall comply with Sections 604 through 610. These toilet and bathing fixtures shall be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit.

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS

1103.11.2.5 Bathing fixtures. The bathing fixture shall be a bathtub complying with Section 1103.11.2.5.1 or a shower compartment complying with Section 1103.11.2.5.2.

1103.11.2.5.2 Shower. Showers shall comply with Section 608.

Exception: At standard roll-in shower compartments complying with Section 608.2.2, lavatories, countertops and cabinetry shall be permitted at one end of the clearance, provided the following criteria are met:

1. The countertop and cabinetry can be removed;
2. The floor finish extends under the countertop and cabinetry; and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the countertop and cabinetry are finished.

REASON: Based on anthropometry, the provision of toe space past the control end of the fixture accomplishes realistic reach of the control for 90%of persons measured

Notes: Table till end of Chapter 6

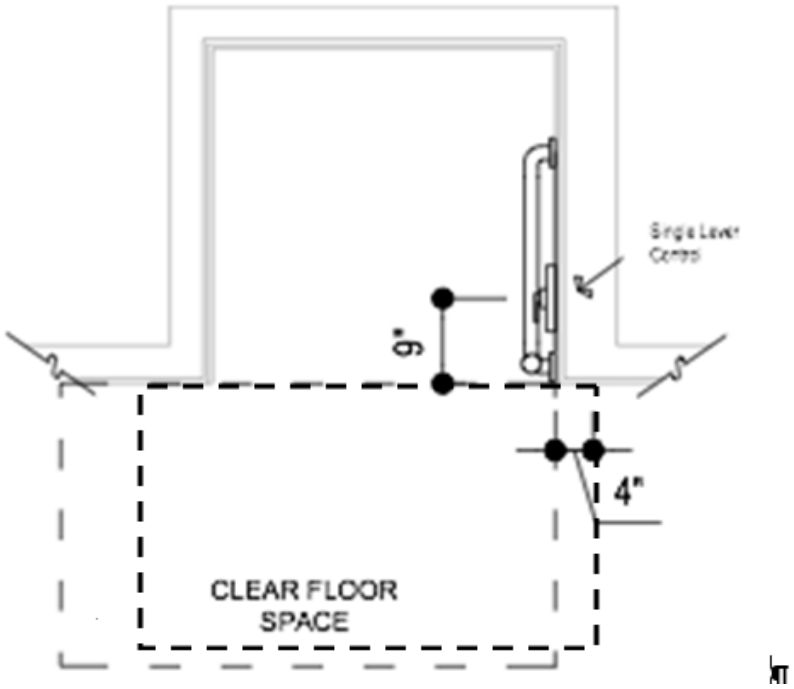
06-59 – 2021

608.2.1.2, 608.2.1.2.1, 608.2.1.3(New), 608.4.1, Figures 608.2.1.2(A), 608.2.1.2(B), 608.2.1.2(C), 608.2.1.3(New), 608.4.1

Proponent: Thomas Hirsch, FAIA, Hirsch Group Architecture, representing self; M. Bradley Gaskins, AIA; Gina Hillberry for United Cerebral Palsy; Joe Jurkiewicz, AIA; Marsha Mazz for United Spinal Association; Edward Steinfeld, Arch.D, AIA; and Steven R. Winkel, FAIA, PE, CASp

Further revise as follows:

608.2.1.3 Control Clearance. The clear floor space for toe clearance complying with Section 306.2 at the controls shall extend ~~4~~ 6 inches (~~100~~ 152 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall.



Note: Figure needs to show 6" instead of 4" offset

FIGURE 608.2.1.3
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT
CLEARANCES FOR SHOWER CONTROLS

608.4.1 Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
3. The centerline of controls measured from the approach side of the shower shall be located ~~5 inches (127 mm) minimum and~~ 9 inches (229 mm) maximum from the clear floor space.

Note: The area for the controls in Figure 608.4.1 would be revised to the smaller area indicated in the revised text. Figure 608.3.1(B) indicates the vertical grab bar is 4 inches maximum to the center line of the bar. Section 609.2.1 indicates the diameter of the grab bar is 1-1/4" to 2". Since the control itself is past the control center line on both sides, the committee is requested to address the question of a possible overlap of the vertical grab bar with the controls.

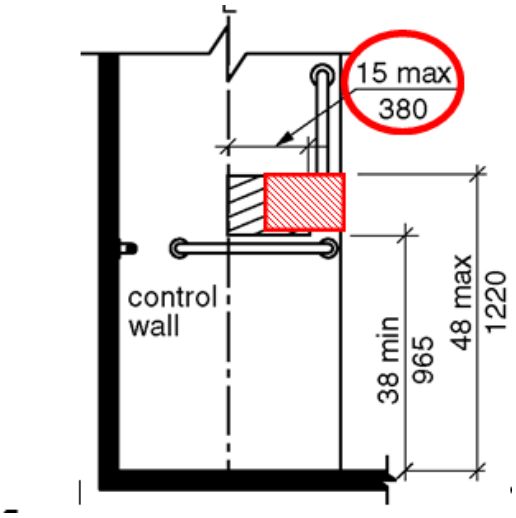


FIGURE 608.4.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

Reason:
1. Conforms "toe space" with prior use of the term in Sec. 306.2
2. Allows for plumbing valves & piping in common use.

Staff note: This requirement would apply to Accessible and Type A units.

Committee Action: Disapproval
The proposal was divided for discussion.
Mod to delete change to 608.4.1 (control location) – AM 23-1-1;
Mod new 608.2.1.3 (toe clearance) AM 9-19-2l; D 28-1-1;
Mod for 608.2.1.2 and 608.2.1.2.1 (transfer clearance) AM 12-15-3;

Entire proposal D 28-1-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal was divided for discussion. The committee voted to delete the change to Section 608.4.1 for control location for consistent action with 06-40-21. They felt that the current language in Section 608.4.1 for control location provided better direction since it included all of the controls (temperature, on/off, diverters) instead of just to the center of a valve. The proposed language assumed one center control, was too restrictive, and did not address the handle locations, spread mount controls or the diverter location. The committee disapproved the modification to add toe clearance because, unlike a tub, the user could move their front wheels into the shower stall if they needed better access to controls. The committee disapproved the change to 'transfer clearance' because it is adding another term to the requirements, and was not proposed universally for other transfer spaces. The committee did ask for the editorial or terminology task group to look at consistent use of 'clearance' and 'clear floor space'.

Figure 608.2.1-HIRSCH.doc

Report for *06-59– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-1-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal was divided for discussion. The committee voted to delete the change to Section 608.4.1 for control location for consistent action with 06-40-21. They felt that the current language in Section 608.4.1 for control location provided better direction since it included all of the controls (temperature, on/off, diverters) instead of just to the center of a valve. The proposed language assumed one center control, was too restrictive, and did not address the handle locations, spread mount controls or the diverter location. The committee disapproved the modification to add toe clearance because, unlike a tub, the user could move their front wheels into the shower stall if they needed better access to controls. The committee disapproved the change to 'transfer clearance' because it is adding another term to the requirements, and was not proposed universally for other transfer spaces. The committee did ask for the editorial or terminology task group to look at consistent use of 'clearance' and 'clear floor space'.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-60 – 2021
608.2.1.2.1

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.1.2 Clearance.

608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities. In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth and complying with Section 305.7.1 shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the clear floor space shall be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall.

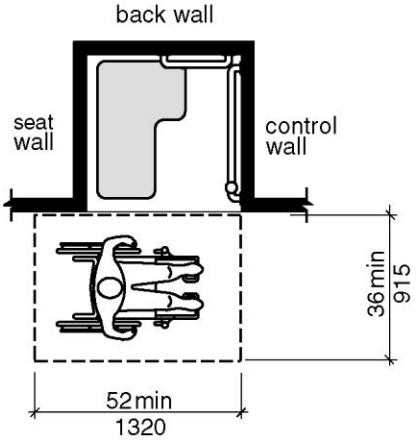


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(A)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES
NEW BUILDINGS - OPTION 1

REASON: Where the shower is located in an alcove, it is not clear as to whether the wheelchair space should be expanded for an alcove or if the simple dimensions are all that's needed. If a fully accessible shower is to be provided, the necessary maneuvering space should be provided to access it, including the alcove provisions.

06-60 – 2021 replacement modification
608.2.1.2.1

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Replace and revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.1.2 Clearance.

608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities. In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the clear floor space shall be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall. Where the clearance is an alcove, comply with Section 305.7.

608.2.1.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities. In existing buildings and facilities, a clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. Where the clearance is an alcove, comply with Section 305.7.

Reason: The current proposal references the parallel approach requirements (Section 305.7.1) regardless of if the transfer space is confined on three sides or not. That needed language is in Section 305.7. In addition, this proposal would only make this applicable for new construction. If a pointer is needed, this should also be added to existing building requirements. Note that dressing rooms in front of showers was addressed in 06-11-2021.

The following pictures are in the ICC A117.1 commentary. Is C608.2.1.2(a) needed to be added to the text to show how this would be applied?

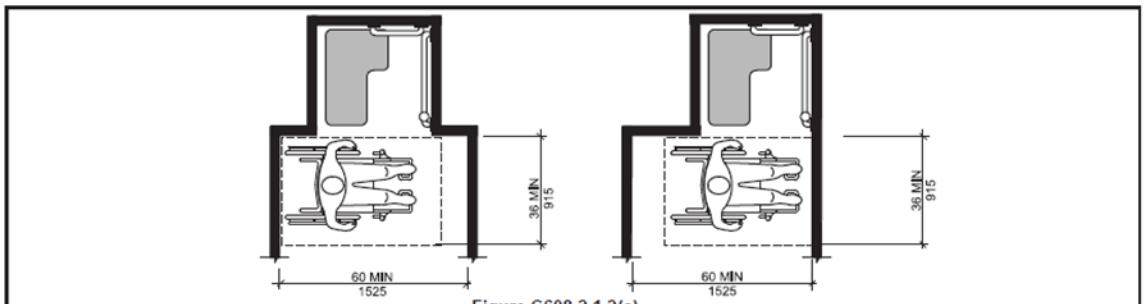


Figure C608.2.1.2(a)
TRANSFER SHOWER WITH PRIVACY ALCOVE

Committee Action: Modification 23-2-2; AM 29-0-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):
Replace and revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.1.2 Clearance.

608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities. In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the clear floor space shall be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall. Where the clearance is an alcove, the clearance shall comply with Section 305.7.

608.2.1.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities. In existing buildings and facilities, a clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. Where the clearance is an alcove, the clearance shall comply with Section 305.7.

Committee Reason: The committee added "the clearance shall" to the modification as editorial. The modification would provide a pointer for the alcove in front of the shower to both new and existing construction – the original proposal was only for new construction. While this is a pointer, it is necessary because this is a common mistake at transfer showers.

Staff note: There is inconsistent language for 'clearance' and 'clear floor space' in this section. A clear floor space is specified in Section 305.3. An alcove in Section 305.7 provides additional maneuvering space (**not** a clearance or clear floor space). The editorial modification made during the meeting to add "the clearance shall" could be considered a technical change when looking at wheelchair/shower seat alignment for the clear floor space. If the intent of the committee is to allow the alcove to move in either direction as indicated in Figure C608.2.1.2(a) in the reason, staff suggests the following as a clarification.

Further modify as follows:

608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities. In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the ~~clear floor space~~ clearance shall be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall. Where the clearance is located in an alcove, the ~~clearance~~ alcove shall comply with Section 305.7.

608.2.1.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities. In existing buildings and facilities, a clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. Where the clearance is located in an alcove, the ~~clearance~~ alcove shall comply with Section 305.7.

608.2.1.2.1-BOECKER.doc

Report for *06-60– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-0-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace and revise as follows:** **SECTION 608** **SHOWER COMPARTMENTS** **608.2.1.2 Clearance.** **608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the clear floor space shall be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall. Where the clearance is an alcove, the clearance shall comply with Section 305.7. **608.2.1.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, a clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. Where the clearance is an alcove, the clearance shall comply with Section 305.7.		
Committee Reason: **Committee Reason:** The committee added "the clearance shall" to the modification as editorial. The modification would provide a pointer for the alcove in front of the shower to both new and existing construction – the original proposal was only for new construction. While this is a pointer, it is necessary because this is a common mistake at transfer showers. **Staff note:** There is inconsistent language for 'clearance' and 'clear floor space' in this section. A clear floor space is specified in Section 305.3. An alcove in Section 305.7 provides additional maneuvering space (**not** a clearance or clear floor space). The editorial modification made during the meeting to add "the clearance shall" could be considered a technical change when looking at wheelchair/shower seat alignment for the clear floor space. If the intent of the committee is to allow the alcove to move in either direction as indicated in Figure C608.2.1.2(a) in the reason, staff suggests the following as a clarification. Further modify as follows: **608.2.1.2.1 New buildings and facilities.** In new buildings and facilities, a clearance of 52 inches (1320 mm) minimum in length and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. The length of the ~~clear floor space~~ clearance shall be measured perpendicular from either the control wall or from 4 inches (100 mm) behind the control wall. Where the clearance is located in an alcove, the ~~clearance~~ alcove shall comply with Section 305.7. **608.2.1.2.2 Existing buildings and facilities.** In existing buildings and facilities, a clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth shall be provided adjacent to the open face of the compartment. Where the clearance is located in an alcove, the ~~clearance~~ alcove shall comply with Section 305.7.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-61 – 2021

608.2.2(New), 608.2.2.1(New), 608.2.2.2(New), 608.2.2.3(New), 608.3.2(New), 608.3.2.1(New), 608.3.2.2(New), 608.3.2.3(New), 608.4.2(New), 610.3, 610.3.3(New)

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing American Hotel and Lodging Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.2 Alternate transfer shower compartments. Alternate transfer shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.2.

608.2.2.1 Size. Alternate transfer shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 58 inches (1473 mm) minimum in width and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 58 inches (1473 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.

608.2.2.2 Clearance. A clearance of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length adjacent to the 60-inch (1525 mm) width of the open face of the shower compartment, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, shall be provided.

Exception: A lavatory complying with Section 606 shall be permitted at the end of the clearance opposite the seat.

608.2.2.3 Seat. An adjustable seat complying with Section 610 shall be provided that can be secured at varying distances from the control wall. At least one of the positions will locate the back of the seat between 35 and 37 inches (889 and 940 mm) from the control wall.

Exception: A seat is not required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of a shower seat.

608.3.2 Alternate transfer type shower. Grab bars in alternate transfer type showers shall comply with Sections 608.3.2.1 through 608.3.2.3.

608.3.2.1 Back-wall grab bar. In alternate transfer showers, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side walls.

608.3.2.2 Side-wall grab bars. A grab bar shall be provided on the side-wall opposite the seat. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

608.3.2.3 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower.

608.4 Controls and hand showers. Controls and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.4 and 309.4.

608.4.2 Alternate transfer-type showers. In alternate transfer-type showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 15 inches (381 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
3. 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening.

608.6 Thresholds. Thresholds in roll-in-type shower and compartments shall be 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum in height in accordance with Section 303. In transfer-type shower compartments, thresholds 1/2 inch (13 mm) maximum in height shall be beveled, rounded, or vertical.

Exception: In existing facilities, in transfer-type shower compartments where provision of a threshold 1/2 inch (13 mm) in height would disturb the structural reinforcement of the floor slab, a threshold 2 inches (51 mm) maximum in height shall be permitted.

SECTION 610
SEATS

610.3 Shower compartment seats. The height of shower compartment seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In alternate transfer type showers, the seat shall extend from the back wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2. In alternate transfer type showers the seat shall also have a seat back comply with Section 610.3.3.

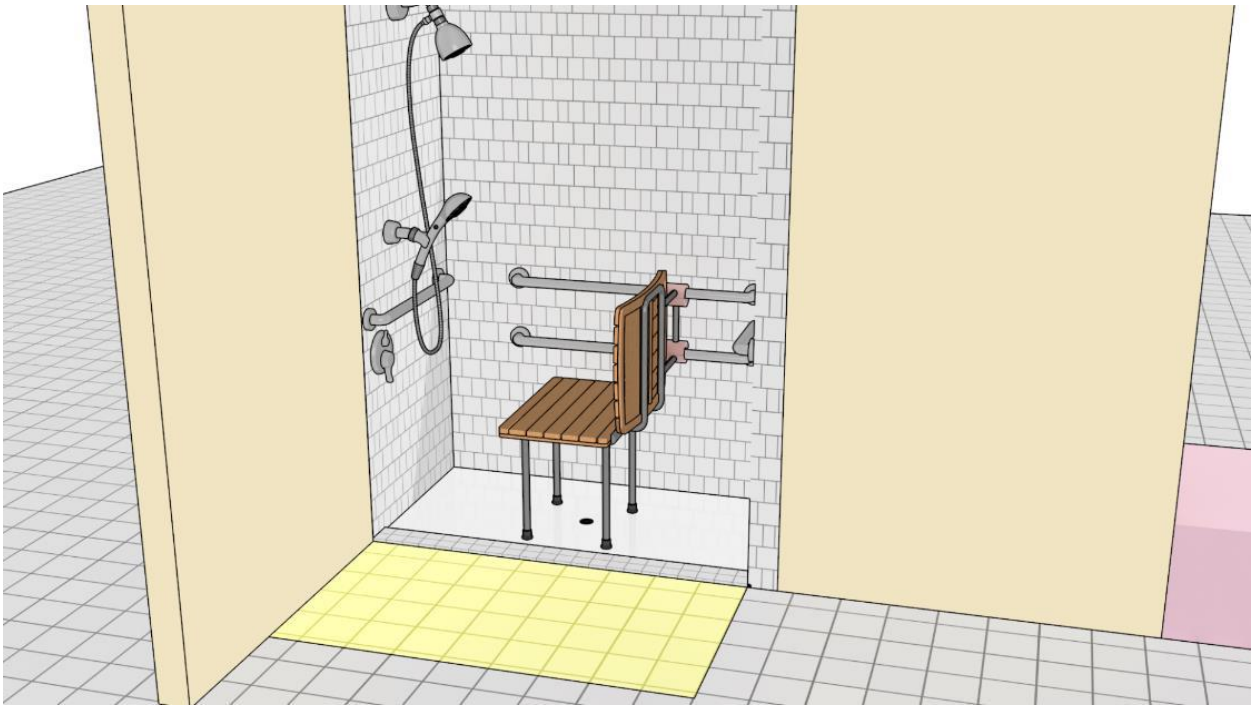
610.3.1 Rectangular seats. The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The side edge of the seat shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall of a transfer-type shower and 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the control wall of a roll-in-type shower.

610.3.2 L-shaped seats. The rear edge of an L-shaped seat shall be 2 1/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the seat wall. The rear edge of the "L" portion of the seat shall be 1 1/2 inches

(38 mm) maximum from the wall and the front edge shall be 14 inches (355 mm) minimum and 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the wall. The end of the "L" shall be 22 inches (560 mm) minimum and 23 inches (585 mm) maximum from the main seat wall.

610.3.3 Seat backs. In alternate transfer type showers the seat shall be provided with a back support that is the length of the seat and that shall extend from a point 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface.

REASON: An alternate transfer shower could offer another bathing option that would fit in the footprint of a bathtub and provide more flexible options for assisted bathing.



Committee Action: As modified 21-2-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): Mod 23-2-1 Section 608.3.2, Mod 21-2-1 to 608.2.2; modification to 608.3.2 editorial; **AM 21-2-1**

Further revise as follows:

608.2.2 Alternate transfer shower compartments. In existing buildings and facilities, Alternate transfer shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.2.

608.2.2.3 Seat. An ~~adjustable~~ seat complying with Section 610 shall be provided that can be secured at varying distances from the control wall. At least one of the positions will locate the back of the seat between 35 and 37 inches (889 and 940 mm) from the control wall.

Exception: A seat is not required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of a shower seat.

608.3.2 Alternate transfer type shower. Grab bars in alternate transfer type showers shall comply with Section 609 and be provided in accordance with Sections 608.3.2.1 through 608.3.2.3.

Committee Reason: The modification to Section 608.2.2 was so that this option is only within existing buildings. The modification to 608.2.2.3 to delete 'adjustable' was to clarify that only the distance from the control wall varies, not everything else about the seat. The modification to 608.3.2 was for a specific reference to the grab bar requirements. The proposal was approved as this option for an alternate transfer shower will offer another bathing option that would fit in the footprint of a bathtub and provide more flexible options for assisted bathing.

608.2.1.4(NEW) ANDERSON

Report for *06-61– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-2-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): Further revise as follows: **608.2.2 Alternate transfer shower compartments.** In existing buildings and facilities, Alternate transfer shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.2. **608.2.2.3 Seat.** An ~~adjustable~~ seat complying with Section 610 shall be provided that can be secured at varying distances from the control wall. At least one of the positions will locate the back of the seat between 35 and 37 inches (889 and 940 mm) from the control wall. **Exception:** A seat is not required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of a shower seat. **608.3.2 Alternate transfer type shower.** Grab bars in alternate transfer type showers shall comply with Section 609 and be provided in accordance with Sections 608.3.2.1 through 608.3.2.3.		
Committee Reason: The modification to Section 608.2.2 was so that this option is only within existing buildings. The modification to 608.2.2.3 to delete 'adjustable' was to clarify that only the distance from the control wall varies, not everything else about the seat. The modification to 608.3.2 was for a specific reference to the grab bar requirements. The proposal was approved as this option for an alternate transfer shower will offer another bathing option that would fit in the footprint of a bathtub and provide more flexible options for assisted bathing.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-62 – 2021

608.2.2.2, 608.2.2.3, 806.3.2, 608.3.2.1, 608.3.2.4(New), 608.3.2.5(New), 608.3.2.6(New), 608.4.2, 608.4.3(New), Figure 608.2.2.1, 608.2.2.1(B)(New), 608.2.2.2, 608.3.2(A), 608.3.2(B), 608.3.2(C), 608.3.2(D)(New), 608.4.2, 608.4.3(New)

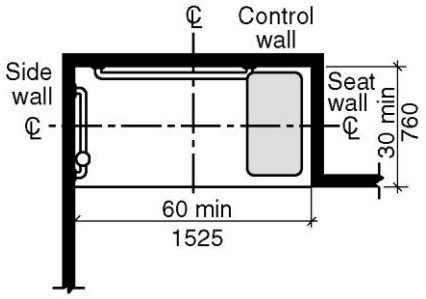
Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.2 Standard roll-in-type shower compartments. Standard roll-in-type shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.2.

608.2.2.1 Size. Standard roll-in-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.



Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

FIGURE 608.2.2.1(A)
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER WITH A SEAT COMPARTMENT SIZE

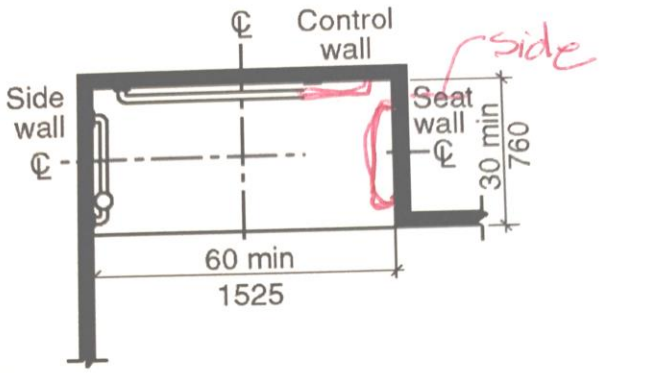


FIGURE 608.2.2.1(B)
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER WITH NO SEAT COMPARTMENT SIZE

608.2.2.2 Clearance. A clearance of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length adjacent to the 60-inch (1525 mm) width of the open face of the shower compartment, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, shall be provided.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. A lavatory complying with Section 606 shall be permitted at the end of the clearance opposite the seat.
2. Where no seat is provided, the lavatory complying with Section 606 shall be permitted at either end of the clearance.

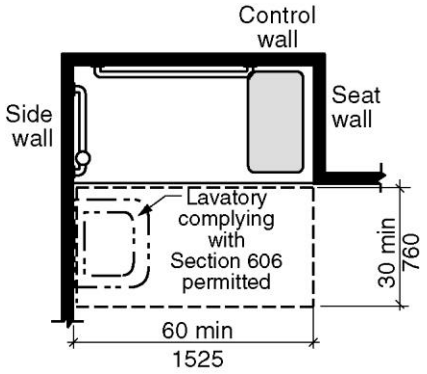


FIGURE 608.2.2.2(A)
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT WITH A SEAT CLEARANCE

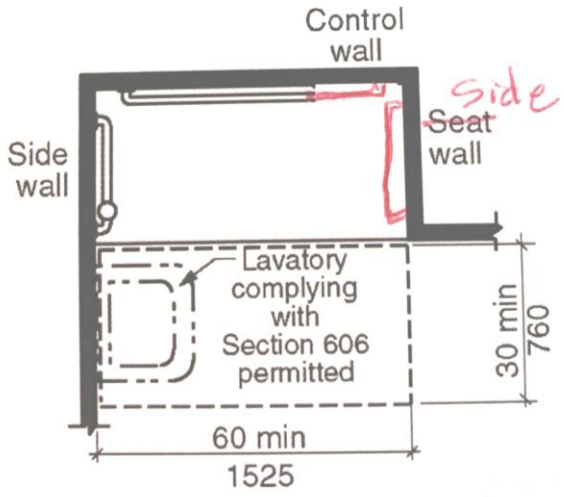


FIGURE 608.2.2.2(B)
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT WITH NO SEAT CLEARANCE

608.2.2.3 Seat. A folding seat complying with Section 610 shall be provided on an end wall.

Exceptions:

1. A seat is not required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of a shower seat.
2. A fixed seat shall be permitted where the seat does not overlap the minimum clear inside dimension required by Section 608.2.2.1.
3. A seat is not required in bathrooms serving individual dwelling or sleeping units that are not transient lodging facilities.

608.3.2 Standard roll-in-type showers. Grab bars in standard roll-in showers with a seat shall comply with Sections 608.3.2.1 through 608.3.2.3. Grab bars in standard roll-in showers with no seat shall comply with Section 608.3.2.4 through 608.3.2.5.

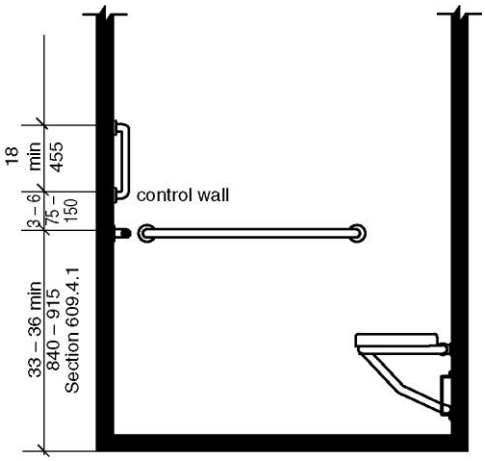


FIGURE 608.3.2(A)
GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER <u>WITH A SEAT</u>
ELEVATION

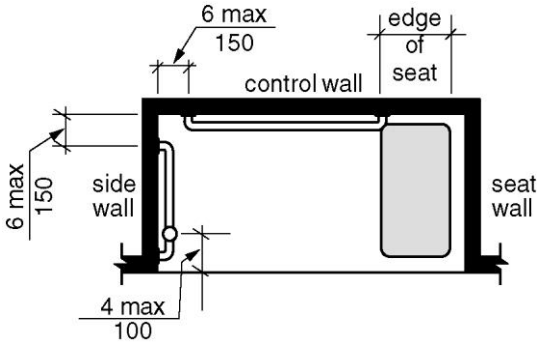


FIGURE 608.3.2(B)
GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER <u>WITH SEAT</u>
PLAN

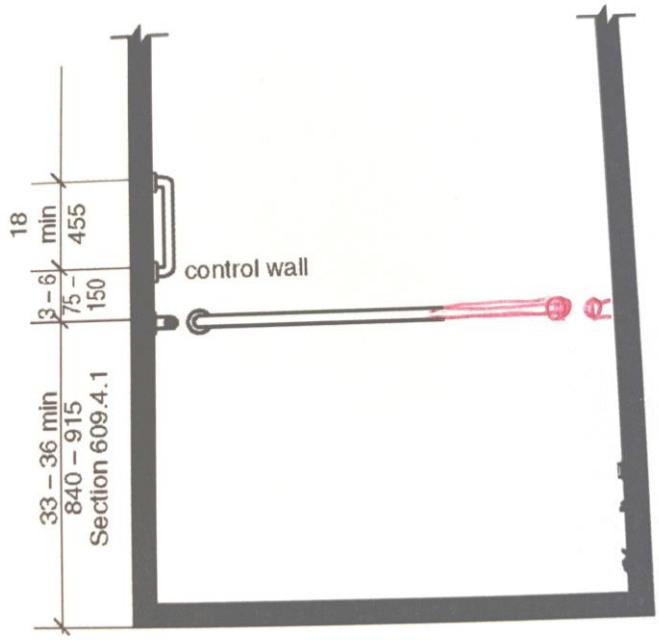


FIGURE 608.3.2(C)
GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER WITH NO SEAT
ELEVATION

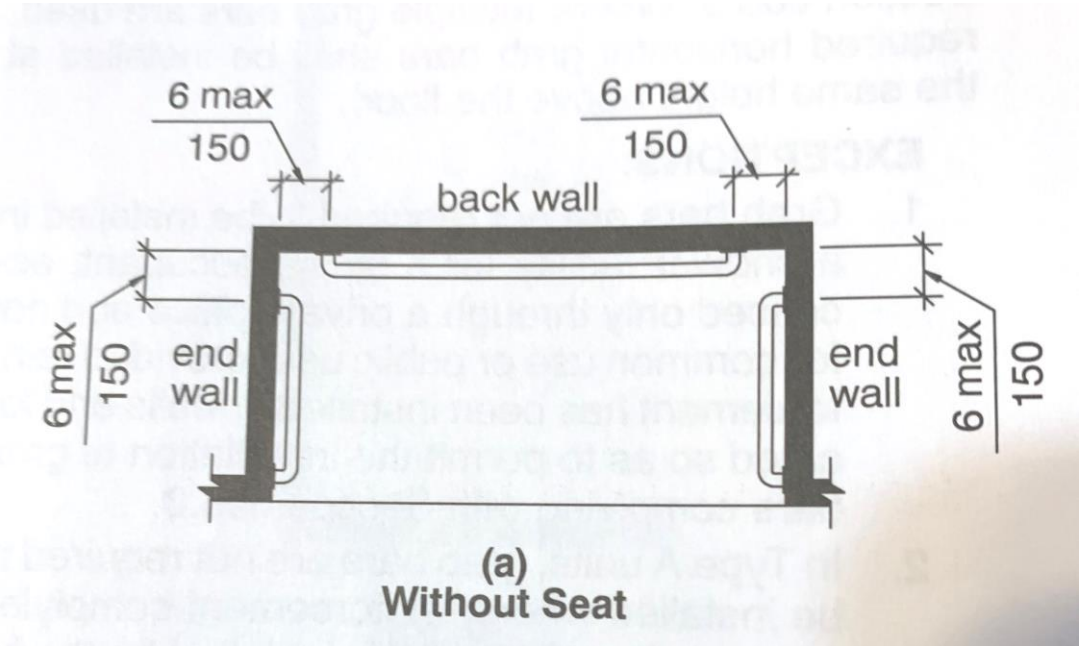


FIGURE 608.3.2(D)
GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER WITH NO SEAT
PLAN

608.3.2.1 Back-wall grab bar. In standard roll-in type showers with a seat, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall beginning at the edge of the seat. The grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side wall opposite the seat.

Exceptions:

1. The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.
2. The back-wall grab bar is not required to extend within 6 inches (150 mm) of the adjacent side wall opposite the seat if it would require the grab bar length to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.

608.3.2.2 Side-wall grab bars. Where a side wall is provided opposite the seat within 72 inches (1830 mm) of the seat wall, a grab bar shall be provided on the side-wall opposite the seat. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

Exception: The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length.

608.3.2.3 Vertical grab bar. Where a side wall is provided opposite the seat within 72 inches (1830 mm) of the seat wall a vertical grab bar shall be provided. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower.

608.3.2.4 Back-wall grab bar. In standard roll-in type showers with no seat, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side walls.

Exceptions:

1. The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.
2. The back-wall grab bar is not required to extend within 6 inches (150 mm) of one of the adjacent side walls if it would require the grab bar length to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.

608.3.2.5 Side-wall grab bars. A grab bar shall be provided on the side-walls. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

Exceptions:

1. The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length.
2. Where the side walls are greater than 72 inches apart the side grab bar is not required on the wall furthest from the horizontal bar.

608.3.2.6 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm)

maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower.

608.4 Controls and hand showers. Controls and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.4 and 309.4.

608.4.2 Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers with seat, the controls and hand shower shall not be located above the seat. Controls and hand showers shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall,
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

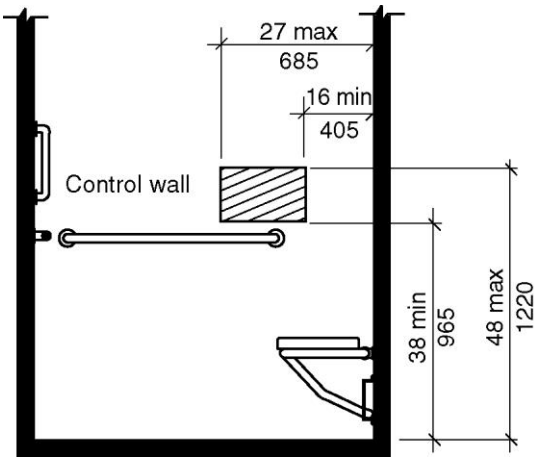


FIGURE 608.4.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER WITH SEAT
CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

608.4.3 Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers with no seat, the controls and hand showers shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall or side walls.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

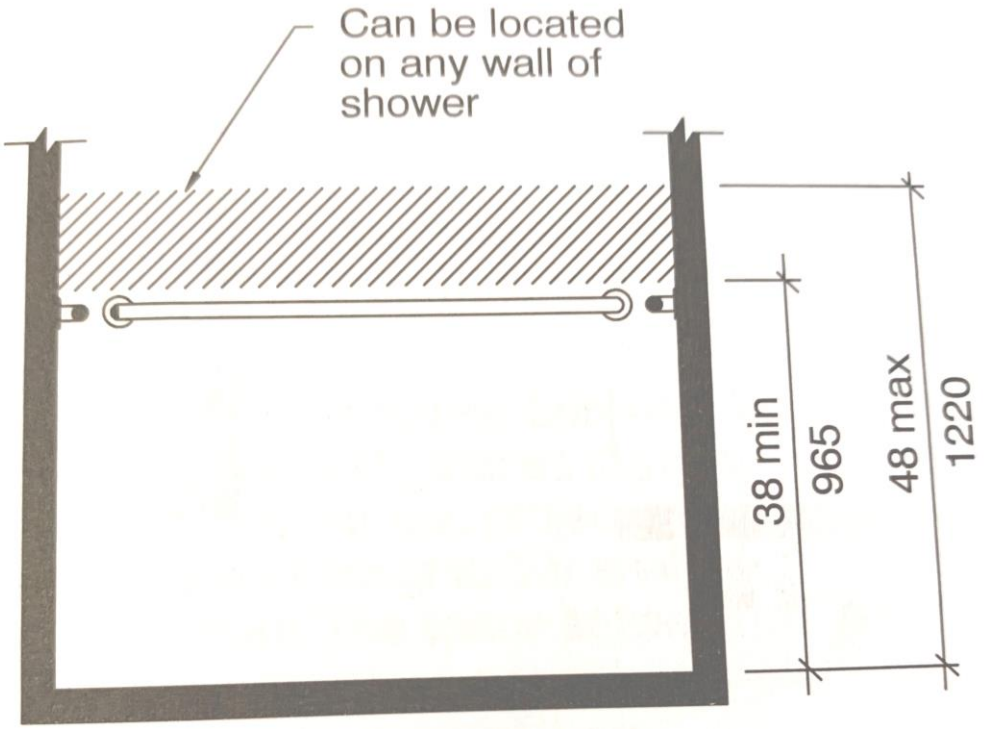


FIGURE 608.4.3
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER WITH NO SEAT CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

REASON: The purpose of this proposal is to bring back the option of the roll-in shower without seats to some residential or institutional occupancies. This is permitted in the 2010 ADA. Since we made this change there has been questions about allowing for this option where people are likely to have their own seats. While we did have a work group looking at assisted toileting and bathing, the scoping is only for some rooms in assisted living, nursing homes and rehabilitation hospitals. This option should be available in other living situations such as group homes or within Type A units.

06-62 – 2021 modification

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Further revise as follows:

608.3.2.4 Back-wall grab bar. In standard roll-in type showers with no seat, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side walls.

Exceptions:

1. The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length~~.~~
2. ~~The~~ and one end of the back-wall grab bar ~~is not required to extend~~ is located within 6 inches (150 mm) of ~~one of~~ the adjacent side wall that also has a horizontal grab bar ~~walls if it would require the grab bar length to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.~~

608.3.2.5 Side-wall grab bars. A grab bar shall be provided on the side-walls. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

Exceptions:

1. The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length and one end of the side-wall grab bar is located within 6 inches of the rear wall.
2. Where the side walls are greater than 72 inches apart, one of the side wall grab ~~bar~~ bars is not required ~~on the wall furthest from the horizontal bar~~.

Reason: The allowance for a larger shower has developed in the A117.1 since the three grab bar option was removed from the ICC A117.1, thus the need for the exceptions that were not there before. The intent it to have two grab bars in the same corner. Best practice would have this closest to the fixed shower head or hand held shower, but where that is located will vary so much the requirements should not be measured from that location. The modification is proposed to be revised for consistency with the language in Proposal 06-84-2021 (Section 611.7.4.1) and based on suggestions for improvement for the language.

Committee Action: As Modified 29-0-0
modification to change 'and' to 'where' 23-1-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further modify published modification:

608.3.2.4 Back-wall grab bar. In standard roll-in type showers with no seat, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side walls.

Exceptions:

1. The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length ~~and~~ where one end of the back-wall grab bar is located within 6 inches (150 mm) of the adjacent side wall that also has a horizontal grab bar.

608.3.2.5 Side-wall grab bars. A grab bar shall be provided on the side-walls. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

Exceptions:

1. The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length ~~and~~ where one end of the side-wall grab bar is located within 6 inches of the rear wall.
2. Where the side walls are greater than 72 inches apart, one of the side wall grab bars is not required.

Committee Reason: The modifications, both the published modification and the committee modification, is for consistency with the language in Proposal 06-84-2021 (Section 611.7.4.1) and based on suggestions for improvement for the language. The option for showers with three grab bars and no seat should be permitted in occupancies other than transient lodging. This would work well in care facilities, hospitals, group homes and Type A units.

Staff note: The following additional modifications would be required to coordinate with 06-80.

~~**608.3.2.4**~~ **Back-wall grab bar.** In standard roll-in type showers with no seat, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side walls.

Exception: The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length and shall be located with ~~where~~ one end ~~of the back-wall grab bar is located~~ within 6 inches (150 mm) of the adjacent side walls that also has a horizontal grab bar.

~~**608.3.2.5**~~ **Side-wall grab bars.** A grab bar shall be provided on the side-walls. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall beginning 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the shower compartment and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

Exceptions:

1.The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length and shall be located with ~~where~~ one end ~~of the side-wall grab bar is located~~ within 6 inches of the ~~rear~~ adjacent back wall.

2.Where the side walls are greater than 72 inches apart, one of the side wall grab bars is not required.

608.2.2-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-62– 2021*

Committee decision: AM	*Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-1-3*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):
Further revise as follows:

608.3.2.4 Back-wall grab bar. In standard roll-in type showers with no seat, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side walls.

Exceptions:

1. The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length~~.~~
2. ~~The~~ where one end of the back-wall grab bar ~~is not required to extend~~ is located within 6 inches (150 mm) of ~~one of~~ the adjacent side wall that also has a horizontal grab bar ~~walls if it would require the grab bar length to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.~~

608.3.2.5 Side-wall grab bars. A grab bar shall be provided on the side-walls. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and

Report for *06-62– 2021*

extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

Exceptions:

3. The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length where one end of the side-wall grab bar is located within 6 inches of the rear wall.
4. Where the side walls are greater than 72 inches apart, one of the side wall grab ~~bar~~ bars is not required ~~on the wall furthest from the horizontal bar~~.

Committee Reason: The modifications, both the published modification and the committee modification, was to clarify the requirements for grab bars in a shower that is larger than the typical size. The option for showers with three grab bars and no seat should be permitted in occupancies other than transient lodging. This would work well in care facilities, hospitals, group homes and Type A units.

Staff note: The following additional modifications would be required to coordinate with 06-80.

~~608.3.2.4~~ **Back-wall grab bar.** In standard roll-in type showers with no seat, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side walls.

Exception: The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length and shall be located with ~~where~~ one end ~~of the back-wall grab bar is located~~ within 6 inches (150 mm) of the adjacent side walls that also has a horizontal grab bar.

~~608.3.2.5~~ **Side-wall grab bars.** A grab bar shall be provided on the side-walls. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall beginning 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the shower compartment and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

Exceptions:

1. The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length and shall be located with ~~where~~ one end ~~of the side-wall grab bar is located~~ within 6 inches of the ~~rear~~ adjacent back wall.
2. Where the side walls are greater than 72 inches apart, one of the side wall grab bars is not required.

PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT:

Proponent:

Desired Action:

Modification:

Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:

Proponent:

Desired Action:

Modification:

Reason:

Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

FINAL ACTION:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason:

06-63 – 2021
608.2.2.1

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.1 General. Shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.

608.2 Size, clearance and seat. Shower compartments shall have sizes, clearances and seats complying with Section 608.2.

608.2.1 Transfer-type shower compartments. Transfer-type shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.1.

608.2.2.1 Size. Standard roll-in-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.

Exception. In an existing facility where a bathtub is altered to a roll-in shower, the width of the shower shall 58 inches (1473 mm) minimum.

REASON: This proposal is seeking to acknowledge the standard tub rough opening will not accommodate a 60" clear interior width for a roll-in shower.

Staff Note: 06-64 considered before 06-63.

Committee Action: Disapproved 24-0-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved based on action taken on 06-64.

608.2.2.1#1-ANDERSON.doc

Report for *06-63– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved based on action taken on 06-64.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		

Report for *06-63– 2021*		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-64 – 2021
608.2.2.1

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.1 General. Shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.

608.2 Size, clearance and seat. Shower compartments shall have sizes, clearances and seats complying with Section 608.2.

608.2.1 Transfer-type shower compartments. Transfer-type shower compartments shall comply with Section 608.2.1.

608.2.2.1 Size. Standard roll-in-type shower compartments shall have a clear inside dimension of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides. An entry 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in width shall be provided.

Exception. Where an existing bathtub is replaced by a roll-in-type shower, the width of the shower shall be permitted to be 57.5 inches (1460 mm) minimum, provided that compliance with Section 608.2.2.1 would require an expansion in the overall size of the bathroom or would disturb the structural reinforcement of the floor slab.

REASON: This proposal is seeking to acknowledge the standard tub rough opening will not accommodate a 60” clear interior width for a roll-in shower.

The original roll-in shower size was intended to replace a tub. Tub rough opening does not allow for a finished 30x60 interior. This would achieve the original intent and allow for a more accessible bathing fixture without as extensive retrofits.

Committee Action: As submitted 20-1-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the original intent for roll-in shower size was to replace a tub. Tub rough opening for a tub does not allow for a finished 30x60 interior. This would achieve the original intent and allow for a more accessible bathing fixture without extensive retrofits.

Report for *06-64– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 20-1-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the original intent for roll-in shower size was to replace a tub. Tub rough opening for a tub does not allow for a finished 30x60 interior. This would achieve the original intent and allow for a more accessible bathing fixture without extensive retrofits.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-65 – 2021
608.2.3.2(New)

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.3 Alternate roll-in shower compartments…..

608.2.3.2 Clearance. The clearance outside the entry to an alternate roll-in type shower shall comply with the door maneuvering clearances in Section 404.2.3.4.

REASON: The standard does not indicate a clear floor space for accessible the alternate roll-in shower. In prior editions, the approach would have to be one with a minimum 36-inch accessible route. Because the opening for the alternate roll-in shower is to allow passage so that a seat transfer can occur, the opening is more like that of a door. The provisions would allow for a clear floor space to be provided to make such a passage (similar to Figure 404.2.3.4(A) or 404.2.3.4(C) depending on the approach).

06-65 – 2021 modification
608.2.3.2(New)

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Further revise follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.2.3 Alternate roll-in shower compartments…..

608.2.3.2 Clearance. ~~The~~ A clearance shall be provided outside the entry to an alternate roll-in type shower ~~shall comply~~ complying with the door maneuvering clearances in ~~Section~~ Table 404.2.3.4.

REASON: The intent of this modification is to meet the same intent of the original proposal and remove a possible mis-interpretation.

The proposal as written could be interpreted to allow for an opening on less than 36". The text in Section 404.2.3.4 says "Doorways without doors or gates that are less than 36 inches….". The modification would specifically ask for the clearance based on direction the shower was accessed. Therefore the 36" opening in Section 608.2.3.1 would control.

Committee Action: As modified 24-0-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise follows:

608.2.3.2 Clearance. ~~The~~ A clearance shall be provided outside the entry to an alternate roll-in type shower ~~shall comply~~ complying with the door maneuvering clearances in ~~Section~~ Table 404.2.3.4.

Committee Reason: The proposal will provide adequate clearance outside the shower opening for access through the shower opening.

608.2.3.2-BOECKER.doc

Report for 0*6-65 – 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: AM 24-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise follows:** **608.2.3.2 Clearance.** ~~The~~ A clearance shall be provided outside the entry to an alternate roll-in type shower ~~shall comply~~ complying with the door maneuvering clearances in ~~Section~~ Table 404.2.3.4.		
Committee Reason: The proposal will provide adequate clearance outside the shower opening for access through the shower opening.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-66 – 2021

608.4.1, 608.4.2, 608.4.3, 608.5, 609.3, Figures 608.4.1, 608.4.1(B), 608.4.3(C)(New), 608.4.3(D)(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

608.4 Controls and hand showers. Controls and hand showers shall comply with Sections 608.4 and 309.4.

608.4.1 Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the on/off and temperature controls and diverter ~~hand shower~~ shall be located according to the following:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor~~, and~~.
3. 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening.

In transfer-type showers, the means to hold the hand shower shall be located according to the following:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat or on the back wall 16 inches (405 mm) minimum from the wall behind the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

Exception: The bracket to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be mounted on a vertical bar and be adjustable in height provided the bracket can be located on that bar within the reach range.

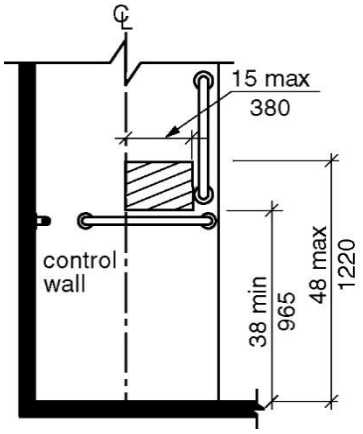


FIGURE 608.4.1(A)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION

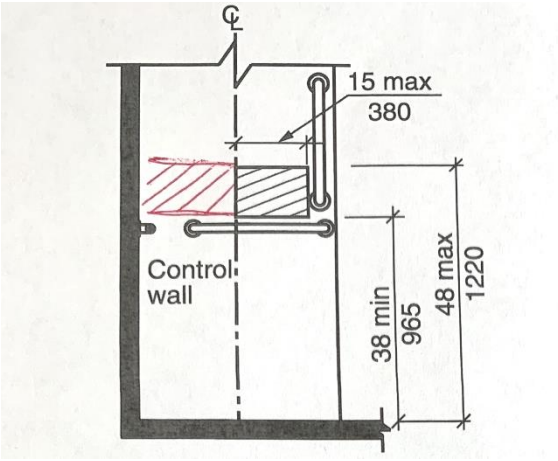


FIGURE 608.4.1(B)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER LOCATION

608.4.2 Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers, the on/off and temperature controls, diverters and the means to hold the hand shower shall ~~not be located above the seat. Controls and hand showers shall~~ be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall,
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

Exception: The means to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be mounted on a vertical bar and be adjustable in height provided the bracket can be located on that bar within the reach range.

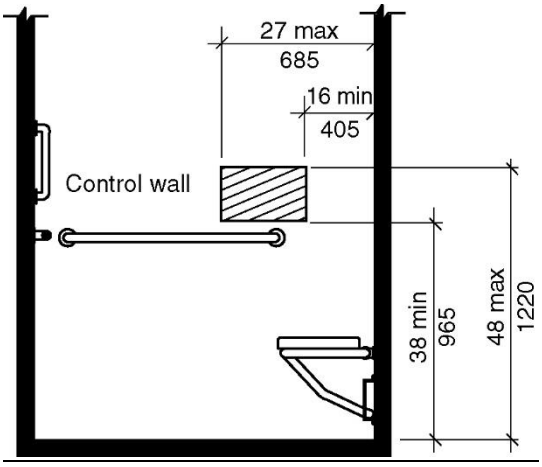


FIGURE 608.4.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

608.4.3 Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the on/off and temperature controls and diverters ~~hand shower~~ shall be located according to the following:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
2. Where the controls and hand shower are located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the controls and hand shower shall be 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat wall, or
3. Where the controls and hand shower are located on the back wall opposite the seat, the controls and hand shower shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the transfer space.

In alternate roll-in showers, a means to hold the hand shower shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall opposite the seat or on the side wall 16 inches (405 mm) minimum from the wall behind the seat.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

Exception: The means to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be mounted on a vertical bar and be adjustable in height provided the bracket can be located on that bar within the reach range.

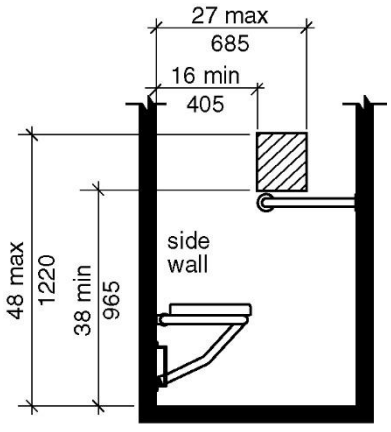
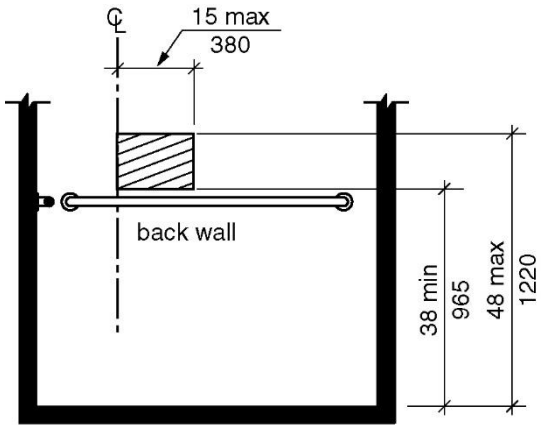


FIGURE 608.4.3(A)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION - END WALL – ELEVATION



(b)
Back Wall
(Elevation)

FIGURE 608.4.3(B)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS ~~AND HAND SHOWER~~ LOCATION - CONTROL WALL – ELEVATION

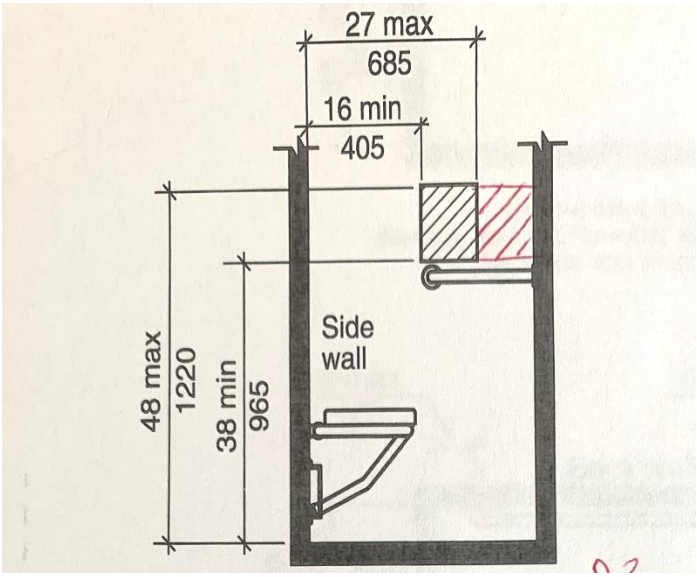


FIGURE 608.4.3(C) ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER LOCATION - END WALL – ELEVATION

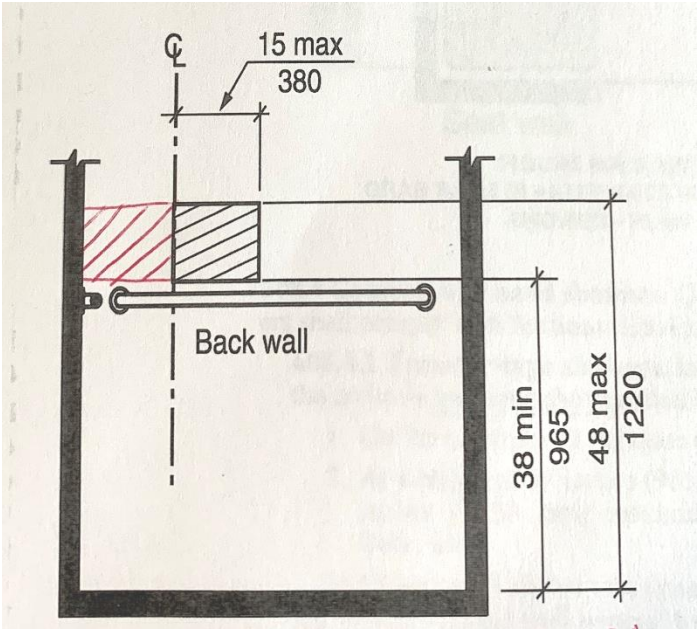


FIGURE 608.4.3(D)
ALTERNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER HAND SHOWER LOCATION - CONTROL WALL – ELEVATION

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature. A means to hold the hand shower ~~wand~~ while in the on or off position shall be provided and located ~~at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower finish floor~~ according to Section 608.4. Where provided, an adjustable-height means to hold the hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted

~~Exception~~ Exceptions:

1. In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.
2. Where the means to hold the hand shower is adjustable on a vertical bar, the vertical bar is permitted to extend above 48 inches.

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower/bathtub on/off and temperature controls, diverters, shower/bathtub fittings including the vertical bar for the adjustable means to hold the hand shower, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be $1^1/_2$ inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall $^1/_4$ inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the $1^1/_2$-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.

REASON: This is for showers; there is a similar proposal for bathtubs. The intent of this proposal is to 1) leave the controls in the current location, but allow additional options for the means to hold the hand shower within reach of the seat and 2) use consistent and precise terminology and 3) coordinate current requirements. It is important that we are all using and understanding the terms in the same way -The 'on/off and temperature controls', depending on the system chosen, can be one, two or three handles. This controls the water flow and the temperature of the water.

The 'diverter' is for situations where there is both a fixed shower head and a hand held shower. The diverter can also be used to change the water spray to a variety of devices, such as back sprays or tub spouts. I have spoken with a group of ICC plumbing experts on what would be involved for relocating the diverter or providing additional sets of controls. Basically the response was extensive added plumbing behind the wall, or in some scenarios, cannot be done without options way past standard plumbing.

The hand shower consists of the 59" hose and the hand shower head. A means to turn the water on and off (non-positive shut off valve) is required on the shower head. The 'means to hold the hand shower head' can be a bracket on the wall or a sliding bracket on a vertical pole. The figures would be in addition to the current to show the options for the means to hold the hand shower head.

The changes to 608.5 is to keep the information for hand showers in one location – currently we have it mixed up in both. The exception indicates that a slider bar can be used for adjustment.

The changes to 609.3 is to clarify what 'not obstruct the grab bar' means.

Committee Action: Disapproval 25-0-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.

608.4-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-66– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for *06-66– 2021*		
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-67 – 2021
608.4.1, Figure 608.4.1

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWERS

608.4.1 Transfer-type showers. In transfer-type showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located:

1. On the control wall opposite the seat.
2. Hand showers can be located at ~~At~~ a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, ~~and~~
3. Controls can be located at a height of 27 inches (686 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and

~~3~~. 4. 15 inches (380 mm) maximum, from the centerline of the control wall toward the shower opening.

Note: Revise figure to include additional control location.

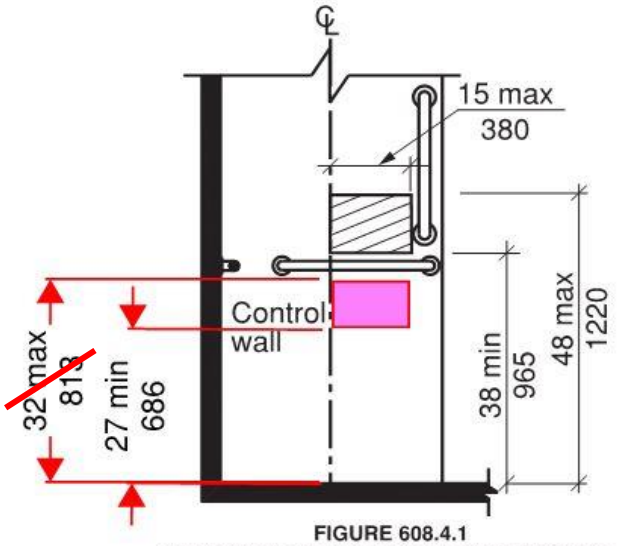


FIGURE 608.4.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

REASON: This proposal provides an alternate location for hand controls under the required grab bars would help users and reduce the risk of fall. Section 609.3 would require the entire control to be 1-1/2" above or below the grab bar. This would be consistent with the approach used for bathtub controls below the grab bar.

Committee Action: Modification to add this same allowance to Section 608.4.3 Item 3 26-0-0 Approved as Modified – 26-0-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise as follows:
Note: This proposal and modification will be coordinated with 06-47-2021 AM

608.4.3 Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located in accordance with one of the following:

~~1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and~~

1.~~2.~~ Where the controls and hand shower are located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the controls and hand shower shall be located:

1.1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor

1.2 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat wall~~, or~~

2.~~3.~~ Where the controls and hand shower are located on the back wall opposite the seat,

2.1. Hand showers can be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

2.2. Controls can be located at a height of 27 inches (686 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and

2.3. the controls and hand shower shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the transfer space.

Committee Reason: The modification was to increase the locations permitted for controls for the wall across from the seat in alternate roll-in showers the same as the proposal for transfer showers. The committee felt that this increased area for controls is within reach of the seat and would not obstruct knee clearances. Under the grab bar is consistent with tub controls, so it should be reachable. This expansion of control areas needs to be coordinated with the allowances approved by the replacement to 06-47 – so the committee approved the intent understanding this will look different in the final draft since controls and hand shower locations are not split into two sections.

608.4.1-ANDERSON.doc

Report for *06-67– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):
Further revise as follows:
Note: This modification will be coordinated with 06-47-2021 AM

608.4.3 Alternate roll-in showers. In alternate roll-in showers, the controls and hand shower shall be located in accordance with one of the following:::

~~1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and~~

1.~~2.~~ Where the controls and hand shower are located on the end wall adjacent to the seat, the controls and hand shower shall be located:

1.1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor

1.2 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat wall~~, or~~

Report for *06-67– 2021*		
2.3. ~~3.~~ Where the controls and hand shower are located on the back wall opposite the seat, 2.1. Hand showers can be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor. 2.2. Controls can be located at a height of 27 inches (686 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and 2.3. the controls and hand shower shall be located within 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the centerline of the seat toward the transfer space.		
Committee Reason: The modification was to increase the locations permitted for controls for the wall across from the seat in alternate roll-in showers the same as the proposal for transfer showers. The committee felt that this increased area for controls is within reach of the seat and would not obstruct knee clearances. Under the grab bar is consistent with tub controls, so it should be reachable. This expansion of control areas needs to be coordinated with the allowances approved by the replacement to 06-47 – so the committee approved the intent understanding this will look different in the final draft since controls and hand shower locations are not split into two sections.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-68 – 2021
608.4.2

Proponent: Hope Reed, ADA Accessibility Consultant, representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWERS

608.4.2 Standard roll-in showers. In standard roll-in showers, the controls, ~~and~~ hand shower and other elements shall not be located above the seat. Controls, diverters, and hand showers shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall.
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the bathtub floor and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

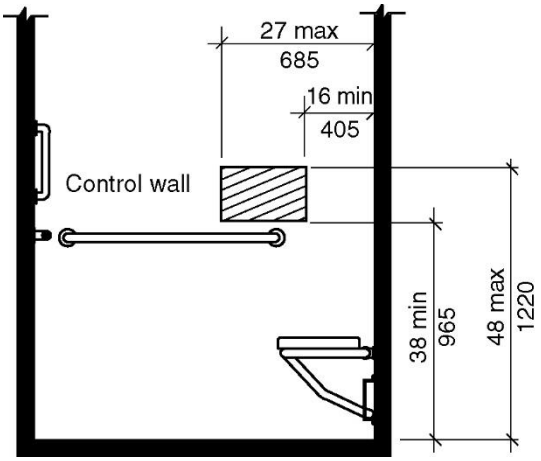


FIGURE 608.4.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER CONTROLS AND HAND SHOWER LOCATION

REASON: Provide controls *for* people using the permanent seat and a wall mounted shower head *for* those who stand, with support of the grab bars, while showering. Serve varying levels of disability and allow a standard showering set up for the care giver, spouse, and friend who will also be sharing the accessible bathroom. Controls at the seated location are essential because a person who stands while showering can easily reach and adjust the diverter and water temperature at the back wall control area.

Committee Action: Disapproval 25-0-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.

608.4.2.REED.doc

Report for *06-68– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed that the replacement proposal to 06-47 will address issues in items 06-47, 06-48, 06-49, 06-51, 06-52, 06-66, 06-68.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-69 – 2021
608.5

Proponent: Hope Reed, ADA Accessibility Consultant, representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWERS

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature that complies with 309.4. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the shower wand while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor. The hand shower wand shall be configured to allow adjustment of the water spray direction and limit rotation during use.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

REASON: The hose for hand shower wands is usually twisted and when water pressure comes on it becomes even more twisted. When the spray wand is attached to a vertical bar and water is turned on it may then rotate even further within the mounting. A round mount and round spray wand handle cannot be secured, especially when wet. Often the spray wand can spray in only one direction from its attachment. A person with disabilities who stands while showering may have to hover in the back corner and get only a small, small portion of the spray, or they may have to stand where they can block the water from spraying out into the room. *See alternate proposal we provided with 608.S(b).*

Committee Action: The proposal was slit between the revisions to the 2nd and the new 4th sentence.
Part 1 – Revision to 2nd sentence – AS 11-9-1
Part 2 – Addition of 4th sentence – D 20-3-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):
Replace with the following:
608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand

shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature that complies with 309.4. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the shower wand while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

Committee Reason: The committee felt that it was appropriate to ask for a non-positive shut off valve to meet Section 309.4 instead of all of Section 309 since the shower head is intended to be hand held and not fixed. There was a discussion about if specific provisions over ride general requirements or not. The intent is that the more specific provisions would override the general provisions for operable parts (i.e., clear floor space, reach, and operation).

The addition of the last sentence was disapproved because the committee felt that the language was too open for interpretation and unenforceable.

608.5a-REED.doc

Report for *06-69– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS & D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 11-9-1 & 20-3-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Replace with the following:** **608.5 Hand showers.** A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature that complies with 309.4. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the shower wand while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor. **Exception:** In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.		
Committee Reason: The committee felt that it was appropriate to ask for a non-positive shut off valve to meet Section 309.4 instead of all of Section 309 since the shower head is intended to be hand held and not fixed. There was a discussion about if specific provisions over ride general requirements or not. The intent is that the more specific provisions would override the general provisions for operable parts (i.e., clear floor space, reach, and operation). The addition of the last sentence was disapproved because the committee felt that the language was too open for interpretation and unenforceable.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-70 – 2021
608.5

Proponent: Hope Reed, ADA Accessibility Consultant, representing self

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWERS

608.5 Hand showers. A hand shower with a hose 59 inches (1500mm) minimum in length, that can be used both as a fixed shower head and as a hand shower, shall be provided. The hand shower shall have a control with a nonpositive shut-off feature that complies with 309.4. Where provided, an adjustable-height hand shower mounted on a vertical bar shall be installed so as to not obstruct the use of grab bars. A means to hold the shower wand while in the on or off position shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor. The hand shower mount shall require the hand shower water spray to be directed without rotating during use and shall be located according to the following:

1. On the back wall,
2. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and
3. 16 inches (405 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum from the wall behind the seat.

Exception: In other than Accessible units and Type A units, a fixed shower head located 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor shall be permitted in lieu of a hand shower.

REASON: The hose for hand shower wands is usually twisted and when water pressure comes on it becomes even more twisted. When the spray wand is attached to a vertical bar and water is turned on it may then rotate even further within the mounting. A round mount and round spray wand handle cannot be secured, especially when wet. Often the spray wand can spray in only one direction from its attachment. A person with disabilities who stands while showering may have to hover in the back corner and get only a small, small portion of the spray, or they may have to stand where they can block the water from spraying out into the room. *See alternate proposal we provided with 608.5(a).*

Staff Note: 06-55 and 06-70 were both dispensed with one vote.

Committee Action: Disapproved 29-3-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the vague language would not be uniformly enforceable. In addition, rotation of the hand held shower is a convenience issue, not an accessibility issue.

608.5b-REED.doc

Report for *06-70– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-3-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved because the vague language would not be uniformly enforceable. In addition, rotation of the hand held shower is a convenience issue, not an accessibility issue.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-71 – 2021
608.6, 608.6.1(New)

Proponent: Stanley Wyche Ross, representing State of New Mexico Governor's Commission on Disability

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWERS

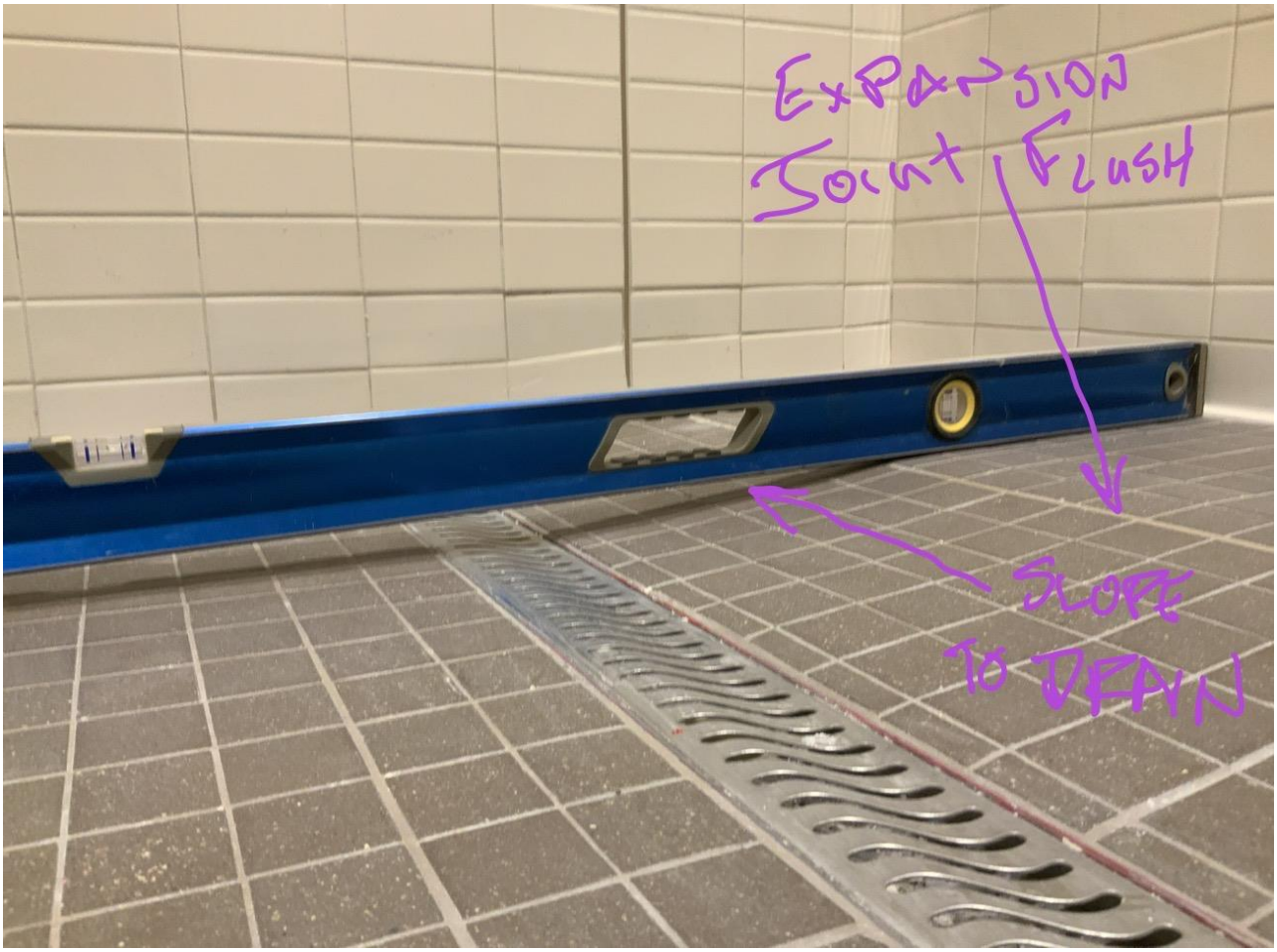
608.6 Shower floor and threshold. The shower floor and threshold shall comply with Section 608.6.

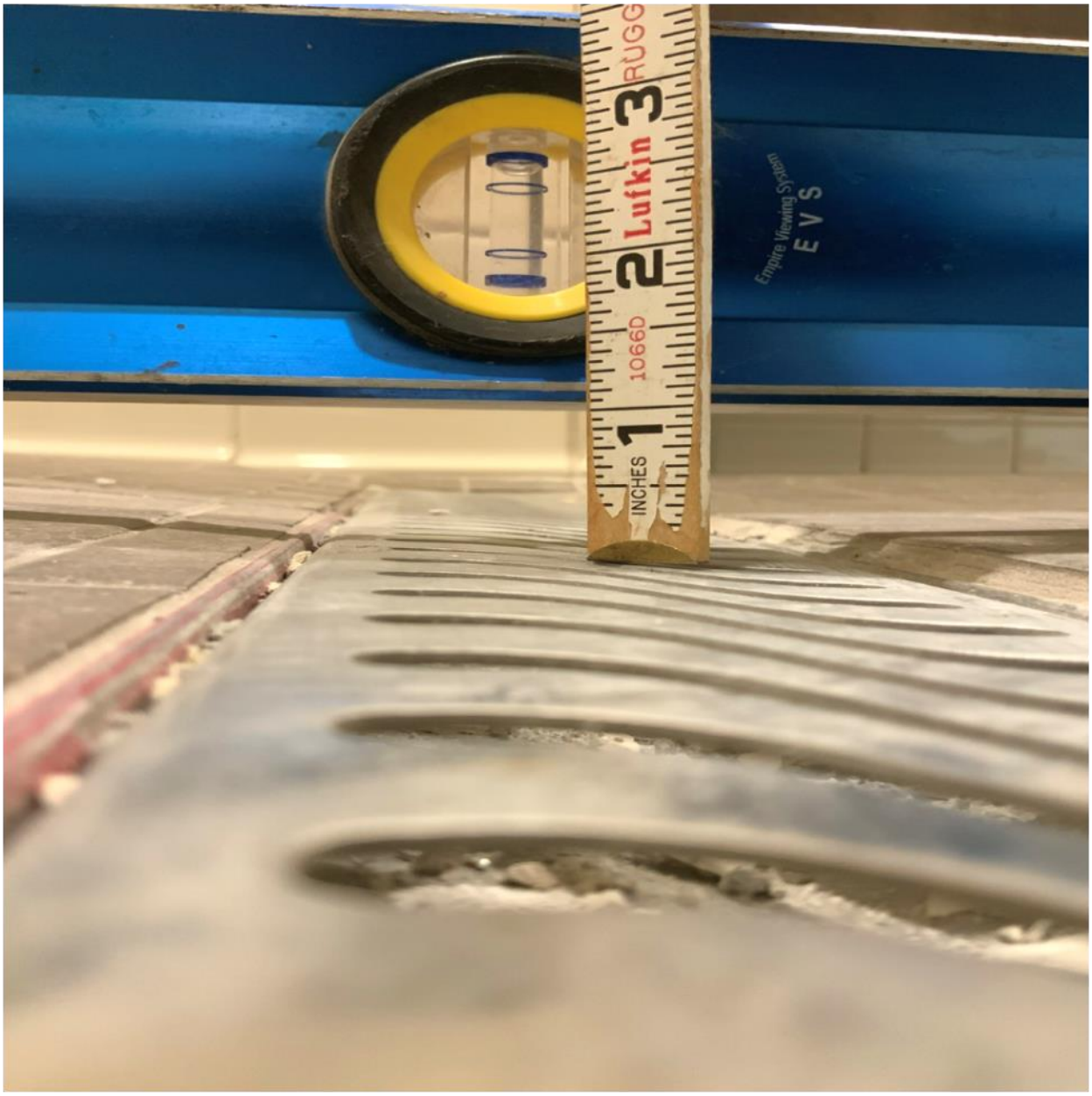
608.6.1 Shower floor. The slope of the required shower floor size shall not exceed 1:48 in all directions. The floor drains shall comply with Section 302.3. Changes in level are permitted only at the threshold strip.

~~**608.6**~~ **608.6.2 Threshold**. The threshold shall be located within a 4 inch (102 mm) wide strip along entry side of the shower, or sides of the shower. This 4 inch (102 mm) wide strip shall be centered along the shower floor size line. Threshold in roll-in-type shower compartments shall be 1/2 inch (13mm) maximum in height in accordance with Section 303. In transfer-type shower compartments, thresholds 1/2 inch (13mm) maximum in height shall be beveled, rounded, or vertical.

Exception: In existing facilities, in transfer-type shower compartments where provision of a threshold $^1/_2$ inch (13 mm) in height would disturb the structural reinforcement of the floor slab, a threshold 2 inches (51 mm) maximum in height shall be permitted.

REASON: The required shower floor size needs specific slope standards. Identify 1 :48 maximum slopes within the required shower floor area similar to Section 502.5 parking area slopes. Also include a specific location for the threshold strip. The threshold could overlap the clearance between the clear floor area and shower seat. See attached photos of a recent shower install. We had to use the "Guidance on ADA" to help explain threshold requirements to the builder.


EXPANSION
JOINT FLUSH
SLOPE
TO DRAIN



This is a short video.

20210122_095947_video_20210122_0959

Committee Action: Disapproved 24-1-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: As written, this proposal would limit the allowances needed for good shower drainage. The issue is different for central drains versus threshold or back wall pan drains.

608.6-ROSS.doc

Report for *06-71– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-1-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: As written, this proposal would limit the allowances needed for good shower drainage. The issue is different for central drains versus threshold or back wall pan drains.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-72 – 2021

608.7, 1103.5, 1103.11.2.5, 1103.11.2.5.3(New), 1104.11.3.1.3, 1104.11.3.1.3.3, 1104.11.3.1.3.4(New), 1104.11.3.2.3, 1104.11.3.2.3.3(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 607
BATHTUBS

607.7 Bathtub enclosures. Enclosures for bathtubs shall not obstruct controls, faucets, shower and spray units or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto bathtub seats or into bathtubs. Enclosures on bathtubs shall not have tracks installed on the rim of the bathtub.

SECTION 608
SHOWERS

608.7 Shower enclosures. Shower compartment enclosures for shower compartments shall not obstruct controls or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats. Track for enclosures on showers shall comply with the threshold requirement in Section 608.6.

SECTION 1102
ACCESSIBLE UNITS

1102.11.2 Toilet and bathing facility. At least one toilet and bathing facility shall comply with Section 603. At least one lavatory, one water closet and either a bathtub or shower within the unit shall comply with Sections 604 through 610. These toilet and bathing fixtures shall be in a single toilet/bathing area, such that travel between fixtures does not require travel through other parts of the unit.

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS

1103.5 Doors and doorways. The primary entrance door to the unit, and all other doorways intended for user passage, shall comply with Section 404.

Exceptions:

1. Thresholds at exterior sliding doors shall be permitted to be ¾ inch (19 mm) maximum in height, provided they are beveled with a slope not greater than 1:2.
2. In toilet rooms and bathrooms not required to comply with Section 1103.11.2, maneuvering clearances required by Section 404.2.3 shall not be required on the toilet room or bathroom side of the door.
3. A turning space between doors in a series as required by Section 404.2.5 is not required.
4. Storm and screen doors shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.5.

5. Communicating doors between individual sleeping units shall not be required to comply with Section 404.2.5.
6. At other than the primary entrance door, where exterior space dimensions of balconies are less than the required maneuvering clearance, door maneuvering clearance is not required on the exterior side of the door.
7. The maneuvering clearances required by Section 404 shall not be required within a closet or pantry complying with Exception 2 of Section 1103.3.2.
8. Doors that are part of a shower enclosure are not required to comply with this section.

1103.11.2.5 Bathing fixtures. The bathing fixture shall be a bathtub complying with Section 1103.11.2.5.1 or a shower compartment complying with Section 1103.11.2.5.2. Bathtub and shower enclosures shall comply with Section 1103.11.2.5.3.

1103.11.2.5.1 Bathtub. Bathtubs shall comply with Section 607.

Exception: Countertops and cabinetry shall be permitted at one end of the clearance, provided the following criteria are met:

1. The countertop and cabinetry can be removed;
2. The floor finish extends under the countertop and cabinetry; and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the countertop and cabinetry are finished.

1103.11.2.5.2 Shower. Showers shall comply with Section 608.

Exception: At standard roll-in shower compartments complying with Section 608.2.2, lavatories, countertops and cabinetry shall be permitted at one end of the clearance, provided the following criteria are met:

1. The countertop and cabinetry can be removed;
2. The floor finish extends under the countertop and cabinetry; and
3. The walls behind and surrounding the countertop and cabinetry are finished.

1103.11.2.5.3 Bathtub or shower enclosures. A bathtub or shower enclosure shall be permitted where the assembly on the side of the bathtub or shower where the clearance is provided can be removed without removal or replacement of the surrounding walls and floor to which it is affixed.

SECTION 1104
TYPE B UNITS (Option A and Option B)

1104.5.2 User passage doorways. Doorways intended for user passage shall comply with Section 1104.5.2.

Exception: Doors that are part of a shower ~~door assembly~~ enclosure shall not be required to comply with this section.

1104.11.3.1.3 Bathing fixtures. Where provided, a bathtub shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.1 or 1104.11.3.1.3.2 and a shower compartment shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.3. Bathtub and shower enclosures shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.4.

1104.11.3.1.3.1 Parallel approach bathtubs. A clearance 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a parallel approach. Lavatories complying with Section 606 shall be permitted in the clearance. A lavatory complying with Section 1104.11.3.1.1 shall be permitted at one end of the bathtub if a clearance 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width is provided in front of the bathtub.

1104.11.3.1.3.2 Forward approach bathtubs. A clearance 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a forward approach. A water closet and a lavatory shall be permitted in the clearance at one end of the bathtub.

1104.11.3.1.3.3 Shower compartment. If a shower compartment is the only bathing facility, the shower compartment shall have dimensions of 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in width and 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in depth. A clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length, measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured from the face of the shower compartment, shall be provided.

~~**Exceptions**~~ **Exception:**

1. ~~1.~~ A shower compartment with dimensions of 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth and 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum in width shall be permitted.
2. ~~2. A shower door assembly shall be permitted where the assembly can be removed without removal or replacement of the surrounding walls and floor to which it is affixed.~~

1104.11.3.1.3.4 Bathtub or shower enclosures. A bathtub or shower enclosure shall be permitted where the assembly on the side of the bathtub or shower where the clearance is provided can be removed without removal or replacement of the surrounding walls and floor to which it is affixed.

1104.11.3.2.3 Bathing fixtures. The bathing fixture shall be a bathtub complying with Section 1104.11.3.2.3.1 or a shower compartment complying with Section 1104.11.3.2.3.2. Bathtub and shower enclosures shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.2.3.3.

1104.11.3.2.3.1 Bathtub. A clearance 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control end of the bathtub, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs.

1104.11.3.2.3.2 Shower compartment. A shower compartment shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.3.

1104.11.3.2.3.3 Bathtub or shower enclosures. A bathtub or shower enclosure shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.4

REASON: The purpose of this change is to clarify the requirements for bathtub/shower and shower enclosure that use doors (swinging or sliding) instead of curtains to limit the spread of the water. Shower enclosures are addressed already for Type B units, but we did not clarify bathtub/shower type units. While tracks for shower doors are addressed at bathtub edges, we are silent for showers with tracks.

Type A and Type B units are permanent housing, so within those units, removal of the enclosure should be permitted as an adaptation similar to cabinet removal in Type A units. Sliding doors are often used on showers to increase access into the room and to be in front of the shower. Shower doors of this type will not provide the 32" clear width of regular doors. Since a lot of slip and falls happen in your own bathroom, allowing for tub and shower enclosure is an important safety allowance.

I would like to get some better input from HUD on what is expected for enclosures in the FHAG.

Committee Action: Mod to 608.7 – 15-5-1; As modified 18-2-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further modify as follows:

608.7 Shower enclosures. Shower compartment enclosures for shower compartments shall not obstruct controls or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats. ~~Track for enclosures on showers shall comply with the threshold requirement in Section 608.6.~~

Committee Reason: The modification to delete the last sentence of Section 608.7 was because threshold requirements are already addressed in the current text, so this pointer is not needed. The committee agreed that this change clarifies the requirements for bathtub/shower and shower enclosure that use doors (swinging or sliding) instead of curtains to limit the spread of the water.

607.7 et al-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-72– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 18-2-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further modify as follows:** **608.7 Shower enclosures.** Shower compartment enclosures for shower compartments shall not obstruct controls or obstruct transfer from wheelchairs onto shower seats. ~~Track for enclosures on showers shall comply with the threshold requirement in Section 608.6.~~		
Committee Reason: The modification to delete the last sentence of Section 608.7 was because threshold requirements are already addressed in the current text, so this pointer is not needed. The committee agreed that this change clarifies the requirements for bathtub/shower and shower enclosure that use doors (swinging or sliding) instead of curtains to limit the spread of the water.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		

Report for *06-72– 2021*		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-73 – 2021
608.9(New), 608.9.1(New), 608.9.2(New), 608.9.3(New)

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWERS

Add new text as follows:

608.9 Shower Accessories. Accessories shelves shall have size and locations complying with Section 608.9.

608.9.1 Depth. Accessory shelves shall project 3 inch (76 mm) maximum from face of wall.

608.9.2 Quantities. Not more than one shelf shall in installed in a compartment.

608.9.3 Location. Accessory shelves shall be located at a height of 22 inches (559 mm) minimum and 32 inches (813 mm) maximum above the bathtub or shower floor. The shelves shall not overlap the seat or be located under the area required for controls.

REASON: This proposal provides guidance for surface mounted shelves inside the bathing fixtures.

Committee Action: Disapproved 28-0-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The term 'accessory' is too broad. There should be consideration for both surface mounted and recessed shelves. If you do not allow a shelf under the controls, the shelf would be out of the reach of the person on the seat. Why not allow over the grab bar if it does not obstruction controls or the grab bars? Why only one shelf allowed. This does not address where someone installs dispensers for shampoo on the wall. This needs to be addressed, but needs the bathing work group to reconsider the proposal.

608.9-ANDERSON.doc

Report for *06-73– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 28-0-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The term 'accessory' is too broad. There should be consideration for both surface mounted and recessed shelves. If you do not allow a shelf under the controls, the shelf would be out of the reach of the person on the seat. Why not allow over the grab bar if it does not obstruction controls or the grab bars? Why only one shelf allowed. This does not address where someone installs dispensers for shampoo on the wall. This needs to be addressed, but needs the bathing work group to reconsider the proposal.		

Report for *06-73– 2021*		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

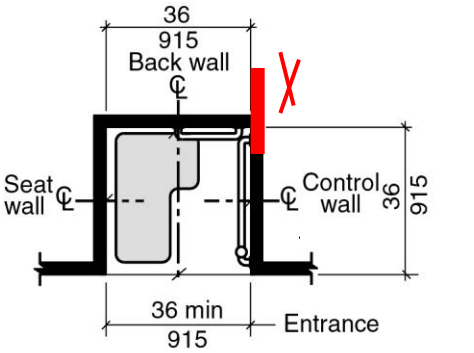
06-74 – 2021

Figures 608.2.1.1, 608.2.1.2(A), 608.2.1.2(B), 608.2.1.2(C), 608.3.1(B), 608.3.2(B), 608.3.3(B), 1104.11.3.1.3.3(A), 1104.11.3.1.3.3(B)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS



Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

FIGURE 608.2.1.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE

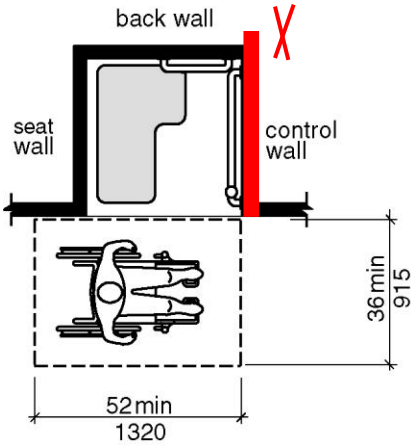


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(A)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES
NEW BUILDINGS –OPTION 1

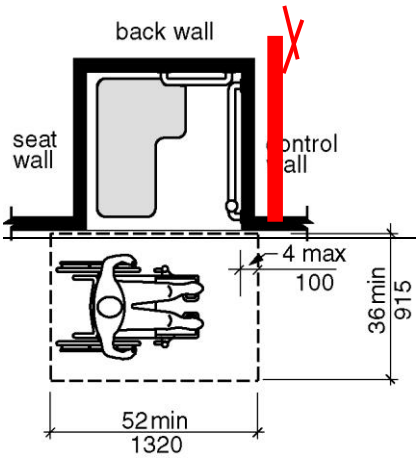


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(B)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES
NEW BUILDINGS - OPTION 2

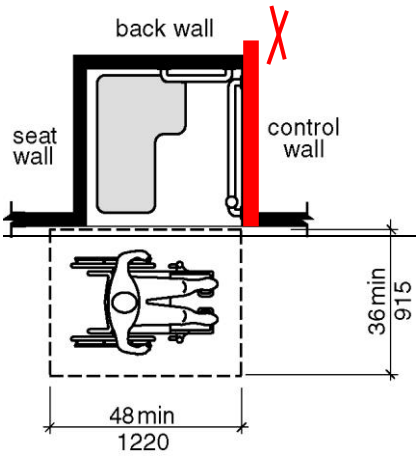
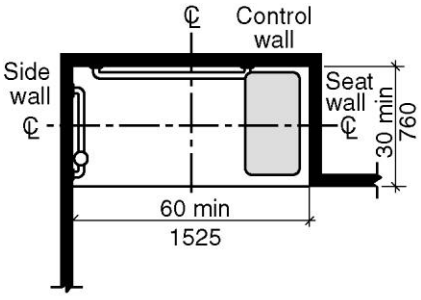


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(C)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES
EXISTING BUILDINGS



Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

FIGURE 608.2.2.1
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE

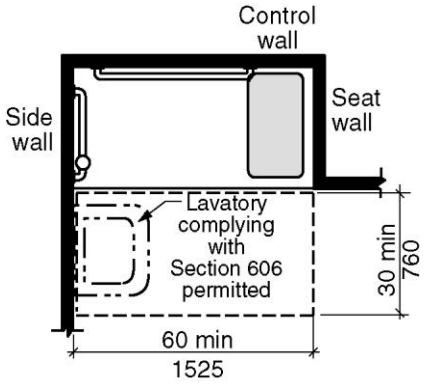


FIGURE 608.2.2.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCE

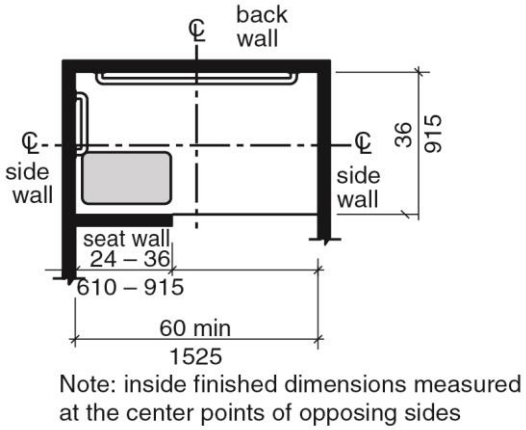


FIGURE 608.2.3.1
ALTNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE

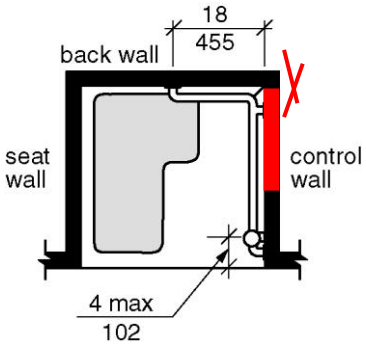


FIGURE 608.3.1(B)
GRAB BARS IN TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER-PLAN

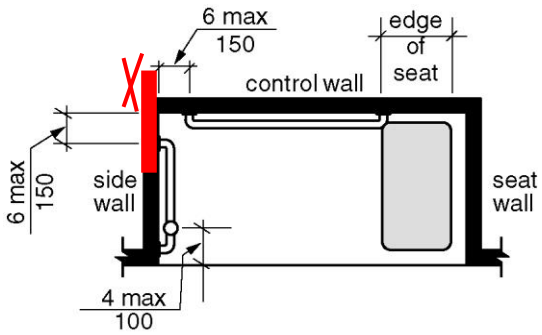


FIGURE 608.3.2(B)
GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER - PLAN

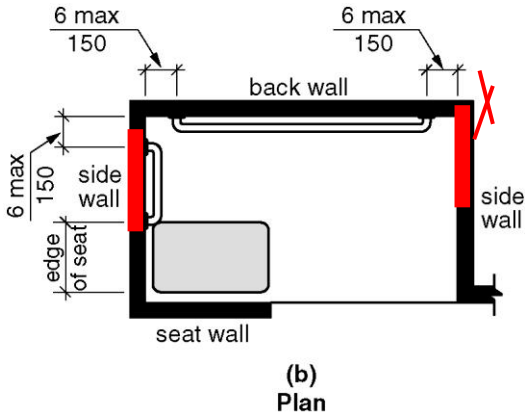
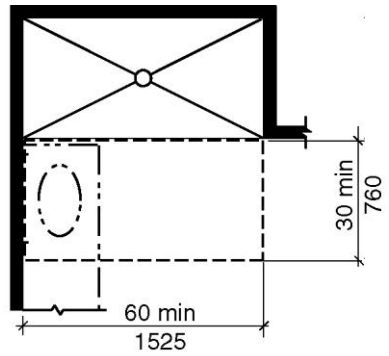


FIGURE 608.3.3(B)
GRAB BARS IN ALTERNATIE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER - PLAN

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS



Note: Lavatory permitted per Section 608.2.2

FIGURE 1103.11.2.5.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT
TYPE A UNITS

SECTION 11034
TYPE B UNITS

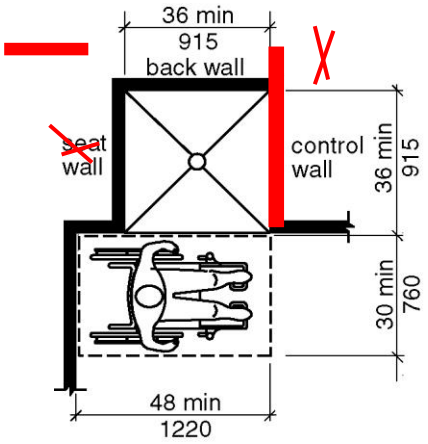


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.3(A)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS

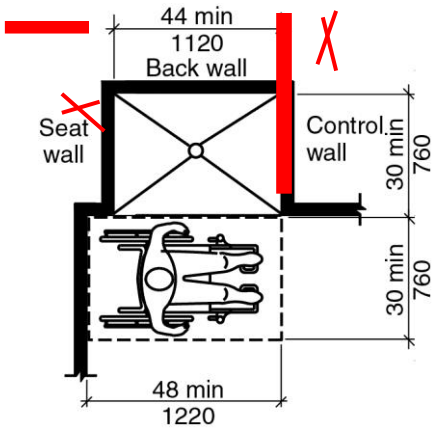


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.3(B)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS EXCEPTION

REASON: The current drawings for showers are not consistent and do not show the typical configuration for common plumbing walls. The current bathtub drawings are consistent for common plumbing wall and a forward approach to the clear floor space. This is a suggestion for making them match in Chapter 6 and 11. There are no changes to technical criteria.

Committee Action: Disapproved (Vote: 31-0-3)

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Refer to editorial committee.

Report for *06-74– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 31-0-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Refer to editorial committee.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-75 – 2021

Figures 608.2.1.1, 608.2.1.2(A), 608.2.1.2(B), 608.2.1.2(C), 608.3.1(B), 608.3.2(B), 608.3.3(B), 1104.11.3.1.3.3(A), 1104.11.3.1.3.3(B)

Proponent: Ed Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University of Buffalo representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 608
SHOWER COMPARTMENTS

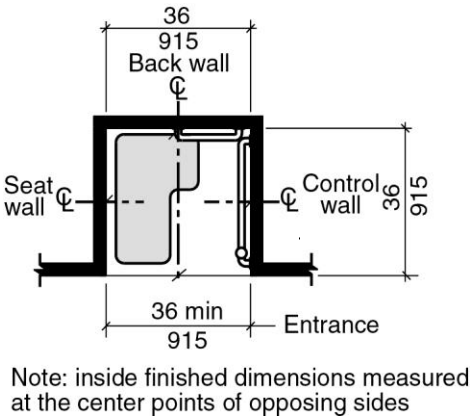


FIGURE 608.2.1.1
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE

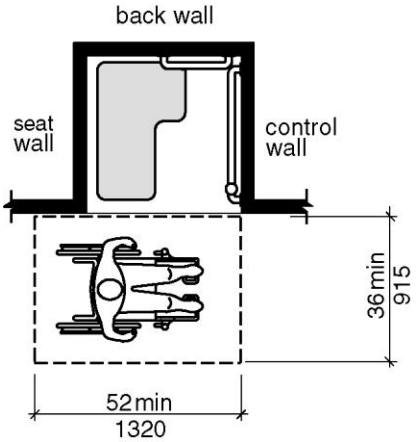


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(A)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES
NEW BUILDINGS –OPTION 1

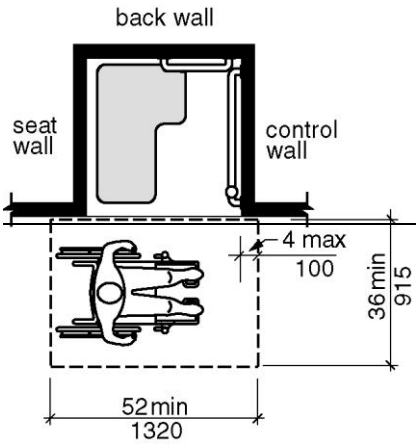


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(B)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES
NEW BUILDINGS - OPTION 2

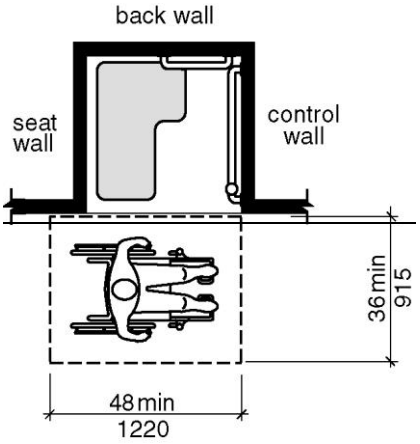
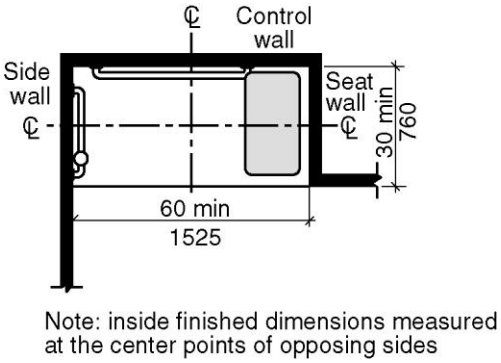


FIGURE 608.2.1.2(C)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCES
EXISTING BUILDINGS



Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

FIGURE 608.2.2.1
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE

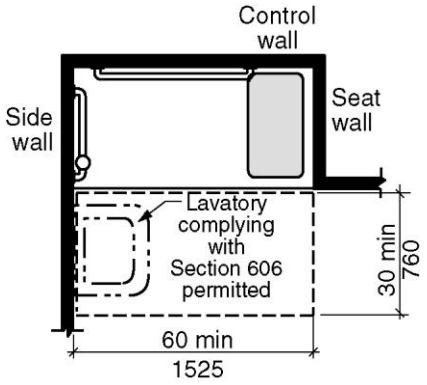
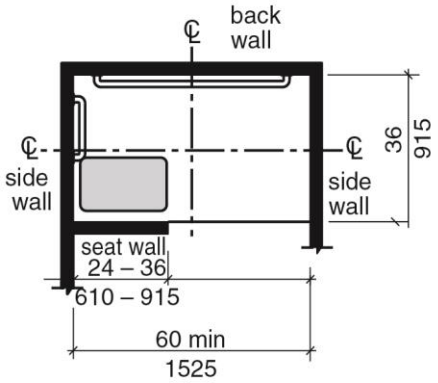


FIGURE 608.2.2.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT CLEARANCE



Note: inside finished dimensions measured at the center points of opposing sides

FIGURE 608.2.3.1
ALTNATE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT SIZE

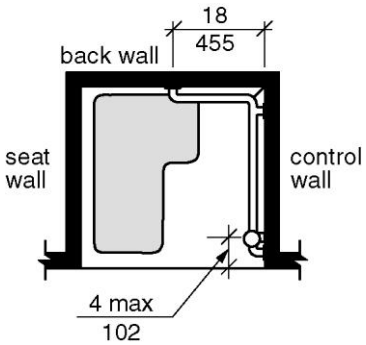


FIGURE 608.3.1(B)
GRAB BARS IN TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER-PLAN

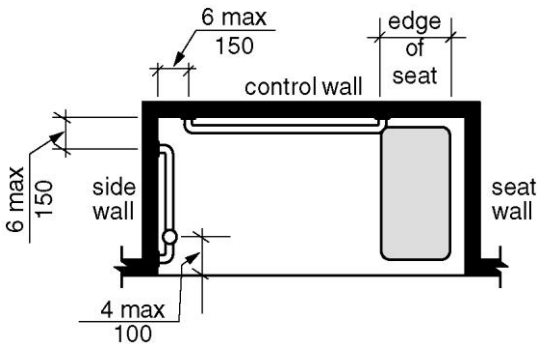


FIGURE 608.3.2(B)
GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER - PLAN

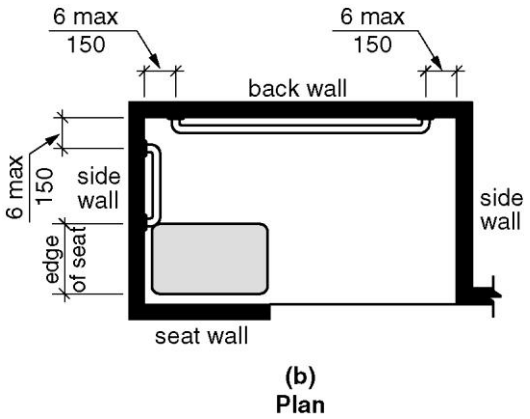
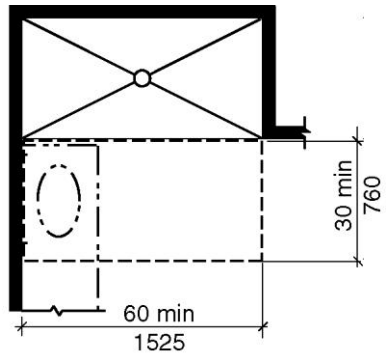


FIGURE 608.3.3(B)
GRAB BARS IN ALTERNATIE ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER - PLAN

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS



Note: Lavatory permitted per Section 608.2.2

FIGURE 1103.11.2.5.2
STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT
TYPE A UNITS

SECTION 11034
TYPE B UNITS

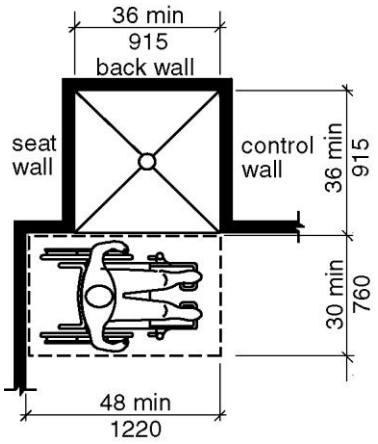


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.3(A)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS

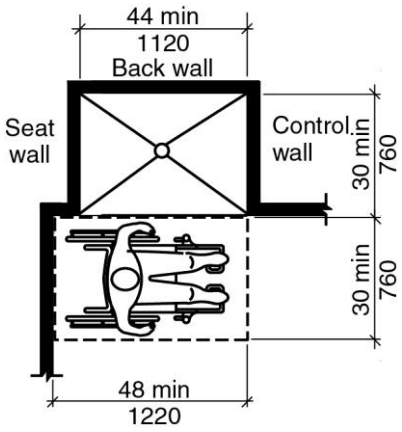


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.3(B)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS EXCEPTION

Staff note: The following is the proponent comment. There were no suggestions for revisions.

The depth dimensions in all figures are ambiguous. It is not clear where the depth dimension is taken…at the inside or outside of a shower curtain? What if the shower has a door?

In addition, it is not clear whether a shower stall with a door must comply with the door maneuvering clearances.

REASON: In public shower rooms, particularly in high end fitness centers, doors and curtains are provided for privacy. In dwelling units, some code officials measure from the center of the

curtain hanging rod, some inside of the curtain and some to the outside. Without some guidance, questions of compliance come up in the field.

Committee Action: Send to Editorial Committee

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: No specific action suggested. Send to Editorial Committee for considerations related to figures.

Chapter 6-STEINFELD.doc

Report for *06-75– 2021*		
Committee decision: Send to editorial	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: No specific action suggested. Send to Editorial Committee for considerations related to figures.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-76 – 2021
609 (New), 609.1(New), 609.2(New), 609.3(New), 609.4(New), 1009.7(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 609
POOLSIDE OR OUTDOOOR RINSING SHOWERS

609.1 Poolside or outdoor rinsing showers. Where poolside or outdoor rinsing showers are provided, at least one shall comply with Section 609.2 thru 609.4.

609.2 Clear floor space. A circular turning space complying with Section 304.3.1 shall be provided at the shower heads. The turning space shall be located so that the shower pedestal or wall with the shower head are at the one end of the space and centered on the shower head.

609.3 Hand showers. Provide at least one a hand-held shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum. The hand-held shower spray unit shall have at least one fixed position located 15 inches minimum (380 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the ground.

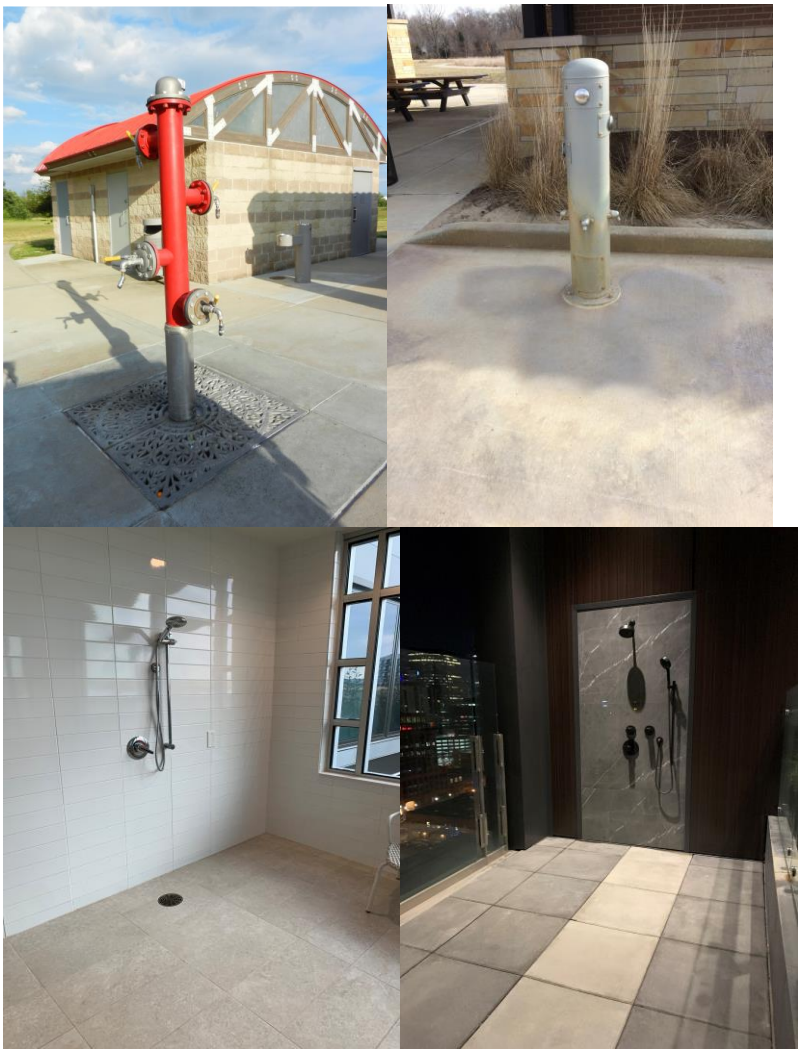
EXCEPTION: A fixed shower head located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor shall be permitted in place of a hand-held shower spray unit.

609.4 Controls. Controls for the water flow shall meet operable parts requirements in accordance with Section 309.

SECTION 1009
SWIMMING POOLS, WADING POOLS, HOT TUBS AND SPAS

1009.7 Rising showers. Where rinsing showers are provided, at least one shall comply with Section 609.

REASON: Poolside or outdoor rinsing showers are provided at swimming pools, playground splash pads and at bathrooms near beaches. There has been the question if these have to meet the general shower provisions in Section 608. Since this is not a transfer situation, seats and grab bars are should not be required. This is consistent with the Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Standards (ABAAS) in Section 1011.7 and Table 1011.2.1.
Below are examples I found at a splash park, next to an indoor pool and next to an outdoor roof pool.



From the Access Board web site.

https://www.access-board.gov/ada/guides/chapter-6-bathing-rooms/

Are rinsing showers at swimming pools, beaches, and camping areas required to comply as showers?

Shower fixtures located outside bathrooms for use at swimming pools and beaches are not required to comply as showers. However, they must still meet applicable requirements for operable parts, including clear floor space and compliant controls within accessible reach range. The ABA Standards, which apply to federally funded facilities, include provisions for outdoor developed areas on federal lands. These provisions include requirements for outdoor rinsing showers (§1011.7) which can be consulted as a reference for other types of outdoor sites.

Committee Action: As Modified 24-5-2
modification to remove scoping 18-6-2;
modification to remove circular and allow all turning 19-5-4

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 609
~~POOLSIDE OR OUTDOOOR~~ RINSING SHOWERS

609.1 ~~Poolside or outdoor~~ rinsing showers. ~~Where~~ ~~poolside or outdoor~~ rinsing showers ~~are provided, at least one~~ shall comply with Section 609.2 thru 609.4.

609.2 Clear floor space. A ~~circular~~ turning space complying with Section 304.3~~.1~~ shall be provided at the shower heads. The turning space shall be located so that the shower pedestal or wall with the shower head are at the one end of the space and centered on the shower head.

609.3 Hand showers. ~~Provide~~ ~~at least one~~ A hand-held shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum shall be provided. The hand-held shower spray unit shall have at least one fixed position located 15 inches minimum (380 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the ground.

EXCEPTION: A fixed shower head located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor shall be permitted in place of a hand-held shower spray unit.

609.4 Controls. Controls for the water flow shall meet operable parts requirements in accordance with Section 309.

SECTION 1009
SWIMMING POOLS, WADING POOLS, HOT TUBS AND SPAS

~~**1009.7 Rising showers.** Where rinsing showers are provided, at least one shall comply with Section 609.~~

Committee Reason: The modification to removed ‘poolside or outdoor’ and ‘at least one’ in the title, Section 609.1, 609.3 and 1009.7 was to remove the scoping in the proposal. There were concerns raised that removing ‘poolside or outdoor’ could be read to allow for this option for showers that were not intended to be address by this proposal. The modification to Section 609.2 was to allow either a circular or T-turn at the hand shower – however, there may be additional revisions to the 2nd sentence needed to coordinate properly with T-turns. This proposal is consistent with the recommendations for the U.S. Access Board for these types of showers. This will clarify that a rinsing shower does not always have to have a seat and grab bars like a shower for bathing; and will provide appropriate criteria. The committee recommended that this be located at the end of Chapter 6 with the Saunas rather than following the shower section.

Staff note: The following revisions would be required to Section 609.3 for consistency with the provisions for hand showers approved by the committee in 06-45 and 06-47.

Further revise as follows:

609.3 Hand showers. A hand-~~held~~ shower ~~spray unit~~ with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) ~~long~~ minimum in length shall be provided. ~~The hand-held shower spray unit shall have at least one fixed position located 15 inches minimum (380 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the ground.~~ A mount to hold the hand shower shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted.

EXCEPTIONS:

1. A fixed shower head located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor shall be permitted in ~~place~~ lieu of a hand-~~held~~ shower ~~spray unit~~.
2. The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.

609 NEW-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-76– 2021*

Committee decision: AM	*Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-5-2*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 609
~~POOLSIDE OR OUTDOOOR~~ RINSING SHOWERS

609.1 ~~Poolside or outdoor~~ rinsing showers. ~~Where poolside or outdoor~~ rinsing showers ~~are provided, at least one~~ shall comply with Section 609.2 thru 609.4.

609.2 Clear floor space. A ~~circular~~ turning space complying with Section 304.3~~.1~~ shall be provided at the shower heads. The turning space shall be located so that the shower pedestal or wall with the shower head are at the one end of the space and centered on the shower head.

609.3 Hand showers. ~~Provide at least one~~ A hand-held shower spray unit with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) long minimum shall be provided. The hand-held shower spray unit shall have at least one fixed position located 15 inches minimum (380 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the ground.

EXCEPTION: A fixed shower head located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor shall be permitted in place of a hand-held shower spray unit.

609.4 Controls. Controls for the water flow shall meet operable parts requirements in accordance with Section 309.

SECTION 1009
SWIMMING POOLS, WADING POOLS, HOT TUBS AND SPAS

~~1009.7 Rising showers.~~ ~~Where rinsing showers are provided, at least one shall comply with Section 609.~~

Committee Reason:
The modification to removed 'poolside or outdoor' and 'at least one' in the title, Section 609.1, 609.3 and 1009.7 was to remove the scoping in the proposal. There were concerns raised that removing 'poolside or outdoor' could be read to allow for this option for showers that were not intended to be address by this proposal. The modification to Section 609.2 was to allow either a circular or T-turn at the hand shower – however, there may be additional revisions to the 2nd sentence needed to coordinate properly with T-turns. This proposal is consistent with the recommendations for the U.S. Access Board for these types of showers. This will clarify that a rinsing shower does not always have to have a seat and grab bars like a shower for bathing; and will provide appropriate criteria. The committee recommended that this be located at the end of Chapter 6 with the Saunas rather than following the shower section.

Staff note: The following revisions would be required to Section 609.3 for consistency with the provisions for hand showers approved by the committee in 06-45 and 06-47.

Further revise as follows:

609.3 Hand showers. A hand-~~held~~ shower ~~spray unit~~ with a hose 59 inches (1500 mm) ~~long~~ minimum in length shall be provided. ~~The hand-held shower spray unit shall have at least one fixed position located 15 inches minimum (380 mm) and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the ground.~~

Report for *06-76– 2021*		
A mount to hold the hand shower shall be located at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor. A fixed shower head, in addition to the hand shower shall be permitted. **EXCEPTIONS:** 1. A fixed shower head located at 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the floor shall be permitted in ~~place~~ lieu of a hand-~~held~~ shower ~~spray unit~~. 2. The mount to hold the hand shower shall be permitted to be located on a vertical bar provided that the mount is adjustable in height and can be located within the area specified for the fixed mount.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-77 – 2021
609.3

Proponent: Kyle Thompson, Plumbing Manufacturers International (PMI)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.
3. Flushing device cover plates and their controls projecting from the wall up to 1 inch (25 mm) maximum shall be permitted to be 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) minimum above the grab bar.

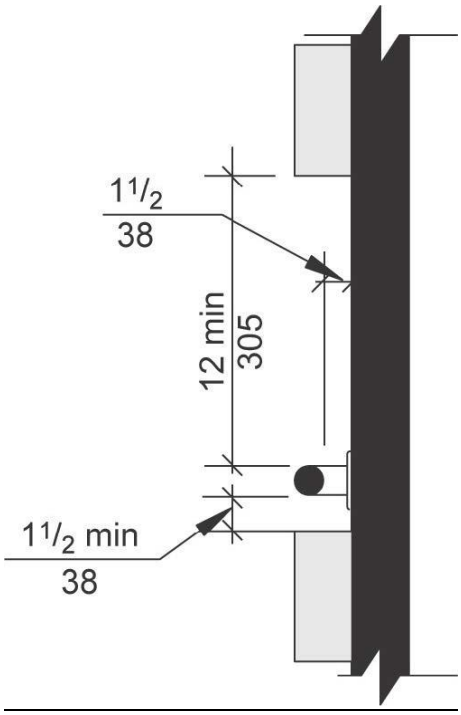


FIGURE 609.3
SPACING OF GRAB BARS

REASON: Adding exception 3 is consistent with other exceptions already identified in this section and the protrusion is limited to no greater than 1" which will not interfere with the continued use of the rear grab bar. This proposed change would make it easier on the user to access a flushing device cover plate and its controls located above the grab bar while still ensuring a minimum 1-1/2 inch space between the plate/controls and the grab bar and a limitation on the maximum projection beyond the wall. Such accommodations have already been provided in the standard for shower controls and dispensers.

The following figures are examples of the flushing device cover plates and their controls. The engineering for in-wall tank type toilets requires the flush plate remain within a specific vertical range from the bowl and its location can also be restricted horizontally. For flushometer type toilets, the rough plumbing may restrict the location. Additionally, if a grab bar is set at 36" and the flush plate must be 12" above that, the flush plate is pushed out of the obstructed side reach range of 48", limiting the options for the end-user.

Committee Action: As Modified 24-2-1
Modification to add 'and pushbutton' 17-8-3;
Modification to add 'automatic' 21-6-1;

Modification to change dimension above to 4” 22-4-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.
3. Automatic and push button Flushing device cover plates and ~~their~~ controls projecting from the wall up to 1 inch (25 mm) maximum shall be permitted to be ~~1 1/2~~ 4 inch (~~38~~ 100 mm) minimum above the grab bar.

Committee Reason: The modifications to add ‘automatic and push button’ were to clarify what type of flushing device this is meant to address (i.e., not on handle on the tank). The modification to increase the clearance above the grab bar from 1-1/2” to 4” was to address concerns about this plate blocking access to the rear grab bar, but would still allow for the control to be within reach range of someone sitting in the transfer location. The new exception is needed to address access to these devices. The committee approved centerline controls in 06-20. These devices are required to be centered on the back wall to function with the plumbing flushing system.

609.3-THOMPSON.doc

Report for 0*6-77– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-2-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise as follows:** **SECTION 609** **GRAB BARS** **609.3 Spacing.** The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the		

Report for 0*6-77– 2021*		
grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum. **Exceptions:** 1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) minimum. 2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1 1/2-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar. 3. Automatic and push button Flushing device cover plates and ~~their~~ controls projecting from the wall up to 1 inch (25 mm) maximum shall be permitted to be ~~1 1/2~~ 4 inch (~~38~~ 100 mm) minimum above the grab bar.		
Committee Reason: The modifications to add 'automatic and push button' were to clarify what type of flushing device this is meant to address (i.e., not on handle on the tank). The modification to increase the clearance above the grab bar from 1-1/2" to 4" was to address concerns about this plate blocking access to the rear grab bar, but would still allow for the control to be within reach range of someone sitting in the transfer location. The new exception is needed to address access to these devices. The committee approved centerline controls in 06-20. These devices are required to be centered on the back wall to function with the plumbing flushing system.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-78 – 2021
609.4, 609.4.1, 609.4.2

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.4 Position of grab bars. Grab bars shall be positioned in accordance with Section 6094.1, 609.4.2, or 609.4.3 as applicable.

609.4.1 ~~General~~ Horizontal position. Except for the lower grab bar on the back wall of a bath tub, grab bars ~~shall~~ required to be installed in a horizontal position shall be 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface ~~or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3~~.

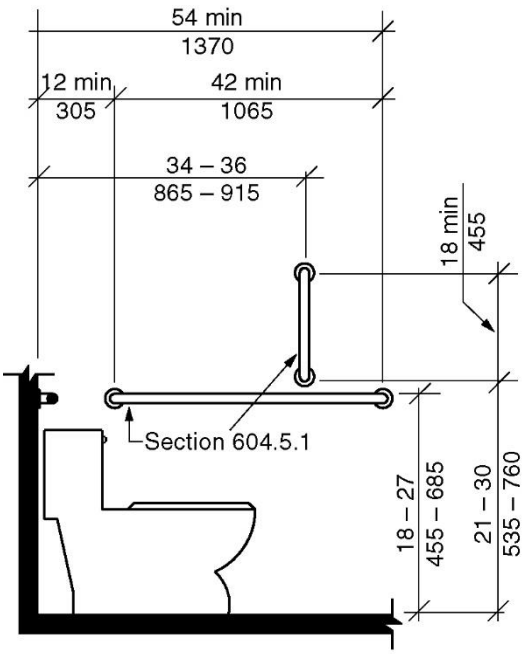
~~1.~~ The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.

~~2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.~~

~~3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.~~

609.4.2 Vertical position. The distance between grab bars required to be installed in a vertical position and any object shall be measured from the object to the centerline of the bar. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2 as applicable.

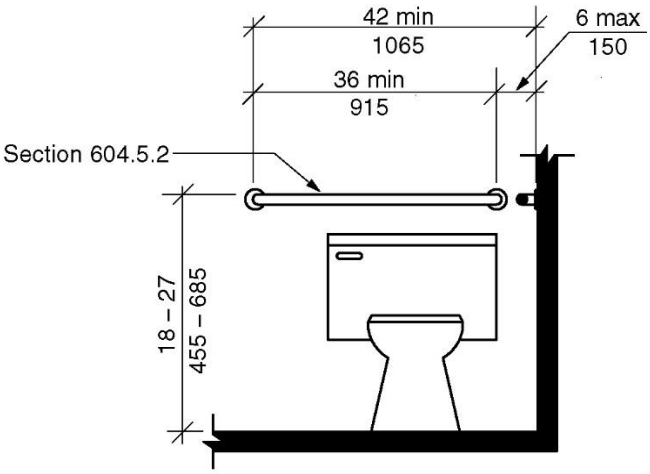
~~609.4.2~~ 609.4.3 Position of children's grab bars. At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.11, grab bars ~~shall~~ required to be installed in a horizontal position shall be 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. A vertical grab bar shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located ~~between~~ 21 inches (535 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor and with the centerline of the bar located ~~between~~ 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear wall.



Note: For adult dimensions see Fig. 604.5.1

(a) Side Wall View

FIGURE ~~609.4.2(A)~~ 609.4.3(A)
POSITIONS OF CHILDREN'S GRAB BARS
SIDE-WALL VIEW



Note: For adult dimensions see Fig. 604.5.2

(b) Rear Wall View

FIGURE ~~609.4.2(B)~~ 609.4.3(B)
POSITIONS OF CHILDREN'S GRAB BARS
REAR-WALL VIEW

REASON: This proposal simplifies a very confusing section. As written, the first part of the sentence in Section 609.4 requires grab bars to be installed in a horizontal position but, then goes on to allow options to install grab bars in a vertical position (Item #2) or in accordance with the

children's requirements for horizontal grab bars in Section 604.11 and establishes a requirement for a vertical grab bar that is not included in Section 604.11 (Item #3). Item #1 specifically addresses the lower horizontal grab bar in a bath tub. Requirements in the base paragraph and the list are NOT interchangeable. Instead, each requirement establishes differing criteria for grab bar height or location from the back wall and the measurement method depending on its position (horizonal or vertical) or whether it is located in a bath tub.

In renumbered Section 609.4.3, the proposed revision makes clear that Section 604.11 "requires" grab bars to be installed in a horizontal position. The revision then ensures that the grab bars "shall be" installed at the specified height. We also propose to remove the word "between" in two places specifying the grab bar height and distance from the rear wall because, as written the requirement would not allow the bars to be installed at the end points of the ranges – only "between" the end points.

NOTE: This is a companion proposal to our proposal to revise Section 607.4. (06-41)

Committee Action: D 27-0-2

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Disapprove based on action to 06-80. The replacement proposal combines and addresses all the measurements for grab bars.

609.4.1-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-78– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 27-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Disapprove based on action to 06-80. The replacement proposal combines and addresses all the measurements for grab bars.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-79 – 2021
609.4.1

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Revise as follows:

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.4 Position of grab bars.

609.4.1 General. Grab bars shall be installed in a horizontal position, 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through ~~3~~ 4.

1. The lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.
2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.
3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.
4. Multiple grab bars on adjacent walls shall be positioned within 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) of one another in height.

REASON: There is currently nothing that requires adjacent grab bars to be consistently positioned for height. Having one grab bar at a height three inches different than an adjacent one can be a safety concern. If someone is anticipating adjacent handrails to be the same height and it is "missing" that can lead to a dangerous situation. Although the adjacent grab bars are usually near the same height, we have seen handrails three inches off due to the need for clearance over the water closet tank – the side grab bar at 33 inches while the rear grab bar was at 36 inches.

The 1/2 inch dimension is to allow slight variations in the installation and the manner in which the height might be measured.

Committee Action: D 29-0-4

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved. The same height for adjacent multiple bars on adjacent walls is addressed for showers in Section 608.3. This is justified since people move around the corner from one bar to another. The proposed text would be an issue for as written

for bathtubs with two back wall grab bars; and the height for the grab bar on the head wall would need to be flexible to not conflict with controls. At water closets this could be an issue for balancing access to toilet paper on the side wall and access into the water closet tank for repairs on the back wall. There is not technical justification for the ½" limitation.

609.4.1-BOECKER.doc

Report for *06-79– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 29-0-4***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal was disapproved. The same height for adjacent multiple bars on adjacent walls is addressed for showers in Section 608.3. This is justified since people move around the corner from one bar to another. The proposed text would be an issue for as written for bathtubs with two back wall grab bars; and the height for the grab bar on the head wall would need to be flexible to not conflict with controls. At water closets this could be an issue for balancing access to toilet paper on the side wall and access into the water closet tank for repairs on the back wall. There is not technical justification for the ½" limitation.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-80 – 2021
609.7.1(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.7 Installation and configuration. Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space. Horizontal and vertical grab bars shall be permitted to be separate bars, a single piece bar, or combination thereof.

609.7.1 Length of grab bar. The required length of a horizontal grab bar shall be measured horizontally to the center of the return or support. The required length of a vertical grab bar shall be measured vertically to the center of the return or support.

Exception: Where the grab bar is not supported at the ends, the required length of the grab bar shall be measured to the end of the grab bar.

REASON: As currently written the standard does not provide specific guidance as to whether the length of a grab bar is only the straight/graspable portion of the bar or how to measure if (a) the bar is curved to returned to the wall or (b) supported by a bracket that covers a portion of the bar. See the attached figures (1 and 2) for examples.

At this point it appears that while the A117.1 and ADA do not clearly address this issue, that it has been addressed by the Fair Housing Design Manual (see Figure 3 attached) and that the conventional industry practice is to measure the grab bar length to the centerline of the return (for both curved or post-mounted). Therefore, the intent of this proposal is to simply provide some clarity and language within the standard so that the provision is enforced in a consistent manner. Leaving this topic unaddressed within the standard simply leads to inconsistent application and confusion.

The language selected here for adding was based on a proposal that has also been submitted to Section 505.10 to address handrails.

Figure 1: (Post supported, elevation and section)

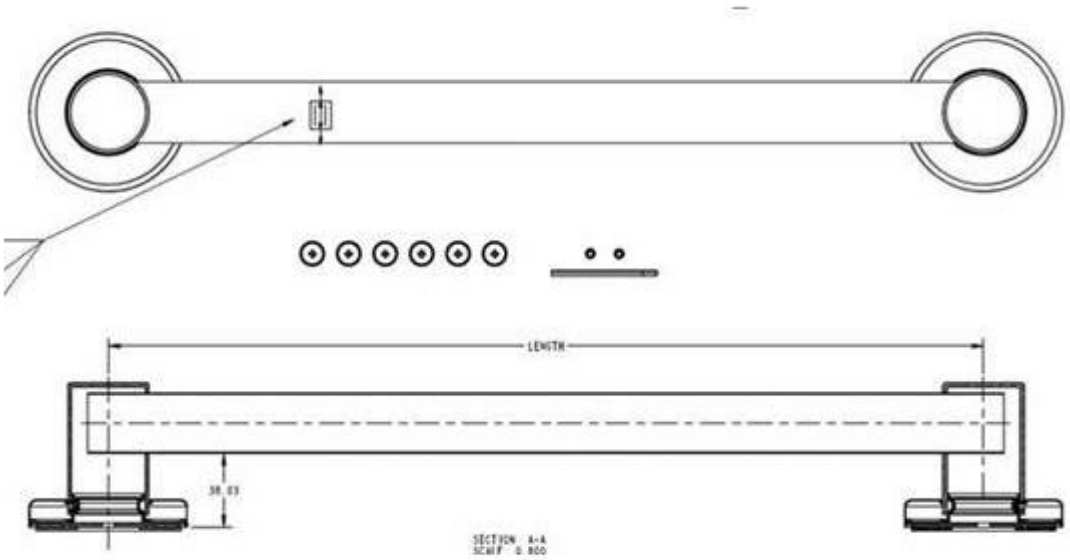


Figure 2: (End conditions; curved and post supported)

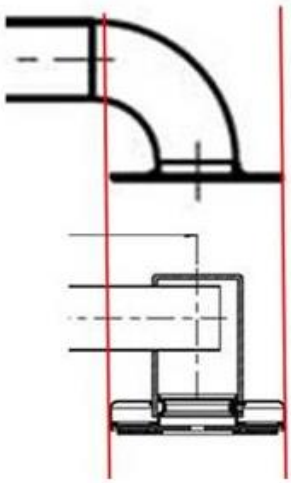
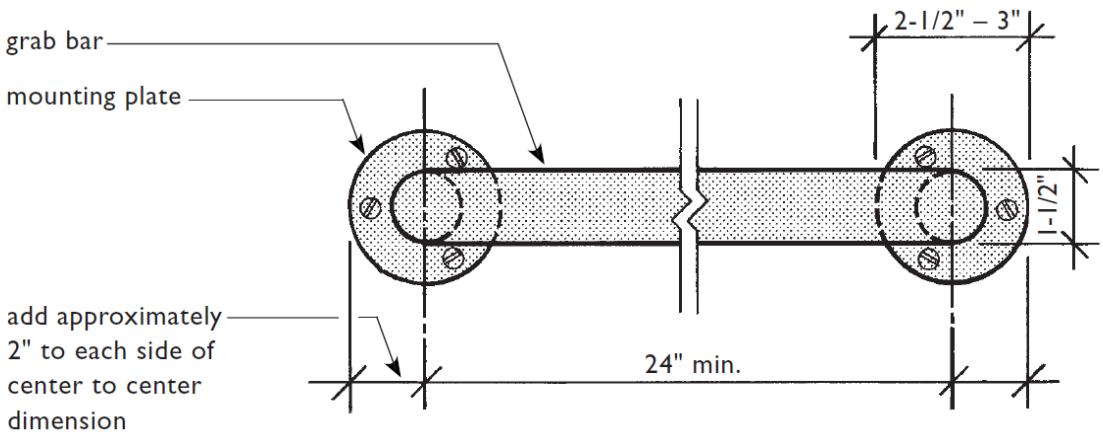


Figure 3: (Graphic from page 6.4 of Fair Housing Design Manual)



Escutcheon Plates Extend Beyond the Given Grab Bar Length

This is an example of the type of grab bar addressed in the exception.

Modification:

Replace with the following:

Water closets

604.5 Grab bars. Grab bars for water closets shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Sections 604.5.1 and 604.5.2. Grab bars shall be provided on the rear wall and on the side wall closest to the water closet.

Exceptions:

1. Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a toilet room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 604.5.
2. In detention or correction facilities, grab bars shall not be required to be installed in housing or holding cells or rooms that are specially designed without protrusions for purposes of suicide prevention.

604.5.1 Fixed side-wall grab bars. Fixed side-wall grab bars shall include a horizontal bar complying with Section 604.5.1.1 and a vertical grab bar complying with Section 604.5.1.2. The vertical grab bar at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.

Figure 604.5.1

SIDE-WALL GRAB BAR FOR WATER CLOSET

604.5.1.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum in length shall be located 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the rear wall and extend 54 inches (1370 mm) minimum from the rear wall.

604.5.1.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located 39 inches (990 mm) minimum and 41 inches (1040 mm) maximum above the floor, and ~~with the center line of the bar~~ located 39 inches (990 mm) minimum and 41 inches (1040 mm) maximum from the rear wall.

604.5.2 Rear-wall grab bars. The fixed rear-wall grab bar shall

1. Be 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length,
2. Be located 6 inches maximum (150 mm) from the side wall, and
3. Extend 42 inches (1065 mm) minimum from the side wall.

Exceptions:

1. The rear grab bar shall be permitted to be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, centered on the water closet, where wall space does not permit a grab bar 36 inches (915 mm) minimum in length due to the location of a recessed fixture adjacent to the water closet.

2. Where an administrative authority requires flush controls for flush valves to be located in a position that conflicts with the location of the rear grab bar, that grab bar shall be permitted to be split or shifted to the open side of the toilet area.

Bathtubs

607.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 607.4.1 or 607.4.2.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a bathing facility for a single occupant accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 607.4.

Bathtubs with permanent seats

607.4.1 Bathtubs with permanent seats. For bathtubs with permanent seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.1 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.1 (A)

GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB – ELEVATION

Figure 607.4.1 (B)

GRAB BARS FOR ABTHTUBS WITH SEAT AT HEAD END OF TUB – PLAN

607.4.1.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be located 15 inches (380 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.1.2 Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

Exception: An L-shaped continuous grab bar of equivalent dimensions and positioning shall be permitted to serve the function of separate vertical and horizontal grab bars.

607.4.1.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning ~~near~~ 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.1.2.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the bathtub.

Bathtubs with removeable in tub seats

607.4.2 Bathtubs with removable seats. For bathtubs with removable seats, grab bars complying with Section 607.4.2 shall be provided.

Figure 607.4.2 (A)

GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE SEATS – ELEVATION

Figure 607.4.2 (B)

GRAB BARS FOR BATHTUBS WITH REMOVABLE SEATS - PLAN

607.4.2.1 Back wall. Two horizontal grab bars shall be provided on the back wall, one complying with Section 609.4 and the other located 8 inches (205 mm) minimum and 10 inches (255 mm) maximum above the rim of the bathtub. Each grab bar shall be 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length, located 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the head end wall and extend to 12 inches (305 mm) maximum from the control end wall.

607.4.2.2 Control end wall. Control end wall grab bars shall comply with Section 607.4.1.2.

607.4.2.3 Head end wall. A horizontal grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the head end wall ~~at~~ beginning 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the bathtub.

Showers

608.3 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 608.3. Where multiple grab bars are used, required horizontal grab bars shall be installed at the same height above the floor.

Exception: Grab bars shall not be required to be installed in a shower for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use, provided reinforcement has been installed in walls and located so as to permit the installation of grab bars complying with Section 608.3.

Transfer showers

608.3.1 Transfer-type showers. Grab bars for transfer type showers shall comply with Section 608.3.1.

Figure 608.3.1 (A)

GRAB BARS IN TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER – ELEVATION

Figure 608.3.1 (B)

GRAB BARS IN TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER - PLAN

608.3.1.1 Horizontal grab bars. Horizontal grab bars shall be provided across the control wall beginning 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the shower compartment and on the back wall to a point 18 inches (455 mm) from the control wall.

608.3.1.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower.

Roll-in showers

608.3.2 Standard roll-in-type showers. Grab bars in standard roll-in showers shall comply with Sections 608.3.2.1 through 608.3.2.3.

Figure 608.3.2 (A)

GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER

ELEVATION

Figure 608.3.2 (B)

GRAB BARS IN STANDARD ROLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER

PLAN

608.3.2.1 Back-wall grab bar. In standard roll-in type showers, a grab bar shall be provided on the back wall beginning at the edge of the seat. The grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. The back-wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent side wall opposite the seat.

Exceptions:

1. The back wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.
2. The back-wall grab bar is not required to extend within 6 inches (150 mm) of the adjacent side wall opposite the seat if it would require the grab bar length to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.

608.3.2.2 Side-wall grab bars. Where a side wall is provided opposite the seat within 72 inches (1830 mm) of the seat wall, a grab bar shall be provided on the side-wall opposite the seat. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall beginning 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the shower compartment and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.

Exception: The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length and shall be located with one end within 6 inches of the adjacent back wall.

608.3.2.3 Vertical grab bar. Where a side wall is provided opposite the seat within 72 inches (1830 mm) of the seat wall a vertical grab bar shall be provided. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the end wall 3 inches (75 mm) minimum and 6 inches (150 mm) maximum above the horizontal grab bar, and 4 inches (100 mm) maximum inward from the front edge of the shower.

Alternate roll-in showers

608.3.3 Alternate roll-in-type showers. In alternate roll-in type showers, grab bars shall be provided on the back wall and the side wall adjacent to the seat. Grab bars shall not be provided above the seat. Grab bars shall be 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent wall.

Figure 608.3.3 (A)

GRAB BARS IN ALTERNATIVE TOLL-IN-TYPE SHOWER – ELEVATION

Figure 608.3.3 (B)

SECTION 609
GRAB BARS

609.1 General. Grab bars in toilet or bathing facilities shall comply with Section 609.

609.2 Cross section. Grab bars shall have a cross section complying with Section 609.2.1 or 609.2.2.

Figure 609.2

SIZE OF GRAB BARS

609.2.1 Circular cross section. Grab bars with a circular cross section shall have an outside diameter of 1¼ inch (32 mm) minimum and 2 inches (51 mm) maximum.

609.2.2 Noncircular cross section. Grab bars with a noncircular cross section shall have a cross section dimension of 2 inches (51 mm) maximum, and a perimeter dimension of 4 inches (100 mm) minimum and 4.8 inches (120 mm) maximum.

609.3 Spacing. The space between the wall and the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm). The space between the grab bar and projecting objects below and at the ends of the grab bar shall be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum. The space between the grab bar and projecting objects above the grab bar shall be 12 inches (305 mm) minimum.

Exceptions:

1. The space between the grab bars and shower controls, shower fittings, and other grab bars above the grab bar shall be permitted to be 1½ inches (38 mm) minimum.
2. Recessed dispensers projecting from the wall ¼ inch (6.4 mm) maximum measured from the face of the dispenser and complying with Section 604.7 shall be permitted within the 12-inch (305 mm) space above and the 1½-inch (38 mm) spaces below and at the ends of the grab bar.

Figure 609.3

SPACING OF GRAB BARS

609.4 Position of grab bars. Grab bars shall be positioned in accordance with Section 6094.1, 609.4.2, or 609.4.3 as applicable.

609.4.1 ~~General~~ Horizontal grab bars. Grab bars ~~shall~~ required to be installed in a horizontal position shall be 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface ~~or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3.~~

Exception:

~~1.~~ The height of the lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.

~~2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.~~

~~3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.~~

609.4.2 Vertical grab bars. Grab bars required to be installed in the vertical position shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2 as applicable. The location of vertical grab bars shall be measured horizontally to the center-line of the grab bar.

~~609.4.2~~ **609.4.3 Position of children's grab bars.** At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.11, grab bars ~~shall~~ required to be installed in a horizontal position shall be 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. A vertical grab bar shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located ~~between~~ 21 inches (535 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor and with the centerline of the bar located ~~between~~ 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear wall.

Figure ~~609.4.2~~ 609.4.3 (A)

POSITIONS OF CHILDREN'S GRAB BARS

SIDE-WALL VIEW

Figure ~~609.4.2~~ 609.4.3 (B)

POSITIONS OF CHILDREN'S GRAB BARS

REAR-WALL VIEW

609.5 Surface hazards. Grab bars and any wall or other surfaces adjacent to grab bars shall be free of sharp or abrasive elements. Edges shall be rounded.

609.6 Fittings. Grab bars shall not rotate within their fittings.

609.7 Installation and configuration. Grab bars shall be installed in any manner that provides a gripping surface at the locations specified in this standard and does not obstruct the clear floor space. Horizontal and vertical grab bars shall be permitted to be separate bars, a single piece bar, or combination thereof.

609.7.1 Length of grab bar. The required length of a horizontal grab bar shall be measured horizontally to the center-line of the gar bar return. The required length of a vertical grab bar shall be measured vertically to the center -line of the grab bar return.

Exception: Where the grab bar extends past the wall supports, the required length of the grab bar shall be measured to the end of the grab bar.

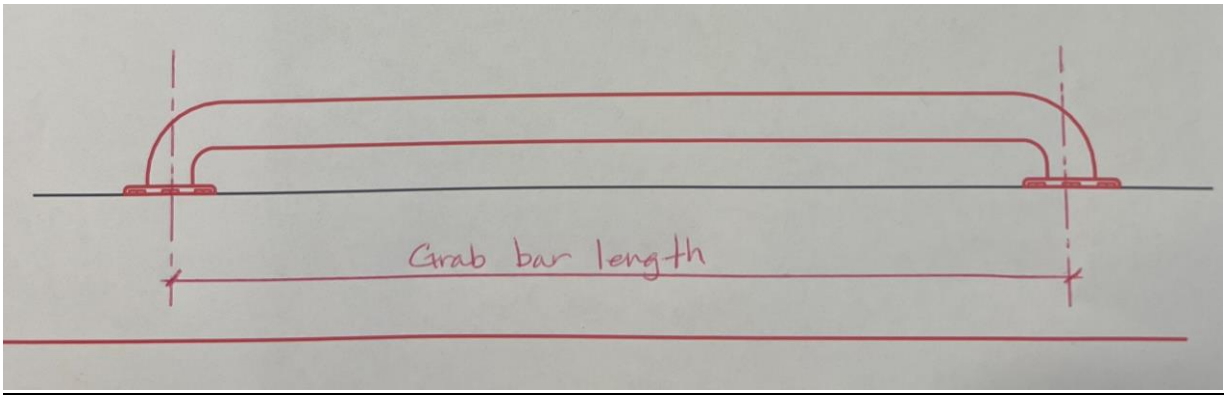


Figure 609.7.2(A)

Grab bar length - Center-line of grab bar return

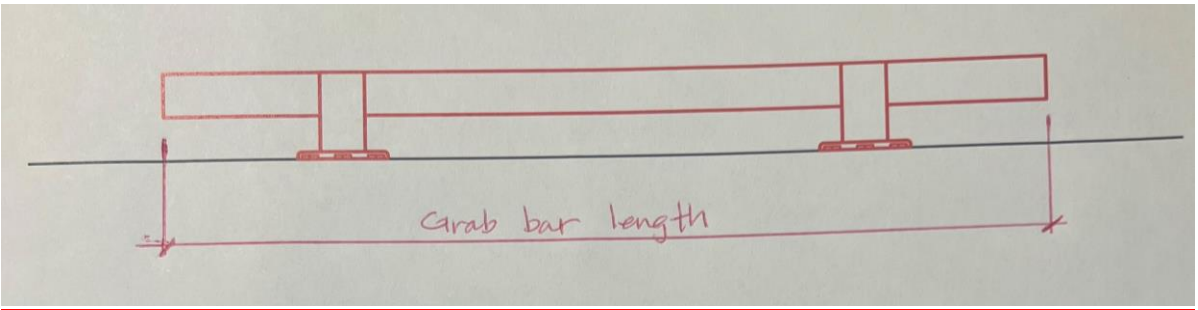


Figure 609.7.2(B)
Grab bar length - Example or exception

609.8 Structural strength. Allowable stresses shall not be exceeded for materials used where a vertical or horizontal force of 250 pounds (1112 N) is applied at any point on the grab bar, fastener mounting device, or supporting structure.

Reason: The intent it to uniformly call out the length and location of horizontal and vertical grab bars – height, length and where to measure.

6-43 – **Incorporated**. The intent of this proposal is the measurement to the top of the horizontal bar and the centerline of the vertical grab bar. Top of the horizontal bar is already in 609.4.1. Centerline of the vertical bar should also be stated there. Currently only indicated for toilets (604.5.1.2).

6-44 – **Incorporated.** If the intent of this proposal is to set a maximum distance from the front for the horizontal bars on the control wall for bathtubs. This should be uniformly applied for tubs and showers.

6-78 – **Incorporated.** We agree that splitting this into three sections makes the easier to understand than the current text. This allows for the location for the vertical grab bar to be set at the centerline. The propose text added too many words in the first sentence to avoid an exception. For vertical grab bars the proposal was not consistent in terms and used "and any object shall be measured from the object to the centerline of the bar". This sounds more like an obstruction – which is addressed in spacing in 609.3. Location is covered enough in the existing text for each configuration.

6-79- **Oppose**. Same height for adjacent multiple bars on adjacent walls is addressed for showers in 608.3. The proposed text would be an issue for as written for bathtubs with two back wall grab bars. At water closets this could be an issue for access into the water closet tank for repairs. There is not technical justification for the ½" limitation.

6-80 – **Incorporated.** The intent it for how to measure for the end of the bars. Suggestions for cleaner language was added.

Committee Action: AM 25-1-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): See the replacement modification listed above.

Committee Reason: The modification combined the concerns for measuring the location and lengths of grab bars in proposals 06-43, 06-44, 06-78 and 06-80. The modifications provide consistent language for toilets, tubs and showers. The committee felt that this proposal clarified the intent of the provisions.

609.7.1-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*6-80– 2021*

Committee decision: AM	*Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-1-3*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Replace with the following:

604.5.1.2 Vertical grab bar. A vertical grab bar 18 inches (455 mm) minimum in length shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located 39 inches (990 mm) minimum and 41 inches (1040 mm) maximum above the floor, and ~~with the center line of the bar~~ located 39 inches (990 mm) minimum and 41 inches (1040 mm) maximum from the rear wall.

607.4.1.2.1 Horizontal grab bar. A horizontal grab bar 24 inches (610 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the control end wall beginning ~~near~~ 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the bathtub and extending toward the inside corner of the bathtub.

607.4.2.3 Head end wall. A horizontal grab bar 12 inches (305 mm) minimum in length shall be provided on the head end wall ~~at~~ beginning 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the bathtub.

608.3.1.1 Horizontal grab bars. Horizontal grab bars shall be provided across the control wall beginning 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the shower compartment and on the back wall to a point 18 inches (455 mm) from the control wall.

608.3.2.2 Side-wall grab bars. Where a side wall is provided opposite the seat within 72 inches (1830 mm) of the seat wall, a grab bar shall be provided on the side-wall opposite the seat. The side wall grab bar shall extend the length of the wall beginning 4 inches (100 mm) maximum from the front edge of the shower compartment and extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from the adjacent back wall.
Exception: The side-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length and shall be located with one end within 6 inches of the adjacent back wall.

609.4 Position of grab bars. Grab bars shall be positioned in accordance with Section 6094.1, 609.4.2, or 609.4.3 as applicable.

609.4.1 ~~General~~ Horizontal grab bars. Grab bars ~~shall~~ required to be installed in a horizontal position shall be 33 inches (840 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface ~~or shall be installed as required by Items 1 through 3~~.
Exception:
~~1.~~ The height of the lower grab bar on the back wall of a bathtub shall comply with Section 607.4.1.1 or 607.4.2.1.
~~2. Vertical grab bars shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2.~~
~~3. Grab bars at water closets primarily for children's use shall comply with Section 609.4.2.~~

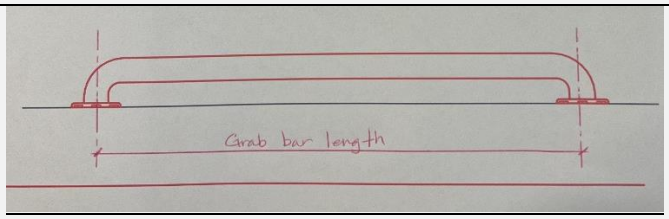
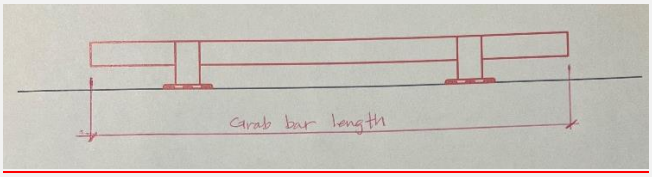
609.4.2 Vertical grab bars. Grab bars required to be installed in the vertical position shall comply with Sections 604.5.1.2, 607.4.1.2.2, 607.4.2.2 and 608.3.1.2 as applicable. The location of vertical grab bars shall be measured horizontally to the center-line of the grab bar.

~~609.4.2~~ **609.4.3 Position of children's grab bars.** At water closets primarily for children's use complying with Section 604.11, grab bars ~~shall~~ required to be installed in a horizontal position shall be 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 27 inches (685 mm) maximum above the floor measured to the top of the gripping surface. A vertical grab bar shall be mounted with the bottom of the bar located ~~between~~ 21 inches (535 mm) minimum and 30 inches (760 mm) maximum above the floor and with the centerline of the bar located ~~between~~ 34 inches (865 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum from the rear wall.

Figure ~~609.4.2~~ 609.4.3 (A)
POSITIONS OF CHILDREN'S GRAB BARS
SIDE-WALL VIEW

Figure ~~609.4.2~~ 609.4.3 (B)
POSITIONS OF CHILDREN'S GRAB BARS
REAR-WALL VIEW

609.7.1 Length of grab bar. The required length of a horizontal grab bar shall be measured horizontally to the center-line of the gar bar return. The required length of a vertical grab bar shall be measured vertically to the center -line of the grab bar return.
Exception: Where the grab bar extends past the wall supports, the required length of the grab bar shall be measured to the end of the grab bar.

Report for 0*6-80– 2021*		
 Figure 609.7.2(A) Grab bar length - Center-line of grab bar return  Figure 609.7.2(B) Grab bar length - Example or exception		
Committee Reason: The modification combined the concerns for measuring the location and lengths of grab bars in proposals 06-43, 06-44, 06-78 and 06-80. The modifications provide consistent language for toilets, tubs and showers. The committee felt that this proposal clarified the intent of the provisions.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-81 – 2021

610.2.1(New), 610.2.2(New), 610.2.3(New), Figures 610.2(A), 610.2(B), 610.2.3(New)

Proponent: Doug Anderson, representing A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group

Revise as follows:

SECTION 610
SEATS

610.2 Bathtub seats. The height of bathtub seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 19 inches (485 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat.

610.2.1 Removable in-tub seats. Removable in-tub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum in depth and shall provide a back support that shall extend from a point 2 inches (51 mm) maximum above the seat surface to a point 18 inches (455 mm) minimum above the seat surface. Removable in-tub seats shall be capable of secure placement with the back edge of the seat positioned 35 to 37 inches from the foot control wall.

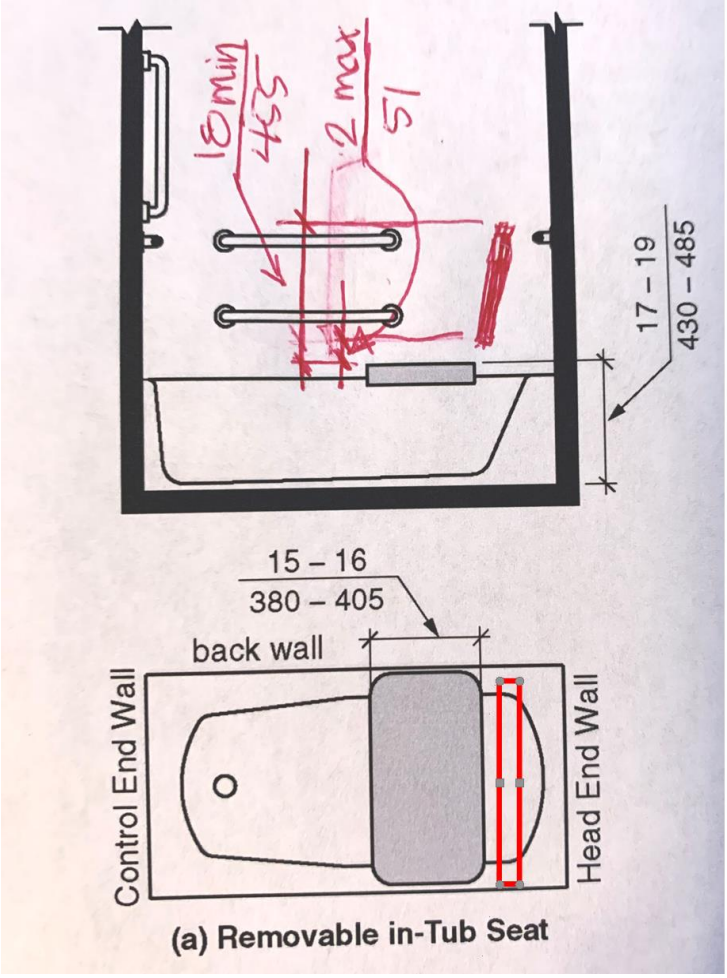
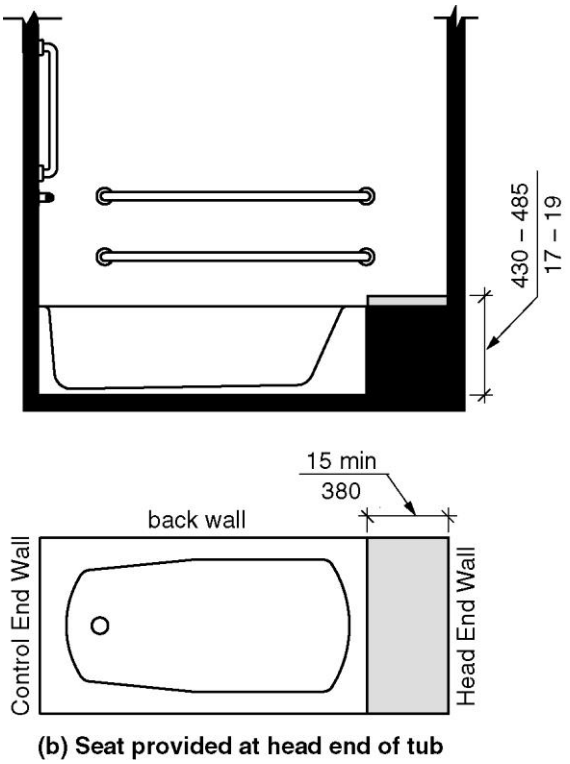


FIGURE ~~610.2(A)~~ 610.2.1
BATHTUB SEATS
REMOVABLE IN-TUB SEATS

610.2.2 Permanent Bathtub Seats. Permanent bathtub seats shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum in depth and shall extend from the back wall to or beyond the outer edge of the bathtub. Permanent seats shall be positioned at the head end of the bathtub.



(b) Seat provided at head end of tub

FIGURE ~~610.2(B)~~ 610.2.2
BATHTUB SEATS
SEAT PROVIDED AT HEAD END OF TUB

610.2.3 Fixed folding in-tub seats. Fixed folding in-tub seats must be rectangular and shall be mounted on the head wall. The rear edge of a rectangular seat shall be 21/2 inches (64 mm) maximum and the front edge shall be 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 16 inches (405 mm) maximum from the head wall. The side edge of the seat shall be 11/2 inches (38 mm) maximum from the back wall.

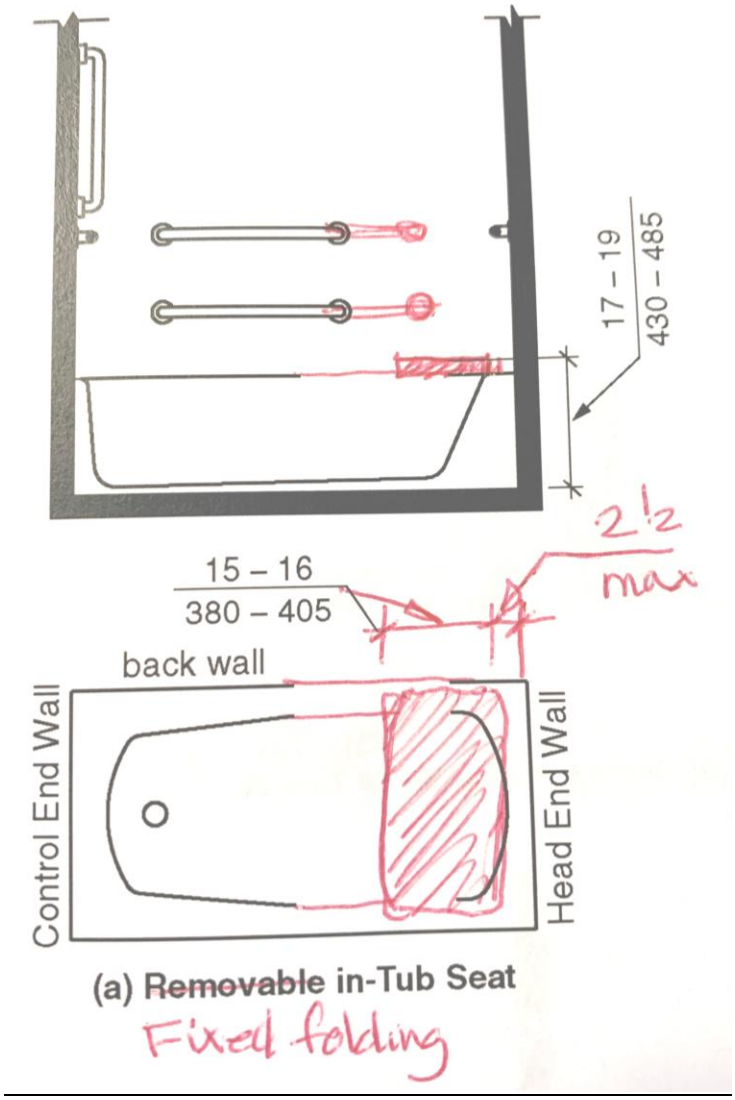


FIGURE 610.2.3
BATHTUB SEATS
FIXED FOLDING IN-TUB SEATS

REASON: This proposal is seeking to provide better direction to the industry on the type and placement of tub seats. The photos are to illustrate what this proposal is talking about.

Staff Note: This proposal is from the A117.1 Accessible Bathing Task Group. Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs with a fixed folding in-tub seat.

Committee Reason: Committee Action: Disapproval 24-3-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration).

This proposal was disapproved based on the committee actions for 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45.

610.2-ANDERSON.doc

Report for *06-81– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-3-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Proposals 06-41, 06-42, 06-45, 06-50 and 06-81 are all related to bathtubs. Modifications to 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45 will replace the 5 proposal (separated by section) with 3 proposals (separated to one for each type of bathtub seat configuration). This proposal was disapproved based on the committee actions for 06-41, 06-42 and 06-45.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-82 – 2021
610.3

Proponent: Ed Steinfeld, IDEA Center, University of Buffalo representing RESNA

Revise as follows:

SECTION 610
SEATS

610.3 Shower Compartment Seats. The height of shower compartment seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and ~~19~~ 20 inches (~~485~~ 510 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.

EXCEPTION: An accessible seat which is adjustable in height shall be permitted where the seat is adjustable within a range of 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 25 inches (635 mm) maximum, provided that at least one adjustment setting provides a seat within the range specified in this section.

REASON: The current standard does not reflect the findings of recent research. The existing dimensions are based on 1970's data. Since that time, new wheelchair technology, particularly the common use of cushions and other seating supports designed to reduce pressure ulcers and position people for improved social interaction and use of equipment, have led to increased seat heights. See Design Resources: Analysis of Seat Height for Wheeled Mobility Devices at http://idea.ap.buffalo.edu/wp-content/uploads/sites/110/2019/08/23.pdf The above proposed revision is consistent with this research.

Committee Action: split question – 610.3 AS 22-2-1; exception AS 11-12-2; D 17-4-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 610
SEATS

610.3 Shower Compartment Seats. The height of shower compartment seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 20 inches (510 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-

type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2.

~~**EXCEPTION:** An accessible seat which is adjustable in height shall be permitted where the seat is adjustable within a range of 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 25 inches (635 mm) maximum, provided that at least one adjustment setting provides a seat within the range specified in this section.~~

Committee Reason: The committee split the question between the change in Section 610.3 and the exception. The allowance for the shower seat to be higher is based on the anthropometric study and would improve access for persons using a mobility aids with higher seats. The exception is not needed because someone would always choose to provide an option that improved access. In addition, there were concerns about the operation of an adjustable option without technical requirements.

610.2-STEINFELD.doc

Report for *06-82– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 22-2-2/17-4-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise as follows:** **SECTION 610** **SEATS** **610.3 Shower Compartment Seats.** The height of shower compartment seats shall be 17 inches (430 mm) minimum and 20 inches (510 mm) maximum above the bathroom floor, measured to the top of the seat. In transfer-type and alternate roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend along the seat wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. In standard roll-in-type showers, the seat shall extend from the control wall to a point within 3 inches (75 mm) of the compartment entry. Seats shall comply with Section 610.3.1 or 610.3.2. ~~**EXCEPTION:** An accessible seat which is adjustable in height shall be permitted where the seat is adjustable within a range of 15 inches (380 mm) minimum to 25 inches (635 mm) maximum, provided that at least one adjustment setting provides a seat within the range specified in this section.~~		
Committee Reason: The committee split the question between the change in Section 610.3 and the exception. The allowance for the shower seat to be higher is based on the anthropometric study and would improve access for persons using a mobility aids with higher seats. The exception is not needed because someone would always choose to provide an option that improved access. In addition, there were concerns about the operation of an adjustable option without technical requirements.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-83 – 2021
610.5(New)

Proponent: Gene Boecker, Code Consultants, Inc.

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 610
SEATS

610.5 Projections. Projections greater than 1/4 inch (6.4 mm) shall not be permitted within 42 inches (1065 mm) above the seat.

Exception: Grab bars complying with Section 608.3.1.

REASON: Elsewhere the grab bars are noted as not being allowed to extend over the seat. Except where the transfer shower has a specific dimension which could easily overlap the seat. Hence the exception. However, there is nothing specific about other types of projections such as soap dishes or shampoo dispensers. A review of available ergonomic dimensions shows that a height of 35 inches above the seat will be adequate to avoid contact where the projection is located on the wall behind the seat. An upward held had can reach around 50 inches above the seat so 42 inches allows for both safety from the projection and the ability to reach the element. A soap dish could be less than 4 inches so a reference to Section 307 isn't helpful. It is also unlikely that anyone would consider a shower or bathtub a circulation path. Therefore, a specific height is needed.

An allowable projection of 1/4 inch is necessary to accommodate accent tile pieces within the shower. Typical ceramic tile is around 1/4 inch to 5/16 inch thick. Accent tiles tend to be close to 1/2 inch thick. This accommodates accent tile without prohibiting their use.

The exception recognizes that in a transfer shower the length of the grab bar is specified so it will overlap an L-shaped seat in the shower.

Committee Action: Disapproval 21-2-1

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved because the committee felt that this was not needed and/or potentially too stringent. This could be misinterpreted for tile or textured walls with grout lines or gaps. There was a question of if the concern was more about sharp and abrasive surfaces rather than small changes in level.

610.5-BOECKER.doc

Report for *06-83– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-2-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal was disapproved because the committee felt that this was not needed and/or potentially too stringent. This could be misinterpreted for tile or textured walls with grout lines or gaps. There was a question of if the concern was more about sharp and abrasive surfaces rather than small changes in level.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-84 – 2021

611(New)

Proponent: Amy Carpenter, representing Assisted Toileting and Bathing work group

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 611
ASSISTED TOILET AND BATHING ROOMS

611.1 General. Individual use bathrooms for assisted toileting and bathing shall comply with Section 611.

611.2 Clearances.

611.2.1 Turning Space. A turning space shall be provided within the room.

611.2.2 Door Swing. Doors shall not swing into the bathroom.

Exception: Where a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided in the room beyond the arc of the door and emergency rescue door hardware, that allows the door to be swung out of the room, is provided.

611.3 Mirrors. A mirror shall be mounted with the bottom edge of the reflecting surface 40 inches (1015 mm) maximum above the floor.

611.4 Coat Hooks. Coat hooks shall be located within one of the reach ranges specified in Section 308.

611.5 Water Closets. Water closets for assisted toileting shall comply with Section 611.5.

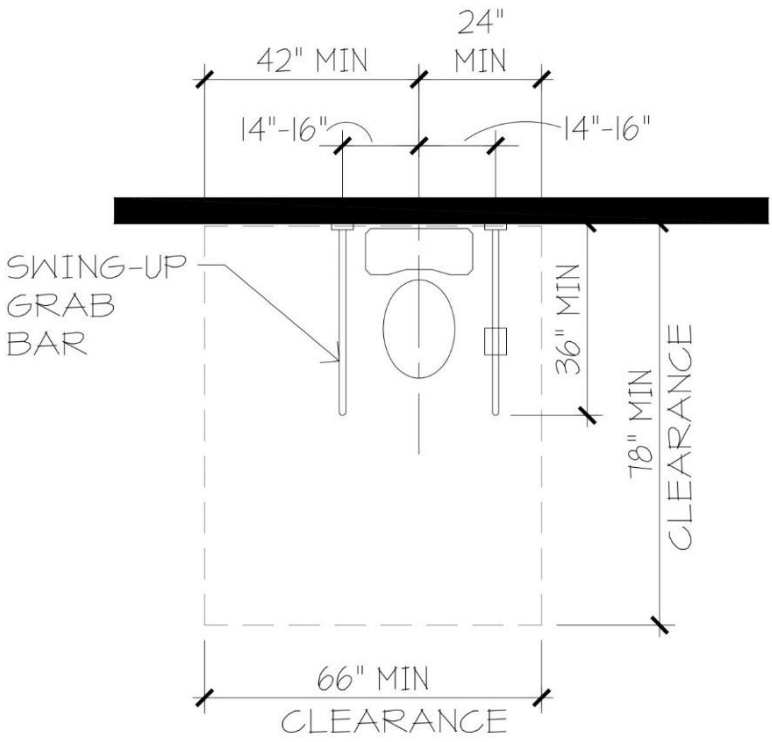


FIGURE 611.5
ASSISTED USE WATER CLOSET

611.5.1 Clearance width. Clearance around the water closet shall be 66 inches (1676 mm) minimum. A minimum dimension of 24 inches (609 mm) shall be provided on each side, measured from the centerline of the water closet.

611.5.2 Clearance depth. Clearance around the water closet shall be 78 inches (1981 mm) minimum in depth, measured perpendicular from the rear wall.

611.5.3 Clearance overlap. The required clearance around the water closet shall be permitted to overlap the water closet, associated grab bars, paper dispensers, sanitary napkin receptacles, coat hooks, shelves, accessible routes, clear floor space at other fixtures and the turning space. Towel bars that meet the strength requirements of Section 609.8 shall be permitted to overlap the clearance at the water closet. No other obstructions shall be within the required water closet clearance.

611.5.4 Height. The height of the water closet shall comply with Section 604.4

611.5.5 Grab bars. Grab bars for assisted toileting shall comply with Sections 611.5.5.1 through 611.5.5.6

611.5.5.1 Swing up grab bars shall be provided at both sides of the water closet.

611.5.5.2 Swing up grab bars shall be located 14 to 16 inches (355 to 406 mm) from the centerline of the water closet.

611.5.5.3 Swing up grab bars shall extend a minimum of 36 inches (915 mm), measured perpendicular from the rear wall to the furthest projection of the bar.

611.5.5.4 The height of the Swing up grab bar, when in the down position, shall be 30 inches (760 mm) minimum and 34 inches (865 mm) maximum measured from the floor to the topmost portion of the bar.

611.5.5.5 Swing up grab bars shall meet structural strength requirements per Section 609.8.

Exception: Swing up bars are not required to resist required forces when being moved upward to the vertical position.

611.5.5.6 A floor-mounted support post, complying with Section 611.5.6 shall be permitted as an alternate to mounting swing up grab bars directly to a reinforced wall behind the toilet.

611.5.6 Floor-mounted support post. A floor-mounted support post, used as an alternate means of support for swing up grab bars shall be designed to meet the structural strength requirements of Section 609.8 and shall be permitted to be located within the clearance around the water closet provided it meets all of the following:

1. The floor plate and post shall not extend more than 10 inches (254 mm) in depth measured perpendicular to the back wall,
2. The floor plate and post shall not extend more than 5 inches (127 mm) in width, measured from the centerline of the grab bar to either side,
3. The post location shall not block access to the flush controls, and
4. The floor plate and post shall not overlap any other required clearances or turning space.

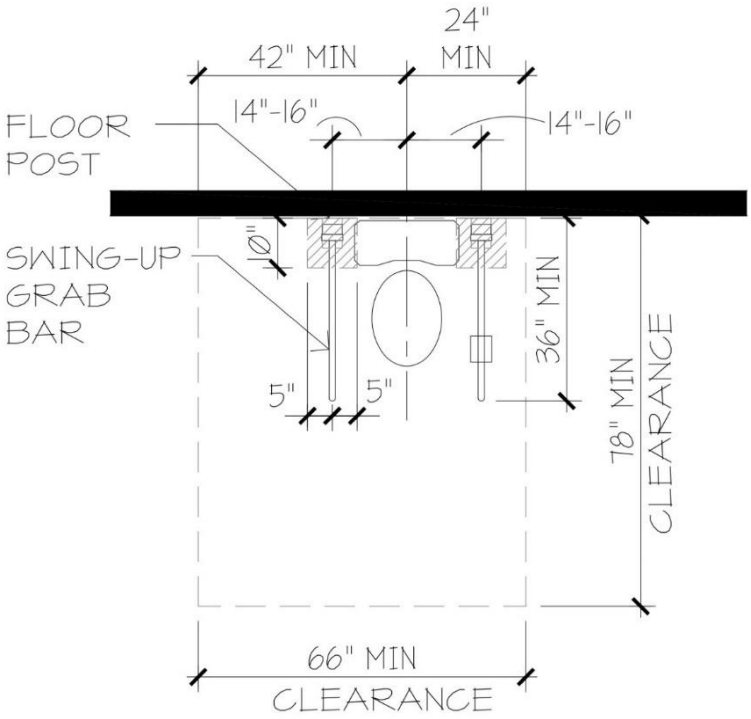


FIGURE 611.5.6
ASSISTED USE WATER CLOSET
FLOOR-MOUNTED SUPPORT POSTS

611.5.7 Flush Controls. Flush controls shall comply with Section 604.6

611.5.8 Dispensers. Toilet paper dispensers shall be mounted on at least one of the swing up grab bars and shall be located at 24 inches (610 mm) minimum to 36 inches (915 mm) maximum measured perpendicular to the rear wall. Dispensers shall not be of a type that control delivery or do not allow continuous paper flow.

611.6 Lavatories and Sinks. Where a lavatory or sink is provided inside the room used for assisted toileting and bathing, it shall comply with Section 606.

611.7 Showers. Roll-in showers for assisted bathing shall comply with Section 611.7.

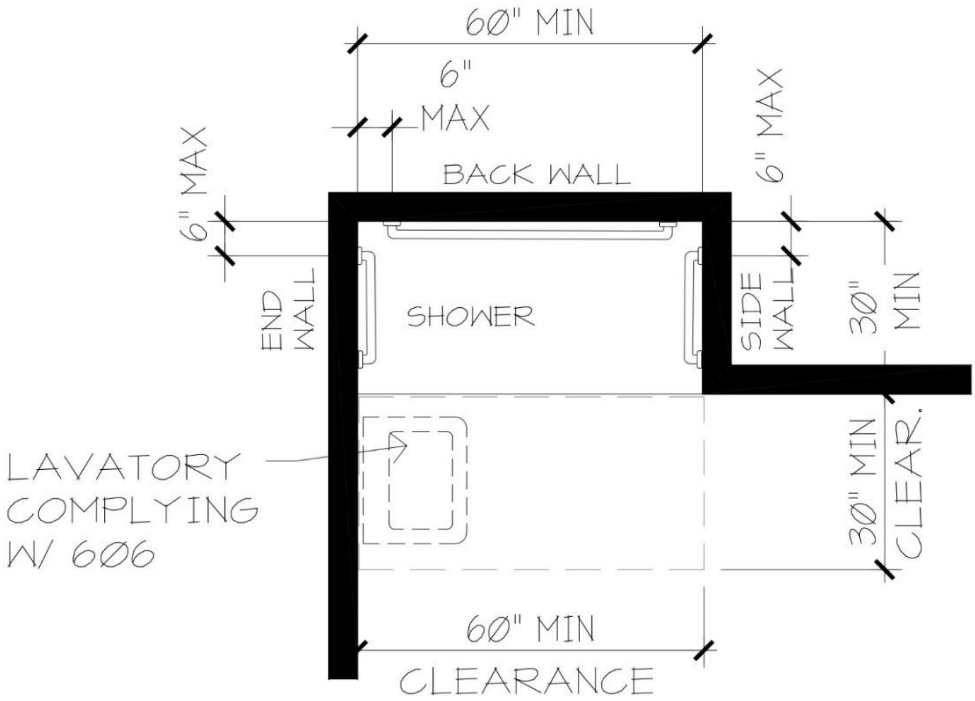


FIGURE 611.7(A)
ROLL-IN SHOWERS FOR ASSISTED BATHING
OPTION 1

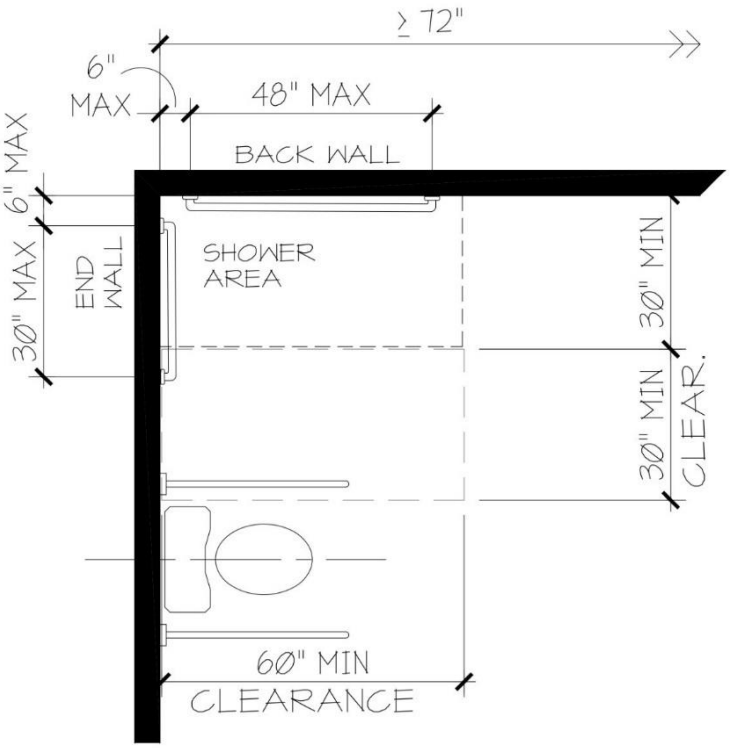


FIGURE 611.7(B)
ROLL-IN SHOWERS FOR ASSISTED BATHING
OPTION 2

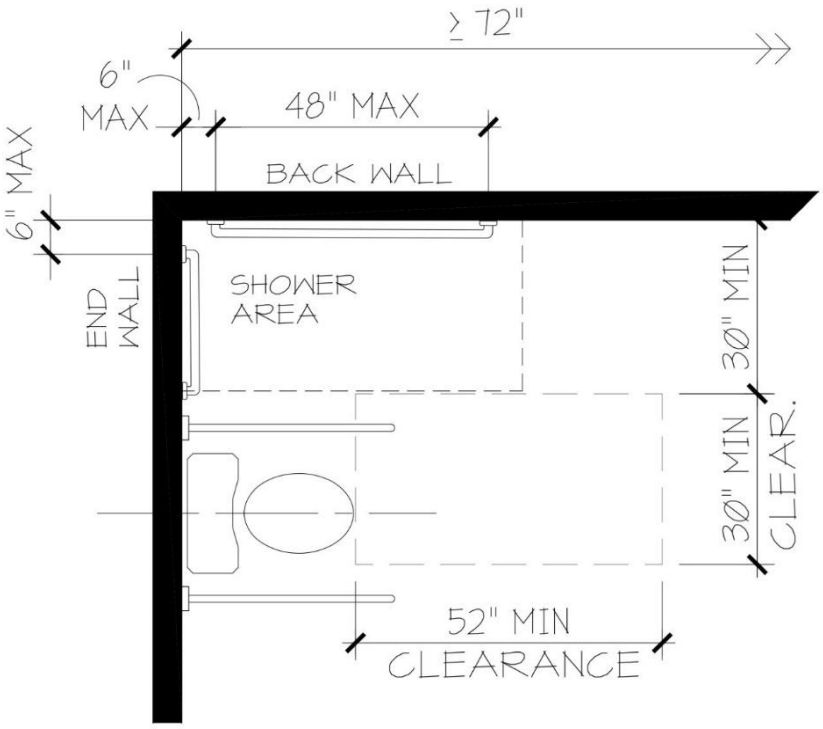


FIGURE 611.7(C)
ROLL-IN SHOWERS FOR ASSISTED BATHING
OPTION 3

611.7.1 Size. A roll-in shower area for assisted bathing shall have a clear inside dimension of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured at the center point of opposing sides.

611.7.2 Clearance. A clearance of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length adjacent to the long side of the shower area, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, shall be provided.

Exceptions:

1. A lavatory complying with Section 606 shall be permitted at one end of the clearance
2. Where the shower area exceeds minimum sizes, the clear floor space shall be placed 30 inches (760 mm) minimum from the back wall and the length shall be parallel to the back wall.

611.7.3 Seat. A fixed folding or non-folding wall-mounted seat is not permitted.

611.7.4 Grab bars. Grab bars shall comply with Section 609 and shall be provided in accordance with Section 611.7.4.1

611.7.4.1 Horizontal grab bars in roll-in showers for assisted bathing shall be provided on the back wall, end wall and side wall. Grab bars shall extend within 6 inches (150 mm) maximum from adjacent walls.

Exceptions:

1. The back-wall grab bar shall not be required to exceed 48 inches (1220 mm) in length.
2. End-wall and side-wall grab bars shall not be required to exceed 30 inches (760 mm) in length.
3. If the back-wall length is 72 inches (1830 mm) or greater, a side-wall grab bar is not required.

611.7.5 Controls. On/off and temperature adjustment controls for roll-in showers for assisted bathing shall comply with Section 309.4 and shall comply with all of the following:

1. Installed at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor,
2. Located either on the end wall or side wall, 18 inches (455 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum from the back wall, and
3. Located to allow access by a caregiver and minimize reaching through the water stream

Exception: Where the back wall length is 72 inches (1830 mm) or greater, controls are permitted to be located on the back wall at a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor and 27 inches (685 mm) minimum and 60 inches (1525 mm) maximum from the end wall.

611.7.6 Hand Showers. At least one hand shower complying with Section 309.4, Section 608.5 and Section 611.7.6 shall be provided in roll-in showers for assisted bathing. The hand shower shall be located:

1. At a height of 38 inches (965 mm) minimum and 48 inches (1220 mm) maximum above the shower floor, and
2. On the end wall, back wall or side wall within the shower area.

611.7.7 Thresholds. Thresholds in roll-in showers for assisted bathing shall comply with Section 608.6

611.7.8 Shower enclosures. Shower area enclosures shall not obstruct access to controls or hand shower from outside the shower area. Floor mounted enclosures shall maintain a minimum clear opening width of 41.5 inches (1054 mm) with no added threshold.

611.7.9 Water Temperature. Water Temperature shall comply with Section 608.8.

REASON: This proposed new section is meant to provide an alternative compliance path for a percentage of the fully accessible units that are required in Nursing Homes and Assisted Living

residences. These changes are specifically aimed at addressing the needs of older adults who live in care settings (receiving custodial care and/or medical care). It is our intent that Owners/Operators of these care settings can choose have some units comply with these alternatives in lieu of complying with traditional accessible unit requirements. A rehabilitation facility that serves primarily younger people, with spinal cord injuries, would likely not choose to have any units meet this alternate standard. However, many nursing homes serving elders, where the average age of resident is usually around 88 – 90 years old, would likely choose to have as many units as possible meet this alternate standard.

The 2021 International Building Code, Chapter 11 introduced these measures into the code as the deadline for inclusion in the last edition of the Standard had passed. We are hoping to include this language in the Standard this cycle and remove the language from IBC Chapter 11. The ICC A117.1 committee approved a work group to develop criteria for assisted toileting and bathing. Meetings were held every two weeks and were open to the public. In addition to the members of the task group, there was participation by a variety of interested parties. The language contained within this proposal was developed and reviewed by the work group and a consensus was reached.

The language contained in this proposal is based on research sponsored by the Mayer-Rothschild Foundation as well as direct experience and feedback from caregivers and gerontologists, along with the input of the task group. The intent of the language is to be flexible to cover the needs of elders as they decline in ability over time and gradually need more support and caregiver assistance in all activities of daily living. While they may be able to independently shower or transfer to the toilet when they first move in to a care community, their needs do increase over time. Many do become completely dependent on assistance by one or more caregivers. The proposal seeks to strike a balance between the accessibility needs of both the elder resident as well as the needs of the care staff.

It was decided to place all requirements around assisted bathing and toileting into a distinct section to aid with use of the Standard and keep all requirements together. If the Committee would prefer to disperse the requirements into Section 604 and 608, we would be OK with that change.

Assisted toileting:

Current existing accessibility provisions contained in the standard do not adequately the needs of older adults as they lose upper body strength and mobility. They simply do not have the strength to use wall-mounted grab bars at toilets to accomplish a transfer. Additionally, many have balance issues that require additional support on both sides of the toilet. Further, most residents in care settings, although they may use wheelchairs for mobility, still have some use of their legs and most can bear weight on one or both legs. Therefore, the requirements meant to address the needs fully paralyzed or quadriplegic persons is not necessarily beneficial to elders.

A search of CMS data shows only 1% of residents in nursing homes, nationwide, have a diagnosis of quadriplegia or paraplegia. With a minimum of 50% of nursing home resident rooms being required to meet current standards, an average of 49% of these rooms are simply not working well for the residents who live there. Falls in bathrooms are one of the largest risks of injury and death in nursing homes.

Research sponsored by the Mayer-Rothschild foundation studied how elders in care settings transfer on and off the toilet, both independently and with staff assistance. The dimensions and clearances contained in this proposal are all based on these recommendations. Most important is

the additional space provided on both sides of the toilet over the traditional 18 inches contained in the Standard. This added space is critical for allowing care staff to stand alongside the toilet to assist with sitting and standing without injuring themselves. This additional clearance around the toilet also makes maneuvering of various lift devices easier, along with giving residents using mobility devices more space to maneuver.

The inclusion of a floor mounted support post to attach the swing-up grab bars to was considered to be an important component for both new and existing construction. The Rothschild study calls for the grab bard to extend 6-9" beyond the front edge of the toilet. With most elongated bowl toilets extending approximately 30 inches from the back wall, this requires a minimum length swing-up bar at 36", which is difficult to find on the market today. This also brought up concerns about structural stability of wall blocking and proper connections. One of the task group alerted the group to the support posts that are currently available on the market. Benefits of the support post include the ability to use standard, shorter swing-up bars to still achieve the desired distance in front of the toilet, better structural stability, and the ability of users to better customize the height of the mounting to their specific needs. (people do shrink as they age)

Research and practical experience showed the task group that very few lifetime wheelchair users complete a side-slide transfer with the wheelchair completely parallel to the toilet and the back wheels all the way back to the rear wall. The majority of wheelchair users angle towards the toilet, using the space in front and to the side of the toilet. With elders who can bear weight and stand to transfer, the space adjacent to the toilet along the rear wall is rarely accessed or needed. In addition, the toilet tank or space for the flush valve assembly push the "seat" of the toilet out a certain distance from the wall. It was felt that a floor mounted post and associated mounting plate could overlap the clearance around the toilet by a small amount, provided that the flush controls were still easily accessed.

Assisted Bathing:

Many residents in Assisted Living and Nursing Home care settings are assisted, to varying levels, with their bathing activities as they may not be able to safely accomplish this on their own. Traditionally, roll-in-type showers have been used in care settings because of the ease of access they provide (low/no threshold). However, there are some requirements in the current Standard that can make it more difficult for care staff to assist with bathing.

For example, a wall mounted seat can be difficult for an elder to transfer on and off and many are fearful of falling off. Additionally, with the seat against the side wall and back wall, it is difficult, if not impossible for a caregiver to adequately access and wash all parts of a resident. For this reason, wall mounted seats are typically folded up and a mobile shower chair or stool is brought in. However, the folded seat still takes up space, and there are sharp edges and protrusions that can tear delicate elder skin or cause other injuries to the resident or caregiver. Mobile shower chairs are also better as they have arms that provide support and balance assistance for residents when standing/sitting and while seated. Caregivers can either turn the resident's chair while bathing, or walk around the person in the chair to be able to reach and wash all areas.

Similarly, the location of the controls on the back wall of a standard roll-in shower makes it more difficult for a caregiver to access them to turn the water on/off as well as to adjust the temperature during a shower. They either need to reach across the resident being bathed, which is awkward, or often need to reach through the water stream, which gets them wet. Some people

might think it's not a big deal for the caregiver to get wet, and that should be expected as part of their job. However, what everyone needs to remember is that in care settings such as Assisted Living and Nursing communities, the caregiver may have to bathe up to eight residents per shift. If they need to go change out of wet clothes after each shower, that takes them away from their duties and away from the residents they need to serve. It just isn't practical.

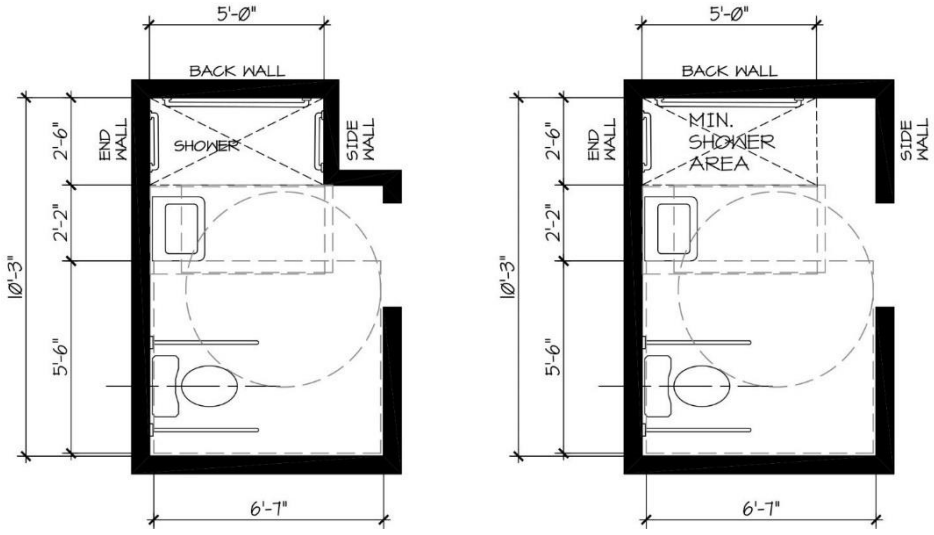
The language proposed removes the requirement for a permanent seat, in favor of allowing for the community to determine what is the best type of bench or chair to meet the resident's needs. It also allows for the controls that regulate on/off and temperature to be located such that they can be reached from outside the shower area, but also could be reached by a resident from inside the shower, should they be able to be more independent. The dimensions for the location of controls are meant to assume that a shower chair might be placed towards one corner of the shower and the areas behind that chair location would not be reachable. It also prohibits controls on the back wall of the shower in a typical 3-wall shower compartment.

The shower size and clearance language is meant to recognize that showers that often work best for assisted bathing are not simply the standard size, but sometimes larger, more open configurations work better. Larger, open showers also work better for care recipients that must be bathed in a semi or fully-reclined position. Sometimes the showers only have two walls or the entire bathroom is designed as a wet room and the designated shower "area" is in one corner. This is often called a "European shower".

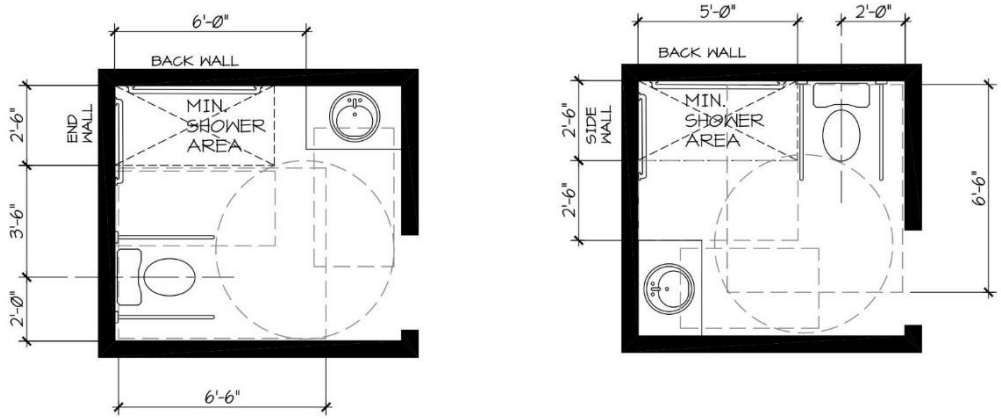
We maintained the language for clearance needed to access the shower area as well as the allowance for a lavatory to overlap the clearance similar to standard roll-in-type showers.

The grab bar language is similar to the standard roll-in-type shower, but with an additional bar where the seat would normally be. We chose to be intentionally silent on providing a vertical grab bar, as we felt that the location of a vertical bar would be highly dependent on the access point to the shower and location of the controls. In addition, if a resident has assistance in bathing, the vertical grab bar is not as needed for getting in and out of the shower enclosure. There is nothing prohibiting a vertical grab bar from being added.

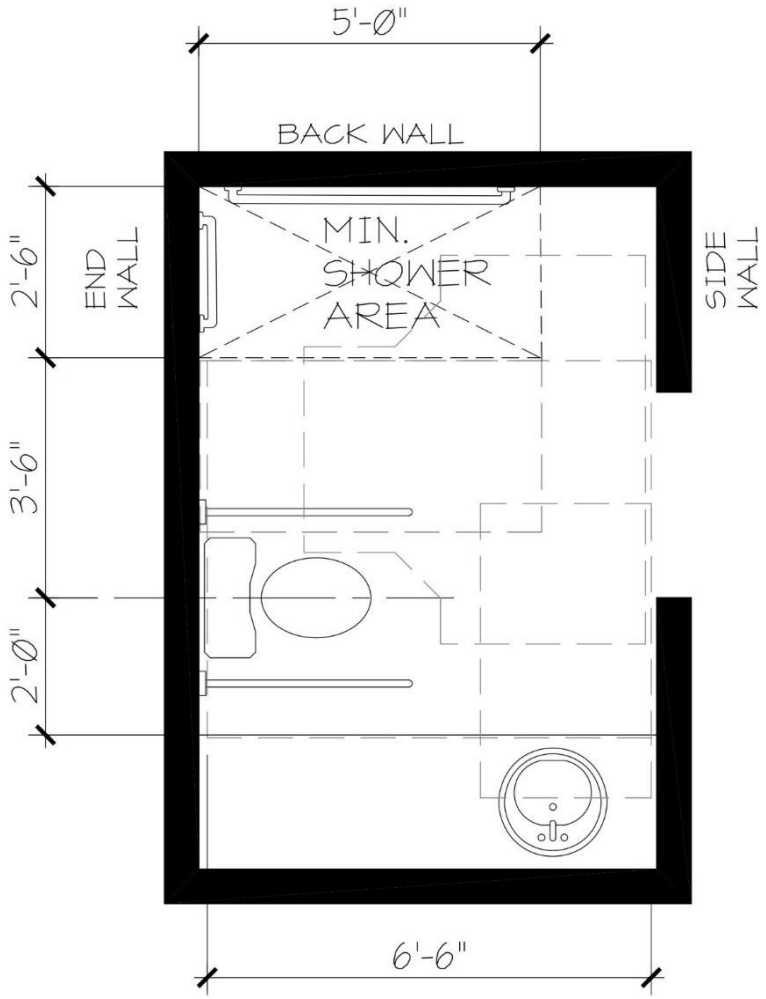
Example layouts:



Sample bathroom layout A & B



Sample Bathroom layout C & D



Sample bathroom layout E

Committee Action: Approved as submitted (31-1-3)
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee felt the research for proposal included valid information for assisted transfers. It is appropriate to limit this application to locations where people are not strong enough to self-transfer, such as assisted living facilities, nursing homes and rehabilitation facilities (which is the current scoping in the IBC). It was requested that the committee look at the language in Section 611.7.4.1 regarding the length of the grab bars – 'minimum' may be confusing.

Staff note: Editorial - Title added to Section 611.7.9.

611 NEW-CARPENTER.doc

Report for *06-84– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 31-1-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee felt the research for proposal included valid information for assisted transfers. It is appropriate to limit this application locations where people are not strong enough to self-transfer, such as assisted living facilities, nursing homes and rehabilitation facilities. It was requested that the committee look at the language in Section 611.7.4.1 regarding the length of the grab bars – 'minimum' may be confusing.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-85 – 2021
611.2

Proponent: Tami Kump, Knothe Bruce Architects, LLC

Revise as follows:

SECTION 611
WASHING MACHINES AND CLOTHES DRYERS

611.2 Clear floor space. A clear floor space positioned for parallel approach shall be provided. For top loading machines, the clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance. For front loading machines, the centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the door opening.

Where only one washer and one dryer are provided in a side-by-side configuration. the appliance doors in the open position shall not obstruct the clear floor space for the adjacent appliance.

REASON: When a washer and a dryer are separate pieces of equipment, the clear floor space requirements are for the individual machines, but, when it comes to functionality, a washer and dryer are more typically used as a unit. When thinking about how they function together, it becomes clear on how an open door(s) that falls between the two machines could make a daily task unnecessarily difficult for a person with restricted mobility.

When an appliance door opens toward the adjacent machine (which would overlap the CFS when open), one must first position themselves in front of that machine to gain the proper leverage to open the door, then they must maneuver back into a position that allows for the transfer of laundry from one machine to the other. The need to lift heavy, wet clothing over an open door(s) that overlaps the clear floor space may be cumbersome and difficult while also maintaining a position for the required leverage it takes to get the clothing into the front-loading dryer. The door would also be an obstruction if one
dropped a piece of clothing and had to pick it up.

The requirement I am proposing would be especially important when the doors to the machines do not open 180 degrees. Most machines manufactured today come from the factory with the dryer door hinge on the right side of the machine but have the capability to reverse the swing of the doors. This seems like an easy requirement to meet, or at least gets the designer to think about the adjacency of the washer and dryer relative to how the machines are used.

Committee Action: Disapproved 25-0-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: There are enforcement issues (not measurable or consistent) because laundry equipment is not built in, so enforcement would be a guess based on assumed equipment. Two front loads with doors facing each other would not have space for a clear floor space in between, so there was a question about if toe space could go under the door and comply with "not obstruct". Moving laundry from one machine to another easily is better in commentary than as a requirement.

611.2-KUMP.doc

Report for *06-85– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: There are enforcement issues (not measurable or consistent) because laundry equipment is not built in, so enforcement would be a guess based on assumed equipment. Two front loads with doors facing each other would not have space for a clear floor space in between, so there was a question about if toe space could go under the door and comply with "not obstruct". Moving laundry from one machine to another easily is better in commentary than as a requirement.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-86 – 2021
611.3, 611.4

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Revise as follows:

SECTION 611
WASHING MACHINES AND CLOTHES DRYERS

611.1 General. Washing machines and clothes dryers shall comply with Section 611.

611.2 Clear floor space. A clear floor space positioned for parallel approach shall be provided. For top loading machines, the clear floor space shall be centered on the appliance. For front loading machines, the centerline of the clear floor space shall be offset 24 inches (610 mm) maximum from the centerline of the door opening.

611.3 Operable parts. Operable parts, including doors, lint screens, detergent and bleach compartments, shall comply with Sections 308 and 309.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. The height of the obstruction in Section 308.3.2 shall be permitted to be 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor.
2. The operable part of the door shall be permitted to be 54 inches (1372 mm) maximum above the floor.

611.4 Height. Top loading machines shall have the door to the laundry compartment 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor. ~~Front loading machines shall have the bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor~~.

REASON: There are many stackable machines that save space and offer improved access with center controls. Previously the stackables had separate controls, instead of the new center control, so the controls were not within reach range. Options are now available with the controls within reach, but the dryer compartment is above 36 inches. This intent of this proposal is to increase design options within dwelling units. Setting the control for the door at 54" which is typically the center, would set the bottom of the door below that. Below are examples I found at the local home improvement store. The controls in the center seemed to provide better access than a top loading machine. These are models from LG, Equator and Whirlpool.

Committee Action: As submitted 21-1-5

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This would allow stackable washers and dryers for smaller and efficiency apartments. Reach into the top drum would be easier than in a top loading machine.

611.4-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for *06-86– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-1-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This would allow stackable washers and dryers for smaller and efficiency apartments. Reach into the top drum would be easier than in a top loading machine.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-87 – 2021
611.4

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 611
WASHING MACHINES AND CLOTHES DRYERS

611.4 Height. Top loading machines shall not be permitted ~~have the door to the laundry compartment 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor~~. Front loading machines shall have the bottom of the opening to the laundry compartment 15 inches (380 mm) minimum and 36 inches (915 mm) maximum above the floor.

REASON: We find that top loading machines are not very usable by individuals seated in wheelchairs. To reach items in the tub, they must use an auxiliary aid such as a reaching tool or "grabber" but, often, they cannot see the target at the bottom of the tub. Also, people with disabilities affecting their manual dexterity often cannot use these tools because their trigger style operators typically require tight grasping and one must rotate their wrist to pick-up an item – see https://www.seniorsmatter.com/review-the-best-grabber-reacher/2491052 for examples of this equipment or search for "reaching tool". One model which is approximate ten times the typical cost of other models allows for the device to be attached to the arm – see https://www.rehab-store.com/p-quad-reacher.html?gclid=CjwKCAjw6fCCBhBNEiwAem5SO5cqXAZRmP46fUgQo7j0na4DvC-gOyD-KY8d54h2MuDPDSqgZONZBBoCthEQAvD_BwE.

Committee Action: As submitted 15-12-4

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any): The proposal was approved because it is difficult to reach laundry by a seated person in the bottom of the drum in top loading equipment. There were concerns that there would be an enforcement issue because laundry equipment is not built in, so enforcement would be a guess based on assumed equipment. This eliminates a choice of equipment for the resident – some people prefer appliances with agitators. Both front and top loaders are expected to remain in common use for the consumer. A question was brought up about affordability between styles.

Committee Reason:

611.4-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-87– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	*Committee Vote at Meeting: 15-12-4*	*Committee Vote on Ballot:*
REPORT OF HEARING:		

Report for *06-87– 2021*		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The proposal was approved because it is difficult to reach laundry by a seated person in the bottom of the drum in top loading equipment. There were concerns that there would be an enforcement issue because laundry equipment is not built in, so enforcement would be a guess based on assumed equipment. This eliminates a choice of equipment for the resident – some people prefer appliances with agitators. Both front and top loaders are expected to remain in common use for the consumer. A question was brought up about affordability between styles.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-88 – 2021
612.2

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 612
SAUNA AND STEAM ROOMS

612.2 Bench. Where seating is provided in saunas and steam rooms, at least one bench shall comply with section 903. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space <u>located adjacent to the bench and</u> required by Section 903.2.

Exception: Where the room is for individual use and a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the arc of the door swing, the door shall not be required to comply with this section.

REASON: For whatever reason, readers often fail to connect the clear floor space referenced by this section to the space provided at the bench for transfer onto the bench. While this proposal likely will be ruled Editorial, we hope that the committee will consider this change for the sake of clarity.

Committee Action: As submitted 25-0-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This proposal is a clarification of the requirements. This allows for the wheelchair to be in place for the transfer from the bench and still get the door open as part of entering or leaving the room.

612.2-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-88– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This proposal is a clarification of the requirements. This allows for the wheelchair to be in place for the transfer from the bench and still get the door open as part of entering or leaving the room.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		

Report for *06-88– 2021*		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-89 – 2021
613(New)

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, United Spinal Association

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 613
PET WASH STATION

613.1 Pet wash stations. Where provided for pet washing and grooming, sinks and tubs shall comply with Section 613.

613.1 Sinks. Sinks shall comply with Section 606.

613.2 Grooming Tubs. Grooming tubs shall provide clear floor space positioned for a forward or parallel approach complying with Section 305.

613.3 Operable parts. Operable parts of sinks, tubs, and at least one of each type of associated accessories shall comply with Sections 308 and 309.

EXCEPTION: Drain stoppers and debris filters shall not be required to comply with Section 613.3.

REASON: Pet washing stations have become ubiquitous in modern condo and apartment buildings as well as in community centers. Where applicable, the Design and Construction Requirements of the Federal Fair Housing Amendments Act require "common use" spaces to be accessible to individuals with disabilities (24 CFR part 100.205(c)(1)). Without measurable standards, pet wash stations will always be a point of contention and the level of accessibility required by enforcement officials and expected by potential litigants will vary widely.

Our proposed accessibility criteria are simple. By requiring operable parts to be accessible, we believe that the height of the tub wall will be controlled by the requirements for a reach over an obstruction. We have exempted those items that would normally be on the floor of the tub such as drain stoppers and filters for hair and other debris. Where accessories such as shampoo dispensers, hair dryers, and hooks for leashes are provided, we have asked for only one of each type to be accessible. We have carefully research product literature to ensure that multiple manufacturers provide compliant products.

Links to some product literature:

- https://www.groomersbest.com/product-category/bathing-tubs/ada-compliant/
- https://www.dog-on-it-parks.com/ada-elite-pet-wash-station.html
- https://www.directanimal.com/product/grooming/grooming-tubs/?utm_source=mv&utm_medium=paid&utm_campaign=intent&gclsrc=aw.ds&&gclid=Cj0KCQjwjPaCBhDkARIsAISZN7S3QaIYngbxU4XhrGyXmoTkQscW2DaVNTcd13LxfiqCtQy8kb7A25QaAh0SEALw_wcB

06-89 – 2021 Modification
613(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, ICC

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 613
PET WASHING STATION

613.1 Pet washing stations. Where provided for pet washing ~~and grooming, sinks and tubs~~ pet washing stations shall comply with Section 613.

~~**613.1 Sinks.** Sinks shall comply with Section 606.~~

613.2 ~~Grooming~~ Pet washing Tubs. ~~Grooming~~ Pet washing tubs shall provide clear floor space positioned for a forward or parallel approach complying with Section 305.

613.3 Operable parts. The operable parts of the controls for on~~/~~ and off water flow, temperature, and diverter ~~sinks, tubs, and at least one of each type of associated accessories~~ shall comply with Section~~s 308 and~~ 309. Where a hand shower is provided, a mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in compliance with Section 308.

~~**EXCEPTION:** Drain stoppers and debris filters shall not be required to comply with Section 613.3.~~

Reason: The devices referenced in Masha's reason statement could be considered a sink (because it has a drain). Since not all are raised, this could be interpreted as a shower. I have included a couple of examples below. These self wash stations are showing up in pet supply stores, apartment buildings and with car washes.

I find the current proposal confusing. If you make this be a required front approach by the reference to Section 606, the pan could be not deep enough to bath the dog, and the higher height makes harder for the dog to get up into the tub. You also need this station at a height that works for standing persons washing their dogs since there may be only one. Also, some people will interpret that 'grooming' is different than 'bathing'. For example, when I take my dog to be groomed, it is getting his hair cut and his nails trimmed. (If there is a grooming counter in the room, that is a work counter and is addressed elsewhere.) I am not clear on what "associated accessories" would include (steps or ramps under the counter, a hook on the back wall to attach a lead, a shelf to hold towels), so this is too open for interpretation.

I am suggesting to delete the reference to sinks and just specifically address the pet washing station so we cover all types of pet washing stations. The revisions to Section 613.3 are for

consistency with the language the committee approved for tubs and showers. A referenced for 309 sends you back to 308 for reach range, so you do not need that for faucets, but you would need it for the fixed mount.

Alternatively, we can consider this addressed with the approval of 06-35-21 (for deep sinks to have a side approach) and we do not need any of this.


doggie
self wash

Committee Action: As modified 25-0-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise as follows:

SECTION 613
PET WASHING STATION

613.1 Pet washing stations. Where provided for pet washing ~~and grooming, sinks and tubs~~ pet washing stations shall comply with Section 613.

~~**613.1 Sinks.** Sinks shall comply with Section 606.~~

613.2 ~~Grooming~~ Pet washing Tubs. ~~Grooming~~ Pet washing tubs shall provide clear floor space positioned for a forward or parallel approach complying with Section 305.

613.3 Operable parts. The operable parts of the controls for on~~/~~ and off water flow, temperature, and diverter ~~sinks, tubs, and at least one of each type of associated accessories~~ shall comply with Section~~s~~ ~~308 and~~ 309. Where a hand shower is provided, a mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in compliance with Section 308.

~~**EXCEPTION:** Drain stoppers and debris filters shall not be required to comply with Section 613.3.~~

Committee Reason: The modification puts in specific criteria for pet washing stations instead of using the current criteria for a sink or work counter. These spaces need to be accessible for

people taking care of their service or comfort animals, but must also work for standing persons using the same pet washing station.

613.1(NEW)-MAZZ.doc

Report for *06-89– 2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-0-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise as follows:** **SECTION 613** **PET WASHING STATION** **613.1 Pet washing stations.** Where provided for pet washing ~~and grooming, sinks and tubs~~ pet washing stations shall comply with Section 613. ~~**613.1 Sinks.** Sinks shall comply with Section 606.~~ **613.2 ~~Grooming~~ Pet washing Tubs**. ~~Grooming~~ Pet washing tubs shall provide clear floor space positioned for a forward or parallel approach complying with Section 305. **613.3 Operable parts.** The operable parts of the controls for on/ and off water flow, temperature, and diverter ~~sinks, tubs, and at least one of each type of associated accessories~~ shall comply with Section~~s 308 and~~ 309. Where a hand shower is provided, a mount to hold the hand shower shall be located in compliance with Section 308. **~~EXCEPTION:~~** ~~Drain stoppers and debris filters shall not be required to comply with Section 613.3.~~		
Committee Reason: The modification puts in specific criteria for pet washing stations instead of using the current criteria for a sink or work counter. These spaces need to be accessible for people taking care of their service or comfort animals, but must also work for standing persons using the same pet washing station.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

06-90 – 2021

106.2.2(New), 106.2.4(New), 106.2.5(New), 613(New)

Proponent: Laurel Wright, representing the Adult Changing Facilities work group

Add new text as follows:

106.2.2 Assistive products for personal hygiene (APPH) that support users – Requirements and test methods. ISO/FDIS 17966: 2016(E) (International Organization for Standardization, Chemin de Blandonnet 8, CP 401, 1214 Vernier, Geneva, Switzerland)

106.2.4 Medical Electrical Equipment - Part 1: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance – IEC 60601-1**:** 3.2 edition August 2020: International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) 3 rue de Varembe, PO Box 131, CH-1211 Geneva, Switzerland.

106.2.5 Medical electrical equipment - Part 1-2: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance - Collateral Standard: Electromagnetic disturbances - Requirements and tests: 60601-1-2:2014 + ADM1: 2020 CVS: International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) 3 rue de Varembe, PO Box 131, CH-1211 Geneva, Switzerland.

SECTION 613
ADULT CHANGING STATIONS

613.1 General. Adult changing stations shall comply with Section 613.2 through 613.4.

613.2 Safety and performance. Adult changing stations shall comply with the following standards:

1. ISO 17966 Sections: 5 Materials; 7 Electromagnetic compatibility; 8 Electrical safety; 11 Safety of moving and folding parts; 11.2 Prevention of traps for parts of human body; 16 Static strength, impact, durability; 17 Stability listed in Section 106.2.2.
2. IEC 60601-1 listed in Section 106.2.4.
3. IEC 60601-1-2 listed in Section 106.2.5.

613.3 Changing surface. A changing surface shall be provided and shall comply with Section 613.3.

613.3.1 Size. The changing surface shall be 70 inches (1778mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (762mm) minimum in width.

613.3.2 Clearances. Clearances complying with Sections 613.3.2.1 and 613.3.2.2 shall be provided adjacent to the changing surface, measured when the surface is in the operational position.

613.3.2.1 Side clearance. A 36 inch (914mm) deep minimum clearance shall be provided along the length of one long side of the changing surface and shall extend 36 inches (914mm) minimum past the surface on at least one end.

613.3.2.2 End clearance. A 36 inch (914mm) deep minimum clearance shall be provided on at least one end of the changing surface and shall extend the width of the changing surface.

Exception: A 24 inch (610 mm) deep minimum clearance shall be permitted on at least one end of the changing surface where a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room outside the clearances for the changing surface.

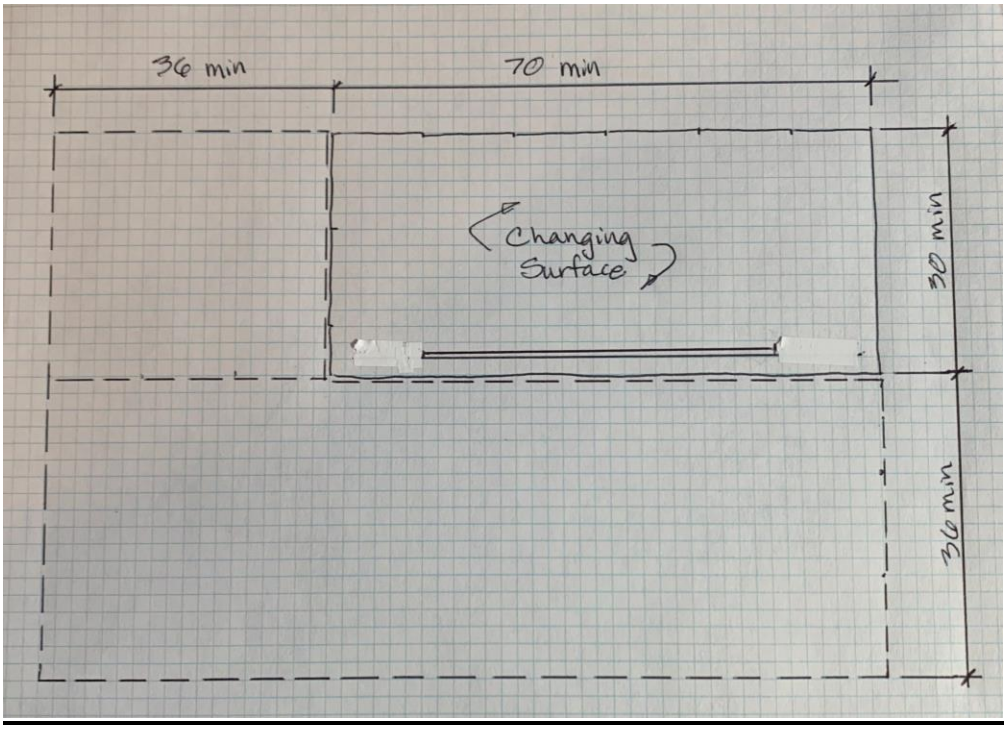


Figure 613.3.2
Changing surface and clearances

613.3.3 Height adjustability. The changing surface height shall be continuously adjustable from 17 inches (432mm) minimum to 38 inches (965mm) maximum above the floor as measured to the top of the changing surface.

Exception: Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, a fixed height changing surface shall be permitted and shall be mounted with the top of the changing surface 17 inches (432mm) minimum and 19 inches (483mm) maximum above the floor.

613.3.3.1 Operation. Operable controls for height adjustment and, where provided, on and off shall comply with Section 309.4.

613.3.4 Capacity. Allowable stresses for materials, fastening mounting devices, and support structure shall support a downward force of not less than 350 lbs. (159 kg) applied to any point on the changing surface.

613.3.5 Changing surface. The changing surface shall be comprised of non-porous and durable materials.

613.3.6 Side rail. Side rails shall be provided at the changing surface in accordance with Sections 613.3.6.1 and 613.3.6.2.

613.3.6.1 Size and location. Side rails shall be a minimum of 2/3 of the length of the changing surface and shall be centered +/- 1 inch (25mm) along the long open sides of the changing surface.

Exception. A side rail shall not be required on the long side opposite the side clearance required by Section 613.3.2.1, provided that side abuts a wall or is otherwise protected.

613.3.6.2 Rail positioning. Side rails shall be capable of being raised and lowered and, when in the raised position, shall lock in place. The top of the side rail shall extend 5 inches (127mm) minimum above the top of the changing surface. When in the lowered position, the rail shall not obstruct transfer to or from the changing surface.

613.4 Installation location. Where provided, adult changing stations shall be installed in accordance with the locations specified in Section 613.4.1, 613.4.2 or 613.4.3.

Exception: Where installed in locations specified in Section 613.4.3, side and end clearances compliance with Section 613.3.2 are not required.

613.4.1. Single user or family or assisted use toilet or bathing room. Where adult changing stations are provided in a toilet room with only one water closet and one lavatory, or in a family or assisted-use toilet or bathing room, the room shall provide all of the following components:

1. A dispenser for soap complying with Section 308.
2. A hand towel dispenser or hand dryer complying with Table 603.6.
3. A coat hook located in close proximity to the changing surface.
4. A waste receptacle.
5. Signage indicating “Adult Changing Station” provided at the entrance to the room and complying with the visual character requirements in Section 703.2.

613.4.2 Multi-user toilet or bathing room. Where adult changing stations are provided in a multi-user toilet or bathing room, the adult changing station shall be located in a compartment that includes all of the following components:

1. Privacy provided by walls, curtains or partitions enclosing the compartment.
2. A turning space complying with Section 304.
3. A lavatory complying with Section 606.
4. A dispenser for soap complying with Section 308.
5. A hand towel dispenser or hand dryer complying with Table 603.6.
6. A coat hook in close proximity to the changing surface.
7. A waste receptacle.

8. Signage indicating "Adult Changing Station" provided at the entrance to the room and complying with the visual character requirements in Section 703.2.

613.4.3 Room or space other than a toilet room. Where adult changing stations are provided in a room or space other than a toilet or bathing room and including, but not limited to, nurses' work areas, therapist work areas, or special education classrooms, the adult changing station shall be located in a compartment or room that includes all of the following components:

1. Privacy provided by walls, curtains or partitions.
2. A turning space complying with Section 304.
3. A lavatory complying with Section 606 or an alcohol-based hand sanitizer dispenser.
4. Where a lavatory is provided in the compartment or room, provide a dispenser for soap.
5. Where a lavatory is provided in the compartment or room, provide a hand towel dispenser or hand dryer complying with Table 603.6.
6. A waste receptacle.

613.5 Clearances. An adult changing station and its supporting structure shall not obstruct required clear floor spaces and clearances at accessible elements, maneuvering clearances at doors, or the wheelchair turning spaces.

REASON: The purpose of this standard proposal is to develop criteria for adult changing tables and the rooms in which they are installed. This is intended to coordinate with scoping provisions provided to the I-codes in proposals E141-21(AMPC1), E142-21(AMPC 1 and 2), P37-21(AMPC1) and M20-21(AS). This proposal is a result of the meetings held by the Adult Changing Facilities work group set up by the ICC A117.1 committee. The work group met every two weeks to develop this criteria. Participation included work group members and interested parties with a wide range of interests, and included representatives of manufactures of adult changing tables and parents of adult persons with disabilities that need to use adult changing tables. The work group reviewed eighteen proposed state laws, two already adopted, and four guidelines in European, Australian and North American countries for adult changing tables. While there is interest in many states to provide such facilities, investigations by this work group showed either no technical guidance or very inconsistent information and application. The end result currently is limiting access to children with disabilities who have grown up with accessibility in schools and public places since the ADA went into effect, as well as disenabling a significant number of adults with disabilities who have experienced a different type of life-changing event, accidents, injuries or wars.

The following is an impact statement on the benefits of having these facilities in buildings and facilities.

- Limiting access to those who need adult changing stations decreases the community size dramatically. Nationally, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reports 61 Million adults (26% of the US population**)** have some form of disability, with 24.1%

affected in the areas of mobility, independent living, and self care. Further, each of those folks need assistance, and likely travel with additional family members. Once this population is taken out of the community, businesses are also losing a large potential of support and income. Providing our citizens more opportunities to participate in the community and patronize local establishments strengthens communities, allowing all family members to engage or travel together as one family nucleus. Currently many families have to make the choice to participate in activities outside of the home with only a portion of their family.

- Individually, families from many states are pushing for the adult changing facilities. A national campaign, Changing Spaces, has been activated, with chapters in at least 10 states, advocating for height adjustable changing tables to be required in public places. At least 12 states have proponents actively proposing and working toward legislation, while as many as 18 states have draft language in play. California has already enacted legislation requiring adult changing stations. Maryland has legislation that goes into effect next year. Accepting this proposal will show wide-spread acceptance of the need along with a consistent set of standards across the country for users to rely on.
- We are all part of an aging population and the elderly still want to be able to attend family gatherings and travel in a car to be with relatives. These adult changing facilities would be valued not only by families with adult disabled children but also be aging adult family members.
- Without appropriate changing facilities, families cannot travel more than 30-40 miles from home. Additionally, trips that involve more than a few hours of time are also a risk. As a result, vacations, trips to zoos, aquariums, museums, concerts, and similar events are eliminated.
- The addition of adult changing tables will present a tremendous change in the quality of life for so many people who were unable to get out and participate in many activities before due to the lack of adequate facilities.

The following are reasons for the portions of the proposal dealing with the adult changing table/surface:

The work group compared the recommended changing surface technical requirements with changing tables on the market and verified that the requirements recommended are available from multiple sources. The following are specific to the sections for the changing surface.

613.2 Safety and performance.
Adult changing stations shall comply with the following:
1) ISO 17966 Sections: 5 Materials; 7 Electromagnetic compatibility; 8 Electrical safety; 11 Safety of moving and folding parts; 11.2 Prevention of traps for parts of human body; 16 Static strength, impact, durability; 17 Stability;
2) IEC 60601-1 Medical electrical equipment – Part 1: General requirements for basic safety and essential performance; and
3) IEC 60601-1-2 Collateral Standard: Electromagnetic disturbances.
These standards were referenced because compliance assures changing station' design and operation will provide electrical and mechanical safety, structural strength, durability, safety of

moving parts, prevent entrapment of human body parts and side rail safety for people with disabilities and their caregivers.

613.3.1 Size.
ICC A117.1 has requirements for benches to change clothes with a depth of 24" (Section 903.3). The 30" minimum width is thought to be most appropriate for a person laying down. The 70" length is based on the average height of an adult male.

613.3.2.1 Side clearance.
A 36" deep minimum side clearance along the length of one long open side allows for an accessible route with space to park a wheelchair to support transfer to/from changing surface.

613.2.2.2 End clearance.
A 36" deep minimum clearance on at least one end of the changing surface allows space for individual to move around the table to manipulate clothing and change the individual. It also allows for the wheelchair to be located at that end while a care giver is changing someone. The exception would allow for a 24" clearance at the end (based on information from Assisted Toileting and Bathing work group and study from the Rothchild's Foundation) if there was another location in the room to move the wheelchair. (The California Code requires 36" deep minimum clearance on both ends of the changing surface.)

613.3.3 Height adjustability.
The 17" lowest height is consistent with the ADA 17" to 19" water closet seat height requirement. The average height of a wheelchair seat is 19" above the floor. Lateral transfer to 17" changing surface height is practical. Adjustable height range is consistent with eight states' (FL, NH, OK, WI, CA, MN, IA, MI) published height requirements.

The exception allows a fixed height surface. Fixed height changing surface is: (1) better than no changing surface; (2) a solution for vandalism of adjustable height adult changing surface.

613.3.3.1 Operation.
Controls of height adjustment comply with ADA Section 309.4 since operation is by the care giver, not the person on the table. Raising and lowering folding changing surface and side rails are not covered by ADA Section 309.4

613.3.4 Capacity.
"Not less than 350 lbs." was selected as changing surface capacity because it covers 99% of the general population. Six states (FL, IL, MN, NH, OK and WI) of ten listing load capacity, state 350 lbs. One state (CA) of ten listing load capacity, states 300 lbs. Four states (IA, MI, ND and OH) of ten listing load capacity, state 440 lbs.

CDC data for body weight for the time period 2015-2018 indicates the following. For adult males age 20 and over, the data for all males examined (n=5,085) indicated a mean body weight of 199.8 lbs., and a body weight of 287.2 lbs. at the 95th percentile. When this data is analyzed by age range, body weight at 95th percentile ranged from 238.0 lbs. for males 80 years and over to 308.5 lbs. for males 30 -39 years of age.

One private sector website offers a body weight percentile calculator, based on the CDC's 2015-2016 NHANES survey. The site specifies that the 99th percentile for adult males as being 341.1 lbs.

Specification of capacity at 350 lbs. seems reasonable, to account for clothing and any supplies that need to be available during the changing activity. Additionally, the 350 lbs. capacity offers a factor of safety of 1.21 when applied to the 287.5 lbs., 95th percentile figure, and 1.02 when applied to the 341.1 lbs., 99th percentile figure.

Anthropometric Reference Data for Children and Adults: United States, 2015-2018. Analytical and Epidemiological Studies. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, National Center for Health Statistics.

National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey, NHANES 2015-2016. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention cited on website https://dqydj.com/weight-percentile-calculator-men-women/#:~:text=At%20the%20lowest%20extremes%20for%20adults%2C%20the%201st,for%20men.%20Weight%20alone%20doesn't%20tell%20you%20enough.

613.3.5 Changing surface. The surface shall be non-porous surface for easy, thorough cleaning. Surface shall be durable to provide multiple years of service under normal conditions of use.

613.3.6.1 Side rail, size and location.
Relate side rail length to changing surface length without referring to a specific inch dimension. Allows for shorter length changing surfaces and rails.

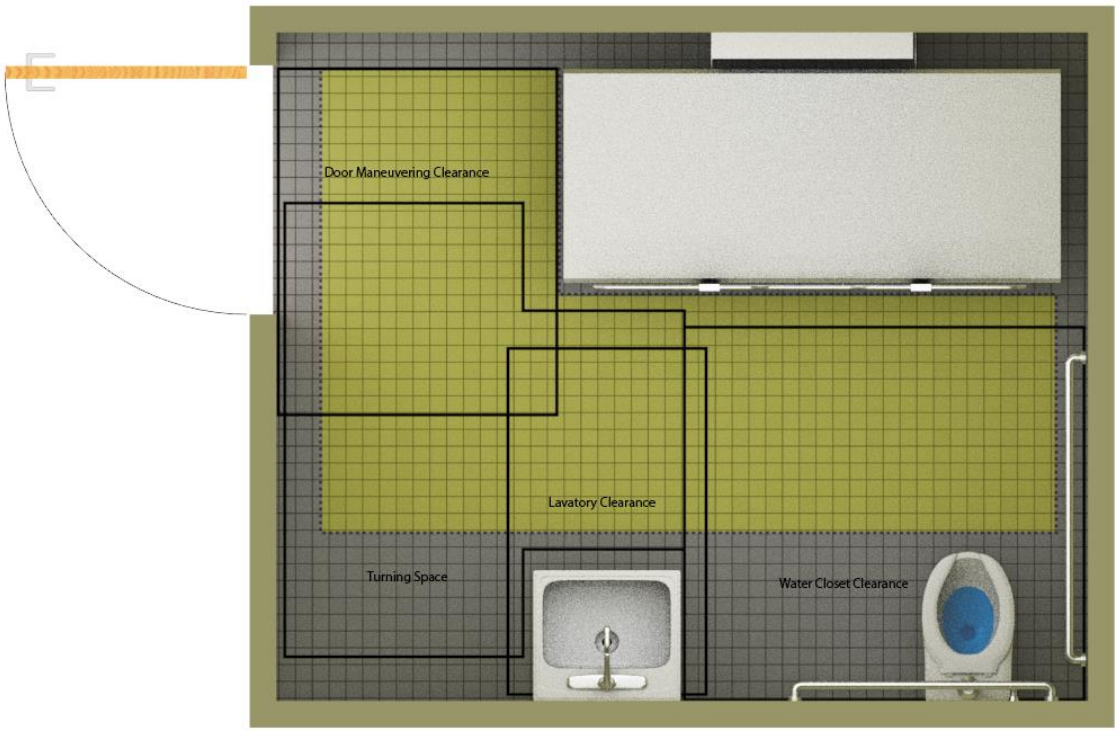
613.3.6.2 Side rail positioning.
A side rail is needed on open side of changing surface to prevent person being cared for from rolling off. The 5" minimum height from the top of the side rail to the changing surface is considered a practical height for the caregiver to lean over.

The following are reasons for the portions of the proposal dealing with the room where the adult changing table/surface is located:

613.4 Installation location.
There currently is no existing technical design criteria for this feature. A need for adult changing facilities has been brought forth in proposed bills in multiple states with differing sets of design criteria. The proposed bills' criteria were reviewed when developing these recommendations to provide a consistent set of technical criteria that meets the minimum needs of care providers for a private changing facility to change the adults with disabilities whom they care for, while at the same time maintaining required clearances at other fixtures in the room.

Consideration was given to the size of the changing surface being recommended by the Table sub-group to ensure that when in the open position, the changing surface does not obstruct the required clearances for toilets, sinks, doors and maneuvering when an adult changing surface is provided. It is necessary to ensure that the adult changing surface does not create a barrier for

other persons with disabilities who may come to use the toilet room if the changing surface is folding and left in the open position. In addition to maintaining required clear floor spaces at other fixtures in the room, it was determined that the changing surface could not overlap the room's turning space because some tables have a base underneath that does not allow for open knee and toe clearance that could otherwise be utilized as part of a turning space.



Staff note: The new standards will be provided for the ICC A117.1 committee members to review. The standards are copyrighted, so this will only be available for the committee and in a read only format.

06-90 – 2021 <u>Replacement</u> proposal

603.2.2, 613(New), 902.1

Proponent: Laurel Wright, representing the Adult Changing Facilities work group

Replace and revise as follows:

603.2.2 Door swing. Doors shall not swing into the clear floor space or clearance for any fixture.
EXCEPTIONS:

1. Doors to a toilet or bathing room for a single occupant, accessed only through a private office and not for common use or public use shall be permitted to swing into the clear floor space, provided the swing of the door can be reversed to comply with Section 603.2.2.

2. Where the room is intended for individual use, family or assisted-use, and a clear floor space is provided within the room outside the arc of ~~the~~ a door swing, ~~the~~ such a door shall not be required to comply with 603.2.2.

SECTION 902
DINING SURFACES AND WORK SURFACES
902.1 General. Accessible dining surfaces and work surfaces shall comply with Section 902.
Exceptions:
1. Dining surfaces and work surfaces primarily for children's use shall be permitted to comply with Section 902.5.
2. Adult changing surfaces shall not be required to comply this section.

SECTION 613
ADULT CHANGING STATIONS

613.1 General. Adult changing stations shall comply with Section 613.2 through 613.4.

613.2 Installation location. Where provided, adult changing stations shall be installed in accordance with the locations specified in Section 613.2.1, 613.2.2 or 613.2.3.

613.2.1. Single user or family or assisted use toilet or bathing room. Where adult changing stations are provided in a toilet room with only one water closet and one lavatory, or in a family or assisted-use toilet or bathing room, the room shall provide all of the following components:

6. A dispenser for soap complying with Section 308.
7. A hand towel dispenser or hand dryer complying with Table 603.6.
8. A coat hook located in close proximity to the changing surface.
9. A waste receptacle.
10. Signage indicating "Adult Changing Station" provided at the entrance to the room and complying with the visual character requirements in Section 703.2.
11. Signage indicating the weight capacity and instructions for operation of the changing station within the room.

613.2.2 Multi-user toilet or bathing room. Where adult changing stations are provided in a multi-user toilet or bathing room, the adult changing station shall be located in a compartment that includes all of the following components:

1. Privacy provided by walls, curtains or partitions enclosing the compartment.
2. A turning space complying with Section 304.
3. A lavatory complying with Section 606.
4. A dispenser for soap complying with Section 308.
5. A hand towel dispenser or hand dryer complying with Table 603.6.
6. A coat hook in close proximity to the changing surface.
7. A waste receptacle.
8. Signage indicating "Adult Changing Station" provided at the entrance to the room and complying with the visual character requirements in Section 703.2.

9. Signage indicating the weight capacity and instructions for operation of the changing station within the compartment.

613.2.3 Room or space other than a toilet room or bathing room. Where adult changing stations are provided in a room or space other than a toilet or bathing room and including, but not limited to, nurses' work areas, therapist work areas, or special education classrooms, the adult changing station shall be located in a compartment or room that includes all of the following components:

7. Privacy provided by walls, curtains or partitions.
8. A turning space complying with Section 304.
9. A lavatory complying with Section 606 or an alcohol-based hand sanitizer dispenser.
10. Where a lavatory is provided in the compartment or room, provide a dispenser for soap.
11. Where a lavatory is provided in the compartment or room, provide a hand towel dispenser or hand dryer complying with Table 603.6.
12. A waste receptacle.
13. Signage indicating the weight capacity and instructions for operation of the changing station within the room.

613.3 Room clearances. An adult changing station and its supporting structure shall not obstruct required clear floor spaces and clearances at accessible elements, maneuvering clearances at doors, or the wheelchair turning spaces.

613.4 Changing surface. A changing surface shall be provided and shall comply with Section 613.4.

613.4.1 Safety and performance. Adult changing stations shall comply with the following safety and performance requirements:

1. Protect the user from falling from the changing surface along the open long sides, by means such as retractable safety rails.
2. Provide a belt to secure the user on the changing surface.
3. Protect the user and caregiver from entrapment during operation.
4. Support a weight of not less than 400 lbs. (182 kg) applied to the changing surface
5. Provide a method to prevent tipping such as secured to the floor or wall, or other means.
6. Provide a changing surface that is durable, cleanable, non-absorbent, and resistant to corrosion.
7. Electrical components complying with NFPA 70.
8. Operable controls for height adjustment and, where provided, on and off complying with Section 309.4.

613.4.2 Size. The changing surface shall be 70 inches (1778mm) minimum in length and 30 inches (762mm) minimum in width.

613.4.3 Height adjustability. The changing surface height shall be adjustable at variable heights from 17 inches (432mm) minimum to 38 inches (965mm) maximum above the floor as measured to the top of the changing surface.

Exception: Where the adult changing station is not required by the administrative authority, a fixed height changing surface shall be permitted and shall be mounted with the top of the changing surface 19 inches (483mm) minimum and 23 inches (584 mm) maximum above the floor.

613.4.4 Clearances. Clearances complying with Sections 613.4.4.1 and 613.4.4.2 shall be provided adjacent to the changing surface, measured when the surface are in the operational position.

613.4.4.1 Side clearance. A 36-inch (914mm) deep minimum side clearance shall be provided along the open long side of the changing surface.

Exception: In the raised position, the side rail shall be permitted to overlap the side clearance.

613.4.4.2 End clearance. A 36-inch (914mm) wide minimum end clearance shall be provided along the depth of one end of the changing surface. The width of the end clearance shall extend the depth of the changing surface and the side clearance.

Exceptions:

1. A 24-inch (610 mm) wide minimum end clearance shall be permitted where a clear floor space complying with Section 305.3 is provided within the room beyond the clearances for the changing surface.
2. Where installed in locations specified in Section 613.2.3, end clearances complying with Section 613.4.4.2 is not required.

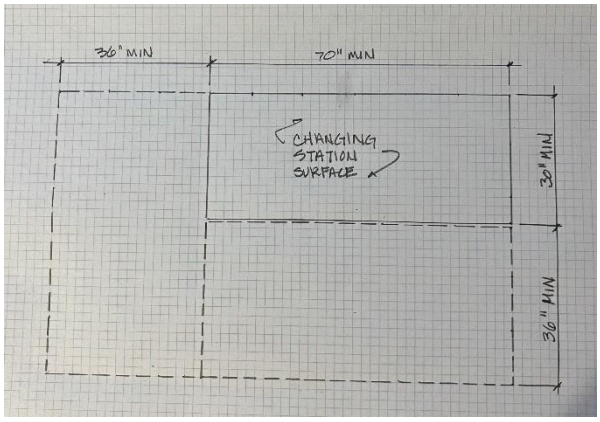


Figure 613.4.4
Changing surface and clearances

613.4.5 Side rail. Where side rails are provided at the changing surface they shall comply with Sections 613.4.5.1 and 613.4.5.2.

613.4.5.1 Size and location. Side rails shall be a minimum of 2/3 of the length of the changing surface and shall be centered +/- 3 inch (75 mm) along the long open sides of the changing surface.

613.4.5.2 Rail positioning. Side rails shall be capable of being raised and lowered. The side rail shall be fixed in place when in the raised position. The top of the side rail shall extend 5 inches (127mm) minimum above the top of the changing surface.

REASON: The purpose of this standard proposal is to develop criteria for adult changing tables and the rooms in which they are installed. This is intended to coordinate with scoping provisions provided to the I-codes in proposals E141-21(AMPC1), E142-21(AMPC 1 and 2), P37-21(AMPC1) and M20-21(AS). This proposal is a result of the meetings held by the Adult Changing Facilities work group set up by the ICC A117.1 committee. The work group met from August 2020 to December of 2021 to develop this criteria. They have met several times in 2022 to improve the proposal based on comments from the full A117.1 committee.

Participation included work group members and interested parties with a wide range of interests, and included representatives of manufacturers of adult changing tables and parents of adult persons with disabilities that need to use adult changing tables. The work group reviewed eighteen proposed state laws, two already adopted, and four guidelines in European, Australian and North American countries for adult changing tables. While there is interest in many states to provide such facilities, investigations by this work group showed either no technical guidance or very inconsistent information and application. The end result currently is limiting access to children with disabilities who have grown up with accessibility in schools and public places since the ADA went into effect, as well as disenabling a significant number of adults with disabilities who have experienced a different type of life-changing event, accidents, injuries or wars.

The following is an impact statement on the benefits of having these facilities in buildings and facilities.

- Limiting access to those who need adult changing stations decreases the community size dramatically. Nationally, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) reports 61 Million adults (26% of the US population**)** have some form of disability, with 24.1% affected in the areas of mobility, independent living, and self care. Further, each of those folks need assistance, and likely travel with additional family members. Once this population is taken out of the community, businesses are also losing a large potential of support and income. Providing our citizens more opportunities to participate in the community and patronize local establishments strengthens communities, allowing all family members to engage or travel together as one family nucleus. Currently many

families have to make the choice to participate in activities outside of the home with only a portion of their family.

- Individually, families from many states are pushing for the adult changing facilities. A national campaign, Changing Spaces, has been activated, with chapters in at least 10 states, advocating for height adjustable changing tables to be required in public places. At least 12 states have proponents actively proposing and working toward legislation, while as many as 18 states have draft language in play. California has already enacted legislation requiring adult changing stations. Maryland has legislation that goes into effect next year. Accepting this proposal will show wide-spread acceptance of the need along with a consistent set of standards across the country for users to rely on.
- We are all part of an aging population and the elderly still want to be able to attend family gatherings and travel in a car to be with relatives. These adult changing facilities would be valued not only by families with adult disabled children but also be aging adult family members.
- Without appropriate changing facilities, families cannot travel more than 30-40 miles from home. Additionally, trips that involve more than a few hours of time are also a risk. As a result, vacations, trips to zoos, aquariums, museums, concerts, and similar events are eliminated.
- The addition of adult changing tables will present a tremendous change in the quality of life for so many people who were unable to get out and participate in many activities before due to the lack of adequate facilities.

The following are reasons for the portions of the proposal dealing with the adult changing table/surface:

The work group compared the recommended changing surface technical requirements with changing tables on the market and verified that the requirements recommended are available from multiple sources. The following are specific to the sections for the changing surface.

603.2.2 Door swing (to family or assisted-use toilet room) – (see also 613.3) Similar to a single occupant bathroom, it is assumed that persons using this room will enter the room and lock the door. Therefore, the door can swing over clear floor spaces provided that the a wheelchair space is located past the swing of the door.

902.1 General (Work surface) – (see also 613.2) Some tables are wall mounted and could provide knee and toe clearances, however to achieve desired weight capacity and stability, there are many options with a center post or an x-brace system that need to be permitted. Therefore, adult changing surfaces, while a work surface for a care provider, is not also required to be an accessible work surface due to the potential lack of knee and toe clearances.

613 Adult changing stations and 613.1 General – This is a new section for the technical criteria for adult change stations. The IBC and the Appendix will include locations where these should be required for public access so that parents can change their adult children. For use and safety, these provisions will also apply where adult changing facilities are provided voluntarily.

There currently is no existing technical design criteria for adult changing facilities. A need for adult changing facilities has been brought forth in proposed bills in multiple states with differing sets of design criteria. The proposed bills' criteria were reviewed when developing these recommendations to provide a consistent set of technical criteria that meets the minimum needs of care providers for a private changing facility to change the adults with disabilities whom they care for, while at the same time maintaining required clearances at other fixtures in the room.

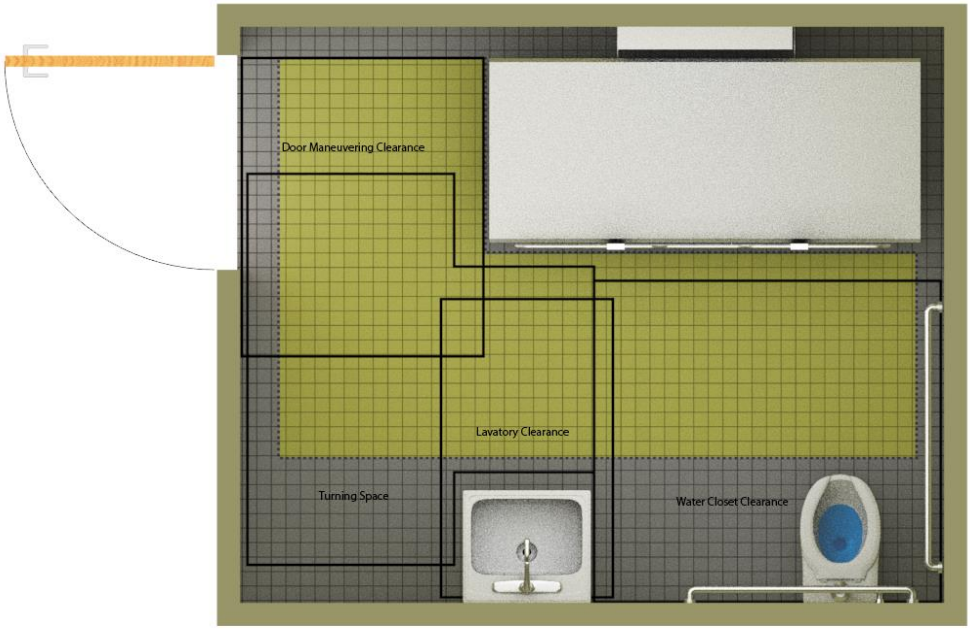
613.1.2 Installation location – Where adult changing facilities are required, they will be provided in a separate toilet room (613.2.1). Where provided, but not required, they can be in a separate toilet room (613.2.1, in a bathroom in a separate stall (613.2.2) or in a private area (613.2.3). The work group felt that that there should be additional allowances for locations where the persons with disabilities are cared for in areas such as special educations classrooms or in school nurses' offices where the primary care giver is not family members. The intent is to allow the adult changing tables in the locations that best serves the situation where these are provided voluntarily.

613.2.1. Single user or family or assisted use toilet or bathing room. – In a private bathroom, to allow for sanitation of the table, the user and the care giver, along with the fixtures (lavatory, water closet), the room will include soap, towels and a garbage can. There will be a coat hook in the room. Signage outside to identify the room and instructions for the table operation inside the room are required.

613.2.2 Multi-user toilet or bathing room. Where a table is provided in a multi-stall bathroom, the table will be in a private area. Within that area will be a lavatory with soap and a hand dryer~~,~~ or hand towel dispenser. A garbage can is required. Signage to identify the room outside and instructions for the table operation are required.

613.2.3 Room or space other than a toilet room or bathing room. These are primarily for, but not limited to, nurses' work areas, therapist work areas, or special education classrooms. Privacy is required. Within that area if the room has a lavatory, also provide soap and a hand dryer, or hand towel dispenser. There is the option for a hand sanitizer. A garbage can is required. Instructions for the table operation are required.

613.3 Room clearances. Consideration was given to the size of the changing surface being recommended by the Table sub-group to ensure that when in the open position, the changing surface does not obstruct the required clearances for toilets, sinks, doors and maneuvering when an adult changing surface is provided. It is necessary to ensure that the adult changing surface does not create a barrier for other persons with disabilities who may come to use the toilet room if the changing surface is folding and left in the open position. (A folding table is permitted, but the intent is that when the table is down, it will not be necessary to lift the table to access the other fixtures.) In addition to maintaining required clear floor spaces at other fixtures in the room, it was determined that the changing surface could not overlap the room's turning space because some tables have a base underneath that does not allow for open knee and toe clearance that could otherwise be utilized as part of a turning space.



613.2 Safety and performance. The committee has applied to work with IAPMO to develop a standard specific to adult changing. This list is the performance criteria to use for safety until this standard is finished.

Item 1 and 2 - Both a safety belt and a side rail will be required. The side rail prevents the user from rolling off the changing surface. The belt secures the user in place and, from the commentary received from Jennifer and other parents, is a necessary secondary item that prevents the user from rolling around on the surface. Not all users may require it, but from the comments received so far, having a belt to secure the user allows the caretaker to be more free in his/her movements/administrations during the changing process. Side rails are required by six states (FL, IA, IL, MI, MN, WI) and a safety belt is required in five states (FL, IA, IL, MI, MN) of the eleven states listing changing station requirements. A safety belt is included on four adult, adjustable height changing station models of the twelve products from six manufacturers the Adult Changing Station Task Force surveyed.

Item 3, 4 and 5– Consideration of possible entrapment, capacity and no tipping are important safety issues.

“Not less than 350 lbs.” was originally selected as changing surface capacity because it covers 99% of the general population. Six states (FL, IL, MN, NH, OK and WI) of ten listing load capacity, state 350 lbs. One state (CA) of ten listing load capacity, states 300 lbs. Four states (IA, MI, ND and OH) of ten listing load capacity, state 440 lbs.

One private sector website offers a body weight percentile calculator, based on the CDC's 2015-2016 NHANES survey. The site specifies that the 99th percentile for adult males as being 341.1 lbs.

It is suggested that the weight capacity of the adult-size, adjustable height changing station should be "not less than 400 lbs. (182 kg)". Commentary from parents of adult children who use adjustable height changing stations to change their children indicated that additional weight beyond the users' weight is placed on the changing station surface. First, the care giver will apply pressure to the changing surface during the changing process. Second, the care giver may add equipment to the changing surface that is needed during the changing process. Third, the care giver may lie on the changing surface to calm down their agitated child while another caregiver performs the changing process. The weight capacities of twelve adult-size, adjustable height changing station models, from six manufacturers, on the market surveyed by the Adult Changing Station Task Force shows the following:

- Under 400 lbs., 2
- 400 lbs., 1
- 440 lbs., 8
- 500 lbs., 1

Item 6 – This is common language for surfaces that need to be cleanable for sanitation reasons. The surface shall be non-porous surface for easy, thorough cleaning. Surface shall be durable to provide multiple years of service under normal conditions of use.

Item 7 – NFPA 70 is the National Electrical Code and will reduce the chance of accidental shock.
Item 8 – the controls to operate the height of the table are for the caregiver and should be places where it is best to serve their needs for a smooth operation of the changing surface. This may not be on the side or over the table.

613.4.2 Size. ICC A117.1 has requirements for benches to change clothes with a depth of 24" (Section 903.3). The 30" minimum width is thought to be most appropriate for a person laying down. The 70" length is based on the average height of an adult male.

613.4.3 Height adjustability. The 17" lowest height is consistent with the ADA 17" to 19" water closet seat height requirement. The average height of a wheelchair seat is 19" above the floor. Lateral transfer to 17" changing surface height is practical. Adjustable height range is consistent with eight states' (FL, NH, OK, WI, CA, MN, IA, MI) published height requirements. "Adjustable at variable heights" will allow for reasonable transitions.

Reasons for 38" Maximum Height Adjustability - The maximum height of twelve adult-size, adjustable height changing station models, from six manufacturers, on the market surveyed by the Adult Changing Station Task Force shows 9 of the 12 meet this height requirement.

The maximum height of states' requirements surveyed shows the following:

38” (1) CA
34” (7) FL, IA, MI, NH, OH, OK, WI
28” (1) MN
No height listed (5) GA, IL, PA, TX, VI

The 38” maximum adjustable height suggested is consistent with a majority of the adult-size, adjustable height changing station models on the market offering a higher maximum height than is stated in majority of U.S. States’ requirements.

The exception allows a fixed height surface where tables are provided voluntarily. Fixed height changing surface is: (1) better than no changing surface; (2) a solution for vandalism of adjustable height adult changing surface; (3) a significant reduction in cost that should encourage additional tables where needed (such as in every special education classroom in a school). The 19” to 23” is based on new information for the Access Board about the range of wheelchair seat heights.

613.4.4 Clearances. Folding tables are not prohibited, so the clearance are required when the table is in its operational position.

613.4.4.1 Side clearance. A 36” deep minimum side clearance along the length of one long open side allows for an accessible route with space to park a wheelchair to support transfer to/from changing surface.
The exception allows for side rails to be inbound or outbound of the of the changing surface. When the side rails are down, they should not obstruct the transfer to the table.

613.4.4.2 End clearance. A 36” deep minimum clearance on at least one end of the changing surface allows space for caregiver to move around the table to manipulate clothing and change the user. It also allows for the wheelchair to be located at that end while a care giver is changing someone.
Exception 1 would allow for a 24” clearance at the end (based on information from Assisted Toileting and Bathing work group and study from the Rothchild’s Foundation) if there is another location in the room to move the wheelchair. (The California Code requires 36” deep minimum clearance on both ends of the changing surface.)
Exception 2 allows for tables in nurses’ work areas, therapist work areas, or special education classrooms to be located in an alcove where necessary.

613.4.5 Side rail,
613.4.5.1 Size and location. Relate side rail length to changing surface length without referring to a specific inch dimension.

613.3.6.2 Side rail positioning. A side rail is needed on open side of changing surface to prevent person being cared for from rolling off. The 5” minimum height from the top of the side rail to the changing surface is considered a practical height for the caregiver to lean over.

Committee Action: As Modified 26-0-0
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any): Motion to delete 613.4.1 passed 26-3-0

Further revise as follows:

~~**613.4.1 Safety and performance.** Adult changing stations shall comply with the following safety and performance requirements:~~

1. ~~Protect the user from falling from the changing surface along the open long sides, by means such as retractable safety rails.~~
2. ~~Provide a belt to secure the user on the changing surface.~~
3. ~~Protect the user and caregiver from entrapment during operation.~~
4. ~~Support a weight of not less than 400 lbs. (182 kg) applied to the changing surface~~
5. ~~Provide a method to prevent tipping such as secured to the floor or wall, or other means.~~
6. ~~Provide a changing surface that is durable, cleanable, non-absorbent, and resistant to corrosion.~~
7. ~~Electrical components complying with NFPA 70.~~
8. ~~Operable controls for height adjustment and, where provided, on and off complying with Section 309.4.~~

613.4.3 Height adjustability. The changing surface height shall be adjustable at variable heights from 17 inches (432mm) minimum to 38 inches (965mm) maximum above the floor as measured to the top of the changing surface.

Exception: Where the ~~changing surface~~ <u>adult changing station</u> is not required by the administrative authority, a fixed height changing surface shall be permitted and shall be mounted with the top of the changing surface 19 inches (483mm) minimum and 23 inches (584 mm) maximum above the floor.

Committee Reason: The first modification deleted Section 613.4.1 due to concerns that some of the item were not in enforceable language (e.g. # 3 and 5). Item 1 is addressed in Section 614.4.5. Item 8 needed some editorial cleanup on the language.

The modification to Section 613.4.3 was because the adult changing station is required by the codes, not the surface itself. This is editorial.

The replacement proposal developed by the Adult Changing Station Committee was approved because it brought requirements in for the changing table that would provide appropriate guidance for these facilities. The committee worked to address concerns raised by the A117.1 committee during the original presentation to the committee at the March 10 presentation. Laurel Wright's presentation explained the development and resources used by the task group to develop criteria.

106-WRIGHT.doc

Report for *06-90-2021*		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 26-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise as follows:** ~~**613.4.1 Safety and performance.** Adult changing stations shall comply with the following safety and performance requirements:~~ ~~1. Protect the user from falling from the changing surface along the open long sides, by means such as retractable safety rails.~~ ~~2. Provide a belt to secure the user on the changing surface.~~ ~~3. Protect the user and caregiver from entrapment during operation.~~		

Report for *06-90-2021*		
~~4. Support a weight of not less than 400 lbs. (182 kg) applied to the changing surface~~ ~~5. Provide a method to prevent tipping such as secured to the floor or wall, or other means.~~ ~~6. Provide a changing surface that is durable, cleanable, non-absorbent, and resistant to corrosion.~~ ~~7. Electrical components complying with NFPA 70.~~ ~~8.~~ ~~Operable controls for height adjustment and, where provided, on and off complying with Section 309.4.~~ **613.4.3 Height adjustability.** The changing surface height shall be adjustable at variable heights from 17 inches (432mm) minimum to 38 inches (965mm) maximum above the floor as measured to the top of the changing surface. **Exception:** Where the ~~changing surface~~ adult changing station is not required by the administrative authority, a fixed height changing surface shall be permitted and shall be mounted with the top of the changing surface 19 inches (483mm) minimum and 23 inches (584 mm) maximum above the floor.		
Committee Reason: The first modification deleted Section 613.4.1 due to concerns that some of the item were not in enforceable language (e.g. # 3 and 5). Item 1 is addressed in Section 614.4.5. Item 8 needed some editorial cleanup on the language. The modification to Section 613.4.3 was because the adult changing station is required by the codes, not the surface itself. This is editorial. The replacement proposal developed by the Adult Changing Station Committee was approved because it brought requirements in for the changing table that would provide appropriate guidance for these facilities. The committee worked to address concerns raised by the A117.1 committee during the original presentation to the committee at the March 10 presentation. Laurel Wright's presentation explained the development and resources used by the task group to develop criteria.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report
Chapter 7

07-01 – 2021
703.1.2

Proponent: Billie Louise (Beezy) Bentzen, PhD., Accessible Design for the Blind, representing Association for the Education and Rehabilitation of the Blind and Visually Impaired (AER)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 703
SIGNS

703.1.2 Directional and informational signs. Signs that provide direction to or information about interior spaces and facilities of the site shall comply with Section 703.2, 703.3 and 703.4.

Exception: Where the bottom of the sign is greater than 80 inches (2030 mm) above the floor, the sign is not required to comply with Section 703.3 and 703.4.

REASON: Directional signs that are accessible to people who are vision disabled because they are easy to find and they can be approached for close viewing can greatly reduce the need for people who are vision disabled to obtain information from other people. (See AERBVI proposed additional language to 703.3.) It is perfectly possible for people who are blind or who have low vision to travel independently in unfamiliar public environments if directional information is provided in predictable locations.

Asking strangers for wayfinding information has been found to be the least preferred way by people who are not vision disabled to get needed information. If the passenger cannot see or hear another person who is close by, and cannot judge whether a person they do detect is a person they would feel safe engaging with, and who is likely to have and be able to provide the answer to their question, asking a fellow passenger becomes an even more undesirable way to get information. Fear of getting confused or disoriented when traveling, or of being vulnerable to physical or psychological abuse, often results in isolation for people who are vision disabled, or the use of alternative means of travel, such as paratransit (which is expensive for the traveler and even more so for the transit system), taxi, or friends or relatives whom they do not want to inconvenience. Unlike transit facilities, most of which, during most daytime hours will have numerous people passing by, corridors in public buildings, especially office buildings, often have no people traveling in them who could provide directional information. Having no accessible directional signage in public buildings often results in the perceived need by people who are vision disabled to travel with a companion, lest they get lost.

Additional support for this concept and the need for it may be found in Arditi, A. (2017). Rethinking ADA signage standards for low vision accessibility. J Vis. 2017; 17(5): 8. Published online 2017 May 16. doi: 10.1167/17.5.8 (attached), and Arthur, P., & Passini, R.. (1992). *Wayfinding: People, signs, and architecture*. New York: McGraw Hill. Pp. 200-202.

The intent of the exception is to not require raised letters or braille on overhead signage. If the directional sign is in the wall the baseline of the rows would have to be between 48" and 60" because of Section 703.3.10 and 703.4.5.

Committee Action: Disapproval 24-0-5

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The concerns in the reason were about directional information, but this section also addressed information about the space. Tactile letters do not work for all the directional signage scoped IBC Section 1112.3 since not all are at doors or corridor intersections where signs could be located by a person with a vision impairment. It is not clear what information would be required – directional arrow, room names/numbers? Since the tactile signage is between 48" and 60", the exception for 80" is not consistent with tactile sign location. This item should be a discussion point for the Communications task group.

703.1.2-BENTZEN.doc

Report for 07-01– 2021		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-0-5***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The concerns in the reason were about directional information, but this section also addressed information about the space. Tactile letters do not work for all the directional signage scoped IBC Section 1112.3 since not all are at doors or corridor intersections where signs could be located by a person with a vision impairment. It is not clear what information would be required – directional arrow, room names/numbers? Since the tactile signage is between 48" and 60", the exception for 80" is not consistent with tactile sign location. This item should be a discussion point for the Communications task group.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

07-02 – 2021
703.1.3

Proponent: Sharon Toji, Access Communications

Revise as follows:

SECTION 703
SIGNS

703.1.3 Pictograms. Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with Section 703.5 and shall have text descriptors located directly below the pictogram field and complying with Sections 703.2 and 703.3. Where the visual and raised characters text descriptors are separate signs, only the visual characters shall be required below the pictogram.

Exception: Pictograms that provide information about a room or space, such as "No Smoking," occupant logos, and the International Symbol of Accessibility, shall not be required to have text descriptors.

REASON: We have found great acceptance of so-called "dual purpose signs" where the visual sign text is separated from the tactile and braille text, both by blind people who do not read braille as well as by people with partial vision who want larger, bolder visual text that exceeds tactile standards. Since we promote using pictograms for restrooms, it is difficult to separate them if we are exacting about the standards, which might mean having to keep the pictogram above both the visual and tactile versions, even though those who read solely by touch do not use the pictograms. Therefore, it seems helpful to indicate that pictograms that designate spaces only need to be included above the visual text. It provides for greater access for the partially sighted readers, as well as greater design freedom for sign designers.

07-02 – 2021 Replacement
703.1.3

Proponent: Sharon Toji, Access Communications

Replace and revise as follows:

703.1.3 Pictograms. Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with Section 703.5. Pictograms ~~and~~ shall have text descriptors ~~located directly below the pictogram field and~~ complying with Sections 703.2 and 703.3 located directly below the pictogram field.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. Pictograms that provide information about a room or space, such as "No Smoking," occupant logos, and the International Symbol of Accessibility, shall not be required to have text descriptors.
2. Where room designations with text descriptors for pictograms are provided on separate visual and tactile signs as permitted by Section 703.1, the visual and tactile components of the text descriptor shall be permitted to be displayed separately with the associated visual or tactile sign.

REASON: This modification is offered to clarify that the visual and tactile components of text descriptors for pictograms are permitted to be separated from the pictogram and provided on separate visual and tactile signs. The intent is that the visual text descriptor will remain with the pictogram which is visual only and that the tactile text descriptor will be located on a signs without a visual pictogram.

Committee Action: Approved as Modified 21-2-6

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):
Replace and revise as follows:

703.1.3 Pictograms. Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with Section 703.5. Pictograms ~~and~~ shall have text descriptors ~~located directly below the pictogram field and~~ complying with Sections 703.2 and 703.3 located directly below the pictogram field.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. Pictograms that provide information about a room or space, such as "No Smoking," occupant logos, and the International Symbol of Accessibility, shall not be required to have text descriptors.
2. Where room designations with text descriptors for pictograms are provided on separate visual and tactile signs as permitted by Section 703.1, the visual and tactile components of the text descriptor shall be permitted to be displayed separately with the associated visual or tactile sign.

Committee Reason: The modification replaced the original proposal. (This modification was not distributed before the meeting.) The new exception two is consistent with the allowances in Section 703.1 for the visual information to be separate from the raised letters and braille. The intent is to allow the pictogram and visual to be on one sign, and the raised and braille located on another sign without a pictogram.

703.1.3-TOJI.doc

Report for 07-02– 2021		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 21-2-6***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		

Report for 07-02– 2021		
Replace and revise as follows: **703.1.3 Pictograms.** Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with Section 703.5. Pictograms ~~and~~ shall have text descriptors ~~located directly below the pictogram field and~~ complying with Sections 703.2 and 703.3 located directly below the pictogram field. **~~Exception~~ Exceptions:** 1. Pictograms that provide information about a room or space, such as "No Smoking," occupant logos, and the International Symbol of Accessibility, shall not be required to have text descriptors. 2. Where room designations with text descriptors for pictograms are provided on separate visual and tactile signs as permitted by Section 703.1, the visual and tactile components of the text descriptor shall be permitted to be displayed separately with the associated visual or tactile sign.		
Committee Reason: The modification replaced the original proposal. (This modification was not distributed before the meeting.) The new exception two is consistent with the allowances in Section 703.1 for the visual information to be separate from the raised letters and braille. The intent is to allow the pictogram and visual to be on one sign, and the raised and braille located on another sign located without a pictogram.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

07-03 – 2021
703.1.3

Proponent: Billie Louise (Beezy) Bentzen, PhD., Accessible Design for the Blind, representing Association for the Education and Rehabilitation of the Blind and Visually Impaired (AER)

Revise as follows:

SECTION 703
SIGNS

703.1.3. Pictograms. Where pictograms are provided as designations of permanent interior rooms and spaces, the pictograms shall comply with Section 703.5 and shall have text descriptors located directly below the pictogram field and complying with Sections 703.2 and 703.3.

Exception: Pictograms ~~that provide information about a room or space, such as "No Smoking,"~~ depicting occupant logos, and the International Symbol of Accessibility, shall not be required to have text descriptors.

REASON: The pictogram for "No Smoking" is important communication for people who are vision disabled. It is not reliably discriminated and recognized by them and needs to have text description.

Committee Action: As Submitted 25-2-4

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The Communications work group agreed with the proposal, but did not agree with the reason. The room designation is the base requirement, so the exception should be limited to the designation, not information about the room. We further agree with their recommendation that the exception language is not appropriate since a "no smoking" pictogram does not fall within the permanent interior rooms and spaces category.

703.1.3-BENTZEN.doc

Report for 07-03– 2021		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting:*** 25-2-4	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The Communications work group agreed with the proposal, but did not agree with the reason. The room designation is the base requirement, so the exception should be limited to the designation, not information about the room. We further agree with their recommendation that the exception language is not appropriate since a "no smoking" pictogram does not fall within the permanent interior rooms and spaces category.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT:		

Report for 0*7-03– 2021*		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

07-04 – 2021
703.2.4 (New), 703.3.5 (New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 703
SIGNS

703.2 Visual Characters

703.2.4 Text orientation: The lines of visual text characters shall be displayed with the base line of the text in either in a vertical or horizontal orientation.

Exception: Numeric characters are permitted to be displayed in a vertical orientation, one under another.

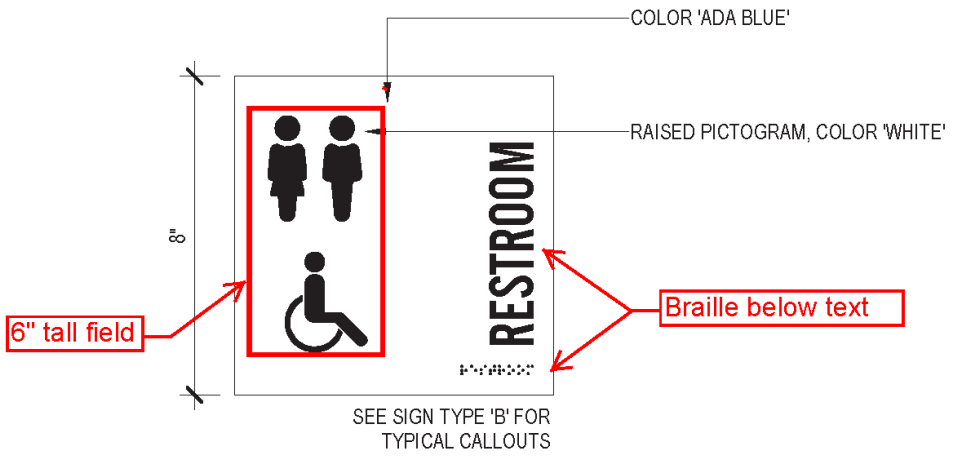
703.3 Raised characters.

703.3.5 Text orientation: Raised characters shall be displayed in a horizontal orientation.

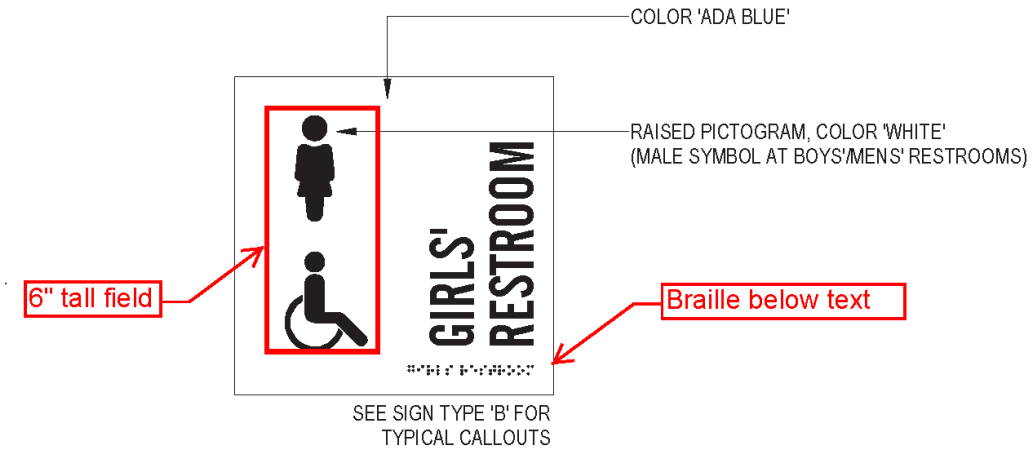
REASON: The standard does not currently provide any guidance regarding the orientation of either visual or raised characters. We have received several questions regarding whether the standard allows visual characters to be displayed in a vertical line. See the attached image as an example of a sign that was proposed to illustrate the issue that is trying to be addressed by this change.

This is an attempt to clarify an issue which is currently unaddressed within the standard. Where a sign is numbers only, there is nothing within the current text that says the numbers cannot be one under another instead of being placed horizontally in a row. However, although not stated, they should be oriented in a standard vertical manner even if each digit is displayed on a separate line which complies with the appropriate line spacing. As the image shows, numerals cannot be easily read when oriented horizontally (sideways) and thus they should not be rotated.

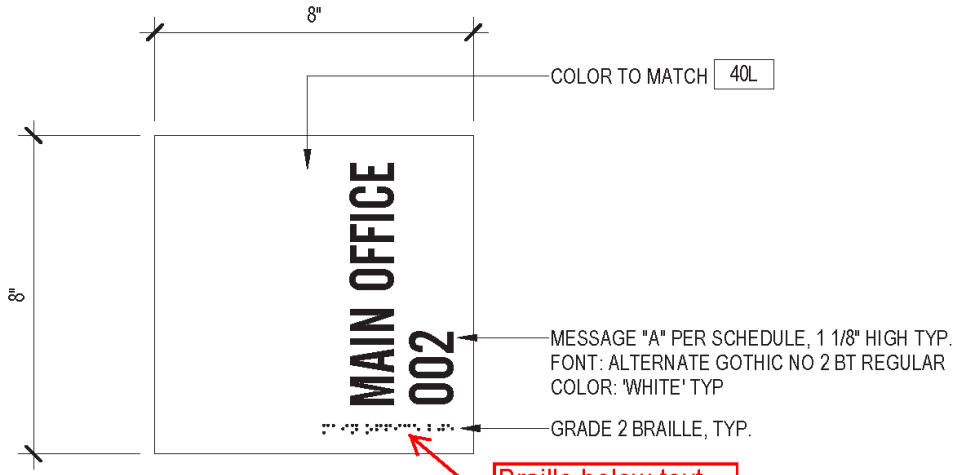
The intent of this proposal is to require that raised characters must be oriented on a horizontal line of text and that numerals be kept in a vertical orientation. Visual characters would be permitted to be oriented onto a vertical line of text. Braille is not addressed by this proposal and is assumed to be adequately addressed by the "contracted (Grade 2) braille" requirement of Section 703.4.1.



TYPE "D"



TYPE "C"



TYPE "B"

07-04 – 2021 modification

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

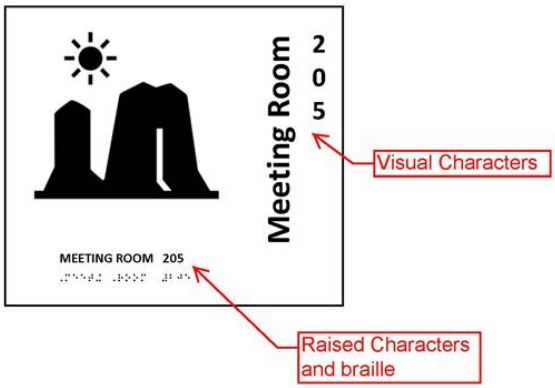
Further revise as follows:

703.4 Braille

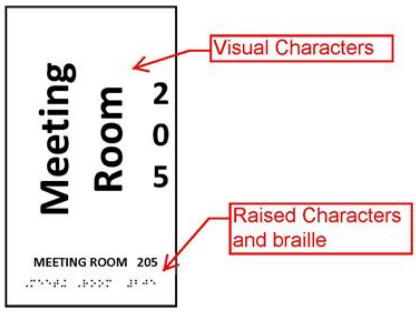
703.4.4 Position. Braille shall be below the corresponding text and displayed in a horizontal orientation. If text is multilined, braille shall be placed below entire text. Braille shall be separated $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) minimum from any other raised characters and $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements. Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) minimum either directly below or adjacent to the corresponding raised characters or symbols.

Reason: The reason in the original proposal did not show compliant examples, just the issue of signage. There were also concerns that the information for the braille should also include the horizontal requirement. The examples below are compliant examples.

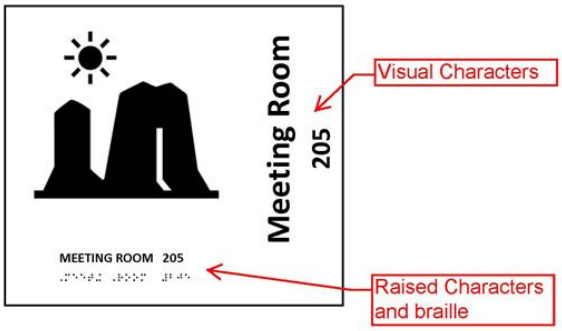
Compliant



compliant



Compliant



07-04 – 2021 2nd modification

Proponent: Sharon Toji, Access Communications

Further revise as follows:

703.2.4 Text orientation: The lines of visual text characters shall be displayed with the base line of the text in ~~either in a vertical or~~ a horizontal orientation.

~~**Exception:** Numeric characters are permitted to be displayed in a vertical orientation, one under another.~~

Reason: Vertical visual text is difficult for persons with partial vision to read. The State of California added text similar to the above for both visual and tactile characters and braille cells quite a few years ago, and has not had a negative response from building owners or designers.

Committee Action: Approved as Modified AM 23-0-2
Mod 2 – AM – 22-0-3
Mod 1 – AM –24-0-4

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Further revise as follows:

703.2.4 Text orientation: The lines of visual text characters shall be displayed with the base line of the text in ~~either in a vertical or~~ a horizontal orientation.

~~**Exception:** Numeric characters are permitted to be displayed in a vertical orientation, one under another.~~

703.4.4 Position. Braille shall be below the corresponding text and displayed in a horizontal orientation. If text is multilined, braille shall be placed below entire text. Braille shall be separated $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) minimum from any other raised characters and $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements. Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) minimum either directly below or adjacent to the corresponding raised characters or symbols.

Committee Reason: The current text does not specify a direction of the information on accessible signs. The original proposal direction of that information for visual and raised letters. The modification to new Section 703.2.4 limits the text orientation of visual signage to horizontal. Accessible visual signs should be horizontal for readability for persons with visual or

cognitive disabilities. The modification to Section 703.4.4 is to require braille to be horizontal consistent with the visual and raised characters.

703.2.4-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 07-04– 2021		
Committee decision: AM	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-0-2***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any): **Further revise as follows:** **703.2.4 Text orientation:** The lines of visual text characters shall be displayed with the base line of the text in ~~either in a vertical or~~ a horizontal orientation. ~~**Exception:** Numeric characters are permitted to be displayed in a vertical orientation, one under another.~~ **703.4.4 Position.** Braille shall be below the corresponding text and displayed in a horizontal orientation. If text is multilined, braille shall be placed below entire text. Braille shall be separated $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) minimum from any other raised characters and $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) minimum from raised borders and decorative elements. Braille provided on elevator car controls shall be separated $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (4.8 mm) minimum either directly below or adjacent to the corresponding raised characters or symbols.		
Committee Reason: The current text does not specify a direction of the information on accessible signs. The original proposal direction of that information for visual and raised letters. The modification to new Section 703.2.4 limits the text orientation of visual signage to horizontal. Accessible visual signs should be horizontal for readability for persons with visual or cognitive disabilities. The modification to Section 703.4.4 is to require braille to be horizontal consistent with the visual and raised characters.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

07-05 – 2021
703.2.4

Proponent: Sharon Toji, Access Communications

Revise as follows:

SECTION 703
SIGNS

703.2 Visual characters.

703.2.4 Character height. The uppercase letter "I" shall be used to determine the allowable height of all characters of a font. The uppercase letter "I" of the font shall have a minimum height complying with Table 703.2.4. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the sign.

~~**Exception**~~ **Exceptions:**

1. In assembly seating where the maximum viewing distance is 100 feet (30.5 m) or greater, the height of the uppercase "I" of fonts shall be permitted to be 1 inch (25 mm) for every 30 feet (9145 mm) of viewing distance, provided the character height is 8 inches (205 mm) minimum. Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and where someone is expected to view the sign.
2. Site and floor maps, evacuation plans, building directories and signs providing instructions on the operation of equipment shall not be required to comply with the minimum character height in Table 703.2.4 for visual text.

TABLE 703.2.4—VISUAL CHARACTER HEIGHT

Height above Floor to Baseline of Character[1]	Horizontal Viewing Distance	Minimum Character Height
40 inches (1015 mm) to less than or equal to 70 inches (1780 mm)	Less than 6 feet (1830 mm)	5/8 inch (16 mm)
	6 feet (1830 mm) and greater	5/8 inch (16 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 6 feet (1830 mm)
Greater than 70 inches (1780 mm) to less than or equal to 120 inches (3050 mm)	Less than 15 feet (4570 mm)	2 inches (51 mm)
	15 feet (4570 mm) and greater	2 inches (51 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 15 feet (4570 mm)

Greater than 120 inches (3050 mm)	Less than 21 feet (6400 mm)	3 inches (75 mm)
	21 feet (6400 mm) and greater	3 inches (75 mm), plus 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) per foot (305 mm) of viewing distance above 21 feet (6400 mm)

1. The vertical height is measured from the floor of the viewing position to the baseline of the highest line of characters.

REASON: Although there should be some minimum size requirements for the visual characters on the sign types listed in this exception, the blanket requirement for 5/8 inch (and perhaps now 1 inch) high characters has provided a great deal of concern and frustration. In California, for instance, the state just exempted evacuation plans (but not site and floor maps) because using 5/8 inch high characters throughout would have made the signs get so large that sections of the signs would have been mounted too high for little people and people in wheelchairs to read them, especially if they had impaired vision. In addition, the text was taking up so much space on the signs that the floor plan itself, which provided the most useful evacuation or wayfinding information, was often minimized.

The tendency is to just exempt signs that present problems. Instead, we need to decide which information is most important to be able to see from a greater distance, and which can be smaller for close reading. We need to exempt only those elements of the sign that are impossible to make compliant, but retain requirements that are possible to emphasize for increased access.

In the meantime, since signs like site plans and building directories would stretch along entire walls and extend upwards too high to see if they followed these requirements for even the smallest text, it makes sense right now to exempt them from the type size requirements and plan to study these types of signs to see what sensible requirements can be put in place.

Committee Action: Disapproval 24-0-0

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The exception should not include items that are not scoped to the standard. This needs to be coordinated with the scoping provisions. "Operation of equipment" is too broad for these requirements. This proposal needs to be narrowed down to what specific items the concerns are. The Communications task group will be looking at these items individually.

703.2.4-TOJI.doc

Report for 07-05– 2021		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 24-0-0***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***

Report for 07-05– 2021		
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The exception should not include items that are not scoped to the standard. This needs to be coordinated with the scoping provisions. "Operation of equipment" is too broad for these requirements. This proposal needs to be narrowed down to what specific items the concerns are. The Communications task group will be looking at these items individually.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report
Chapter 8

ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report
Chapter 9

09-05 – 2021
908(New)

Proponent: Kimberly Paarlberg, International Code Council

Add new text as follows:

SECTION 908
TRASH OR LINEN CHUTES

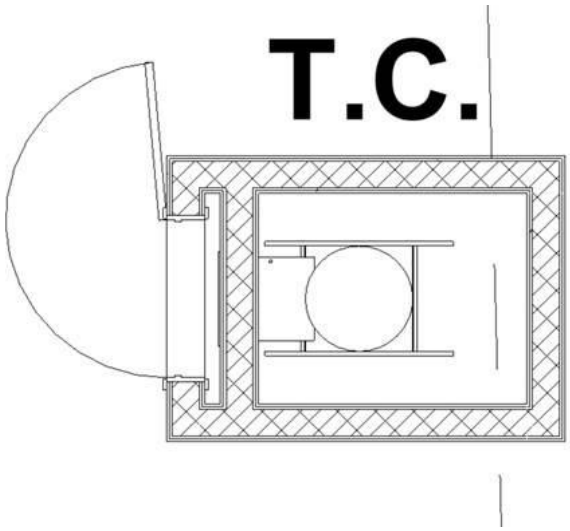
908.1 General. Waste, recycling and linen chutes serving Accessible and Type A units are required to be on an accessible route and comply with Section 908.2 through 908.4.

908.2 Doors to trash or linen chutes. Doors to waste, recycling and linen chutes rooms or trash or linen chute access panels shall comply with 404.

908.3 Trash or linen chute access panels. Access panels for waste, recycling and linen chutes shall have hardware complying with 404.2.6. The access panel opening forces shall have the minimum opening force allowable by the scoping provisions adopted by the appropriate administrative authority.

908.4 Room requirements. Where there is a room in front of the access panel for waste, recycling or linen chutes, a turning space shall be provided in the room and maneuvering clearances shall be provided on both sides of the door. Where the access panel for the waste, recycling or linen chute is located behind a corridor door, the door shall have a magnetic hold open that allows for automatic-closing upon the detection of smoke.

REASON: The purpose of this proposal is to provide technical criteria for accessibility for trash chutes and linen chutes. Since these are vertical shafts, the walls are required to be fire resistance rated. Both the door to the access the chute, and the door to the chute itself are required to be fire resistance rated. That requires closures and latches on the door.



2021 IBC

713.13 Waste, recycling and linen chutes and incinerator rooms. Waste, recycling and linen chutes shall comply with the provisions of NFPA 82, Chapter 6 and shall meet the requirements of Sections 712 and 713.13.1 through 713.13.6. Incinerator rooms shall meet the provisions of Sections 713.13.4 and 713.13.5.

Exception: Chutes serving and contained within a single *dwelling unit.*

713.13.1 Waste, recycling and linen chute enclosures. A *shaft enclosure* containing a recycling, waste or linen chute shall not be used for any other purpose and shall be enclosed in accordance with Section 713.4. A *shaft enclosure* shall be permitted to contain recycling and waste chutes. Openings into the *shaft*, from access rooms and discharge rooms, shall be protected in accordance with

this section and Section 716. Openings into chutes shall not be located in *corridors*. Doors into chutes shall be *self-closing*. Discharge doors shall be self-or automatic closing upon the actuation of a smoke detector in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6, except that heat-activated closing devices shall be permitted between the *shaft* and the discharge room.

713.13.2 Materials. A *shaft enclosure* containing a waste, recycling, or linen chute shall be constructed of materials as permitted by the building type of construction.

713.13.3 Chute access rooms. Access openings for waste, recycling or linen chutes shall be located in rooms or compartments enclosed by not less than 1-hour *fire barriers* constructed in accordance with Section 707 or *horizontal assemblies* constructed in accordance with Section 711, or both. Openings into the access rooms shall be protected by opening protectives having a *fire protection rating* of not less than 3/4 hour. Doors shall be self- or automatic-closing upon the detection of smoke in accordance with Section 716.2.6.6. The room or compartment shall be configured to allow the access door to the room or compartment to close and latch with the access panel to the chute in any position.

Committee Action: 18-12-1 AS

REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: This is a common issue that needs to be moved forward. The proposal provides technical criteria for accessibility for trash chutes and linen chutes. Since these are vertical shafts, the walls are required to be fire resistance rated. Both the door to the access the chute, and the door to the chute itself are required to be fire resistance rated, and that requires closures and latches on the door.

908-PAARLBERG.doc

Report for 0*9-05– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 18-12-1***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: This is a common issue that needs to be moved forward. The proposal provides technical criteria for accessibility for trash chutes and linen chutes. Since these are vertical shafts, the walls are required to be fire resistance rated. Both the door to the access the chute, and the door to the chute itself are required to be fire resistance rated, and that requires closures and latches on the door.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report
Chapter 10

ICC A117.1 Committee Action Report
Chapter 11

11-14 – 2021
1103.12.1.1, 1103.12.1.2, 1104.12.1.1, 1104.12.1.2

Proponent: Marsha Mazz, representing United Spinal Association

Revise as follows:

SECTION 1103
TYPE A UNITS

1103.12.1.1 Minimum clearance. Clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum measured at the narrowest point, excluding hardware and appliance controls.

1103.12.1.2 U-shaped kitchens. In kitchens with counters, appliances, or cabinets on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum measured at the narrowest point, excluding hardware and appliance controls.

Exception: U-shaped kitchens with an island complying with Section 1103.12.1.1.

SECTION 1104
TYPE B UNITS

1104.12.1.1 Minimum clearance. Clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 40 inches (1015 mm) minimum measured at the narrowest point, excluding hardware and appliance controls.

1104.12.1.2 U-shaped kitchens. In kitchens with counters, appliances or cabinets on three contiguous sides, clearance between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls within kitchen work areas shall be 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum measured at the narrowest point, excluding hardware and appliance controls.

Exception: U-shaped kitchens with an island complying with Section 1104.12.1.1.

REASON: Kitchens in Accessible units and those outside dwelling units must comply with Section 804. This proposal addresses Type A and Type B units. Please see our companion proposals to make the same change to Section 804.2.

Some inspectors include hardware and appliance controls when measuring between base cabinets and appliances, others do not. This proposal is intended to establish a clear

measurement point. The narrowest kitchen clearance is 40 inches in width which is at least 4 inches wider than an accessible route, 8 inches where Exception 1 to Section 403.5.1 allows the route to reduce to 32 inches for a distance of 24 inches.

For Type B units (Section 1104.12.1), HUD's Fair Housing Design Manual makes clear that hardware and appliance controls are to be excluded when measuring kitchen clearances.

> "The Guidelines require a clearance of at least 40 inches between all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, and walls. The 40-inch clearance is measured from any countertop or the face of any appliance (excluding handles and controls) that projects into the kitchen to the opposing cabinet, countertop, appliance, or wall. Refrigerators vary greatly in depth and may extend up to eight inches beyond cabinet faces. Standard free-standing and drop-in ranges may project up to three inches. Appliance depths (excluding door handles) must be included when calculating the 40-inch clearances."

Requirement #7 (1)(b) of the Fair Housing Act Accessibility Guidelines says it a little differently.

> "Clearance between counters and all opposing base cabinets, countertops, appliances, or walls is at least40 inches".

Unfortunately, neither the Design Manual or the Guidelines shed any light on where the measurement is to be taken when the countertop overhangs the face of the cabinet or an appliance, such as a dishwasher. This proposal clarifies what we believe is the intent of the HUD requirement by requiring the measurement to be taken at the narrowest point. We have proposed the same change for Sections 804 and 1103.12.1.

Committee Action: AS 23-2-3
REPORT OF HEARING:
Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: The committee agreed with the proponent's reason statement - that the measurement for kitchens should not include handles on cabinets and appliance controls or handles. There are some reviewers that are misinterpreting this. For consistency, this should also be considered for the kitchen requirements in Section 804.

1103.12.1-MAZZ.doc

Report for *11-14– 2021*		
Committee decision: AS	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 23-2-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: The committee agreed with the proponent's reason statement - that the measurement for kitchens should not include handles on cabinets and appliance controls or handles. There are some reviewers that are misinterpreting this. For consistency, this should also be considered for the kitchen requirements in Section 804.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT:		

Report for *11-14– 2021*		
Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		

11-29 – 2021

1104.11.3.1.3, 1104.11.3.1.3.1, 1104.11.3.1.3.2, 1104.11.3.1.3.3, 1104.11.3.2.3.1; Figures 1104.11.3.1.3.1, 1104.11.3.1.3.2, 1104.11.3.1.3.3(A), 1104.11.3.1.3.3(B), 1104.11.3.2.3.1

Proponent: Thomas Hirsch, FAIA, Hirsch Group Architecture, representing self; M. Bradley Gaskins, AIA; Gina Hillberry for United Cerebral Palsy; Joe Jurkiewicz, AIA; Marsha Mazz for United Spinal Association; Edward Steinfeld, Arch.D, AIA; and Steven R. Winkel, FAIA, PE, CASp

Revise as follows:

SECTION 1104
TYPE B UNITS

1104.11.3.1 Option A. *(no change)*

1104.11.3.1.3 Bathing fixtures. Where provided, a bathtub shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.1 ~~or 1104.11.3.1.3.2~~ and a shower compartment shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.2 ~~1104.11.3.1.3.3~~.

1104.11.3.1.3.1 Parallel approach to bathtubs. A transfer clearance of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 48” (1220 mm) minimum shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a parallel approach. A clear floor space for toe clearance at the controls shall extend 4 inch (102 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall. Lavatories complying with Section 606 shall be permitted in the transfer and control clearance. ~~A lavatory complying with Section 1104.11.3.1.1 shall be permitted if a clearance 48” (1220 mm) in length and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width is provided in front of the bathtub.~~

Note: Replace Figure 1104.11.3.1.3.1 (a) and (b) with one figure. The new figure indicates the transfer clearance and the additional 4 inches required for the control clearance.

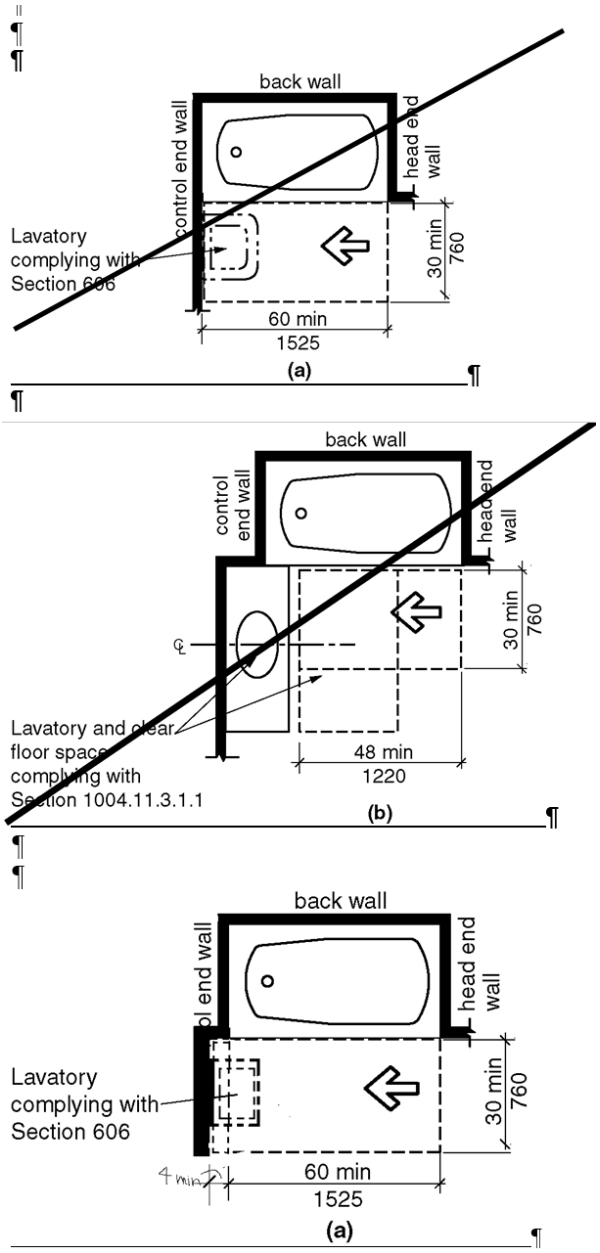
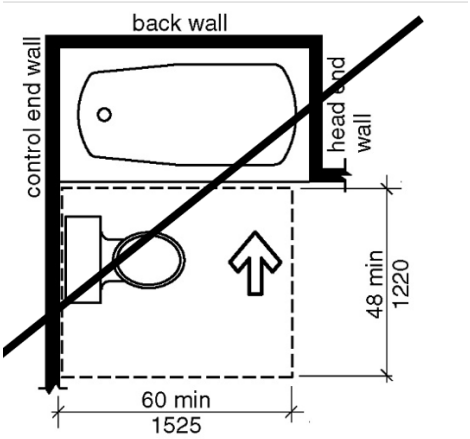


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.1
PARALLEL APPROACH BATHTUB IN TYPE B UNITS - OPTION A BATHROOM

~~**1104.11.3.1.3.2 Forward approach to bathtubs.** A clearance of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a forward approach. A water closet and a lavatory shall be permitted in the clearance at the foot one end of the bathtub.~~



~~**FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.2**~~
~~**FORWARD APPROACH BATHTUB IN TYPE B UNITS OPTION A BATHROOM**~~

1104.11.3.1.3.2 ~~**1104.11.3.1.3.3**~~ **Shower compartments**. ~~If the shower compartment is the only bathing facility,~~ the shower shall have dimensions of 36 inches minimum in width and 36 inches (915 mm)minimum in depth. A transfer clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length, measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured from the face of the shower compartment, shall be provided. A clear floor space for toe clearance at the controls shall extend 4 inches (102 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall.

Exceptions:

1. A shower compartment with dimensions of 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth and 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum in width shall be permitted.
2. A shower door assembly shall be permitted where the assembly can be removed without removal or replacement of the surrounding walls and floor to which it is affixed.

Note: The figure will be revised to add the 4 inch minimum control clearance to Figures (a) and (b). This would also apply if there is a wall at the toe end of the clearance.

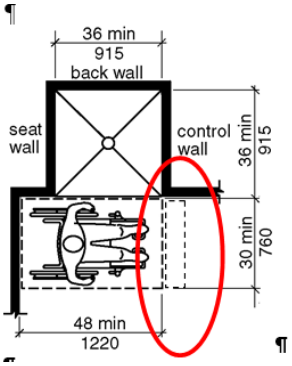


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.2 ~~**1104.11.3.1.3.3**~~ **(A)**
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS

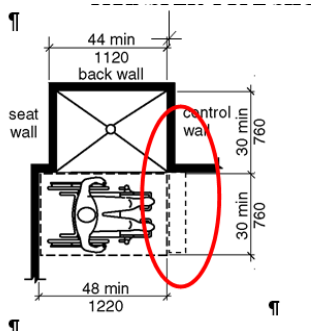


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.2 ~~1104.11.3.1.3.3~~ (B)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS EXCEPTION

1104.11.3.2 Option B. *(no change)*

1104.11.3.2.3 Bathing fixtures. The bathing fixture shall be a bathtub complying with Section 1104.11.3.2.3.1 or a shower compartment complying with Section 1104.11.3.2.3.2.

1104.11.3.2.3.1 Bathtub. A transfer clearance 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control end of the bathtub, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs. A clear floor space for toe clearance at the controls shall extend 4 inches (102 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall.

Note: Replace figure 1104.11.3.2.3.1 with the following. The figure will be revised to add the 4 inch minimum control clearance.

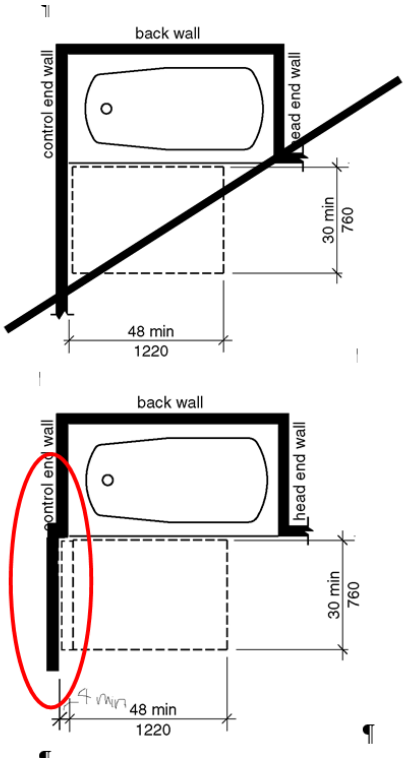


FIGURE 1104.11.3.2.3.1
BATHROOM CLEARANCE IN TYPE B UNITS OPTION B BATHROOM

1104.11.3.2.3.2 Shower compartment. A shower compartment shall comply with Section 1104.11.3.1.3.3.

REASON: Based on anthropometry, the provision of toe space past the control end of the fixture accomplishes realistic reach of the control for 90% of persons measured. The scoping change will result in all showers in Type B units meeting Sec 608 and eliminates the preference for tubs. In existing buildings "technical infeasibility" provides an exception for difficult situations.

Notes: Table till end of Chapter 6.

11-29 – 2021 Modification

1104.11.3.1.3, 1104.11.3.1.3.1, 1104.11.3.1.3.2, 1104.11.3.1.3.3, 1104.11.3.2.3.1; Figures 1104.11.3.1.3.1, 1104.11.3.1.3.2, 1104.11.3.1.3.3(A), 1104.11.3.1.3.3(B), 1104.11.3.2.3.1

Proponent: Thomas Hirsch, FAIA, Hirsch Group Architecture, representing self

Further revise as follows:

1104.11.3.1.3.1 Parallel approach to bathtubs. A transfer clearance of 60 inches (1525 mm) minimum in length and 48" (1220 mm) minimum shall be provided in front of bathtubs with a parallel approach. A clear floor space for toe clearance complying with Section 306.2 at the controls shall extend ~~4~~ 6 inch (~~102~~ 152 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall. An obstruction by the control wall of 4 inches (102 mm) maximum shall be permitted.

Note: Replace Figure 1104.11.3.1.3.1 (a) and (b) with one figure. The new figure indicates the transfer clearance and the additional ~~4~~ 6 inches required for the control clearance. Also need to add 4" obstruction.

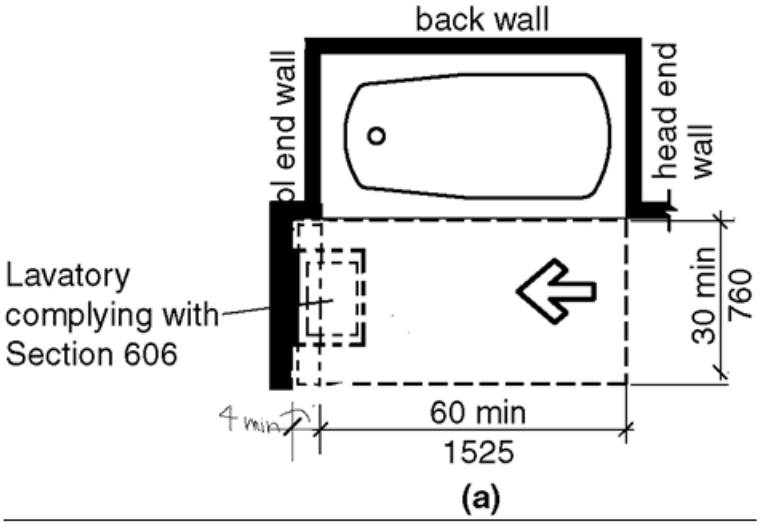


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.1
PARALLEL APPROACH BATHTUB IN TYPE B UNITS - OPTION A BATHROOM

1104.11.3.1.3.2 Shower compartments. The shower shall have dimensions of 36 inches minimum in width and 36 inches (915 mm)minimum in depth. A transfer clearance of 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length, measured perpendicular from the control wall, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth, measured from the face of the shower compartment, shall be provided. A clear floor space for toe clearance complying with Section 306.2 at the controls shall extend ~~4~~ 6 inches (~~102~~ 152 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall.

Exceptions:

1. A shower compartment with dimensions of 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in depth and 44 inches (1120 mm) minimum in width shall be permitted.
2. A shower door assembly shall be permitted where the assembly can be removed without removal or replacement of the surrounding walls and floor to which it is affixed.

Note: The figure will be revised to add the ~~4~~ 6 inch minimum control clearance to Figures (a) and (b). This would also apply if there is a wall at the toe end of the clearance.

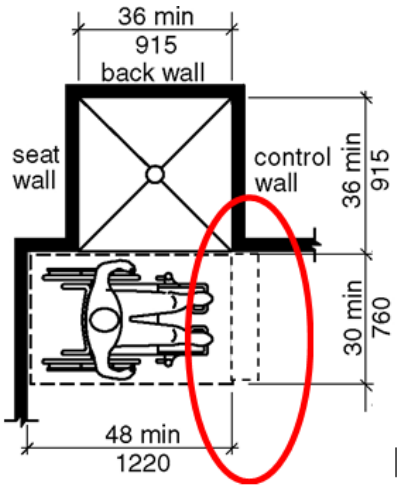


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.2 (A)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS

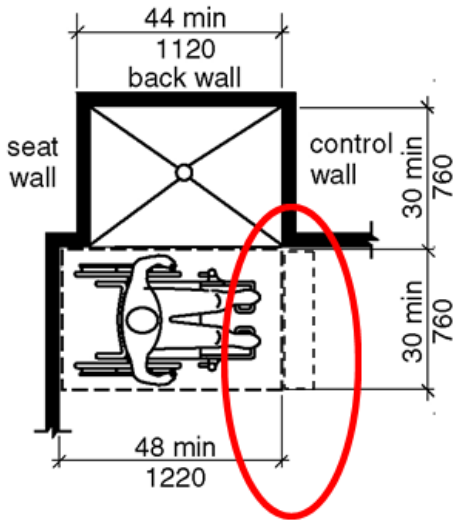


FIGURE 1104.11.3.1.3.2 (B)
TRANSFER-TYPE SHOWER COMPARTMENT IN TYPE B UNITS EXCEPTION

1104.11.3.2.3.1 Bathtub. A transfer clearance 48 inches (1220 mm) minimum in length measured perpendicular from the control end of the bathtub, and 30 inches (760 mm) minimum in width shall be provided in front of bathtubs. A clear floor space for toe clearance complying with Section 306.2 at the controls shall extend ~~4~~ 6 inches (~~102~~ 152 mm) minimum beyond the control end wall. An obstruction by the control wall of 4 inches (102 mm) maximum shall be permitted.

Note: Replace figure 1104.11.3.2.3.1 with the following. The figure will be revised to add the ~~4~~ 6 inch minimum control clearance. Also need to add 4" obstruction.

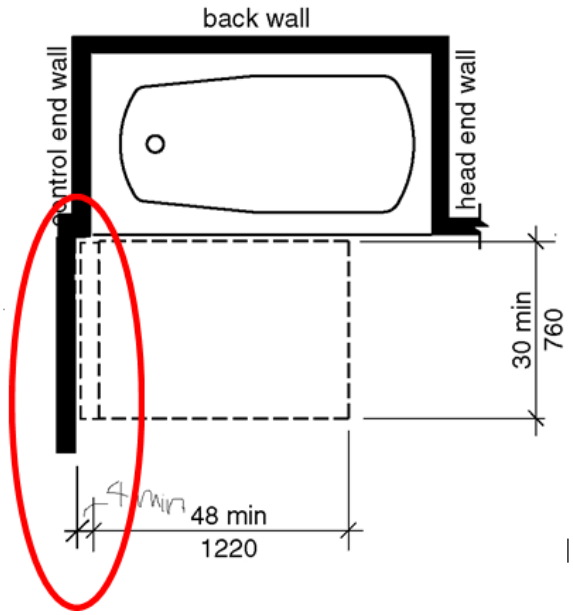
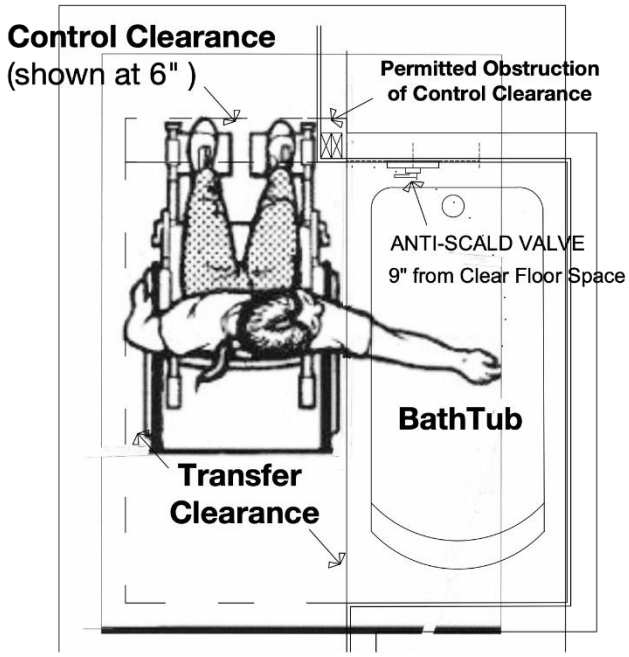


FIGURE 1104.11.3.2.3.1
BATHROOM CLEARANCE IN TYPE B UNITS OPTION B BATHROOM

Reason:

1. Conforms “toe space” with prior use of the term in Sec. 306.2.
2. Allows intrusion of wall framing without interfering with user’s toes
3. Allows for plumbing valves & piping in typical use.



Note: Use this figure for guidance to revise figures

Committee Action: Disapproval
The proposal was divided for discussion.
The proposed modification was revised to be only for bathtubs – Section 1104.11.3.1.3.1 and 1104.11.3.2.3.1 AM 5-20-4; D 25-1-3

REPORT OF HEARING:

Modification (if any):

Committee Reason: Based on the committee action for 06-40-21 and 06-59-21, the proponent requested consideration of only the modifications for bathtubs in Sections 1104.11.3.1.3.1 and 1104.11.3.2.3.1. The proposal was disapproved because this is a major modification to the overall configuration options currently available in Type B units with only consideration of access to bathtub controls. If improved accessibility is needed in Type B units, this needs to be a joint effort of ICC A117.1 and HUD for a total look at the requirements. For example, a turning space in the bathroom might improve accessibility much more than access to bathtub controls. In addition, this is asking for clearance at bathtub controls when plumbing controls do not have operable part of clearance requirements in Type B units at any fixture.

1104.11.3.1.3.3-HIRSCH.doc

Report for *11-29– 2021*		
Committee decision: D	***Committee Vote at Meeting: 25-1-3***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason: Based on the committee action for 06-40-21 and 06-59-21, the proponent requested consideration of only the modifications for bathtubs in Sections 1104.11.3.1.3.1 and 1104.11.3.2.3.1. The proposal was disapproved because this is a major modification to the overall configuration options currently available in Type B units with only consideration of access to bathtub controls. If improved accessibility is needed in Type B units, this needs to be a joint effort of ICC A117.1 and HUD for a total look at the requirements. For example, a turning space in the bathroom might improve accessibility much more than access to bathtub controls. In addition, this is asking for clearance at bathtub controls when plumbing controls do not have operable part of clearance requirements in Type B units at any fixture.		
PUBLIC COMMENT- FIRST DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
REPORT OF HEARING – FIRST DRAFT		
Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		
PUBLIC COMMENT- SECOND DRAFT: Proponent:		
Desired Action:		
Modification:		
Reason:		
Committee decision: AS/AM/D	***Committee Vote at Meeting:***	***Committee Vote on Ballot:***
FINAL ACTION: Modification (if any):		
Committee Reason:		